

THE
MATRICULATION
MANUAL OF ENGLISH

ADAPTED FOR THE USE OF CANDIDATES

FOR THE

Matriculation or Entrance Examination

OF THE

INDIAN UNIVERSITIES

BY

ROBERT STUART SHEPPARD, B A,

AUTHOR OF "ENGLISH LESSONS FOR F A AND B A CANDIDATES,"

"THE MIDDLE SCHOOL MANUAL OF ENGLISH,"

&c, &c, &c,

WITH NUMEROUS EXERCISES ON EVERY CHAPTER

ENLARGED BY

E WINCKLER, B A,

PRINCIPAL, HINDI COLLEGE, CALCUTTA

Thirteenth Edition

Madras:

THOMPSON AND CO

1903

[Copyright Registered]

Price Rs. 2—Postage As 2½

ORTHOGRAPHY

6 Letters are characters or marks used in writing or printing to represent articulate sounds. An *articulate* sound is a sound of the human voice, formed by the organs of speech.

7 Classification of Letters.—Articulate sounds are of two kinds: *vowels* and *consonants*.

Some articulate sounds are formed by a single impulse or stroke of the voice, and the mere opening of the mouth in a particular manner. These are called *vowel* or *vocal* sounds (Lat. *vocalis*, sounding, through Fr. *voyelle*).

On the contrary others require the use of the several parts of the mouth, as the teeth, the lips, &c., and yet cannot make a perfect sound without uniting with the vowel sounds. These are called *consonants* (Lat. *consono*, to sound together). Hence letters are divided into two general classes —

1 Vowels—which can be fully and perfectly sounded by themselves, or without the aid of any other letters. They are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *æ* and *γ* when they *do not begin* a word or a syllable.

Note—*Y* is a vowel when it stands as a syllable by itself, or is pronounced like *i*, as in *y pointing* (O E), *Israel*, *Ittria*.

2 Consonants—which cannot be distinctly sounded without the aid of a vowel. They are *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, z*, and *w* and *γ* when they *begin* a word or syllable.

All the letters in the English language collectively form its **Alphabet**.

8 Diphthongs—Digraphs—A *Diphthong* (from Gr. *δι* or *dis*, double, and *φθηγγος*, a sound) is, strictly speaking, the blending of two *vowel-sounds*, not merely the combination of two *vowel letters*. The combination of two vowels produces a diphthong only when the sounds of both vowels can be heard in pronunciation. What are called *improper diphthongs* are really no diphthongs at all. In an improper diphthong, only *one* of the two vowels is sounded, and as it is therefore a writing together, and not a sounding together, of two vowels, it should properly be called a *digraph* (Gr. *δι*, *dis*, and *γραφη*, I write).

Oi in *poison*, *ou* in *ounce* are diphthongs, *oa* in *boat*, *ui* in *guide*, *ie* in *friend*, are digraphs.

Note—The term *digraph* is applicable to a combination of two *consonants* as well as of two *vowels*, as *th* in *this*, *ch* in *church*. It is thus of wider application than the term *improper diphthong*, which includes only combinations of two vowels.

Similarly, *trigraph* includes combinations of three vowels as well as of three consonants *tch* in *fetch* is a *trigraph*

9. Triphthongs—Trigraphs.—A *Triphthong* (Gk *tri*, three, *phthongos*, a sound) is the blending of three vowel-sounds, as *uar* in *quaint*, *quarl*, *ure* in *quiet*, *quiescent*. When there are simply three vowel-letters joined together, and having a sound in which the sound of each vowel is not discernible, the combination should be called a *trigraph* *beauty*, *unanimous*, *buoy* contain examples of *trigraphs*. Some words wholly composed of vowels are *trigraphs* *awe*, *aye*, *ewe*, *eye*, *oue*

10 Classification of Consonants.—Consonants may be classified in four ways, on the following principles —

- i The nature of *articulate* sounds ,
- ii The *organs* employed in uttering them ;
- iii The effect produced by their sounds on the *ear* ,
- iv The strength or lightness of the *breath* in uttering them.

i *First Classification*—according to the nature of the sounds

1. *Mutes*, or such consonants as cannot be sounded at all without a vowel. They are *b*, *p*, *t*, *d*, *h*, *g*, and *c* and *g* hard

2. *Semi-vowels*, or such consonants as can be imperfectly sounded without a vowel. They are *f*, *h*, *j*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *v*, *z*, *z*, and *c* and *g* soft. Of these, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, are called *liquids*,* because their sounds flow on, *re*, are *continuous* or can be kept up for a little while, and *s*, *z*, *z*, (*sh*) and *c* soft are called *sibilants*, from their having a hissing sound

Note—The term *semi-vowel* is usually applied to the letters *w* and *y*, because when they are followed by a vowel sound in the same syllable, their sound approaches that of a consonant, as in *win*, *twin*, *yon*, *yonder*

ii. *Second Classification*—according to organs

1. *Labials*—(lip-consonants)—*b*, *p*, *v*, *f*, (*m*), *w*

2. *Dentals*—(tooth-consonants)—*t*, *d*, (*th*)

3. *Nasals*—(nose-consonants)—*m*, *n*, (*ng*).

4. *Palatals*—(palate consonants)—*j*, *g*, soft, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *z*, *c* soft, (*ch* soft)

5. *Gutturals*—(throat consonants)—*k*, *q*, *h*, and *c* and *g* hard.

Note—Some letters are formed by two organs *f*, *v*, for example, require the *lips* and the *teeth*. In this classification, the consonants are classed according to the organs chiefly employed in uttering them

* Lat *liquo*, melt. The term is open to objection as it is equally applicable to sibilants, vowels, and asperates

Cognate letters are letters formed by the same organs, thus *b* and *p* are cognates

iii *Third Classification*—according to the effect on the ear

1 *Sharp*—producing a sharp sound on the ear. The cause of this sharp sound is the entire stoppage of the air-tube in uttering it

2 *Flat*—producing a flat sound on the ear, on account of the stoppage of the air-tube being only partial.

The sharp and flat consonants run in regularly contrasted pairs —

<i>Sharp</i>		<i>Flat</i>
<i>p</i> in <i>pat</i>	—	<i>b</i> in <i>but</i>
<i>f</i> in <i>fan</i>	—	<i>v</i> in <i>van</i>
<i>t</i> in <i>ten</i>	—	<i>d</i> in <i>den</i>
<i>k</i> in <i>killed</i>	—	<i>g</i> in <i>guild</i>
<i>s</i> in <i>seal</i>	—	<i>z</i> in <i>please</i> , <i>z</i> in <i>zeal</i>
<i>th</i> in <i>thistle</i>	—	<i>th</i> in <i>this</i>
<i>sh</i> in <i>sure</i> (= <i>sh</i>)	—	<i>h</i> in <i>sure</i> (= <i>h</i>)

iv *Fourth Classification*—according to the strength or lightness of the breath in the utterance —

1. *Lenæ*

2. *Asperate*

p, b, t, d, k, g hard, *s, z, f, v, th* hard, *th* soft, — *h, sh, zh, ch* soft, *j*

It will be noticed that the *asperate* letters require a stronger breathing in pronouncing them than the *lenæ* which require only a slight effort of the breath

Note—The letter *h* is called the *asperate*,* and when we pronounce it distinctly, we are said to *asperate* it

11 *Imperfections of the English Alphabet*—The English Alphabet is 1 redundant, 2 deficient, 3 inconsistent, and 4 erroneous

1. The letter *c* has always the sound of either *s*, or *l*, *q*, of *l* with the vowel *u*, *x*, of *l* *s* or *q*: The three letters *c, q, x* are therefore redundant

2 The English Alphabet is also deficient. It has not single letters to represent several of the single sounds of the language, as of *th* in *thing* and *thin*, *sh* in *shine*, *ng* in *song*. It is deficient also in not having separate letters to represent the several sounds of the same letter, as *a*, which has four distinct sounds

3 The inconsistency of the alphabet consists in representing single sounds by double letters, and double sounds by single letters. *Thine* and *shine* contain examples of the first kind, *crist*, *for*, of the second

* *Asperate* is from *spiritus asper* (rough breathing), the name given by Latin grammarians to the letter *h*. It should therefore properly be spelt *a-sperate*, and not *as-pirate* as is generally done

4 It is erroneous because it does not represent similar sounds by similar letters. *J*, though resembling *i* and *y* in form, has no connection with either of those letters in sound. *Ch* resembles neither *c* nor *h* in sound.

12 Expedients employed to remedy these defects — The following are examples of the expedients employed to remedy the defects of the alphabet —

(1) The use of final *e* (mute) to denote a long vowel, or to soften a consonant as in *bite*, *note*, *bate*, *rage*, *lace*

(2) The doubling of final consonants to indicate a short vowel, as in *carry*, *folly*, *hotter*

(3) The adding of *h* to mark the aspirates of *p*, *t*, *s* *physic*, *this*, *show*

(4) The use of two letters to represent one sound *ch*, *sh*, *ng*, *oo*

(5) The use of *a* after a vowel to show that it is long, as in *boat*, *beat*

(6) The doubling of a vowel for the same purpose, as in *meet*

13 The conditions of a perfect Alphabet

1. Every simple sound must have a *distinct* letter to represent it

2. No sound must be represented by more than one letter

3. Similar sounds must be represented by similarly formed letters

14 Silent Letters — Letters are occasionally written which are not sounded, as in *tomb*, *indict*, *sign*, *hour*, *knife*, *calm*, *mneumonics*, *condemn*, *receipt*, *island*, *bustle*, *wrong*, *mairriage*, *engine*, *fashion*, *gaol*, *coquet*, *dialogue*.

15. Forms of Letters — Each letter of the alphabet is written in two forms, differing in shape and size, the large letters being called CAPITALS, or CAPITAL LETTERS (as *A*, *B*), and the others SMALL LETTERS (as *a*, *b*)

When printed, letters are also distinguished as ROMAN or ITALIC, the upright letters being *Roman*, and the sloping, *italic*, as *A*, *A*, *a*, *a*. Important or emphatic words are often printed in *italics*, and sometimes in SMALL CAPITALS

✓ 16 The use of Capital Letters — The following should begin with capital letters —

1. The first word of every sentence,

2. The first word of every line in poetry, except one which makes but one verse with the line preceding it,

3 The first word of a direct quotation,

4. All terms applied to God, as *Providence*, and pronouns standing for them, as "God is *His* own interpreter"

5 All proper nouns and proper adjectives, as *Ireland*, *Irish*

Note—When a proper name or a proper adjective has lost all reference to its first use, i.e., has become *common*, no capital is required '*ndairy*' (i.e., a lump of the kind invented by Sir Humphry Davy), *china* (ware), *voltairic*, *gallican*. So also with verbs formed from proper nouns, as to *macadamize*, to *boycott*

6 All titles of office or honour, as *Earl* (Godwin), *My Lord*, the *Duke* of Fife, the *Collector* of Ganjam, G. Aibuthnot, *Esquire*.

Note—Names of office or rank, however high, do not require capitals merely as such. When we use them alone in their ordinary sense, or simply place them in apposition with proper nouns without intending any particular honour, we begin them with small letters '*ten marquises* and *sixteen earls*', '*the emperor Augustus*', '*Bonner, bishop of London*', '*they desired him to be their king*'

7 Common or abstract names personified, as "O *Death*, where is thy sting?"

Note—Personified nouns take capitals only when they have the sense of proper nouns '*Wave* your tops, *ye pines*' Here a capital is not required, although the poet addresses the pines as persons. In fact it is only in the highest kind of personification that capitals are used. See Chap on "Figures" *Personification*

8. Names of days, months, and festivals, as *Monday*, *June*, *Easter*, *New Year's Day*

9 Any important word, as, '*the Revolution*', '*the Reformation*', "*Free Trade*"

10 The pronoun *I* and the interjection *O*, and many abbreviations, as *A D*, *M A*

11 Common words used as permanent individual names, and the principal words in phrases so used, as names of books and their divisions, associations, institutions, &c. These are proper nouns in sense, and are written accordingly '*Bain's Grammar*, *the Order of Words*', '*the Presidency College*', '*the Madras Literary Society*', '*the Society of Friends*', '*The Liberals and Conservatives*', '*the Milky Way*', '*the Gold Coast*', '*Native Public Opinion*'

17 **Syllables**—A *syllable* is a word, or a part of a word, containing only one vowel sound, and pronounced by a single effort of the voice—as *man*, *man-ly* *ness*. To pronounce the first of these words we make only one effort of the voice, whereas to pronounce the second we have to make three distinct efforts.

In every word, there are as many syllables as there are *distinct vowel sound*

A word which consists of a *single* syllable is called a MONOSYLLABLE as *man*, *hat*.

A word which consists of *two* syllables is called a DISSYLLABLE, as *jolly*, *greatness*.

A word which consists of *three* syllables is called a TRISYLLABLE, as *vanity singular*.

A word of *more than three* syllables is called a POLYSYLLABLE, as *singularity*.

18. Syllabification denotes the process of dividing words into syllables. In writing, we have frequently to divide words. We begin a word towards the end of a line, and then we find that we cannot write the whole word in that line. In such a case, we have to *divide* the word putting one part at the end of the line with a hyphen after it, and the other at the beginning of the next line. In doing so, however, we may not divide the word *wherever we like* but the first part must end with a complete syllable.

19 Rules for Syllabification.—The general rule for dividing words is this. Divide the word in such a manner that you can pronounce *each part by itself*, and that when you pronounce the second part immediately after the first, *the two sounds will together give the exact pronunciation of the whole word*. For example, take the word *hatred*. Suppose we divide it at *t*, thus, *hat red*, the first word must be pronounced exactly like the name of what is worn on the head (*a* being sounded as in *cat*), and together with *red* will give a different pronunciation from that of *hated*. But if we divide it into *ha* and *ted*, thus *ha-ted*, the two parts will give the required sound.

Of course this general rule can only be applied when the correct pronunciation of the word to be divided is known. When this is not known, the following rules should be observed —

1 Two vowels coming together and not forming a diphthong should be divided into separate syllables as *li-ar*, *ci-u-el*, *a-e-i-i-at*. A diphthong preceding a vowel should be separated from it as *loy al*, *po-er*.

2. A single consonant between two vowels should be joined to the latter *fa-tal*, *le-gal*, *ho-ly*. But if this changes the sound of the first vowel, the consonant should be taken with that vowel, as *duc-at*.

X between two vowels is always taken with the first *ex-ist*, *dua-om*.

3 Two consonants between two vowels should be separated *un-dei*, *al-bow*, except where the pronunciation would obviously be changed, *ta-ble*, *me-tre*, *fa-ther*. (*Tab-le*, *met-re*, *fat-her* are obviously wrong).

4 Three or more consonants between two vowels must not be separated, if the preceding vowel is long *de-throne*, *de-stroy*. But when the preceding vowel is short, they must be divided agreeably to the division observed in pronunciation *dis-tract*, *ab-stain*, *parch-ment*.

6 Compound and derivative words should be divided into their component parts, *pen / nise, mis / laid*. But if the pronunciation is thereby altered, the words should be divided so as to retain the sound *re / creation* (a creating anon), *re / creation* (division), *re / formation, re / formation*

6 Grammatical prefixes and affixes are separated when pronounced as distinct syllables *lo / est, lo / ing, lo / er*, but not *lo / ed*

When the affix doubles the final consonant of the word, the consonants should be separated *fat / te* (see rule 3) When the additional syllable formed by the affix is preceded by *c* or *g* soft, the *c* or *g* is taken with the additional syllable *of / fices, u / ges*

7 The termination *cial, ceous, cian, cious, tious, tial, tion, sion*, being pronounced as single sounds or syllables, should not be divided *pro / vin / cial, her / ba / ceous, mu / si / cian, qua / cious, fic / ti / tious, par / tial, len / sion, na / tion*

When *tial* is preceded by *s*, it is divided, *ce / les / ti / al*

8. Monosyllables should never be divided, as *strength, caught, should*, and letters of the same syllable should never be separated, as *un / fore / known, re / thatch, buoy / ant*

9 Two or three consonants or vowels forming but one sound should never be divided, as *bro / ther, ba / che / lor, tio / phy, sing / ing, boil / ing, catch / ing, sail / ure, beau / ti / ful*

CATION — In writing, never terminate a line with part of a word which does not form a syllable, thus it is improper to write *u* in one line and *pon* in the next, instead of *upon* or *bu / ild* for *build*. Either insert the whole word, or divide it according to the preceding rules

✓ PRACTICAL RULES FOR SPELLING

20 Final 'y' — As a general rule, *y* when its place may be supplied by *i*, is not to be written except at the end of a word. Hence when a letter or syllable is added to a word ending with *y*, *y* is changed into *i*. This change is exemplified by

1 The formation of plurals of nouns *beauties, flies, enemies*.

2 The formation of the second and third persons, the past tenses, and the perfect participles of verbs *criest, cries, cried*

Note — An apostrophe prevents this change *cr'y'd* for *cried*, *fanc'y'd* for *fancied*, 'the poem is full of *fly's* and *cry's*,' *counti'y's*

3 The comparison of adjectives *drier, driest, happier, happiest*

4 The addition of the suffixes *er, al, ful, fy, less, ly, ment, ness, able, ance, ant, ours, &c* *trier, trial, pitiful, pitiless, compliance, compliant*

EXCEPTION 1 — When the *y* is preceded by a vowel, it is not changed *days, bet / ay, bet / ayal, bet / aye, con / eyance, boy / ish, des / troy, buy, buye, bunch / ousful*

Note — *y* is changed in *daily, gaily, gaiety, slain, saith, staid, laid, paid, said*, and retained in *dry, shy, hy*, before *ness* and *ly* *dynos, slyness, hymns, dryly, shyly* (also spelt *diu, slui*), *shyly* *y* is also changed in colloquies, soliloquies.

2. When the affix begins with *y*, *y* is unchanged *cruyng, pityng, labyish, Toryan*

3 In compounds treated as such, *y* remains, *lady ship, dry-salter*

4 When *y* is preceded by *t*, and *ous* is added, *y* becomes *e*, as *duteous, beauteous, pitceus, plenteous* *Calamiteus, iniquiteus* are exceptions to this

5 In proper names pluralized, *y* is not changed *the Henrys, the Ponsonbys*

Note — We sometimes change *y* into *i* in proper names 'The Queen's *Maries*', 'the two *Sicilie*'

21 Final 'e' — Words ending in *e* silent, 1 omit it before additions beginning with a vowel and 2 retain it before additions beginning with a consonant

1 *Curable, sensible loquy, requish, desirous,*

2 *Paleness, senseless, lonely, peaceful, closely*

EXCEPTIONS TO 1.

1 The *e*, if preceded by *c* or *u* soft, or *t* or *l* (not preceded by *y*) must, in order to preserve the pronunciation, be retained before the affix *ous*, *able* or *ably* (but not *ible*), *courageous, outrageous, peaceable, amicable, chancable, yateable, unsalable*, (but *reducible, deducible*). We write *practicable*, however, omitting the *e*, this is because the *c* soft has become *e* hard, and the retention of *e* would make it still soft *Mortgagor, wrong, &c*, drop the *e* though the *g* continues soft

2 In verbs ending in *ie, ye* and *oe*, the final *e* is retained before *ing* *hucing, dyeing, shying, hosing*

Note 1 — When *ing* is added to *dy, tu, lie, vie, ve* becomes *y* *dyng, tymy, lying, ying*

2 When *ing* is added to *sing, suing, linge, spring*, they retain the *e* *singeing, sringeing, lingeing, springing*. This is to distinguish them from *singng, sringng, lingng, springng*

3 Words ending in *ce*, retain both *e*'s before *ing* and *able* *seeing, agreeing, agreeable*

4 Final *e* preceded by *c* soft becomes *i* when followed by *ous* *gracious, capricious, spacious, vicious*

5 Final *e* becomes *i* when *ity* is added *humanity, urbanity, security, purity* *Surely* is not an exception to this because it is not *sure+ity*

6 *Fue+y=fiey*, but *mie+y* follows the rule *miry* *Acce+aque=arrange*

EXCEPTIONS TO 2 *Duly, truly, wholly, awful, hatred, judgment, abridgment, acknowledgment, argument, nursing*, and a few other words

22 Final 'l,' 's' and 'f' — Monosyllables ending in *l, s, f*, preceded by a single vowel double the final letter *mill pass, staff* But if two vowels precede, the final letter is not doubled *haul, heal, grief*

EXCEPTIONS — *As, gas, has, his, this, is, we, thus, us, yes, was, of, of, quill, quell, quaff, guess, squall*

23 Other Final Consonants — Monosyllables ending in any other consonant than *f, l, s*, whether preceded by a single or a double vowel keep the final letter single *son, cup, lead, team, fit, feet*

EXCEPTIONS — *Add, butt buzz, ebb, egg, err, inn, odd, bun, purr, shirr, fizz*, and some proper names *Carri, Parr, Webb, Tupp, Rudd, Pitt*

24 Monosyllables ending in 'll' drop one *l* when compounded with other words, or when followed by an affix beginning with a consonant *already, altogether, until, dulness, awful, mouthful, fulfil, belfry, welfare*

EXCEPTIONS — *Illness*, and many other words in *ness*, *farewell, befall, downfall, uphill, windmill, recall* Also where the union is only partial, *all-sufficient, all-powerful*, but *almighty*

25 Words in 'c' and 'ck' — Monosyllables, and verbs of English origin do not end in *c*, but take *ck* *pack, block, pick, lick*.

EXCEPTIONS — *Lac, zinc, disc, talc, arc, roc*.

But in words of more than one syllable, *c* is now used instead of the old *ck* *comic, physic, mechanic, terrific, gigantic, maniac*.

Note — *C* final is used only in the six monosyllables just given, and in those words of more than one syllable that have *ia* before the last letter, also in *havoc*.

EXCEPTION — The *ck* is retained in the following and a few others *anack, barrack, ransack, bullock, hemlock, killock, paddock, haddock, denick*, also in proper names *Frederick, Patrick, Limerick, Warwick*

Words in *c* must assume *h*, with an affix beginning with *e*, *i*, or *y*, in order that the sound of *c* may be preserved *mimicked, trafficking, zinky*

26 Doubling Letters. — 1 If a monosyllable, or 2 a polysyllable accented on the last syllable ends in a single consonant (not *h, j, q, v*, or *z*) preceded by a single vowel, then on receiving an affix beginning with a vowel, the final consonant of the word is doubled, in order that its sound may be preserved

Eg, 1 *sit, sitting, hop, hopping, fat, fatter*.

2 *remit, remittance, besit, besitting*

Accent on the last syllable
forgetting, acquitting
infering, occurring
referring, admitting

Accent not on the last syllable.
bracketing, debiting
covering, offering.
severing, crediting

EXCEPTIONS 1—Words ending in *l*, *p*, *q*, or *s*, double the final letter, though not accented on the last syllable *travelling*, *councillor*, *counsellor*, *counselling*, *duelling*, *retelling*, *equalled*, *marcelling*, *metallic*, *untammelled*, *kidnapping*, *worshipped*, *humbugging*, *biased*, *focussing*. *Liberality*, *paralleled*, *realise*, *idealise*, *realism*, & c., follow the rule

Note—If the accent is thrown back from the final syllable by the addition of the affix, the final letter is not doubled *refer*, *reference*, *transfer*, *transferable* (but *transferible*)

2 If the consonant is preceded by two vowels it is not doubled *steam*, *steamer*, *sleep*, *sleeping*, *rain*, *rained* **EXCEPTION**—*woollen*, *woolly*

3 *S* is doubled in *gassy*, but not in *gaseous*

4 When the word ends in two consonants, there is no doubling *contracted*

5 When the affix begins with a consonant there is no doubling *blots*

6 *X* final, being itself a double letter (*qs*, or *ls*), is never doubled.

27 **Retaining double letters**—Words ending with a double letter, retain it double before any additional termination not beginning with the same letter, as *seeing*, *blissful*, *oddly*, *hilly*, *stiffness*, *carelessness*, *agreement*, *agreeable* (See section 24)

EXCEPTION—*Fled*, *sold*, *told*, *duelt*, *spelt*, *spilt*, *shalt*, *wilt*, *blest*, *past*, and derivatives from *pontiff*

28. **No Trebling**—The final letter may remain or be doubled, but not trebled, in the derivative word

29 **Eive, ieve**—It is sometimes difficult to decide whether we should have the *e* or the *i* first, in such words as *believe*, *deceive*. The following is the rule 1 *i* always comes first, 2 except after *c*, *e* *g*

1 *Believe*, *reprieve*, *retrieve*, *grieve*, *mischief*

2 *Deceive*, *deceit*, *receive*, *receipt*, *conceive*, *conceit*

30 **Cede, Ceed**—

(a) *Cede* follows the prefixes *ac*, *con*, *inter*, *pre*, *re*, *se*

Ex—*Accede*, *concede*, *intercede*, *precede*, *recede*, *secede*

(b) *Ceed* follows the prefixes, *ex*, *pro*, *suc*.

Ex—*Exceed*, *proceed*, *succeed*

31 **ise or ize**—*ize* is generally used when it represents the classic termination, as *philosophize*, *civilize* *ise* is used in monosyllables, and generally where *ize* is not a distinct part of the root (*size*, *assize* are exceptions), as *wise*, *advise*, *surprise*, *circumcise*, also in spelling words in *ize* of classic origin, received through the French.

32 **—er, —re.**—Many words derived from the French, which formerly ended in *re*, have now substituted *er* for *re*, as, *chamber*, *disaster*, but the following retain *re*, as, *metre*, *mitre*,

nutr, *spectr*, *scepth* *theatr*, *sepulchr*, *centr*. The derivatives of these are spelled in the same manner, as, *nutr**ed*, *nutr**ious*, *sceptr**ed*. *Centr* is sometimes spelt *center*.

33 —*ant*, —*ent* — Words derived from Latin words ending in *ans* are generally spelt with *ant*, as, *abundant*, *reluctant*, but other words formerly ending in *ant*, *ance*, are now written with *ent*, *ence*, as, *dependent*, *dependence*, except *defendant*, *attendant*. At present there are two adjectives from *depend* *depenant*, in the power of another, and *dependent*, hanging from. *Dependent*, the noun, means one who lives in subjection to another, a retainer.

34. —*se*, —*sy*, —*ce*, —*cy* — When a verb ends in *se* or *sy*, its corresponding noun must end in *ce* or *cy*, thus, *advise*, *advice*, (to) *practise*, (a) *practice*, (to) *devise*, (a) *device*, (to) *prophecy*, (a) *prophecy*.

35 *En* or *in* — There is a class of words beginning with *en* or *in*, as *enclose* or *inclose*, *enquire* or *inquire*, *ensure* or *insure* and the like, many of which take either form of the prefix indifferently. They are chiefly derived from the Latin, either directly or through the French, *in* being Latin, and *en* French. In some *en* is to be preferred, as, *encroach*, *entreaty*, *entwine*, in others *in*, as, *incumbrance*, *unfold*, *intrench*, in others, either may be used indifferently, as, *embosom* or *imbosom*, *enquire* or *inquire*, *ensure* or *insure*.

Note — In regard to *ensure* and *insure*, it should be observed that in the technical use of the word, the second form is always used, as "to insure one's life." The noun form is always spelt with *in*: *insurance*.

36 *Or* or *our* — Should we write *honour*, *favour*, *labour*, &c., with *our*, or, as the Americans do, with *or*? Formerly a great many words used to be spelt with *our*, as for example, *errour*, *authour*, *emperour*. The tendency in English has been to substitute *or* for the old *our*, and the forty words or so that we spell with *our* will probably in time undergo the same change, but, nevertheless, there is no reason why, till such a change has been brought about by time, we should not conform to the English way of spelling *labour*, *vigour*, *fervour*, &c.

✓ 37 Additional remarks on spelling—

1. The letters *i*, *j*, *q*, *v*, *w*, *z*, *u*, are never doubled, nor the letter *a* except in some proper names, as, *Isaac*, *Canaan*.

2. The letter *q* must always be followed by two vowels at least the first of which is always *u*, as *quich*, *quench*, *queen*.

3. Words ending in *e* generally retain the *e* before the *r* when a syllable is added as, *reference* from *refer*. Except *hindrance*, *remembrance*, *monstrous*, *disastrous*.

4. Compound words in which the hyphen is used retain the spelling of the words which compose them *all-wise*, *full-eyed*, &c.

ETYMOLOGY

38 Primitive and Derivative Words—A *primitive* word cannot be traced to any simpler word in the language, but a *derivative* word can be so traced. For example, we know that the word *manly* is formed from the simpler word *man* by the addition of the termination *ly*, therefore *manly* is a derivative word, on the other hand, the word *man* cannot be traced to a simpler English word and is therefore primitive.

Note—The different ways in which derivatives are formed are shown in Chap. XX.

39. Simple and Compound Words.—A *simple* word is not combined with any other word, as, *man*, *plough*, *book*, but a *compound* word is formed of two or more simple words joined together, as *man-kind*, *plough-boy*, *book-seller*.

40 Difference between Primitive and Simple Words—All primitive words are simple, but all simple words are not primitive. A *simple* word may have prefixes or suffixes, but a *primitive* word may not. *Manly*, for instance, is a simple word, but it is not primitive, because it is derived from the word *man* by the addition of the suffix *ly*.

41 Difference between Derivative and Compound Words.—The parts of which a *compound* word is made up are *independent words*, and each of them may be used by itself as a word, whereas, of the parts of a derivative word, it is only necessary that one should be a complete word, the other may be a prefix or a suffix, or it may have no parts at all, but may be formed from the primitive by a simple change. For example, *gun-powder* is a compound word, whereas *unkind*, *kindly*, *bliss* are derivative words.

42 Primary and Secondary Derivatives—When a primitive word undergoes a *single* modification, as change of vowel or addition of suffix, it becomes a *primary derivative*, as, *bliss*, *madden*. When the primary derivative is modified so as to become a new word, this new word is called a *secondary derivative*, as, *blissful*, *maddening*.

Note—We may of course have *tertiary* and *quaternary* derivatives, but the distinction is unimportant and it is undesirable to multiply technical terms.

43 Permanent Compounds, *ie*, those of which the component parts have fully coalesced, are consolidated and written as if they were simple words, as *bookseller*, *schoolmaster*, others which may be called *temporary* have a hyphen between their component parts as, *glass-house*, *negro-merchant*.

Note—Some permanent compounds exhibit a change in one of their members, as *holiday* (holy day), *pastime* (pass time)

THE PARTS OF SPEECH

44 The Parts of Speech.—All the words in the English Language may be arranged in *eight* classes, in other words, there are, in English, eight *Parts of Speech*. These are the *Noun*, the *Pronoun*, the *Adjective*, the *Verb*, the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction* and the *Interjection*

Formerly the Article was considered a separate part of speech, but it is really an adjective the indefinite article *a* or *an* being another form of the definite numeral adjective *one*, and the definite article *the*, of the demonstrative adjective *that*

THE NOUN.

45 Definition—A noun is the name of anything we can perceive by means of (1) the *senses*, or (2) the *understanding*, as 1 *thunder, lightning, heat, perfume, acidity*, 2 *justice, virtue, truth, fortitude, despair*

Note—The noun may be defined by the following marks

I It may be the subject or the object in a sentence, as, 'The garden is pruned *the tree*'

II It differs from the pronoun, which may also be a subject or object, in this respect—the noun names *directly*, i.e., is the name of the *thing itself*, while the pronoun names *indirectly* or by means of a reference. *Eg.*, in the sentence 'Augustus found Rome built of brick and he left it built of marble,' *Augustus* and *Rome* are nouns, because they name the actual objects, while the subject and the object in the second sentence, *he* and *it*, are pronouns because they name by referring back, one to *Augustus* and the other to *Rome*

III The noun is distinguished from the infinitive (which may also be a subject or object) by the fact that it may be inflected or changed for gender, number, and case, while the infinitive cannot be inflected at all

46. Classification—

- I Proper nouns *Rome, Jordan, Suus, Pharaoh*
- II Common nouns *city, river, star, ling*
- III Collective nouns *nation, regiment, fleet*
- IV. Material nouns *iron, clay, wheat,*
- V. Abstract nouns —
 - a denoting quality—sweetness.
 - b denoting action—flight
 - c denoting state—health

Note—1 Names of diseases are generally classed under proper nouns In grammatical construction they agree with proper, material, and abstract

nouns, and differ from class nouns. We do not say *colds*, or *diarrhæas*. When we speak of *fevers* we mean *kinds* of fever

2 The names of the days of the week, the months of the year, festivals, and languages are proper nouns *Monday, April, Easter, Latin*.

3 A collective noun which denotes more than one object of the same kind, may be used in the plural, and as a noun of multitude but one that denotes a number of things of different kinds cannot be so used as, *furniture, machinery, finery, clothing*

4 Such nouns as *father, son, husband, wife, master, servant, king, subject*, are called *correlative nouns*

5 All nouns not abstract are called *concrete*

47 Proper Nouns—*Proper* means one's own, or belonging entirely to one a *proper noun* is so called because it can be used of only one person or thing at the same time, so that it may be said to belong altogether to that person or thing.

48 Common Nouns.—*Common* means belonging to several at the same time *common nouns* are so called because they can be applied to several persons or things of the same class Thus *Harischandra* can be used of only one person, the king so famous in Indian story, while the name *king* applies to *Harischandra*, as well as to all persons of the same class, *i.e.*, to all rulers of countries

49 Collective Nouns—A *collective* noun denotes a number of persons or things taken together. Thus *army* denotes a large number of soldiers considered in a *body*, *i.e.*, not as so many separate soldiers, but as a *collection* of soldiers

✓ 50 Material Nouns are names of substances made up of parts like the whole, as, *gold, iron, clay*.

51 Abstract Nouns are names of qualities, actions, or states, considered by themselves, and without reference to any particular things to which they may belong *Abstract* means *drawn away from* (*i.e.*, from the thing to which a quality, action, or state belongs)

✓ *Note*—The names of arts and sciences are considered as abstract nouns "because they are the names of processes of thought, considered apart, and abstracted from the persons who practise them thus *music, painting, grammar, chemistry, astronomy* are abstract nouns."

✓ 52 Proper Nouns become Common Nouns when they are applied to more individuals than one, *i.e.*, when they are used as general or class names, as '*the Cæsars*,' *i.e.*, the Emperors of Rome who bore the name Cæsar, '*a Tamerlane*,' *i.e.*, a cruel tyrant like Tamerlane, '*Alps on Alps arise*,' *i.e.*, high mountains.

Proper nouns also become common, when the names of persons or places are used for things in some way connected with them, as 'a *brougham*' (named after Lord Brougham), '*china*' (porcelain ware made in China), and so on

53. Common Nouns are used like Proper Nouns when they are qualified by a word or words, so that their application is limited to *single* individuals. '*This dog*' applies to a single dog, just as if we gave the name of the dog, say Rover. To say, '*The Queen of England*' is in effect the same as saying '*Victoria*'.

Note—When we say '*the sun, the earth, the moon*,'—*sun, earth, moon*, are really proper nouns, as there is only one object which we can call the *sun, &c.* But when we say "*Jupiter's moons*," &c., they are common nouns.

54. Collective Nouns may also be Common Nouns for there may be several collections of the same kind of things. There are many fleets, armies, libraries &c., and so the nouns *fleet, army, library, &c.*, are common as well as collective.

55. Nouns of Multitude.—Sometimes when a collective noun is used, the things denoted by it are spoken of *individually and separately* as if it were a class-noun. '*The jury were kept without food*' means that the *jurymen* were so kept, because the action of taking food cannot, like the action of returning a verdict, apply to the whole body collectively, but can apply only to the members of it individually. Collective nouns thus used are called *Nouns of Multitude*. *Peasantry, tenantry, youth, nobility* are other examples of collective nouns which may also be used as nouns of multitude.

Note—*Toll* is properly a noun of multitude, but the plural is sometimes used to express individuals of a particular character, *poor folks, little folks*.

56. Material nouns have, as a rule, no plural—We do not usually say '*golds*'. When they are used in the plural they become common nouns and denote special classes of objects, as

1. Different kinds of the material denoted by the noun, as *teas, wines*,

2. Detached portions of it, as, *stores, cloths*,

3. Things made of it, as, *tins, wines, clothes*,

Note—A few material nouns have no singular form, as, *oats, ashes, molasses*.

57. Abstract nouns have no plural except when employed as common nouns—Then they denote parti-

cular examples, acts, or exercises, of what they denote. As colours (species or varieties of colour); kindnesses (acts of kindness), sympathies (exercises of sympathy)

Note 1—Abstract nouns are sometimes used in the plural to compare the different degrees in which the quality exists in different substances. 'The respective affinities of lead and iron for manganese', 'the specific gravities of oil and water.'

2. Some abstract nouns have a different meaning when used as common, from what they have when used as abstract, as, justice (abstract), the quality; justice (common), judge

3. A quality, state, or action relating in common to several objects should be expressed in the singular. 'For our sale,' not 'sales'. 'They are content with their lot,' but 'their lots are different.' 'We have the same object,' but 'our objects are different.'

58 Abstract nouns are sometimes used as collective: thus we say "the nobility and gentry of England" for the nobles and gentlemen of that country, "a book for Indian youth," i.e., young persons. Abstract nouns so used take no plural.

59 Most abstract nouns are formed from adjectives by the addition of terminations. The commonest termination is *-ness*—blackness, brightness, goodness, righteousness. The following are the principal ways of forming abstract nouns from adjectives

- (a) By adding the termination *-ness*—richness, idleness
- (b) By adding the termination *-ity* or *-ty*—humanity, honesty.
- (c) By change of vowel and adding *-th*—strength, length, breadth.
- (a) By omitting final *e* and adding *-th*—width, truth.
- (e) By changing final *t* into *cc* or *cy*—patience, decency

60 Abstract nouns are also formed from Verbs, and from Nouns,—as, occupation, commutation, relief, conference, choice, stealth, stroke, bondage, slavery, friendship

61. Substitutes for the Noun: 1 *Pronoun*. 'Where is the book? It is not to be found' 2 *Adjectives* 'the deep', 'the past and the present' 3. *Infinitives* 'Hunting is exciting' 4 *Adverbs* 'the eyes have it', 'an eternal now', 'the why and the how'

Note—Any word, character, or sign spoken of as a word or sign, and without reference to its meaning, is a noun, as, 'As is a personal pronoun', 'Control' is probably contracted from counter-roll', 'Without one if or but', 'Th has two sounds'

THE PRONOUN

62 Definition.—A pronoun is a word which expresses a thing not directly or by its own name, as the noun does, but by a reference to something else as, *he, I*.

63 Classification —

- I. *Personal*—*I, we, thou, ye, you*
- II *Demonstrative*—*he, she, it, they, this, that.*
- III *Possessive*—*mine, thine, his, its, hers, ours, yours, theirs*
- IV. *Relative*—*who, which, that, what, as, but*
- V *Interrogative*—*who, which, what*
- VI. *Distributive*—*each, either, neither.*
- VII *Indefinite*—*one, they, any, some, nought.*

64 Kinds of Pronouns described.

Personal Pronouns show a difference of person, i.e., they show to what person they belong. There are three persons the first person, or the person speaking, the second person, or the person spoken to, and the third person, or the person spoken about.

What are generally called personal pronouns of the third person are really *demonstrative pronouns*.

Demonstrative Pronouns are those used for the purpose of pointing out. They are *he, she, it, they, this* and *that*, and their plurals *these* and *those, such, so, same*.

Possessive Pronouns are formed from the personal and the demonstrative pronouns, and are so called because they were at first the possessive cases of those pronouns. They are *mine, thine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs*.

Relative Pronouns are so called because they relate or connect the clause in which they are used, to some noun or pronoun generally going before it, and hence called the *antecedent* (Lat *ante*, before, *cedo*, I go). Thus, in the sentence 'I have lost the book *which* you gave me,' *which* relates the clause 'you gave me' to the noun *book* *which* is a relative pronoun, and *book* is its antecedent. The relative pronouns are *who, which, what, that, as, and but*, and words formed by adding *so, soever, or ever* to any of the first three, as *whoso, whatever, whosoever*.

Interrogative Pronouns are those that are used in asking questions. They are *who, which, and what*. *Whether* was formerly used as an interrogative pronoun. see note to sec 82.

Distributive Pronouns are distributive adjectives used as pronouns. *Every* is the only distributive adjective that is not now used as a pronoun.

Indefinite Pronouns do not point out any particular persons or things, but denote persons or things in general. The words *they* and *one* are indefinite pronouns, when they are used for 'people or persons generally,' and 'a person,' respectively.

Note.—The indefinite *they* is used only in the nominative case "*They* say the Governor has left the Hills," but not "*It* is said by *them* that the Governor, &c," or "*It* is *their* belief that the Governor, &c."

65. Uses of 'we'—*We* is used

- 1 To denote the speaker or writer, with others who are associated with him, or whom he represents as when, in returning a verdict, the foreman of a jury says, '*We* find the prisoner guilty.'
- 2 By persons in very high authority, as kings as '*We* Victoria, by the grace of God, Queen of Great Britain, and Ireland,' &c
- 3 By editors of newspapers, and authors of books, &c as '*We* hear that the new Governor has embarked for India.'
- 4 To denote mankind generally as '*We* must all die.'
- 5 Colloquially for *I* "Give *us* a light."

66. Uses of 'thou.'—*Thou* is out of use in modern English, except in the following cases.

1. In addressing God '*Thou* art the Lord alone.'
2. In poetry '*O thou* that with surpassing glory crowned.'
3. To express familiarity and contempt '*Thou* vile creature.'
4. In the language of Quakers

Note.—*Thou* and *you* must not be used in the same sentence for the same noun

'*You* draw the inspiring breath of ancient song
Till nobly rises emulous *thy* own'

We should either say '*thou* draw'st' or change *thy* into *your*.

67. *Ye* is now only used in poetry, or to express familiarity.

'Nor *you, ye* proud, impute to these the fault'

68. Uses of '*it*.'—The uses of *it* may be divided into two classes—1 When it relates to an object expressed in the sentence, 2 When it relates to an unexpressed object.

I. *It* relates to an expressed object, viz.:—

1. To an antecedent neuter noun, as 'Take the book; here *it* is.'
2. To an antecedent clause or phrase, as, 'When a virtuous man is raised, *it* brings gladness to his friends' (i.e., the fact of his being raised) 'He told me to stand, but I would not do *it*.'

This is called the *Retrospective* use of *it*.

- 3 To a subsequent clause or phrase, as '*It* is six weeks since we saw you.'—*It*, viz., since we saw you, is six

weeks 'It is not in mortals to command success'
= It, *i.e.*, to command success, is not in mortals.

This is called the *Anticipative* or *Prospective* use

- 4 To an *antecedent* or *subsequent* person, as (a) *Infinitive* — 'It is an ancient manner and he stoppeth one of three' (b) *Emphatic* — 'It is I, be not afraid'

II. It relates to an *unexpressed* object, *i.e.* —

- 1 Where the object is understood from the context as —
'If it is fine, we shall go out' (*i.e.*, the weather)
'How is it with you?' (*i.e.*, the state of things.)
2. Where it forms a sort of cognate object to the verb, as 'Fight it out,' (*i.e.*, fight the fight out.) 'Come and trip it as you go,' (*i.e.*, your tripping), 'lord it', 'queen it'

69. This, that, these, those.—

When two objects or two sets of objects have been mentioned, the first in order is sometimes, especially in poetry, re-called by *that* or *those*, and the second by *this* or *these*, as.

'Some place their bliss in action, some in ease,
Those call it pleasure, and contentment these'

Note — *Pronouns and Adjectives used as Nouns* Adjectives are often used with the nouns they qualify, understood, as 'This book is better than that,' *i.e.*, that book. *That* is here not a pronoun, but an adjective used as a noun. It is a pronoun only when it is used instead of a noun, as 'He mistook his own room for that of the stranger,' *i.e.*, not that room, but the room.

70. They, one —

They is used indefinitely when it means *people*, as 'they say the world is coming to an end', 'they manage these things better in France.'

One (*indefinite*) is the numeral *one* with extended applications. It is used substantively and adjectively. When used substantively it has a plural, *ones*, and a possessive, *one's*, and may be compounded with *self*. This indefinite *one* is sometimes but wrongly derived from the French *on* (*homme*), Lat. *homo*. It is merely the use of the numeral *one* for the older *man*, *men* (*Adams* think *one* a corruption of *mon*, *man*)

'One ought to do a thing *oneself* if one wants it done properly.' (pron)

'One Smith built this house' (adj)

Note — When *one* is used, idiom requires that, in referring again to the pronoun, it should be used *itself* a second time or oftener. In the example given above, it would be against idiom to say 'himself if he wants, &c.'

71. *We, you* — *We* is used to denote the first and second persons, the first and third persons, or the first, second and third persons, *together*, *you* is used to denote the second and third persons *together* 'You and I are to read *our* essays', 'James and I have lost *our* books', 'James, you, and I are to bring *our* exercises to-morrow', 'James and you have lost *your* prizes.'

72. Unemphatic '*you*' — *Your* is employed unemphatically and colloquially as equivalent to little more than the article '*Your* medallist and *your* critic are much nearer related than the world imagines.'* — Addison

73 '*You*' for '*We*' — *You* is sometimes used like *we*, as a representative pronoun 'There is such an echo among the old vaults and ruins that if *you* stamp a little louder, *you* hear the sound repeated'

74. Possessive Pronouns and Possessive Cases of Pronouns. — Possessive pronouns can only be used predicatively as, 'This book is *mine*', but we cannot use them attributively, we cannot say 'This is *mine* book' On the other hand the possessive cases of pronouns can only be used attributively as, 'This is *my* book,' not 'This book, is *my*'

Note — *His* and *its* are possessive cases as well as possessive pronouns They are the former when used attributively and the latter when used predicatively. 'This is *his* book,' 'this book is *his*'

Ours, yours, theirs, and hers are double possessive forms, *r* and *s* being both possessive terminations

Mine and *thine* were used formerly as possessive cases before words beginning with a vowel or silent *h* '*Mine* eyes shall see.' *Mine* is still used as a possessive case with a noun, when it follows the noun 'O brother *mine*'

CAUTION. — Never write the possessive pronouns with an apostrophe — *Ours, yours*, not as boys sometimes write, *our's, your's*

75. Restrictive and Co-ordinating uses of the Relatives. — The relatives *who* and *which* have two different significations —

1. Restrictive or limiting — as, 'the man *who* told me there had been a fire', 'the book *which* I lent him', — where *who* and *which* point out a particular man and book respectively

2 Co-ordinative, with the force of a co-ordinating conjunction — as, 'Why should we consult Charles *who* (for *he*) knows nothing about the matter?' 'At school I studied Geometry, *which* and *it*) I found useful afterwards'

That, what, but, and as are always used restrictively, never

* This should have been 'much more nearly related'.

co-ordinatively It is therefore incorrect to say, 'Age, that lessens the enjoyment of life, increases our desire of living.' *That* should be *which*

76. 'Who,' 'which,' and 'that' as relatives — *Who* and its compounds *whosoever*, &c., apply to persons or personified objects, *which* applies to lifeless objects, its compounds *whichever*, *whichsoever* may refer also to persons *That* applies to both persons and things, but only restrictively.

Note 1 — *Which* was formerly applied to persons 'Our Father *which* sit in heaven'

2 *That* has a peculiarity it cannot follow the word which governs it, like the other relatives 'the posture *that* I lay in,' not 'the posture in *that* I lay'

3 *That* and *who*, or *that* and *which*, should not be used promiscuously 'the man *that* brought me here, and *who* supports me' Say '*that* supports,' 'the book *that* you gave me, and *which* you wanted back' Say '*that* you.' But when a relative clause is subordinate to another, the relatives may differ 'There are men *that* have nothing *who* are happier than he.'

4 *Where* should not be used where the relative pronoun would be more appropriate 'Upon no subject should a man write *where* he cannot think clearly'—say *on which* *Where* should never be used when there is no reference to place

77. Cautions to be observed in the use of relative pronouns.—*Who* must not be used for *whose* and the noun which it should be joined to thus 'Queen Elizabeth, *who* was only another name for prudence, &c,' should be 'Queen Elizabeth, *whose* name was only another word, &c'

What must not be employed for *that*, nor *that* for *what*, thus, 'They would not believe but *what* I was guilty' should be 'They would not believe but *that* I was guilty'

What should not be used for *those which*, thus 'all fevers except *what*, &c,' should be 'all fevers except *those which*, &c'

After *such*, and *same*, the proper relative is *as* 'tears *such as* angels weep', 'the same thing *as* you told me'

78. Compound Pronouns.—There are three classes of compound pronouns in English. the *reflexive*, the *emphatic*, and the *compound relative*, pronouns The first two are formed by adding *self* to the possessive or objective case of the pronouns *I*, *thou*, etc., and the *compound relative* pronouns are formed by adding *so*, *ever*, or *soever* to *who*, *whom*, *which*, and *what* as *whoso*, *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whomsoever*, etc

79. Compound Relatives.—The antecedent of the compound relatives *whoever*, *whatever*, &c, is *that*, *he*, *anything*, or *any one*, and is always understood '*Whoever* did this was a

fool' = 'he (or any one) whoever did this was a fool' 'What-ever is, is right' = 'that (or anything) whatever is, is right.'

80. The relative pronoun "what" not compound.—It is a common mistake to call *what* a compound relative, which it is not, any more than *who* or *which* is. It is simply the neuter form of *who*, the *-t* being a neuter termination as in *it* (= *he + t*) *What* = *who + t* 'The antecedent of *what* is *that*, and is always understood in modern English. 'What you say is true' = "that what you say is true"

81. Where 'that' is preferable to 'who' or 'which'—In the following cases *that* is generally preferable to *who* or *which*, unless it be necessary to use a preposition before the relative.—

(1) After an adjective of the superlative degree, when the relative clause is restrictive 'He was the first *that* came'

(2) After *same*, to explain its import 'This is the same person *that* I met before', 'This book is the same *that* I spoke to you of'

(3) After *only*, *all* 'the only friend *that* I have', 'all the money *that* I possess'

(4) After the antecedent & *who* interrogative 'Who *that* has common sense can think so?'

(5) After a joint reference to persons and things 'He spoke of the men and things *that* he had seen'

(6) After an unlimited antecedent which the relative and its verb are to restrict 'thoughts *that* breathe and words *that* burn.'

(7) After an antecedent introduced by the indefinite *it* 'It is you *that* told me so'

(8) And, in general where the propriety of *who* and *which* is doubtful. 'The little child *that* was placed in the midst.'

82. 'Who,' 'which' and 'what' as Interrogatives—*Who* applies to persons only It inquires for the name or some other appellation of a person, and when the name is in the question, it inquires for the character or some description of the person 'Who spoke?' 'Whom do you take me to be?' 'Who was Omichund?'

Which applies to persons as well as things It supposes the name known, or disregards it, but seeks further to distinguish

* Antecedent is literally something that goes before the pronoun, but as what is called the antecedent may and does follow the pronoun, *correlative* would be a better term.

a certain individual from others 'Which of them spoke?' inquires for a certain individual among a definite number

What also applies to persons and things. It may be used in asking for any kind of information 'What is man?' 'What is your name?' 'What is made from rag?' 'What is the time?' 'What do you want?' When *what* is applied to persons, it inquires about character or occupation 'What is that man?'

Briefly *Who* seeks to designate, *which*, to distinguish, and *what*, to describe 'Who is that gentleman? Mr. Jackson' 'Which one? Mr. John Jackson' 'What is he? An engineer'

Note — *Whether* was formerly used interrogatively instead of *which*, when two persons or things were spoken of 'Whether of the twins did the will of his father?'

83. Reflexive Pronouns — When the compound pronouns *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, &c., are used so as to denote that the agent and the object of an action are the same person or thing, they are called *reflexive pronouns* as, 'He cut *himself*', 'They *armed themselves*'

Note 1 — *Ourself* is peculiar to the *regal style*. When *you* is used for *thou* its reflexive form is *yourself*, otherwise, it is *yourselves*

Note 2 — In poetry (and in Old English), the objective form of the simple pronoun is often used for the reflexive 'He sate *him* (i.e., *himself*) down at a pillar's base', 'I thought *me* (i.e., *myself*) wicher than the Persian King'

84. Emphatic Pronouns — When the compound pronouns *myself*, &c., are used after a noun or pronoun to express emphasis, they are called *emphatic pronouns*. In such cases they are generally in apposition with the noun or pronoun which accompanies them, as, 'The master *himself* could not do it'

85. Reciprocal Pronouns — *Each other* and *one another* are called *reciprocal pronouns* because they denote that two or more agents act reciprocally as, 'John and James love *each other*,' i.e., 'John loves James and James loves John in return'

Note — *Each other* is used of two persons or things, *one another* of more than two

86. Old Definition of Pronoun — Some grammars define a pronoun as "a word used to save the too frequent repetition of the noun" This definition is wrong for two reasons —

1. It is too wide, as including other words, not pronouns, which also save the repetition of the noun, as

(a) *General designations*, — 'We went to see *St Paul's* and admired the vast *building*'

- (b) *Synonyms*.—‘His happiness was much enhanced by his success, but it was not in the nature of so great *bliss* to last’
- (c) *Words of reference*—*The one and the other, the former and the latter, &c.*

2 It is too narrow, as not including the interrogative and indefinite pronouns, which do not save repetition.

THE ADJECTIVE.

87. Definition—An adjective is a word added to a noun to limit its application, as, ‘*My hat*’

In this example the word *hat*, which, without an adjective, would apply to all the *hats* in the world, is limited to a particular one by the word *my* being joined to it. So in ‘a *sweet* sound,’ the word *sweet* limits the word *sound* to a particular class of sounds, viz., those that please the ear.

88. Classification :

Adjectives may be classified as follows —

I. QUALITATIVE ADJECTIVES (expressing quality) *large, rich, virtuous*

II. QUANTITATIVE ADJECTIVES (expressing quantity) —

1. ADJECTIVES OF QUANTITY IN MASS —*much, enough, little, half.*

2. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

1. Definite numeral adjectives (cardinal) *one, ten.*

2. Indefinite numeral adjectives *many, some, several.*

3. Distributive adjectives *each, every, either, neither.*

III. DISTINGUISHING ADJECTIVES .

1. Demonstrative adjectives *this, that, yon, the, a, same.*

2. Possessive adjectives *my, thy, his.*

3. Interrogative adjectives *what* (man ?), *which* (boy ?)

4. Relative adjectives *which* (fact), *what* (books he had)

5. Indefinite adjectives *other, certain*

6. Ordinal adjectives *second, tenth, former, latter, previous.*

89. Pure adjectives, and nouns used as adjectives.—The following are the points of difference between these —

1. Nouns used as adjectives cannot be compared like true adjectives we cannot say “*more diamond*”

2. Pure adjectives do not undergo noun-inflections : we cannot say *wises*, or *wise's*.

3. Nouns used as adjectives vary in meaning according to the nouns they qualify, while true adjectives have a more or less uniform meaning. For instance, the adjective *pleasant* has the uniform meaning of *pleasing to the mind or senses* in the

following : a pleasant smell, a pleasant sight, a pleasant sound, a pleasant thought, while the noun *diamond* used as an adjective in the following four phrases, has a different meaning in each —

a diamond ring—(a ring set with diamonds)

a diamond field—(a place where diamonds are dug up)

diamond dust—(small particles left in cutting diamonds)

diamond form—(crystalline form of the diamond)

90. Uses of the Adjective.—

1 As an abstract noun—as ‘the beautiful’ for beauty ‘Poets love the beautiful’

2 As a common noun—as ‘the just and the unjust’

3. As an adverb—as ‘the sun shines bright’

91. Each, every, all, either, neither, both, every other.—*Each* refers to one of two or more, *every* to one of three or more, *each* is used restrictively, *every* universally. The first has only an individual or distributive meaning, the second is distributive as well as collective. Suppose there are a number of persons, A, B, C, D, &c. ‘*Each* of them came’ means ‘A came, B came, C came, &c.’ ‘*Every* one of them came’ means this, but means also ‘A, B, C all came’ *Every* one has the same force as the phrase *each and all*, or *one and all*.

Each may be used of two or more, *every* only of three or more.

Both *all* and *every* denote the whole of a given number or class, but *all* denotes it collectively, and *every*, distributively. “*All* men are mortal” speaks of the whole class *man*, “*Every* man is mortal,” of the separate individuals of the class.

Either = one of the two (this or that, not both) *Neither* = not one of the two, and not the other also.

Both = the two collectively

Every other = each alternate ‘He came *every other* day’ = ‘He came one day, missed coming the next, came the third day, &c.’

Note 1 — *Either* and *neither* should only be used in speaking of two objects.

Note 2 — *Either* is sometimes used, especially in poetry, for *both*, as,
‘While Troy’s famed streams, that bound the deathful plain,
On either side ran purple to the main’

Note 3 — *Both* and *all*, when used with nouns, do not take *of* after them, when used with pronouns, they do ‘*all* the persons, *all* of us’ ‘*both* the men, *both* of you’

92. The other, another—*The other* means the one remaining to be mentioned out of *two*, *another*, one of any number *above two* 'Two women shall be grinding together, one shall be taken, and *the other* left' 'One generation passeth away and *another* generation cometh'

Such expressions as the following are therefore inaccurate 'And the house of Baal was full from one end to *another*.' Say 'to *the other*'

Note—*Other* used as a pronoun has a plural and regular cases *other*, *other's*, *other*, *others*, *others'*, *other*.

93 Distributives and Multiplicatives.—*Distributives* (how many at a time) are expressed by employing—

- 1 *by—by twos and threes, two by two*
- 2 *and—two and two.*
- 3 *each, every—two each, every four.*
4. *at a time—three at a time*
- 5 *a—forty pounds a year*

Multiplicatives are expressed.

1. by placing the cardinal before the greater number 'eight hundred.'
- 2 by adjectives with the suffix *fold* *twofold*.
3. by (romance) adjectives in *ple* *double*, *triple*
4. by the adverb *once*, *twice*, *thrice*,
5. by *times* *three times four*

94. The Articles—*In* or *a* is the unemphatic form of the numeral *one*, and differs from it in laying stress on the *species* or class, not the *number*, whereas *one* emphasizes the *number*, not the *species*.

'Can *a* man carry this weight?' 'No, but *a horse* can.'

'Can *one* man carry this weight?' 'No, but *two* can'

A cannot strictly be used before proper nouns. 'When it is so used, it converts the proper noun into a common, as, *a Mr Brown*, *a Hampden*.

A is sometimes used as exactly equivalent to *one*, as, 'A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush'

A in such constructions as 'forty pounds *a* year,' is not the indefinite article used distributively as is generally supposed but a remnant of the preposition *on* found in older writers 'an half-penny *on* day.'

A and *an*—

A is used:

- 1 Before a consonant—*a pear*, *a shilling*, *a year*, *a war*
- 2 Before the long sound of *u*—*a unit*, *a European*, *a cure* *a U*.
3. Before the consonant sound of *u*—*a one pound note*.

An is used—

1. Before a vowel—*an apple, an orange*
2. Before a silent *h*—*an hour, an heir.*
3. Before *h* sounded when the accent } —*an historical event*
is on the second syllable }
4. Before the names of consonants, when such names begin with a vowel sound *an M A, an F and a G*

Note 1.—Which is correct, a European or an European?

'A European' is correct. The rule about *a* and *an* is that *an* should be used before a word beginning with a vowel or a silent *h*, and *a* in all other cases. Now, in applying this rule, we should be guided *not by the letter with which a word begins, but by the sound of its first syllable.* That is, we must consider not whether the word as written begins with a consonant or a vowel, but whether it (in pronunciation) begins with a vowel sound or a consonant sound. This is the reason why, when a word begins with a silent *h*, we use *an* before it. For when the initial *h* is silent, the word really begins with a vowel sound, though it begins with a consonant letter: the first sound in *heir* is not that of the consonant *h*, but of the vowel *e*. Similarly when a word begins with a vowel letter but a consonant sound, it follows that we should have *a* and not *an*. In the word *European* the sound of the first syllable is exactly that of the word *yew*. It begins with a consonant sound, that of *y*, and should take *a* before it, not *an*. We say '*a yew*,' and not '*an yew*,' because the latter sounds harsh, and for the same reason we should say '*a European*' and not '*an European*,' for '*an European*' is exactly the same in sound as '*an yew ropean*,' and it must sound as harsh as '*an yew*.'

From these considerations we get the following rule, as one that qualifies, or rather explains, the rule already stated.

'If a word begins with a vowel, or a diphthong, but has its *first sound* that of *y*, or *w*, *a* and not *an* should be used before it.'

Examples *a union* (= *yu nion*), *a university*, *a useful book*, *a usurper*, *a ewe* (= *yew*), *a one* (= *won*), *a once common practice* (= *wonce*).

N.B.—Some good writers, as Macaulay, nevertheless write '*an European*.'

Note 2.—The words beginning with silent *h* are, according to Walker, *heir, hour, heir, honest, honour, hospital, hostler, humour, humble*, and their derivatives. As to *hour* and *heir* and their derivatives, there is no difference of opinion. The *h* is silent: we should not dream of saying '*a hour*' and '*a heir*,' or '*he died without a heir*.' In regard to the other words and their derivatives, however, there is no reason whatever for depriving the *h* in them of its proper sound, at all events, if we are in sounding the *h* in those words, we are in good company. There are educated persons who say '*humble, humour, and hospital*,' but we think there are more who say '*humble, humour, and hospital*.'

Note 3.—The rule about using *an* before *h* when the accent is on the second syllable, does not apply to proper nouns or adjectives '*a Herodias*,' '*a Herculean labour*.'

Note 4.—When of several nouns joined together, some require *a*, and the rest *an*, the article should be repeated, unless all the nouns mean one thing '*A duke, an earl, and a marquis*.' But we do not say '*Man is an animal or a living creature*,' because that would mean that *animal* and *living creature* do not mean the same thing.

The is the unemphatic form of the demonstrative *that*, and has itself a weaker demonstrative force than *that*

The primary use of the was to particularize one out of a collection of things, one of each kind. Suppose we have a door, a window, a sofa, a table, a chair, in a room. If we want to single out any one of these, we say, *the door, the window, &c*

The secondary uses of the are the following

1. To particularize a species, as 'The lion is a noble animal,' i.e., the particular class of animals called lion

2. With the names of rivers, mountains, &c—as *the Alps, the Mississippi*

3. To convert proper names into common—as 'Valmiki was the Homer of India'

4. To convert common names into proper *the moon, the Park*

5. To point out an individual defined by an adjective clause or phrase 'as *the house that Jack built,*' 'the best of the three'

6. To denote pre-eminence 'He is the poet of the age'

7. To convert adjectives into abstract nouns—as 'the beautiful and the sublime,' i.e., beauty and sublimity

8. To convert adjectives into common or collective nouns 'the wicked have no rest,' 'the English are enterprising'

9. With proper nouns to form a descriptive phrase 'He had more of the Mazarin than of the Richelieu'

10. With common nouns to give them the meaning of abstract 'The father (i.e., fatherly feeling) yearns in the true prince's breast'

11. With the names of professions *the bar, the army, the law.*

12. Instead of a possessive adjective 'I am suffering from an affection of the lungs,' i.e., my. 'And to the hilt his vengeful sword he plunged in Golert's side,' i.e., its.

* Note 1.—In such a sentence as '*the more the merrier,*' the is not an adjective but an adverb, being equivalent to *thi*, the ablative of the Anglo-Saxon demonstrative. The sentence means 'By how much more, by so much merrier.'

Note 2.—The before a vowel is sounded as 'the eye' But before a consonant, the e is only imperfectly sounded 'th' man

✓ 95 Where the article should not be used,—

* 1. Before a noun used in its widest sense, as 'Man is mortal', 'Gold is ductile.'

2. Before the names of virtues, vices, arts, sciences, titles used as titles, or names used as names. 'Falsehood is odious', 'The eldest son of a Duke is styled *Marquis*', 'Thames is derived from *Tamesis*'

3. When a noun denotes an object in regard to its nature or character, and not as an individual to be distinguished from others or from something 'The pine is a species of *tree*,' not a *tree*.

4 Before titles prefixed to proper nouns, unless *of* follows the title 'Lord Ripon,' but '*the* Marquis of Ripon,' 'Queen Victoria,' but '*the* Queen of England' To *foreign* (that is, non-English) titles, *the* is generally prefixed '*the* Czar Alexander,' '*the* Archduke Maximilian,' '*the* Emperor Napoleon.'

5. Before proper nouns except

- i. When a particular family is alluded to 'a Campbell,' one of that family or clan
- ii When a particular distinction is implied 'a Cicero,' i.e., an eloquent man.
- iii When a common name is understood '*the* [river] Thames,' '*the* pious [man] David.'
- iv. When a person is spoken of as either little known or not much thought of 'a Mr Johnson spoke'

6 Before words which are sufficiently determinate in their meaning 'Parliament is assembled,' 'Government has resolved'

7. Before infinitives in *ing* unless they are taken in all respects as nouns 'for the dedicating (i.e., dedication) of the altar,' but not 'for the dedicating the altar.'

8 When different objects are enumerated or placed in correlation to one another

"Draw to one point and to one centre bring
Beast, man, or angel, servant, lord or king" (*Pope*),
"Five answers fire, steed threatens steed" (*Shakespeare*),
"Entertainment for man and beast"

Note 1—Custom allows the omission of the article in some familiar expressions, but not in others 'I am in *haste*,' but 'I am in *a* hurry'

Note 2—We prefix the definite article to the names of some languages but not others *the* Latin, *the* Greek, *the* Italian, but not *the* English

96 Where the article should or should not be repeated—

1 When two or more subjects are distinctly specified, and attention is called to each, the article must be repeated

'Burleigh had *a* cool temper, *a* sound judgment, and *a* constant eye to the main chance'

'*The* common air, *the* earth, *the* skies,
To him are opening Paradise'

When the article is thus introduced, it must be inserted *throughout* Hence the following is wrong 'She never considered the quality but merit of her visitors'

2. When *two or more nouns* are taken *collectively*, or describe one person or thing, the article is used *only before the first*—'*a* priest and king', '*the* gates and avenues of sense.'

Note 1.—‘The editor and proprietor of the paper’ means that the same person owns and edits the paper. ‘The editor and the proprietor of the paper’ means that one person owns the paper, and another edits it.

Note 2.—The use of a possessive adjective before a noun makes the article unnecessary. ‘I have his book.’

[The repetition of the possessive adjective has the same effect as the repetition of the article. ‘His friend and patron’ means one person. ‘his friend and his patron’ means two persons.]

3 Hence if two nouns are applied to the same person or thing by way of comparison or contrast, the article is used only once. ‘He is a better soldier than scholar,’ *i.e.*, than he is a scholar. But when two persons or things are intended the article is repeated. ‘He is a better soldier than a scholar,’ *i.e.*, than a scholar would be.

4. When one noun is qualified by several adjectives and the article is used, it is generally prefixed to the first adjective only. ‘A loose and verbose manner never fails to create disgust.’

5 But if the several adjectives make the noun mean several things, the article must be used with each adjective. ‘The metaphorical and the literal meaning of words are to be carefully distinguished.’

Sometimes, however, the article is repeated for the sake of emphasis or to call attention to the quality expressed by each adjective. ‘I returned a sadder and a wiser man,’ ‘the most atrocious, the most wicked villain that India ever produced’

6 When the adjectives do not describe one thing, the article must be repeated if the noun is in the singular, and not be repeated if the noun is in the plural. ‘the third and fourth chapters,’ ‘the third and the fourth chapter,’ ‘the Old and New Testaments,’ ‘the Old and the New Testament’

Note.—‘The Old and the New Testaments’ would mean ‘the Old Testaments and the New Testaments,’ but, as a matter of fact, we have only one Old Testament and one New.

7. When the two adjectives are connected by *both*, *neither*, *either*, the singular must be used and the article must be repeated. ‘Both the indicative and the subjunctive mood are found in English’

Note.—*The* is sometimes repeated before titles. *the Worshipful the Mayor*

97 ‘A’ used with words of plural force.—There are two English idioms in which *a*, though properly singular, is used with words of plural force. ‘many a man,’ ‘a thousand questions’ In the first case, it is connected with a plural adjective and a singular noun, and in the second, with a plural adjective and a plural noun.

98 Co-ordinating Adjectives.—Many adjectives prefixed to nouns do not restrict or limit their meaning, but have the force of co ordinate sentences 'The *bright* sun shone on the scene' = The sun is bright *and* it shone, &c, not *the sun that is bright* shone 'This *beautiful* picture was drawn by, &c'

All adjectives used as complements have a co ordinating force. When we say 'The rose is *red*,' *red* does not restrict the meaning of *rose*, but only predicates a fact about it

Adjectives joined to individual nouns are co-ordinating 'mighty *Cæsar*,' 'the vast *ocean*,' 'Alfred the *Great*'

99 Substitutes for the Adjective—1 *Nouns*—a gold crown 2 *Adverbs*—the *then* king 3 *Prepositions*—the *above* discourse 4. *Participles*—a *growing* youth.

THE VERB.

100 Definition—The verb is the part of speech concerned in predication, that is, in affirming or denying, as, 'The sun *shines*'

Note—As every sentence is an affirmation or denial, it follows from the above that there can be no sentence without a verb, expressed or understood.

101. Classification—

I. *Transitive*—denoting action passing over to an object, (which *may* be the doer), as, *kill*

II. *Intransitive*—not denoting action passing over to an object, *i.e.*, either 1 *denoting action not passing to an object* or 2 *not denoting action at all*, as, 1 *walk*, 2 *sleep*

Note—Verbs have been variously classified into (i) *Active Transitive*, *Active Intransitive*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*, (ii) *Active* and *Neuter*, (iii) *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*, &c For practical purposes, the one given above is sufficient As to (ii) it is simply absurd, for *neuter* means *neither*, and there must be *two other* classes, just as we should have a masculine and a feminine gender, to have a neuter gender. We may correctly divide verbs into *Active Transitive*, *Active Intransitive*, and *Neuter*, but as Syntax treats the last two classes in the same manner, they may be conveniently classed together as *Intransitive*, the first class being simply called *Transitive*

102 Finite verbs are those which can take a nominative, and consequently, have number and person as, *I write*, *he runs*

103 Copula or Apposition Verbs—*Be*, *seem*, *appear*, *grow*, *became*, &c, are called appositional verbs, because the verbs they connect are in apposition 'He became a *Christian*'

104. **Auxiliary Verbs** (that is, *helping verbs*) are verbs that are used in forming the tenses, and in expressing shades of meaning, of other verbs. They are *be, have, do, shall, will, can, may, ought, and must*.

105. **Impersonal Verbs** are verbs used only with the third person singular, neuter, expressed or implied, e.g., '*It rains,*' '*methinks,*' i.e., *it thinks* (appears) to me

106. **Irregular Verbs**—The general rule for forming the past tense and the past participle of a verb is to add *d* or *ed* to the verb in the form which it has in the infinitive mood. Verbs which form their past tenses and past participles according to this rule, are called *regular* (Lat. *rego, I rule*). Those that do not are called *irregular*.

107. **Redundant Verbs** are verbs that form their past tense or perfect participle or both in two or more ways.

108. **Defective Verbs** are those which are deficient or wanting in some of their parts. In modern use, they have only two moods and two tenses, i.e., the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods and the Present and Past Tenses. The following verbs are defective—*can, may, shall, will, ought, must, dare, beware, quoth, wit*. The last two are almost obsolete or gone out of use.

Note 1—*Beware* is not used in the indicative mood, but is used in the imperative, subjunctive, and infinitive moods. *Must* is never varied. *Ought* is invariable except in the solemn style where we find *oughtest*.

2. *I wis.* This erroneous form is the result of misconception regarding the Anglo-Saxon adverb *wiſsæ* (certainly), perfect participle of *wiſen*, to show. The original form of the word was *ge-wis*. This was changed into *wiſis* by the softening of *ge*, as in *handiwork* from *hand-ge-wærc*, and then *y* was changed into *i*, and what was originally an adverb was misconstrued into a verb and an imaginary pronoun.

'*I wis* in all the Senate there was no heart so bold
But fast it bent and sore it ached.'—*Macaulay*.

109. **Complete and Incomplete Verbs.**—Verbs are also divided into *complete* and *incomplete* verbs, according as they do not require, or require, a word, phrase, or clause to complete their meaning. Transitive verbs, which require an object, are, of course, incomplete. *Become, seem* are examples of intransitive incomplete verbs.

110. **Reflexive Verbs**—When the agent and the object of the action denoted by a verb are the same, that is, when the action is reflected or thrown back upon the doer of it, the verb is called reflexive, as '*he killed himself*'. They are of three kinds.

1. Reflexives, properly so called, where the agent acts on himself, and the pronoun is emphatic '*to examine oneself,*' '*he injured himself*'. In these cases the verb is transitive and used transitively.

2. Reflexives composed of transitive verbs and an *unemphatic* pronoun, the whole having almost an intransitive force, as 'he *recollected himself*,' 'to *boast oneself*'

3. Reflexives composed of verbs no longer transitive, though originally so, and an *unemphatic* pronoun, 'to *behave oneself*,' 'I *bethought me*'

Note — Many of the verbs in the second and third classes are now used as simple intransitives, as 'The boy is *ficting* after his mother,' 'He does not *behave* well'

111 Transitive verbs used intransitively — The transitive verb, used intransitively, expresses the action *generally*, but when strictly used, it expresses the action *specifically* as 'The child *sees* the candle', 'The new-born child *sees*, the puppy is blind' In the first, the *particular* act of *seeing the candle* is expressed, while in the second the *act of seeing generally*, on whatever object the faculty is employed, is expressed.

112 Transitive verbs are sometimes used reflexively in meaning, though not in form, and thus appear to be intransitive, as 'He *keep* aloof,' i.e., he *keep himself* aloof

113 Transitive verbs have sometimes a passive meaning with an active form, as 'a house *to let* i.e., to be let,' 'he is *to blame*,' i.e., to be blamed, 'this book *sells* well,' i.e., is sold, 'the wine *tastes* sour', 'the rose *smells* sweet', 'drinking water,' i.e., water to be drunk, 'the book is *publishing*'

Note — Some grammarians call this form of the verb in which it has an active form and a passive meaning, the *middle voice*

114. Sometimes perfect participles, which are generally passive in meaning, are used with an active sense, as 'a *well-spoken* man,' i.e., one who speaks well or smoothly, 'a *well-read* man,' 'a *learned* man,' 'a *travelled* man'

115 Causative verbs are generally formed from intransitive verbs by an *internal change*, but intransitive verbs are sometimes used causatively *without any change*

EXAMPLES

1. *Sit*, Causative *set* (cause to sit), *stand*, *stay*, *lie*, *lay*, *fall*, *fell*, *rise*, *raise* or *rouse*, *suck*, *soak*, *drink*, *drench*, *dye* *dip*,

2. *Float*, Causative *float*, as, 'He *float*ed the wood down the river' *walk*, Causative *walk*, as, 'He *walk*ed the horse to the stable' *run* Causative *run*, as, 'It is so soft that you may *run* your finger into it'

116. Intransitive verbs may become transitive—

1 By taking a *preposition* after them, as 'He was *laughed at* by his friends.' Here *laugh at* is taken as one transitive verb and is used passively

2. By taking a *cognate object*, as 'They *ran* a race together.'

3 Sometimes by taking an object, not cognate. 'They *laughed* him to scorn.'

Note—To find out whether a preposition coming after an intransitive verb should be taken separately or as part of the verb, note if the verb with the preposition can be used in the passive voice. 'He sat on a chair' cannot be changed into 'A chair was sat on by him,' and therefore in that sentence, the preposition must be taken by itself.

117. Substitutes for the verb.—

1 Adverbs—*Hence, home*, you idle creatures.

2 Nouns—He *ages* fast.

3 Adjectives—He *idles* away his time.

4 Conjunctions—*But* me no buts.

118 Do in 'How do you do?'—The first *do* is the ordinary auxiliary; the second *do* is from the Anglo-Saxon *dugan*, to avail or profit and means *to fare or get on, to answer or suffice*. Its original meaning is seen in 'That will *do*', 'It did *very well*.'

119 Worth, like the German *werden* (to become), is used in English in the sense of *be*, as—

'Woe *worth* the chase, woe *worth* the day,'

i.e., woe *be* to the chase, &c.

THE ADVERB

120. Definition—The adverb is a word used to modify the meaning of :

1. Verbs—He walked *slowly*.

2. Adjectives—He is *very* proud.

3. Participles—He was *greatly* honoured.

4. Other adverbs—He is *very easily* satisfied.

5. Nouns—I study *only* English.

6. Pronouns—I am yours *truly*, A. B.

7. Adverbial phrases—*Long after* the event.

8. Compound phrases—The barn owl *sometimes* carries off rats.

Here *sometimes* qualifies not simply *carrying*, but the whole action *carrying off rats*.

121. Classification—

1. According to their *function*, i.e., the work they do in

the sentence —

- Adverbs. { 1. *Simple*—containing their meaning within themselves as *now, here*
 2. *Relative*—not containing their meaning within themselves, but referring to some adjoining clause for the meaning. They have a connective force and are hence also called *conjunctive adverbs*, as, 'He came *while* I was speaking'

2 According to their meaning

- Adverbs { 1 Place { a. Rest in a place—*here, where*
 b Motion to a place—*hither, thither*.
 c Motion from a place—*hence, whence*.
 2 Time { a Point of time—*to-day, now*
 b Duration of time—*always, never*
 c Repetition—*again, yearly*
 3 Degree or measure—*much, little, very*
 4 Belief and disbelief—*yes, truly, probably*
 5 Cause and effect—*therefore, why*.
 6 Manner or quality—*well, wisely*

122 Co-ordinating Adverbs—Like adjectives, adverbs are also used co-ordinatively, as 'He would have helped me, but *unfortunately*, he has left this place' Here *unfortunately* does not show any particular, such as *time, place, &c*, regarding *has left*. It has really the force of a sentence co-ordinate with 'He has left this place'. 'Unfortunately he has left, &c' = 'He has left, &c., and his having done so is unfortunate for me'

123 Possessive forms as Adverbs—Some adverbs are simply possessive forms *needs, once* (= ones), *twice, thrice*. Cf *unaware-s, home-ward-s, of necessity, of course*

124 Two negatives destroy each other, i.e., make an affirmation 'Nor did they *not* perceive the evil plight in which they were,' i.e., they did perceive it

Note 1—*Not*, followed by *only*, or by some equivalent word modifies this, and does not affect the negative coming after it, so that a sentence with two negatives thus situated, is still negative, as, 'I *not* only *never* said so, but *never* thought so'

Note 2.—Two negatives independent of each other, a negative repeated, and a negative strengthened by its correlative, do not come under the rule, as 'No *never*', 'I will *never*, *never* consent', 'There was *neither* happiness *nor* peace in the family'

125 "Yes" and "no" in answers

"Indian students often make blunders in answering "Yes" or "No" to a negative question. They answer an affirmative question quite correctly, as, if a teacher says to a boy, "Have you prepared your lesson?" he answers "Yes, sir," or "No, sir," according to whether he has or has not learnt it. And this is quite right. But in answering negative questions—that is, questions which have *not* in them—students frequently

fall into error. For instance, if he says to the pupil, "Did you not see the eclipse yesterday?" he replies, "Yes, sir, I did not see it." This is wrong. What he ought to say is, "No, sir, I did not see it." The proper meaning of "Yes" in reply to this question would be, "I saw the eclipse." Short and idiomatic ways of giving the correct answer to this question, if the person saw the eclipse, would be "Yes, sir, I did", or "Yes, sir", and if the person asked did not see the eclipse, "No, sir, I did not", or simply "No, sir". Note carefully the following questions and answers —

- Can the bird not fly?
- Answer "Yes"—that is, it *can* fly.
 "No"—that is, it *cannot* fly.
- Did you not see me in the crowd?
- Answer "Yes"—that is, I *saw* you.
 "No"—that is, I *did not* see you.
- Are you not coming to the meeting?
- Answer "Yes"—that is, I *am not* coming to it.
 "No"—that is, I *am* coming.
- Did the tree not fall towards the west?
- Answer "Yes"—that is, it *did* fall towards the west.
 "No"—that is, it *did not* fall towards the west, but in another direction"—*McMrodie*.

126 Adverbs are formed —

- (1) from adjectives by adding *ly* wise, wisely.
- (2) from nouns and adjectives by prefixing a preposition *afoot*, *across*, *ashore*, *betimes*
- (3) from pronouns *needs*, *seldom*; *where* (from *who*), *there* (from *the*), *here* (from *he*)
- (4) from prepositions *downwards*, *within*.
- (5) by composition. *meanwhile*, *straightway*.

127 Substitutes for the Adverb —

- 1 Nouns—He went *home*.
- 2 Pronouns—*Somewhat* large, *none* the worse.
- 3 Adjectives—Drink *deep*.
- 4 Verbs—*Smack* went the whip.
- 5 Prepositions—I told you that *before*.

THE PREPOSITION.

128. Definition — A preposition is a word placed before a noun or its equivalent, to show a relation to something else; as, 'The river runs *to* the sea.'

129 Classification.—

1 According to meaning —

1. Place

- a Rest in a place—in, on
- b Motion with direction—to, into.
- c Place with direction—on, over

2. Time—since, till, after

3. Agency by, through, with.

4. End or purpose—for, from.

5. Reference—of, on, about

6. Separation and Exclusion—without, except

7. Inclination and Conformity—for, (according) to.

8. Aversion, opposition —against, athwart

9. Substitution—for, (instead) of

10. Possession, Material—(made) of, (belonging) to.

2. According to structure —

1. Simple Original—*it*, *by*, *from*, &c.2. Derived—*amid*, *about*, *above*, *within*, *upon*.

3. Verbal concerning, regarding, &c

130 Verbal prepositions—*Notwithstanding*, *pending*, *during*, &c, which appear to govern nouns like prepositions, are in reality participles. 'During the day' = the day during, i.e., while the day is (en)during. In parsing, however, these words are taken as prepositions.

131 Double prepositions—We sometimes find two prepositions used together, as, *from between*, *from among*, *from beneath*. These may be called prepositional phrases.

132. Two prepositions governing the same noun or pronoun—Two prepositions may govern the same noun or pronoun, as, 'He walked *up* and *down* the hall'

But when the two prepositions are connected with two different words, it would be better to repeat the word which it governs, as a pronoun 'He approved *of*, and voted *for*, the measure' Better thus 'He approved *of* the measure, and voted *for* it.'

133 One preposition governing several words—A preposition may govern each of several words 'He left his wealth to his *wife*, *children*, and *friends*'

But in some cases it does not govern each of two or more nouns or pronouns, but *all of them together*, as, 'between you and me' Here if *between* governed the two pronouns separately, we could say 'between you and between me,' which is obviously wrong. *Between* governs *you and me* (= *us*), the phrase meaning *between us*.

THE CONJUNCTION.

134. Definition—Conjunctions join together, 1 sentences, and 2 phrases or single words, as 1 'Day ends *and* night begins' 2 'If they stand between you *and* me'

Note—In most cases in which conjunctions appear to connect words, they really connect sentences 'John *and* James went' is a contracted form of 'John went *and* James went' But this is not the case with 'Two *and* two is four.'

135 Classification.—

1 *Co-ordinative*—connecting sentences of equal value —

a. *Cumulative*—i.e., adding—*and*, also

b. *Adversative*—denoting apposition —

(1) *Exclusive*—*else*

(2) *Alternative*—(either) or

(3) *Restrictive*—*but*, still

c. *Illative*—denoting cause or reason—*therefore*

2. *Subordinative*—connecting dependent clauses with principal clauses —

a. *Reason, Cause*—*as*, *since*

b. *Condition, Concession*—*if*, *unless*, *though*.

c. *End or purpose*—*that*.

d. *Time*—*when*, *while*

136 Many conjunctions were originally prepositions or verbs in the imperative mood, governing noun clauses 'after he went away' = after (that) he went away, *i.e.*, after his going away

'If he goes' = *Give* (*i.e.*, give, grant) that he goes

137 Conjunctions where required—Two words of the same part of speech when either addition or separation is intended, generally require a conjunction between them, as, "Time *and* tide", "John *or* Joseph", "To be good *and* virtuous"

Three or more words of the same part of speech require a conjunction after each, except the last, as, "Honour *and* hope, *and* goodness" But all but the last are generally understood "Honour, hope, *and* goodness"

In a disjunctive sentence, the words *either*, *neither*, are generally placed before the first word, and *or*, *nor*, before the last, "Neither truth, honour, *nor* discretion was exhibited"

When emphasis is intended, the conjunction is expressed before each, as, "Truth, *and* honour, *and* ability, have been sacrificed"

138 "But" misused for "and."—It is a common mistake to use *but* instead of *and* between two adjectives which

do not require any disjoining, as when a man is spoken of as "poor *but* honest." We may say that a man is *old, but vigorous*, because vigour united with age is something unexpected, but we have no right to say that he is *old, but respectable*, because respectability with old age is not something unexpected

139 Or is used sometimes to point out a difference between *things*, at other times only between *names* for the same thing. When the first noun is preceded by *either*, a difference between the *things* is indicated. When *either* is not inserted, the same difference may be pointed out by a repetition of the *article*, or of the *article* and *preposition* before each noun, but when several terms refer to the same *thing*, the article and preposition are not repeated only the conjunction *or* being inserted before the last. Thus, "That figure is a sphere, or a globe, or a ball," is incorrect, it should be, "is a sphere, globe, or ball," because they are not different things, but different *terms* for the same thing. The expression, "He put the money *in a bag, or in a box*," or, "*in a bag or a box*," implies *two* distinct things, a *bag* and a *box*.

The sentence, "The king, whose character was not sufficiently vigorous *nor* decisive, assented to the measure," is not quite correct. If the word *decisive* is used as merely explanatory of the word *vigorous*, or as synonymous with it, then we ought to say, "vigorous *or* decisive", but if the two terms are intended to designate *two distinct* things, we should use *nor* and its corresponding conjunction *neither*, thus "The king, whose character was *neither* sufficiently vigorous *nor* decisive."

140 Except, unless.—*Except* was formerly used in the same way as *unless*, as in "I will not let thee go *except* thou bless me", but this use is now obsolete.

THE INTERJECTION

141. Interjections, being mere involuntary expressions of feeling, have no grammatical connexion with the sentences in which they occur, and are therefore not properly entitled to the name "part of speech."

The following is a list of the most common Interjections —
adieu! ah! aha! alas! ha! fie! ho! lo! O! oh! pooh! tush!
hur! hurrah! huzza! pshaw! hush! avant!

Interjections may be classified according to the feelings they express, as joy, surprise, disgust, approval, vexation, reproach, and so forth.

Any word used as an exclamation is an interjection, as,
Strange! Hark! Away!

ACCENT.

142 Accent is the stress laid upon a syllable in pronouncing a word, as *cómmendation*, *recomménd'*. It must not be confounded with *emphasis*, which is the stress laid upon a word in pronouncing a sentence, as 'I come to *bury* Cæsar, not to *praise* him'

143 Accent distinguishes—I between different parts of speech—(a) a noun from a verb, (b) an adjective from a verb, (c) a noun from an adjective, II. between the meanings of words

Examples

I—(a) NOUNS AND VERBS.

Ab'stract (<i>n</i>)—an abridgment.	E'xile—one banished from one's country.
Ab'stract (<i>v</i>)—to draw or separate from.	E'xile—to banish from one's country.
Cónfine—boundary	Pérmitt—a pass.
Confíne—to limit, to imprison.	Permitt—to allow.
Conflic't—a struggle.	Réfnse—worthless remains.
Cónflict—to be opposed.	Refúse—to reject.

(b) ADJECTIVES AND VERBS

Absent (<i>a</i>)—not present.	Pré'sent not past or future
Absént (<i>v</i>)—to keep away	Présént—to give formally
Cóntrect—as in 'contract rates'	Súbject—liable
Contráct—to draw together.	Subjéct—to bring under subjection.

(c) NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

Cómpact (<i>n</i>)—an agreement	Précédent—a previous instance
Compáct (<i>a</i>)—firm, solid.	Précédent going before.

A cóllect (a short prayer)—to colléct (to gather).

An óbject (a thing)—to object (to make opposition)

To cónjure (practise magical tricks)—to conjúre (invoke solemnly).

Incense (spices burnt in religious rites)—to incénse (to provoke).

Aúgust (the month)—augúst (grand)

Mínute (1 60th of an hour)—minúte (very small).

In'valid (a sick man)—inválid (not valid).

Cónverse (opposite)—convérse (to speak).

Désert (merit)—desért (to forsake)

E'ntrance (an entering)—entránce (to enrapture)

Note 1.—Sometimes the change of meaning or of part of speech is indicated not by change of accent, but by a change of the sound of some letter

Examples

Abuse (<i>abuse</i>) ill use (noun).	Grease (<i>grece</i>)—melted fat.
Abuse (<i>abuze</i>)—to use badly (verb)	Grease (<i>greze</i>)—to rub with grease.
Cruise (<i>kruze</i>)—a voyage	House (<i>houce</i>) abode
Cruise (<i>kruce</i>)—a small cup	House (<i>houze</i>)—to put into a house
Diffuse (<i>diffuce</i>)—not concise.	Live (<i>liv</i>)—to exist
Diffuse (<i>diffuze</i>)—to scatter	Live (<i>live</i>)—living (as 'live stock.')

Lower (*lo e*)—to bring low
 Lower (*lou er*)—to look gloomy or threatening as ('lowering clouds')
 Rarity (*rue ity*)—a thing valued on account of its being rare
 Rarity (*rar ity*)—thinness (opposite of density)

Tear (*tare*)—a rent, to rend
 Tear (*teer*)—water from the eye.
 Use (*s*)—utility.
 Use (*z*)—to make use of
 Wound (*woond*)—a hurt
 Wound (*uound*)—past tense of to wind.

Note 2.—Sometimes the accent remains unchanged, while there is a change of part of speech, or of meaning or of both, as, *concite*, *patent*, (noun and adjective), *assay*, *consent*, *respect*, (noun and verb), *content*, *herald*, (noun, adjective, and verb)

EMPHASIS.

144 **Emphasis**, as already defined, is the stress laid upon a word in pronouncing a sentence. The meaning of a sentence is affected by a change of emphasis, as that of a word is affected by a change of accent. The sentence 'I do not intend to walk to the village to-morrow,' can be made to bear *seven* different meanings according to the word emphasized

- 'I do not intend, &c,' but my brother does
- 'I do *not*, &c' This would be used in contradicting any one who makes the assertion that I intend, &c
- 'I do not *intend*, &c,' but I may go for all that
- 'I do not intend to *walk*, &c,' but I intend to ride.
- 'I do not intend to walk *to*, &c,' but I intend to walk back from the village
- 'I do not intend to walk to the *village* to-morrow,' but I intend to walk to the beach
- 'I do not, &c, *to-morrow*' but I intend to do so next week.

COMPOUND WORDS

145. Three classes of compound words --

1 Compounds formed by merely placing one word by the side of another, the relation between them being expressed by the order in which they stand thus, *lamp-oil* as distinguished from *oil-lamp*

Compare the following

Rose-tree—a tree that bears roses
Tree rose—a rose that grows on a tree.

Finger-ring—a ring for the finger
Ring finger—the finger on which rings are worn

2 Compounds in which (a) the first member retains traces of inflection, or (b) the connexion of the parts is indicated by a suffix, as

- (a) *landsmen*, *sportsman*, *Thursday*
- (b) *high toned*, *one eyed*, *four footed*

3 Compounds linked together by a connective or symbolic word (principally of) as, *coat-of-arms*, *will-o'-the-wisp*, *brother-in-law*, *man-of-war*, *night-in gale*, *black-a-moor*.

146 Compound Nouns —

- 1 *Noun + noun*—moon-light, rail-way.
- 2 *Noun + ger*—fox hunting
- 3 *Noun + adj*—court-martial, princess royal
- 4 *Noun + verb*—God-send, wind-fall
- 5 *Ger. inf + noun*—walking-stick, leaping-hook.
- 6 *Adj + noun*—good-will, free-man,
- 7 *Pronoun + noun*—he goat, she-bear
- 8 *Verb + noun*—scare crow, break-fast ✓
- 9 *Adv. + noun*—out law, after-thought
- 10 *Adv + verb*—out-lay, wel come
11. *Adj + participle*—by-gones
12. *Verb + adv.*—run away, draw-back.
- 13 *Verb + verb*—hear-say, make believe.

147. Compound Adjectives.—

- 1 *Noun + adj*—sea green, purse proud
2. *Noun + (pej or imp) part*—heart-breaking, moth eaten.
3. *Adj + part*—good-looking
- 4 *Adv. + part.*—high soaring, high born
- 5 *Noun + noun + ed*—hare lipp ed, eagle eye d
6. *Adj + noun + ed*—fair-hau-ed, long-legg-ed, one-side d.

148. Compound Verbs —

1. *Noun + noun*—ham-string, hand cuff,
2. *Noun + verb*—back-bite, way-lay.
- 3 *Adj. + noun*—black ball
- 4 *Adj + verb*—white-wash, ful fil.
- 5 *Adj. + verb*—fore-tell, cross question
- 6 *Verb + adv.*—don (do on), dēff (do off)

149. Compound Adverbs —

- 1 *Noun + noun*—length-wise, side wise.
- 2 *Noun + adj*—head-foremost, knee-deep.
- 3 *Adj + noun*—mean-while, al-ways
- 4 *Preposition + noun*—in deed, out side.

150 Order of the elements in Compounds—In compound words, as a rule, the first term particularizes or defines the second, or, as it is otherwise expressed, the second term is *generic*, the first *specific*. Thus a *finger-ring*, is a particular kind of ring, one that is worn on the finger, as distinguished from one that is worn on the toe or in the ear or the nose, the *ring-finger* is the particular finger on which rings are worn, are distinguished from the other fingers. So with *rose-tree* and *tree-rose*, *cart-horse* and *horse-cart*.

Exceptions. Such words as *turn-cock*, *spit-fire*, *pick-pocket*, are obviously exceptions to the rule. Latham thinks that even these follow the rule. He would explain *turn-cock*, for example, as one by whom the cock is turned, *spit-fire* as one by whom fire is spit, and so on. But this explanation seems forced. It is better, in such cases, to regard the verb as modifying the noun in meaning by governing it.

DIMINUTIVES.

151 Diminutives are words formed from other words by the addition of terminations or by contraction (with or without change of letters), and expressing *smallness, tenderness, affection, pity, or contempt*

Note 1 Common diminutive nouns are formed by suffixes only, with or without change of letters, as *floweret, cosling*. Proper diminutive nouns may be formed by suffixes or by contraction, with or without change of letters, as, *Annie, Sam, Hal* (Harry), *Dick* (Richard)

2. Many diminutives are formed from foreign words which are not used as independent words in English, as *asterisk, libel, bracelet*.

EXAMPLES OF DIMINUTIVE NOUNS

Animal	..	Animalcule	Lass	..	Lassie (Scotch)
Ankle		Anklet	Leaf		Leaflet
Arm		Armlet	Lock	.	Locket
Ball	..	Ballot	Lord	.	Lordling
Baron		Baronet	Maid	..	Maiden
Blot		Blotch	Man		Mannikin
Book	.	Booklet	Nap		Napkin
Boot	.	Bootikin	Nest	..	Nestling
Brook		Brooklet	Nurse		Nurseling
Bull		Bullock	Owl		Owlet
Cat		Kitten	Pack	..	Packet
Chango	.	Changeling	Part	.	Particle
Circle		Circlet	Pike	..	Pickereel
Cock		Chicken	Pile		Pillow
Convent	..	Conventicle	Pill		Pillule
Crook		Crochet	Pipe	..	Pipkin
Crown		Coronet	Poke, pouch (= bag)		Pocket
Cut		Cutlet	Foot		Footstater
Dame		Damsel	Ring		Ringlet
Dear		Darling	Root		Rootlet
Duck	..	Duckling	Rose		Rosetto
Engle	.	Englet	River	..	Rivulet
Eye	.	Eyelet	Sack		Satchel
First	.	Firstling	Seat		Saddle
Flower	.	Floweret	Seed		Seedling
Foal	.	Filly	Shade	.	Shadow
Fourth		Farthing	Sign		Signet
Four		Firkin	Spade	..	Spaddle
Front		Frontlet	Sphere		Spherule
Globe	.	Globule	Splint	.	Splinter
Goose	..	Gosling	Stream		Streamlet
Hill	.	Hillock	Suck	..	Suckling
Hire		Hireling	Thumb	..	Thimble
Ice		Icelet (P) *	Tower	.	Turret
Lad		Laddie (Scotch)	Verso	.	Versicle
Lamb		Lambkin	Weak		Weakling
Lance		Lancet	Year		Yearling

* Icelet is generally called the diminutive of ice, but as a matter of fact it is a compound word is *gicel* (= ice-jag, O.E.)

152. Names denoting the young of animals —

Boar, Tiger, Fox..	Cub	Duck	Duckling
Buffalo, Cow	Calf	Frog	Tadpole
Oat	Kitten	Fowl	... Chicken,
Dog	Pup		Pullet
Goat	Kid	Sheep, Ewe	.. Lamb
Goose	Gosling	Stag	.. Fawn
Hare	Leveret	Swan	.. Cygnet
Horse	Foal, Colt, Filly	Turkey	.. Poult
Lion	Whelp, Cub	Wolf	.. Cub
Man	.. Child		

AUGMENTATIVES.

153. **Augmentatives** are words formed by the addition of a suffix which strengthens the meaning of the simple word, as *dull*, *dullard*, "a very dull person" Augmentative forms express the opposite of diminutives

154. Augmentatives are of two kinds —

1. Those formed by the suffix *-ard*, *-art*, *-rd*. This suffix expresses :

- (a) Endearment—*sweetheart* (=sweetard)
- (b) Blame—*drunkard*, *coward*, *sluggard*, *biaggart*, *dastard*, *dotard*, *niggard*
- (c) Male sex—*wizard*, *mallard*,
- (d) State or condition—*standard*
- (e) Intensity—*haggard*.

2 Those formed by the suffix, *-one*, *-oon*, *-as*, *-trombone*, *-poltrone*, *-balloon*, *-cartoon*, *-buffoon*, *-barracoon*.

Note — *Steward*, *lizard*, *orchard*, *leopard*, are not augmentatives. They are from *stig-ueard*, *lacerto*, *ort-geard*, *leopardus*, respectively.

FREQUENTATIVES.

155 **Frequentatives** are words formed from other words by the addition of terminations expressing *frequency* or *iteration*—

Crack	.. Crackle	Gleam	.. Glimmer
Drip	.. Dribble	Long	.. Linger
Scribo	... Scribble	Climb	.. Clamber
Roam	... Ramble	Spt	.. Spatter

REDUPLICATED WORDS.

156 **Reduplicated words** are those of which the second part is simply a repetition of the first in the same or a slightly modified form. Some Indian Vernacular languages have many

reduplicated words. In English there are only a few. The following are those most commonly used.

Helter-skelter (in hurry and confusion), *hum drum* (dull and stupid), *tittle-tattle* (idle, trifling talk), *knack knack* (trifle, toy), *ding-dong* (the sound of bells), *sing-song* (drawling), *pell mell* (in confusion), *chit-chat* (familiar conversation), *gew gaw* (trifle, toy), *hurly-burly* (bustle, confusion), *bow wow* (bark of a dog), *riff raff* (sweepings or refuse), *dilly-dally* (to loiter or trifle), *pic nic* (a pleasure excursion), *mur mur* a low continued noise), *zig zag* (having short turns or angles), *hub-bub* (confused sounds), *shilly shally* (irresolution), *tip-top* (most excellent), *see saw* (moving upward and downward alternately).

ONOMATOPOETIC WORDS.

157. Onomatopoeic words are words which, when pronounced, resemble the sounds they denote, as, *hum*, *buzz*, *rustle*, *rattle*

APPROPRIATE COLLECTIVE NOUNS.

158

An army of soldiers.	A clan of Highlanders
An array of facts, soldiers	A class of students, persons.
An assembly of divines, representatives	A cloud of locusts.
A band of musicians, followers, robbers	A clump of trees
A batch of bread, pupils	A cluster of grapes, nuts, stars, islands.
A battery of guns	A code of laws
A bevy of quils, gals	A commonwealth of bees
A board of trustees, directors	A community of people, monks
A bouquet of flowers.	A company of soldiers, merchants,
A brigade of cavalry, infantry, or artillery	A concourse of people
A broadside of guns (of a ship)	A congregation of worshippers
A brood of chickens.	A congress of delegates, representatives.
A brotherhood of monks	A convocation of graduates, clergy.
A budget of news, letters.	A consignment of goods
A bunch of grapes, plantains, fruits, keys.	A corps of volunteers, police.
A bundle of sticks	A covey of partridges, birds.
A caravan of merchants, pilgrims, travellers	A course of lectures
A cast of hawks	A crew of sailors
A catch of fish taken in nets	A crowd of people.
A cavalcade of persons on horse back.	A constellation of stars.
A century of years, sonnets, inventions	A curriculum of studies
A chaplet of beads, flowers.	A detachment of soldiers.
A choir of singers	A drove of cattle
A chain of mountains.	A dynasty of kings.
	An escort of troops, police
	A faggot of sticks
	A family of plants, languages.
	A festoon of leaves or flowers.
	A file of papers, soldiers.

A firm of merchants.
 A fleet of ships
 A flight of birds
 A flight of stairs or steps.
 A flock of sheep, geese.
 A forest of trees
 A galaxy of beauties.
 A gang of prisoners, convicts,
 workman
 A gang of robbers, thieves
 A garland of flowers
 A guard of police, troops
 A group of figures (in a picture),
 islands
 A group of islands
 A haul of fish caught.
 A heap of stones or sand.
 A herd of swine, of cattle, deer,
 goats, swans, cranes
 A hive of bees.
 A horde of robbers, pirates
 A house of senators, representatives
 A league of states, powers
 A leash of hounds
 A legion of devils.
 A library of books
 A line of kings, ancestors.
 A litter of pigs, pups, whelps.
 A lock of hair.
 A mob of riotous people.
 A multitude of people
 A nest of rabbits, ants, boxes.
 A nosegay of flowers
 An order of knights
 A pack of hounds, playing cards, &c.
 A parcel of lies.
 A peal of bells
 A pencil of rays, &c
 A pile of books, wood stacked.
 A procession of people
 A rabble of ill bred, disorderly
 people
 A relay of horses
 A retinue of followers

A school of whales.
 A series of events, &c
 A set of assorted articles
 A set of china
 A sheaf of corn, arrows, &c.
 A shoal of fish, mackerel
 A shock of hair, corn, &c
 A shower of arrows, abuse
 A skulk of foxes.
 A squadron of ships, troops
 A stack of hay, wood
 A staff of professors, tea-
 chers, officers
 A stock of goods, provisions.
 A string of onions, pearls, beads
 A stud of horses
 A suit of clothes
 A suite (pron. *sweet*) of rooms,
 apartments
 A swarm of ants, or other insects
 A syllabus of studies
 A team of horses, oxen, cricketers,
 &c
 A throng of people
 A tissue of falsehoods
 A torrent of abuse.
 A train of waggons, carriages, fol-
 lowers
 A tribe of Indians
 A troop of horse, (i.e., cavalry)
 A troupe of performers
 A truss of hay
 A tuft of grass
 A volley of artillery
 A wreath of roses, flowers
 A yoke of oxen.
 A brace (of partridges, pistols) = 2
 A couple = 2
 A pair = 2.
 A score = 20.
 A dozen = 12.
 A gross (of buttons, steel-pens)
 = 12 dozen = 144

GENDER.

159 **Gender and Sex** — Gender is a grammatical distinction and applies to words. Sex is a natural distinction and applies to living objects. Thus a man is of the male sex, the word 'man' is of the masculine gender.

Gender is defined as the distinction of sex, but it is not the same as sex. For, we may speak of the gender of inanimate

objects, but not of their sex, and we have only *two* sexes—male and female, while we have *four* genders

1. *Masculine*—to which belong all names of males,

2. *Feminine*—all names of females,

3. *Neuter*—all names of things having no sex;

4. *Common*—all names, which, without a qualifying word, may be used of males or females, as *child, cousin, friend, neighbour, parent, person, servant, quarrelsome, guide*

Note 1—When speaking of animals, the sex of which is considered immaterial, we frequently assign to them gender suited to their qualities. The more fierce and strong we call masculine, the more timid and quiet, feminine. Thus we say of the *horse* that *he* is a noble animal; of the *hare* that *she* is timorous

Note 2—Insects, small quadrupeds, birds and fishes are generally spoken of as neuter 'the sheep has strayed from its flock' 'Of small account is a fly till it gets into the eye'

Note 3—Little children are spoken of similarly. 'The child has lost its way'

Note 4—Collective nouns, when not used as nouns of multitude, are neuter, though they may denote living beings, as *crowd, nation*.

160 There are three ways of distinguishing between the masculine and the feminine in English

I.—BY DIFFERENT WORDS

Masc.		Fem.	Masc.		Fem.
Bachelor	...	Maids, Spinster	Lord	.	Lady
Beau		Belle	Male	.	Female
Boar		Sow	Mallard	.	Wild duck
Boy		Girl	Man	.	Woman
Bridegroom		Bride	Messieurs	.	Mesdames
Brother		Sister	Milster	.	Spawner *
Buck		Doe	Monk	.	Nun
Bull		Cow	Nephew		Niece
Bullock, Steer, Ox		Heifer	Papa		Mamma
Cock		Hen	Rake		Jilt
Colt, Foal	.	Filly	Ram, Wether		Ewe
Dog, Hound	.	Bitch	Ruff		Reeve
Drake	.	Duck	Sir, Sire		Madam
Drone	.	Bee	Sire		Dam of animals
Earl	...	Countess	Sloven		Shattern, Slut
Father	..	Mother	Son		Daughter
Friar		Sister, Nun	Stag		Hind
Gaffer		Gammer	Swain		Nymph
Gander		Goose	Taylor		Seamstress
Gentleman		Lady	Uncle		Aunt
Hart		Roebuck	Washerwoman		Laundress
Horse, Stallion		Mare	Wizard		Witch
Husband	.	Wife	Widower	.	Widow
King		Queen	Youth		Maiden, Damsel

* *Milster*, male fish *spawner*, female fish

II.—BY PREFIXING A WORD INDICATING THE SEX.—

Male servant	Female servant	Cock-sparrow	Hen sparrow
Man servant	Maid servant	Dog fox	Bitch fox
Men singers	Women singers	Buck-rabbit	Doe-rabbit
Man kind	Woman kind	Jack ass	Jenny ass
He bear	She-bear	Billy goat	Nanny-goat
He ass	She ass	Tom cat	Tib cat
He goat	She goat		

In the following words, a descriptive word is prefixed to limit the meaning of the words indicating the sex.

Bond man	Bond-maid	Mill-man	Milk-maid
Brides-man	Brides maid	Mer man	Mer-maid
Foster father	Foster-mother	Moor cock	Moor hen
Gaffer (Grand pere)	Gammer	Pen cock	Pen hen
	(Grand mere)	School master	School mistress
Gentle man	Gentle woman	Servant-man	Servant woman
Grand father	Grand mother		(maid)
Grand son	Grand daughter	Step father	Step mother
Grand duke	Grand duchess	Step son	Step daughter
Guinea cock	Guinea hen	Turkey-cock	Turkey-hen
Land lord	Land lady	Washer man	Washer-woman

III.—BY SUFFIXES:

(1) English suffixes *ster, en*.

(Spinner)	Spinster
Fox	Vixen

Note—The meaning of *spinster* has changed. *Widow* is always used figuratively in the sense of a *shrewish woman*.

(2) French suffixes *ess*

(a) Where the masculine undergoes no change

Author	Authoress	Mayor	Mayoress
Baron	Baroness	Patron	Patroness
Count	Countess	Peer	Peeress
Deacon	Deaconess	Post	Postess
Giant	Giantess	Priest	Priestess
Heir	Heiress	Prince	Princess
Host	Hostess	Prophet	Prophetess
Jew	Jewess	Shepherd	Shepherdess
Lion	Lioness	Viscount	Viscountess

(b) Where the ending of the masculine is changed or lost

Abbot	Abbess	Idolator	Idolatress
Actor	Actress	Instructor	Instructress
Ambassador	Ambassadress	Lad	Lass (=lad+ess)
Arbitrator	Arbitress	Marquis	Marchioness
Benefactor	Benefactress	Negro	Negress
Chantor	Chantress	Ogre	Ogress
Conductor	Conductress	Porter	Portress
Director	Directress	Songster	Songstress
Editor	Editress	Tiger	Tigress
Electer	Electress	Votary	Votress
Enchanter	Enchantress	Victor	Victress
Founder	Foundress		

(c) When the root-vowel and the ending of the masculine are changed —

Duke	Duchess	Master	Mistress
------	---------	--------	----------

(d) When both masculine and feminine have distinct suffixes —

Adulterer	Adulteress	Governor	Governess *
Caterer	Cateress	Murderer	Murderess
Emperor	Empress	Sorcerer	Sorceress

(3) Other Romance suffixes —

(a) *tr*.

Adjutor	Adjutrix	Executor	Executrix
Administrator	Administratrix	Heritor	Heritrix
Director	Directrix	Testator	Testatrix

(b) *ina, ine*

Hero	Heroine	Landgrave	Landgravine
Czar (Tsar)	Czarina (Tsaritsa)	Margrave	Margravine

Proper names Josephine, Caroline (Carolus=Charles) Alexandrina, Christina

(c) *a*

Don (Spanish)	Donna	Infant (Spanish)	Infanta
Sultan	Sultana	Signor (Italian)	Signora

160. Where the masculine may be used for the feminine — In the case of a few words, such as *poet, author, &c*, where the office or profession, not the sex, is material, the masculine form may be used for the feminine or as including both the masculine and the feminine 'She is the author of that book,' 'She is a good penman,' 'She is the best living poet,' *i.e.*, of male and female poets But when we wish to distinguish the sex, we use the feminine form for the female 'She is the best living poetess,' *i.e.*, of living female poets she is the best

Note — Many think it necessary to call a lady in charge of a post office a *Postmistress* The public do not care at all whether it is a man or a woman who manages the Post Office, and it is not only not wrong, but the right and proper thing to call such a person a *postmaster* But the lady Inspector of Girls' school is called *Inspectoress* to show that it is a lady Inspector, and not a gentleman Inspector, of girls' schools Here the sex is important So also we say *school mistress*

161 Nouns used as masculine without a corresponding feminine form — *Jack-snipe, Jack-daw, Game-cock*

162. Nouns used as feminine without a corresponding masculine form — *Amazon, Douager, Viago, Brunette, Blonde, Jointress, Shrew, Siren, Coquette, Flirt, Virgin, Termagant, Jenny-wren*

* Governess always means a tutoress The masculine *governor* sometimes means a tutor, but generally means the ruler of a Province,

163. Nouns forming the masculine from the feminine —

Drake, Gander (gans=goose), Widower, Bridegroom, Man-midwife, Man-mulliner

164 Nouns of Common Gender having separate forms for the masculine and feminine genders —

Common	Masculine	Feminine.
Child	Son	Daughter
Deer	Hart	Roe
Fallow deer	Buck	Doe
Goat	Colt	Filly
Towl	Cock	Hen
Horse	Stallion	Mare
Monarch, Sovereign	King	Queen
Parent	Father	Mother
Person	Man	Woman
Pig, Hog	Boar	Sow
Red deer	Stag, Hart	Hind
Sheep	Ram	Ewe
Spouse (in poetry)	Husband	Wife
Swan	Cob	Pen
Sweetheart	Love	Mistress

165. Peculiar gender-forms — In the words *songstress*, *seamstress*, we have a double feminine suffix—*-ster*, the old Anglo-Saxon suffix (now found with its real force only in *spinster*) and *-ess* the Romance suffix

166 Gender of Personified Nouns —

1 Things remarkable for strength, greatness, sublimity, majesty, &c., or conspicuous for the attributes of imparting or communicating, are spoken of as masculine, as, *the Sun, Death, Winter, Time*

2 Things remarkable for beauty, gentleness, mildness, amiability, or the attributes of containing or bringing forth, are spoken of as feminine, as *Nature, the Moon, Knowledge, Virtue, a ship, the earth*

NUMBER

167 Number defined — Number is the mode of indicating, by different words, or by a modification of the form of the same word, whether we are speaking of one or more. There are two numbers—the *Singular*, denoting one object, and the *Plural*, denoting more than one object

The parts of speech which have number are the noun, the pronoun, and the verb. To these we should add the

demonstrative adjectives *this* and *that*, which undergo change for number.

168. Different ways of forming the Plural —

1 By vowel-change :

Man	Men	Goose	Geese
Woman	Women	Mouse	Mice
Foot	Feet	Louse	Lice
Tooth	Teeth		

2 By the suffix *en* .

Ox	Oxen	Child	Children
Cow *	Kine	Brother	Brethren

Note — *Swine* is a genuine singular, and should not be included in this class.

3 By leaving the singular form unchanged, as *sheep*, *deer* (see sec 170)

4. By the suffix *-s* *ship, ships, fly, flies, knife, knives*, (see sec 169)

Note — This last is the only way now employed, the others are obsolete. So that if a noun is introduced newly into English, and naturalized (see sec 182) its plural will be formed by adding *s*

169. Special Rules for forming the Plural by 's' :

1. When the singular ends in a mute or a liquid, add *s*, as, *cats, books, stags, guns, monarchs*

2. When the singular ends in a sibilant or hissing sound (*s, sh, ch, x,*) or in *ch* soft, add *es* As, *crosses, fishes, churches, foxes, oen* is an exception

Note. — *Ch* hard takes *s* : *monarchs, distichs*

3 When the singular ends in *y* preceded by a consonant, change *y* into *ies* As *fly, flies* But if the *y* is preceded by a vowel simply add *s*, as *boy, boys, attorney, attorneys*, but *colloquies, soliloquies* *Monies, valleys, &c.*, are therefore wrong *Allah* has *allahies* for its plural

Note — Proper nouns sometimes follow, and sometimes do not follow this rule : 'The Queen's *Maries*,' 'The *Hemys*,' 'The *Ptolemies*.'

4. When the singular ends in *o*, preceded by a consonant, add *es*. As, *calicoes, tobaccoes, potatoes* But if the *o* is doubled or preceded by a vowel, or if the noun is proper, simply add *s* As *bamboos, folios, studios*, (the two) *Dromios, Catos*

EXCEPTIONS. — *Quanto, cento, grotto, jinto, solo, portico folio, quarto, octavo, duodecimo, rotundo, tyro, praiso, brazo, embryo, stiletto, virtuoso, nuncio, oratorio, portfolio* form their plurals by simply adding *s*.

* The form *cows* is now almost invariably used instead of *kine*.

5 The following nouns change *f* or *fe* into *ies* *beef, calf, elf, half, leaf, loaf, sheaf, self, sheaf, thief, wolf, life, wife, knife.*

Note 1.—Nouns in *ff, rf, of, ef, ulf*, simply take *s* *puffs, dwarfs, hoofs, chiefs, gulfs* *Thief* is an exception

Note 2.—*Staff* has *staves* in the plural, except when used in a collective sense, as, 'the *stuffs* of the two Colleges' Its compounds also follow the rule *States* is the plural of *staff* as well as of *state* (2 verse).

Note 3.—*Strife, fife, safe*, add *s* only.

170. Nouns which have the same form for both singular and plural :—*deer, sheep, mackerel, salmon, trout, grouse, heathen, hose, corps, swine, series, apparatus, species*

171. Nouns which have no plural forms.

1 Proper nouns, (among which names of sciences, as *physiology*, may be included) except as in sec 52

2 Material nouns, except as in sec 56

3 Abstract nouns, except as in sec. 57

4. Some collective nouns, as *furniture, scenery, vermin.*

172 Nouns which have no singular forms

Aborigines	Dregs	Pantaloons
Amends	Embers	Pincers
Annals	Entrails	Pliers
Antipodes	Fetters	Premises
Archives	Filings	Scissors
Arms (meaning weapons)	Goods	Sessions
Ashes	Hastings	Shambles
Assets	Ides	Shears
Banns	Lees	Snuffers
Bellows	Lungs *	Spectacles
Billiards	Manners	Thanks
Bowels	Matins	Tidings
Breeches	Means	Tongs
Calends	Measles	Trappings
Chattles	Morals	Trowsers
Compasses	News	Treezers
Credentials	Nippers	Vespers
Customs (revenue duties)	Nones	Victuals
Dranghts	Nuptials	Wages
Draughts	Oats	Mathematics, Politics, &c
	Obseques	
	Odds	

Note 1.—Those in italics name objects with duality of parts, while the others name complex objects with obvious plurality of parts, or collective masses or aggregates of individuals, real or imagined

Note 2.—The names of sciences in *ies* are considered as singular when we speak of them as the names of individual sciences, and as plural when we speak of them as a number of sciences '*Metaphysics* is that science

* *Lungs*, in medical language, has a singular; *the right lung, the left lung.*

which, &c., ' *Metaphysics* do not puzzle as is generally supposed.' The latter usage is more common, and more agreeable to analogy

173 Nouns with two plural forms—one a collective and the other an ordinary plural

Ish	Fish, Fishes	Wild duck	Wild duck, wild ducks
Mullet, mullet.	Mullet, mullets		
Cannon	Cannon, cannons	Shot	Shot, shots
Youth	Youth, youths	Herring	Herring, herrings

174 Nouns with two plural forms with different meanings

Brother	{ Brothers (<i>by blood</i> .) { Brethren (<i>of an order or community</i>) *
Cloth	{ Cloths (<i>kinds of cloth</i>) { Clothes (<i>garments</i>)
Die	{ Dies (<i>stamps for coining</i>) { Dice (<i>for gaming</i>)
Genius	{ Geniuses (<i>men of genius</i>) { Genu (<i>spirits</i>)
Index	{ Indexes (<i>of books</i>) { Indices (<i>algebraical exponents</i>)
Pea	{ Peas (<i>considered separately</i>) { Pease (<i>collective, as 'pease pudding'</i>)
Penny	{ Pennies (<i>separate coins</i>) { Pence (<i>a collective sum</i>)
Staff	{ Staves (<i>sticks</i>) { Staffs (<i>in a military sense</i>)

175 Nouns with two meanings in the singular and only one in the plural

Singular	Plural.
✓ Horse— <i>animal</i> , the animal	Horses—the animals
Foot— <i>infantry</i> , part of body	Feet—parts of body
Powder— <i>gunpowder</i> , mixture.	Powders—mixtures
Light— <i>of a lamp</i> , a lamp	Lights—lamps.
Abuse— <i>corrupt practice</i> , bad language	Abuses—corrupt practices
Practice— <i>habit</i> , exercise of a profession	Practices—habits
People— <i>nations</i> , persons	Peoples—nations
Wood—the material; forest.	Woods—forests

Compass has two meanings in the singular, and a third in the plural, viz., sing.—*circuit*, *mariner's compass* plur.—*instrument for measuring*
 Youth has three meanings in the singular, and only one in the plural, viz., sing the period of life, young persons, young persons collectively, plur—*young persons*

* This is a modern distinction In the Bible, and in Old English as well as in modern poetry, brethren is used for brothers.

176 Nouns with only one meaning in the singular, and two in the plural :

Singular.

Pain—*suffering*.
 Custom—*habit*
 Number—*quantity*.
 Part—*division*
 Colour—*hue*
 Effect—*result*
 Spectacle—*anything seen*
 Premise—*proposition*.
 Quarter—*a fourth part*
 Vapour—*gas*

Plural

Pains—*sufferings, trouble*.
 Customs—*habits, revenue duties*.
 Numbers—*quantities, verses*
 Parts—*divisions, abilities*.
 Colours—*kinds of colour, flags*.
 Effects—*results, property*
 Spectacles—*things seen; eye glasses*.
 Premises—*propositions, buildings*
 Quarters—*fourth parts, lodgings*.
 Vapours—*gases, ill-humour*.

Letter has two meanings in the singular, viz, *character of the alphabet*, an *epistle*; and *three* in the plural, viz., *characters of the alphabet, epistles, literature*.

177. Nouns whose plurals differ in meaning from their singulars :

Singular

Corn—*grain*
 Iron—*the metal*
 Salt—*the substance*
 Good—*opposite of evil*.
 Practice—*exercise of a profession*
 Manner—*method*
 Copper—*the metal*.
 Grain—*coin*.
 Content—*contentment*.
 Domino—*a cloak with a hood*
 Vesper—*evening*.
 Scale—*anything graduated*
 Forfeit—*anything forfeited*.
 Ground—*land*
 Beef—*the flesh*
 Draught—*a drawing*
 Advice—*counsel*
 Physic—*medicine*

Plural

Coins—*on the feet*
 Irons—*fettlers*
 Salts—*as smelling salts*
 Goods—*property*.
 Practices—*doings, habits*
 Manners—*behaviour*
 Coppers—*copper coins*.
 Grains—*small particles*
 Contents—*what is contained*
 Dominoes—*a game*
 Vespers—*evening service*
 Scales—*of a balance*.
 Forfeits—*a game*
 Grounds—*diags, as 'coffee grounds'*
 Reeves—*oxen*
 Draughts—*a game*
 Advices—*information*.
 Physicks—*natural science*

VERBAL NOUNS

Singular

Cutting—*the act*
 Sweeping—*the act*
 Hanging—*the act*

Plural

Cuttings—*parts cut off*
 Sweepings—*refuse*
 Hangings—*cloth, &c, hung on walls*.

178. Nouns plural in form, but singular in origin and meaning—*Alms* (Old Eng. *almes*, from Gr. *eleemosyne*), *riches* (O E *richesse*), *summons* (O E *semonse*), *eaves* (O E *efese margin*) In these words, the *s* is a part of the word, and not the plural sign. They are generally used as plurals *Innings, gallows, odds, means* are true plurals used as singulars and also as plurals

Note.—*News, pains, amends, tidings*, are true plurals in origin

179. Nouns singular in form, but plural in meaning :

1 Words used in a collective sense *cavalry, horse, infantry, foot, fish, fowl, cattle, poultry, fruit, vermin, folk, sail, stand* (of arms)

2 Names expressive of quantity, mass, weight, *pair, brace, couple, dozen, score, gross, stone (= 14 lbs), foot, fathom, mile*
Also *cannon, shot, shilling, pound, &c*

180 The plural sometimes implies an adjective 'Men are mortal,' i.e., all men 'Numbers of persons,' i.e., great numbers

The singular also sometimes implies an adjective. 'A deal of trouble,' i.e., a great deal. 'A lot of money,' i.e., a great lot

181. Plurals of Compound Nouns — The plurals of compound nouns are formed by inflecting the principal noun *governors-general, sons-in-law, courts-martial, cousins-german, step sons, maid-servants*

EXCEPTIONS *men-servants, women-servants, knights templars, lords-justices, knights-bachelors*. In these cases, the two nouns are in apposition.

When the words are so closely allied that the meaning is incomplete till the whole is known, the *s* is added at the end *runaways, forget me nots, three per-cents, mouthfuls*

Note 1 — Compounds ending in *ful*, and all those in which the principal word is put last, form the plural in the same manner as other nouns, as *spoon fuls, fellow serv ants, out pourings*.

Note 2 — Hiley gives the following rules of pluralizing complex names In pluralizing a complex name, or a name with a title prefixed, —

(1) In *coniesation*, pluralize the name; as, 'the two Miss Howards,' 'the two Mr. Howards'

(2) In *addressing letters* pluralize the title; as, 'To the Misses Howard,' 'To Messrs Howard'

(3) But for *married ladies*, in both cases, pluralize the name; as, 'the two Mrs Wilsons.'

(4) When a title, which is applicable to more persons than one, is not regarded as part of one compound name, the title must be pluralized as, 'The Lords Brougham and Lindhurst,' meaning, two lords. 'The Lords Bishops of Durham and Carlisle,' 'Messrs Lambert and Son.'

Note 3 — National names compounded with *man* make the plural in *men*. The following are exceptions — *Ottoman, Ottomans, Mussulman, Mussulmans, German, Germans; Norman, Normans, Brahman, Brahmins*.

The reason for these exceptions is that *man* in these words is not the English word *man* but a part of the words themselves *Brahman*, for instance, is the anglicised form of the Sanskrit *Brahmana*. The same remark applies to *talisman, firman, cayman, &c* On the other hand, *man* in *Frenchman, Dutchman, &c*, is the English word *man*, and those words are made plural by changing *man* into its plural *men*

✓ 182. Foreign plurals—Many words taken from other languages retain their original plurals. The following are examples

Addendum	Addenda	Gymnasium	Gymnasia
Amannensis	Amannenses	Hypothesis	Hypotheses
Analysis	Analyses	Latria	Latria
Animalculum	Animalcula	Madame	Mesdames
Antithesis	Antitheses	Magus	Magi
Apex	Apices	Medium	Media
Appendix	Appendices	Memorandum	Memoranda
Automaton	Automata	Metamorphosis	Metamorphoses
Axis	Axes	Miasma	Miasmata
Bandit	Banditti	Momentum	Momenta
Basis	Bases	Monsieur	Messieurs
Beau	Beaux	Mimata	Mimata
✓ Cherub	Cherubim	Nebula	Nebulae
Crisis	Crises	Oasis	Oases
Criterion	Criteria	Parenthesis	Parentheses
Datum	Data	Phenomenon	Phenomena
Dilettante	Dilettanti	Radix	Radices
Dogma	Dogmata	Radius	Radii
Effluviolum	Effluvia	Seraph	Seraphim
Ellipsis	Ellipses	Stamen	Stamina
Emphasis	Emphases	Stimulus	Stimuli
Erratum	Errata	Stratum	Strata
✓ Locust	Locusts	Tamulus	Tamuli
Formula	Formulae	Vortex	Vertices
Fungus	Fungi	Virtuoso	Virtuosi
Genus	Genera	Vortex	Vortices
Genius	Genii		

When these words become naturalised, *i.e.*, when they have been so long in use in English as to be considered for all practical purposes as English words, they form their plurals like English nouns, as *bandits*, *formulas*, *memorandums*, *dogmas*, *seraphs*, *funguses*, *mediums*, *cherubs*. The present tendency of English is to reject foreign plurals.

Note.—*Cherubim*, though of frequent occurrence in the Bible, is a barbarism. So is *seraphim*. People who ought to know better sometimes say *stintas*.

✓ 183 Plurals of Letters, Symbols, &c.—The plurals of words, letters, and numerals, spoken of as such, are formed by the apostrophe and *s*. Thus 'Dot your *i*'s and cross your *i*'s.' 'There are seven *8*'s in 56,' 'the *whereby*'s and the *wherefore*'s' We write however 'the *Ayes* and the *Noes*,' '*Emes*,' '*2 essces*,' 'all the *itches* (*h*'s)'

184 Plural with Numerals.—With a numeral the sign of the plural is often dispensed with *five pound*, *ten sail*, *two brace of buds*, *four pair*, *two dozen*, *forty head of cattle*. Of *seven-nights* (=7 nights), *fortnight* (=14 nights), *a month*, *twelve-month*.

CASE

185. **Case** is the form of the noun or pronoun which shows its relation to other words in a sentence

186. **Declension** is the giving of the cases of a noun or pronoun. The following are examples of the declension of nouns

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>
<i>Nom</i>	Boy	Boys	Rama
<i>Poss.</i>	Boy's	Boys'	Rama's
<i>Obj</i>	Boy	Boys	Rama

187. The oldest English had *six* cases, *viz*, Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. But in modern English, we have only three cases—Nominative, Possessive, and Objective, and except in the case of pronouns, only one case ending, *viz*, that of the possessive case

Note—Origin of the Possessive 's'—The possessive or genitive suffix in most of the Indo European languages is *s* with a vowel, and the fact that *s* is the sign of the genitive in English is not capable of further explanation, any more than the fact that *syn* in Sanskrit performs the same function

It was once believed (and perhaps the belief is not quite extinct yet) that this *s* was originally *his*. This theory was current from Ben Jonson's time to Addison's. It is under this error that the latter writes in the *Spectator* "The same single letter on many occasions does the office of a whole word, and represents the *his* and *her* of our forefathers." The following are fatal objections to the theory 1 Expressions like 'the queen's crown' cannot be explained by it 2 Nor yet expressions like 'the children's bread' 3 *His* cannot be *he + his*

188 The preposition *of* is often used instead of the possessive case ending, as *the philosophy of Plato*, for *Plato's philosophy*. See sec 194

189 The possessive case-inflection is used with :

- 1 *Proper names of persons*—John's book
- 2 *Class designations*—the Judge's wig, the enemy's camp
- 3 *Names of the lower animals*—the eagle's flight, the elephant's tusk
- 4 *Names of objects generally personified*—the earth's surface, the ship's side
 - (a) *The powers of the mind*—reason's voice, fancy's flight.
 - (b) *The collective interest of mankind*—the law's delay, society's well being
- 5 *Periods of time* (in certain phrases)—a day's leave, the Thirty-Years' War
- 6 *Abstract nouns* (rarely)—for appearances' sake, for old acquaintance' sake,

190 Plural nouns in 's' form their possessive by adding the apostrophe only, as "angels' visits". But when the plural does not end in *s*, the possessive is formed by adding 's' with the apostrophe, as "men's lives".

Note — Care must be taken to distinguish between the singular possessive and the plural possessive. The singular possessive is formed from the singular by the apostrophe and *s*, or by the apostrophe alone, the plural possessive is formed from the plural nominative in the same way. It is therefore wrong to write *gentlemans'*, *childrens'*, for these forms would imply that *gentlemans*, *childrens*, are correct plural forms, which they obviously are not. The following examples will show the difference.

Noun.	Sing Poss.	Plural Poss.
Man	Man's	Men's
Father	Father's	Fathers'
Child	Child's	Children's.
Conscience	Conscience'	Consciences'
Gentleman	Gentleman's	Gentlemen's
Son-in-law	Son-in-law's	Sons-in-law's
Man of-war	Man of-war's	Men of-war's

191. Singular Nouns ending in 'es' (sounded as a separate syllable), 'ss,' 'ce' form their possessive by adding the apostrophe alone. 'Moses' rod,' 'for righteousness' sake,' 'for conscience' sake'.

When the *es* is not sounded as a separate syllable, *s* must be added with the apostrophe. *James's*, *Jones's*.

Proper names ending in *s* take the apostrophe and *s*. *Chambers's*, *Philips's*. This is necessary to prevent mistakes.

If the possessive of *Chambers* were written *Chambers'*, there would be no difference in pronunciation between that form and *Chamber's*, and one might think the proper name is *Chamber*, not *Chambers*.

Proper Nouns in *ss* take 's. *Bass's Ale*, *Ross's Milton*.

192. The possessive of Compound Nouns and Phrases equivalent to Compound Nouns is formed by adding the apostrophe and 's' to the last word or the apostrophe alone if the last word ends in *es* sounded as a separate syllable, or is a plural in *s*, as 'the Maharajah of Travancore's Prize', 'The Governor-General's staff', 'Waller and Co's stables', 'Smith and Moses' shop', 'Oir and Son's watches'.

The possessive plural of such nouns is expressed by the preposition *of*.

Even when there are *two separate* names, connected by *and*, the 's' is added only to the last, as 'John, William, and Mary's uncle', 'Vest and Co's shop'. So also when a noun is followed by another in apposition to it, as 'Tom the barber's son.'

Note 1.—But when the noun qualified by the possessive refers to *each* of the connected names, the case-ending is put after each name, or, if *of* is used, it is put before each name 'The Emperor's and the King's forces met in battle', 'The advice of my father and of my brother did not agree'

Note 2.—When comparison is intended, or when several words come between the two connected nouns, the sign must be annexed to each 'They are William's as well as Thomas's books' 'Not a day's or even an hour's delay will be permitted'

193. When the noun which the possessive qualifies is house, palace, church, shop, &c, it is often omitted 'I have just returned from Johnson's,' i.e., Johnson's house (or shop) 'He has never been inside St James's,' i.e., St James's Palace 'We went to see St Paul's, i.e., St Paul's Church' 'I am going to Oakes and Co's for a few minutes,' i.e., Oakes and Co's shop

194. *Of* is always employed when the possessive is antecedent to a relative clause. Thus we say, 'the man's hat,' but 'the hat of the man that was drowned'

✓ 195. **Vocative**—In addressing a person, we frequently name the person addressed. The noun is then said to be in the vocative case or nominative case of address 'John, here'

196. **Objective Genitive**—The possessive (or genitive) has a double force—1 *Attributive* Solomon's temple, John's book, the Reformation of Luther 2 *Objective* The persecution of the Huguenots, i.e., inflicted on them, the reading of books, his maintenance, his murder

197. **Dative**—We have a remnant of the old Dative Case in some instances, usually in connection with verbs denoting giving, telling, bringing, offering, lending, sending, showing, promising, teaching 'I gave him a book,' 'I lent him a Rupee'

PERSON.

198. **Person defined**—*Person* is the difference between the uses of nouns, or the forms of pronouns (and verbs), which shows whether they refer to the person speaking, the person or thing spoken to, or the person or thing spoken of

COMPARISON.

199. **Degrees of Comparison**—Most adjectives of quality, and a few adjectives of quantity, undergo changes of form to show whether a greater or less degree of the quality,

or a greater or smaller quantity, is meant. There are three degrees of comparison, viz, the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*. There are also two kinds of comparison, the *comparison of-increase* (as *taller, tallest*), and the *comparison of diminution* (as *less tall, least tall*), in each of which comparisons we have the three degrees.

200 The three Degrees of Comparison.—The *positive* degree is the simple form of the adjective the *comparative* expresses a *higher* or *lower* degree of the quality or quantity denoted by the adjective and the *superlative*, the *highest* or *lowest* degree; as, *kind, kinder, less kind; kindest, least kind*.

201 Adjectives that cannot be compared: 1. Pronominal adjectives, except *you* which has a comparative *yonder* 2. Definite numeral adjectives 3. Some indefinite numeral adjectives, as *some, all* 4. Distributive adjectives 5. Qualitative adjectives expressing qualities *not capable of increase or diminution*, as, *round, chief, empty, perfect, universal* 6. Adjectives formed from names of *materials, figures, times, persons, places*, as, *wooden, circular, daily, Johnsonian, Asiatic*

Note 1—Proper adjectives may be compared when they are used simply to denote *quality* 'He is *more Johnsonian* than Johnson himself,' i.e., his style is more pedantic and pompous than even Johnson's, 'He is *more Irish* than an Irishman'

Note 2—In the language of *excessive grief, anger, love, admiration, &c*, poets and orators frequently compare adjectives of class 5 in sec 201

202. Comparatives and Superlatives how formed:

1. Adjectives of one syllable generally form their comparatives by *r* or *er*, and their superlatives by *st* or *est*, added to the positive *wise, wiser, wisest, high, higher, highest*. Sometimes the comparative and superlative of such adjectives are formed by putting *more* and *most* before them *more wise, most high*.

2. Most adjectives of two syllables, and all of three or more syllables, are compared by the adverbs *more* and *most*, as *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful*

3. Adjectives of two syllables in *y* or *le* may be compared either way *happy, happier, or more happy, happiest* or *most happy; noble, nobler or more noble, noblest* or *most noble*

203 Comparison of Adverbs—Adverbs which express degree or comparison are compared according to the same rule as adjectives, but *er* and *est* are used only with a few monosyllabic adverbs *fast, often, seldom, ill, well, fore, much,*

little, are compared irregularly like the adjectives of the same names.

204 Superlative of Eminence—Degrees of intensity are often indicated by *very*, *extremely*, *exceedingly*, &c, placed before the positive. This form is sometimes called the *superlative of eminence*, to distinguish it from the ordinary superlative.

Note 1—A slight degree of a quality may be expressed by adding *-ish* or prefixing *rather*, *somewhat*, &c, to the positive *blackish*, *rather young*, *somewhat disagreeable*. Other degrees of quality are expressed by using adverbs of comparison with the comparative, *all the better*, *no better*, *little better*, *much better*, *nothing better*, *far better*.

Note 2—Sometimes the superlative is used as a superlative of eminence, especially when it is modified by such an adjective, as *possible*, *imaginable*, *conceivable*, &c. It will generally, however, be found that there is an implied reference to other objects. 'He is a *most* useful servant', 'He received me in the *kindest possible* manner', 'The *greatest* imaginable folly.'

205 Latin Comparatives—The words *posterior*, *prior*, *anterior*, *inferior*, &c., though comparatives in Latin are not such in English. They differ from English comparatives in the following respects. 1 They do not end in *-er*. 2 They are not followed by *than*. 3 Most of them have a purely positive meaning, e.g., *interior* simply means inside and implies no comparison.

Note—Besides these Latin comparatives, there are also some *English comparatives* not followed by *than*, as, *former*, *elder*, *latter*, *upper*, *outer*, *inner*, *hinder*, *under*, *neither*.

206. Double Comparatives and Superlatives are to be avoided. We should not say 'the most oldest,' 'the more greater.'

Note 1—Double comparatives and superlatives were common three centuries ago. 'the Most Highest,' 'the most unkindest cut of all.'

Note 2—*Lesser*, though a double comparative, is used as another form of *less*. It differs from *less* in that it cannot be used adverbially like *less*.

207 Adjectives and Adverbs irregularly compared

Bad, evil, ill, badly	Worse	Worst.
Good, well	Better	Best
[Fore]	Former	Foremost
[Forth]	Further	Furthest †
Far	Farther	Farthest
Late	Later, latter	Latest, last †

* *Further*, *Farther*. *Further* and *furthest* [originally adverbs] imply movement, *farther* and *farthest* are applied to bodies at rest. 'Jupiter is *farther* from the earth than the sun.' 'I could not go *further* than I did.'

† *Later* and *latter*, *latest* and *last*. *Later* and *latest* are used only to denote time, *latter*, *last* to denote position in a series. the *latest* publication, the *last* Moghul Emperor.

Little	...	Less, lesser	...	Least
Much, many	...	More	...	Most.
Nigh	...	Near	...	Highest, next * ✓
[Near		Nearer		Nearest]
Old		Older, elder	...	Oldest, eldest
Out		Outer, utter		Outermost, utmost
[Ratho		Rather	.	Rathest] †

208 Adjectives with two superlative forms.

Low	Lower	...	Lowest, lowest
[Hind]	Hinder	.	Hindmost, hindermost.
[Up]	Upper	.	Upmost, uppermost.
[In]	Inner	.	Inmost, innermost
[Fore]	Former		Foremost, first

Those within brackets are only used as adjectives in composition with nouns, as *fore-feet*, *up-tiam*.

209 Adjectives with two comparative and superlative forms *nigh*, *old*, *out*, *late*. (See sec 207.)

210. Adjectives without a positive form.

Under	Undermost
Further	Furthermost
Nether	Nethermost (See secs. 207 208)

211. Adjectives without a comparative form :

[Head]	Headmost
[Top]	Topmost
Southern	Southernmost.
Northern	Northernmost
[Front]	Frontmost
[End]	Endmost
Mid	Midmost

Not.—Superlatives ending in *most* are really double superlatives, *most* being made up of *em* and *oast*, both Anglo Saxon superlative terminations. For rules for interchanging Degrees of Comparison, see Chap VII

VOICE, AND MOOD AND TENSE.

212. Voice is the form of the verb which shows whether the subject of the sentence is the subject or the object of the verb. There are two voices the *Active* and the *Passive*.

213. Mood is the form of the verb which shows the manner of the action or state denoted by it, *i.e.*, whether that action

* *Nearest*, *next*. The former denotes *distance*, and the latter, order or position. "the *nearest* way", "the *next* house"

† *Rathe* is used by Milton as an adjective meaning *early* 'the *rathe* primrose'. The positive and the superlative are now obsolete, and the comparative *rathe* is now used only as an adverb meaning *soon*.

or state is to be taught of as certain, doubtful, possible, &c. There are four moods the *Indicative*, the *Imperative*, the *Subjunctive*, and the *Infinitive*

The **Indicative Mood** is the form of the verb when it simply declares something, or asks a question as, 'Birds *fly*', 'Who *said* so?'

The **Imperative Mood** is the form of the verb which is used when it expresses an order or a request, as 'John, *come* here', 'Give me a day's leave, please'

The **Subjunctive Mood** is used when the verb expresses an action or state, under a *condition*, together with the idea of *doubt* or *denial*, as, 'If he *come*, we shall see what we should do with him', 'If he *were* here, he would be present' In the first of these examples, the verb expresses a condition with a doubt, and in the second a condition with a denial

The **Infinitive Mood** simply states the action or state, without reference to agent (i.e., doer of the action) or to time, and has the force of an abstract noun.

There are two infinitives the *simple* or *imperfect infinitive*, which simply states the action or state, and the *perfect infinitive*, which states it as perfect or completed 'He intends *to go*', 'He ought *to have gone*.'

214. **Tense** is the form of the verb which expresses time, that is, shows whether the action or state denoted by the verb refers to present, past, or future, time. There are three tenses in English *present*, *past*, and *future*. The past and the present are formed by inflecting the verb itself, the future by prefixing *shall* or *will* to the verb—so that, as far as tense inflections are concerned, English has really only two tenses—the past and the present

The **Present Tense** denotes an action that goes on, or a state that exists, *now*, as, 'He *rides*', 'he *is riding*', 'he *sleeps*'

The **Past Tense** denotes an action which took place, or a state which existed, in *past* time, as, 'He *rode*', 'he *was riding*', 'he *slept*'

The **Future Tense** denotes an action that is to take place or be completed, or a state that is to exist, in the future, as 'He *will ride*', 'He *will be riding*', 'He *will sleep*', 'He *will have left* by then'

215. The **participle** is a form of the verb which has partly the nature of the verb and partly that of the adjective,

as, 'I saw a cow *grazing*' Here *grazing* implies *action*, and has so far the character of a verb, it *qualifies* the noun *cow*, and has so far the character of an adjective

There are two participles the *imperfect* and the *perfect*; as,

	Imperf	Perf
Active Voice.	Seeing.	Seen
Passive Voice.	Being seen	Having been seen.

216. The Gerund is a substantive* formed from a verb by the suffix *-ing*, which, when formed from a transitive verb, has the governing power of the verb, as 'He escaped by *crossing* the river'

Compound gerunds are formed by the help of the auxiliary verbs *be* and *have*, as *being admired*, *having lost*, *having been struck*

Note—The Participle and the Gerund are just as much moods as the Infinitive, and ought to be considered the fifth and sixth moods, though grammarians have always excluded them from the list—why, it is hard to say, and probably they themselves would find it just as hard to explain.

217. The two Voices: formation of the Passive Voice

The *Passive Voice* is the form of the verb used when its object is made the subject of the sentence, as 'The man *was bitten* by the dog.' From this it is clear that *only transitive verbs can have the passive voice*, as only transitive verbs have objects, so that *intransitive verbs are always in the active voice*.

The *Active Voice* is the form of intransitive verbs, as well as the form of transitive verbs which can be used with an object, as 'The dog *bit* the man', the man *died* of the effects'

✓ The *Passive Voice* how formed—The *Passive Voice* is formed by putting some part of the verb *to be* before the perfect participle of a transitive verb, as, 'I *am loved*'

For rules for interchanging the voices, see chap. VI.

218 - The pseudo-passive form.—Some intransitive verbs of *going* or *becoming* take two forms of the Present Perfect, 'has come,' 'is come'—'has arrived,' 'is arrived.' Similarly with *go*, *depart*, *retire*, *return*, *rise*, *fall*, *descend*, *vanish*, &c

The form with the verb *to be*, may be called the *pseudo-passive*, or false passive, as distinguished from the true passive, which, of course, only transitive verbs, and intransitive verbs used transitively, can have

* The term *substantive* includes nouns and all words used like nouns, as pronouns and infinitives for example.

CONJUGATION.

✓ 219 Conjugation is the arrangement of all the parts of a verb according to voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

220 Old and New Conjugation—Strong and Weak Verbs.—Those verbs that form their past tense by modifying the root-vowel are called *strong*, and those that form their past tense by the addition of *t*, *-d*, or *-ed*, are called *weak* wrote, came, drew, left, joined, ended. Strong verbs are said to belong to the Old Conjugation, weak verbs to the New

221. Forms.—Verbs have four forms in their different moods and tenses, viz, *indefinite*, *emphatic*, *perfect*, and *progressive*, which act as of two kinds—*simple* and *perfect* (For rules to make these forms, see secs 225-8)

The *progressive* form is also called the *continuous* form

Some grammarians add a fifth form—the *Intentional*—formed by the verb *go* used as an auxiliary 'I am going to write'

222 Past tenses and perfect participles must be carefully distinguished from each other. The past tense is *finite* and is used as a predicate, i.e., can be *by itself* the verb to a nominative, in fact it cannot be used in any other way. On the other hand, the perfect participle can be used as a predicate *only* when joined to an auxiliary verb. Therefore it is wrong to say 'I gone' or 'I have went.'

Note—The imperfect or past tense of the indicative mood in its simple form is called the *preterite*, as, loved, was, saw

FORMATION OF THE PAST TENSE.

223 The past tense is formed in the following ways —

- 1 Some verbs change the vowel, write, wrote
- 2 Some undergo no change for the past tense, set, set, let, let, cost, cost
- 3 Some verbs in *d*, preceded by a liquid, change *d* into *t*, gird, girt, bend, bent
- 4 Some in *ll*, modify the vowel, and add *d* omitting the second *l*, shall, should, tell, told
- 5 Some modify the vowel and the final consonant and add *t*, bring, brought; buy, bought, catch, caught
- 6 Some add *ed*, *d*, or *t*, amended, freed, split

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

224 The perfect participle is formed —

1 By the suffix *en* with or without modification of the root vowel :
beat, beaten ; speak, spoken.

(a) Sometimes *en* is lost *drunk, sung.*

(b) Sometimes *e* is lost *shown, grown.*

2 By the suffix *-ed, -d, -t*, with or without modification of the root vowel ; *spill, spilt, feel, felt, free, freed, sell, sold, spend, spent, buy, bought*

3 By retaining the simple forms *cut, cut*

Note — Some verbs have two forms of this participle, one with *en*, the other with *t* or *-d* : *clothe, clothed, graze, grazed, enclose, enclosed.*

FORMATION OF THE COMPOUND TENSES

225 The emphatic form as used in the present and past tenses.—The present or past emphatic of any verb is formed by putting the present or past tense of the verb *do* before the infinitive of the given verb, without the sign.
Example Verb '*to learn.*'

Present emphatic—*I do learn, &c*

Past emphatic—*I did learn, &c*

The emphatic may be used in the future by using *shall* and *will* according to their meanings in the different persons *Eg,*

<i>Simple</i>	<i>Emphatic.</i>
<i>I shall learn</i>	<i>I will learn</i>
<i>Thou wilt learn</i>	<i>Thou shalt learn</i>
<i>He will learn</i>	<i>He shall learn.</i>

226 The perfect form—The present, past, or future perfect is formed by putting the present, past, or future tense of the verb *to have* before the perfect participle of a given verb *Eg,*

Present perfect—*I have learnt.*

Past perfect—*I had learnt*

Future perfect—*I shall have learnt.*

227. The progressive form—The present, past, or future progressive is formed by putting the present, past, or future tense of the verb *to be* before the imperfect participle of a given verb *Eg,*

Present progressive—*I am striking*

Past progressive—*I was striking*

Future progressive—*I shall be striking*

228 The perfect progressive form—The present, past, or future perfect progressive is formed by putting the present, past, or future perfect of the verb *to be* before the imperfect participle of a given verb *Ug*,

Present perfect progressive—I have been striking

Past perfect progressive—I had been striking

Future perfect progressive—I shall have been striking.

Note 1—Verbs expressing mental states, as *love, hate, know*, have no progressive form, because in their simple form they imply continuance.

Note 2—When two or more words are connected, which involve different forms of the same verb, such parts of the tenses as are not common to both must be inserted in full, as, 'This dedication may serve for almost any book that *has been, is, or shall be* published' not '*was, is, or shall be*, published'. If no part of one verb is found in the other, this form must not be used at all. 'I am surprised that he should leave things as he *has*', say, 'as he *has left them*,' or 'as he *has done*'

Note 3—When *ought* and another auxiliary govern the same auxiliary, the infinitive must be expressed with each auxiliary. 'He *can* and *ought to go*,' = 'He *can to go* and *ought to go*.' Say therefore, 'He can go and ought to go'

✓ THE USES OF 'SHALL' AND 'WILL'

229 The following lines give a clear and tolerably correct idea of the difference between *shall* and *will* and should be committed to memory

"In the first person, simply *shall* foretells,
In *will* a threat or else a promise dwells
Shall in the second and third does threat,
Will simply then foretells the future feat"

230. *Shall* in the first person denotes a mere prediction; but in the second and third, it denotes the force of external circumstances, viz, the determination of the speaker, as

I *shall* be punished = Punishment is to be my lot whether I like it or not.

You (he) *shall* be punished = I am determined to have you (him) punished.

231 *Will* in the first person denotes the determination of the speaker, and in the second and third, a mere prediction, as

I *will* be punished = I am determined to be punished

You (he) *will* be punished = punishment is to be your (his) lot, whether I wish it or not

The difference between the two words is illustrated by the following.—

I *shall* be drowned and nobody *will* save me = I am getting drowned, and nobody is trying to save me.

I *will* go and nobody *shall* stop me = I am determined to go, and not to allow any one to stop me.

232 Exceptional uses :

1 *Will* is sometimes used instead of *shall* as a polite way of giving an order as when a Collector, writing to his assistant, says 'The Assistant Collector *will* make immediate inquiries into the matter'

2. *Will* is sometimes used to express present uncertainty, as, 'This picture *will* be meant to represent the Duke of Wellington'

3. *Shall* is sometimes used to denote *absolute certainty*, in the *second* and *third* persons, as 'Read the book and you *shall* find hardly any mistake,' i.e., you will be sure not to find

4 In addressing the Deity, *shall* is used without any idea of determination on the part of the speaker, as the very nature of the subject excludes such an idea. as 'Thou *shalt* endure, and Thy years *shall* not change'

233. *Will* should never be used in the first person with a verb which expresses an action *not dependent on the speaker's will*. It is therefore wrong to say, 'I *will* be glad to see you': for *gladness* is not a feeling that can be brought on by an exercise of will. Students often write 'I will not be able to come to school to-day.' This can only mean 'I am determined not to have the power of coming to school', and as one's being able to go depends on external circumstances and not on one's will, the sentence is absurd and should be 'I *shall* not be, &c.'

A good general rule with regard to *I shall* and *I will* is that *I will* may be softened into *I shall*, to avoid an appearance of forcing one's own wish or will arrogantly into the foreground, but to substitute *I will* for *I shall* is always an error.

234. In indirect speech, when we report what we have said of ourselves, or what another has said of himself, *shall* expresses simple futurity and *will* determination in all the persons; as,

I say I shall write—will write

You say you shall write—will write.

He says he shall write—will write

But when the speaker and the person spoken of are different, the original rule of *shall*, *wilt*, *will* to express mere futurity, and *will*, *shalt*, *shall* to express a promise, command, or threat, is observed; as,

I say that you shall write.	(determ)
You say that I shall write	(simp fut)
You say that he shall write.	(determ)
You say that he will write	(simp. fut)

235. In interrogative sentences, the following are the uses of *shall* and *will* —

Shall I ?	Shall we ?	} denote generally the will of the person spoken to.
Wilt thou ?	Will you ?	
Shall he ?	Shall they ?	
Shall I ?	Shall we ?	} denote simple futurity.
Shalt thou ?	Shall you ?	
Will he ?	Will they ?	

Will I ? is inadmissible, as it asks another what is known to the speaker alone. '*Will I go ?*' can only mean '*Is it my wish or intention to go ?*'

Note — The only case in which '*Will I ?*' is admissible is when it is a partial repetition of a previous speaker's words, as " 'You will surely fail' 'Oh I will, will I ?' "

'*Will we ?*' though rarely used, is admissible, as the speaker may reasonably feel a doubt concerning the wishes of others included with himself in the pronoun, as '*Why will we not be content to be human ?*'

236. *Should* and *Would* — *Should* and *would* follow the rules of *shall* and *will* when employed in parallel circumstances. Thus

I should, Thou wouldst, He would, &c, denote simple futurity

I would, Thou shouldst, He should, &c, denote determination.

For the special uses of *should* and *would*, see secs 244-45

USES OF THE OTHER AUXILIARIES

237 *Be* is used (1) to form the *passive* voice, with the perfect participle of a transitive verb as '*He is loved*', (2) to form the *progressive*, with the imperfect participle of a verb '*He is learning*', '*He has been writing*', (3) to form a kind of perfect tense (see sec 218), with the perfect participle of an intransitive verb '*He is come*'

Note — *Were* is used for *would (should) be*, and *had been* for *would (should) have been*, in poetry, as —

"Methinks it *were* a happy life
To be no better than a lowly swain"
"Else I often *had been* miserable"

238 *Do* is used (1) as a *tense auxiliary* (in poetry) '*O thou that dost prefer, &c*', (2) for *emphasis* '*When they do agree, their unanimity is wonderful*', (3) in negative sentences '*He does not feel the degradation*', (4) in interrogative sentences '*What does he want ?*', (5) when an adverb or an adverbial phrase begins the sentence '*Once again do I behold those steep and lofty cliffs*', (6) as a substitute for other verbs (except *be*) '*He speaks as well as you do*' '*I did not say as some have done (=said)*'

239. Have is used to make the perfect forms I *have* (had) written, to *have* written, *having* written, I *have* (had) been writing, it *has* (had) been written

240. May expresses (1) *Permission* 'You *may* go', (2) *Possibility or concession* 'He *may* recover', (3) *Wish* 'May you be happy!', (4) *Sometimes, in poetry, power*

'Hew down the bridge, Sir Consul, with all the speed ye *may*'

241. Might expresses (1) *past permission as reported in the present* 'He told me that I *might* go', (2) *past permission simply* 'I *might* not go,' i.e., 'I was not allowed to go', (3) *Wish* 'He prayed that I *might* be happy'

242. Must expresses (1) *Compulsion* 'You *must* pay the fine,' (2) *Uncontrollable desire* 'He *must* have society,' (3) *Certainty or necessary inference* 'He *must* be mad, if the doctor says he is'

243. Ought signifies moral obligation, duty 'You *ought* to go,' i.e., 'It is your duty to go'

Note — When past tense is to be expressed, *ought* is joined to the perfect infinitive 'He *ought* to have gone,' i.e., 'It was his duty to go.' The auxiliaries *could*, *should*, *would*, &c., are also used with the perfect infinitive in the same way

244. Should (1) *to be obliged or bound* 'Children *should* obey their parents', (2) *to be going* 'I *should* have started but for the rain', (3) *to happen* 'if you *should* meet him', (4) *to be expected* 'what *should* a child know of death?'

245. Would (1) *to be willing* 'He *would* never do such a thing intentionally', (2) *to will or be determined* 'Although he was warned he *would* run into the danger', (3) *to be accustomed* 'After breakfast, the old man *would* generally take a walk', (4) *probability* 'Those present *would* have noticed the omission'

Note — Some of the auxiliary verbs are also used independently, as, "God is", "Man is an animal", "Do as I do", "That will do", "I have no money", "God wills it"

INTERROGATION AND NEGATION.

246. The Interrogative Form.—Questions are asked in English —

1. By placing the nominative between the auxiliary, if there is one, and the principal verb, as,

{ *Assertive* I shall go
{ *Interrogative* Shall I go?

{ *Assertive* He has written the letter

{ *Interrogative* Has he written the letter?

2 If there is no auxiliary, by putting *do* or *did* before the nominative, as,

{ *Assertive* He writes a good hand.

{ *Interrogative* Does he write a good hand?

{ *Assertive* I said so.

{ *Interrogative* Did I say so?

(When did I say so? &c)

3 By simply putting the verb before the nominative, as,

{ *Assertive* He is come

{ *Interrogative* Is he come?

This form is used generally in poetry, and, in prose, with the verb to be

{ *Assertive* He went with you

{ *Interrogative* Went he with you?

This last sentence would, in prose, be 'Did he go with you?'

4 By interrogative pronouns and adverbs 'Who are you?', 'When is he coming?'

247. The Negative Form—Negation is expressed in English by using a negative adjective with a noun, or a negative adverb with a verb, the verb being broken up, in the latter case, into an auxiliary and a verb—

{ *Affirmative* This answer will satisfy every one

{ *Negative* 1 This answer will satisfy no one

2 This answer will not satisfy (any) every one.

{ *Affirmative* Are you going?

{ *Negative* Are you not going?

{ *Affirmative* He went

{ *Negative* He did not go

248. Sometimes a question is disguised in the form of an assertion, and the interrogation is marked in speaking by the inflection of the voice, and in writing (or printing) by the note of interrogation "You do not mean to say he has left?" "He went with us" 'Really?' "He is gone, you say?"

249 Questions of appeal—In questions of *appeal*, if the question is put affirmatively, a negative answer is expected, and *vice versa*. Thus 'Is pleasure to be pursued at the expense of health?' the answer expected is 'No' It is therefore equivalent to 'Pleasure is not to be pursued at the expense of health' 'Is not the reward great?' implies that the reward is great.

SPECIAL VERBS.

250. We give below the principal parts of some verbs in regard to which mistakes are often made.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Past</i>	<i>Perf part.</i>
Bear	{ 1 bring forth 2 carry	... bore (bare)	born
Begin	..	... bore (bore)	borne
Bid	...	... began	begun.
	..	... bade, bid	bidden, bid.
Cleave	{ 1 split 2 cling	... clove, clave	cloven, cleft.
	..	... cleaved, clave	cleaved.
Dare, venture	..	... durst	dared.
Dare, challenge	..	... dared	dared
Die	..	... died	dead
Dye	..	... dyed	dyed
Eat	..	... ate	erten
Fall	..	... fell	fallen.
Fell	..	... felled	felled
{ Fly	..	... flew	flown
{ Flee	..	... fled	fled
{ Flow	..	... flowed	flowed.
Hang	{ 1 suspend generally 2 suspend on a gallows	... hung	hung
	..	... hanged	hanged
{ Lade, to freight a ship	..	... laden	laden
{ Load	..	... loaded	loaded, laden
Lie	{ 1 repose 2 speak falsely	... lay	lun.
	..	... lied	lied.
Lay, to place	..	... laid	laid
Loose	..	... loosed	loosed
Lose	..	... lost	lost
Pen	{ 1 enclose 2 write	... pent	pent
	..	... penned	penned
{ Sit	..	... sat	sat
{ Set	..	... set	set
{ Sow	..	... sowed	sowed, sown
{ Sew	..	... sewed	sewed, sewn.
Spit	{ 1 throw out spittle 2 put on a spit or stake	... spat, spit	spat, spit
	..	... spitted	spitted.
Shear	..	... sheared (shorn)	shorn
Swell	..	... swelled	swelled, swollen.
Swim	..	... swam, swum	swam
Wake	{ 1 (intransitive) 2 (transitive)	... woke	woke
	..	... waked	waken
Wind	{ 1 to wind up as a clock 2 to wind a horn	... wound	wound.
	..	... winded	winded.

Note—Mistakes are also sometimes made in regard to the past tenses and perfect participles of verbs ending in *ing*. The rule is to use the form in *ang* for the past tense, and that in *ung* for the perfect participle. Thus

Sing	Sang	Sung
Ring	Rang	Rung
Spring	Sprang	Sprung

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

251. General rule for the use of the subjunctive mood in conditional clauses

When in a conditional clause it is intended to express *doubt* or *denial*, use the subjunctive mood

Note 1.—"It is only when there is a *concurrence of futurity and contingency* that the verb should be in the subjunctive mood. When there is either *contingency without futurity*, or *futurity without contingency*, the verb must be in the *indicative mood*. The only exception to this rule occurs in the use of the imperfect (past) tense of the verb *to be* when our language is intended to denote *contingency* merely. The verb must then be in the subjunctive mood." As, 'If it *rain* we cannot go', 'If it *rains* the ground will be wet'

Note 2.—"A *future contingency* is best expressed by a verb in the subjunctive present and a *mere supposition with indefinite time* by a verb in the subjunctive imperfect (past), but a conditional circumstance assumed as a fact requires the indicative mood", as 'If thou *forsake* him, he will cast thee off for ever', 'If it *were* not so, I would have told you', 'If thou *went*, nothing would be gained', 'Though he *is* poor, he is contented'

252. The Subjunctive Mood is used to express—

1. *A will or wish*—"Thy Kingdom *come*'
2. *Purpose* "Watch lest thou *fall* into temptation", 'The sentence is that he *be hanged*'
3. *Future conditionality*—"If it *rain*, we shall not be able to go"
4. *Future consequence*—"I will wait till he *return*."
5. *Uncertainty as to a past tense*—"If any of my readers *have looked* with so little attention upon the world around him"
6. *Wish contrary to the fact*—"I wish he *were* here"
7. *Certain denial*—"If the book *were* in the library, it should be at your service"

253 Distinction between the Subjunctive and the Indicative in conditional clauses illustrated

Indic —If he *is* guilty (as I think he is), he will be punished

Subj —If he *be* guilty (which I doubt), he will be punished

If he *were* guilty (as I know he is not), he would be punished

If he *had been* guilty (as I know he was not), he would have been punished.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

254 The Imperative Mood denotes that an action is commanded, desired, or entreated 'Go thy way', 'Give me a pen'

255. The nominative of a verb in the imperative mood, which is always *thou*, or *ye* or *you*, is usually understood, as "Bless us, O Lord," "Stand up, boys" But, when expressed, it always follows the verb, as "Go thou," "Go ye."

✓256. The imperative mood is sometimes used for the subjunctive, to express a supposition, as "*Suppose you go, do you think you will find him,*" i.e., if you go, "*Go where you will, you will still find me following you,*" i.e., though you go.

257. False imperative—"Thou shalt love" is sometimes given as the *future imperative*, but it is not imperative in form, though it expresses a command, and if we look only to the meaning and not the form, all such expressions as 'Thou art bound to love,' 'I command thee to love,' may be called imperatives with as much reason as 'Thou shalt love'

Note—The Potential Mood—"Such forms as 'I may see,' 'I can see' have sometimes been considered as a variety of mood, to which the name 'Potential' is given. But this cannot properly be maintained. There is no trace of any inflection corresponding to this meaning, as we find with the subjunctive. Moreover, such a mood would have itself to be subdivided into indicative and subjunctive forms 'I may go,' 'If I may go.' And farther, we might proceed to constitute other moods on the same analogy, as for example, an obligatory mood—'I must go,' or 'I ought to go', a mood of resolution—'I will go,' 'You shall go', a mood of gratification—'I am delighted to go', of deprecation—'I am grieved to go'. The only difference in the two last instances is the use of the sign of the infinitive 'to,' which does not occur after 'may,' 'can,' 'must,' &c. Some grammarians consider the form 'I do go,' a separate mood, and term it the emphatic mood. But all the above objections apply to it likewise."

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

258. The Infinitive Mood states the action without reference to the agent or to time, and has the force of an *abstract noun*. '*To reign is worth ambition,*' i.e., *the act of reigning*

259. The perfect infinitive (as 'to have gone') is often used wrongly for the *simple infinitive* ('to go'). 'I intended to have gone' should be 'I intended to go'. The rule is to use the perfect infinitive *only when the action denoted by it is prior to the date of the verb which governs it and only in that case.* Consequently after verbs of *commanding, hoping, desiring, intending, &c.* the simple infinitive is always used, whatever be the tense of the governing verb, (for, doing or not doing a thing cannot possibly be prior to the intention of doing or not doing it). For example 'I intend to go', 'I intended to go', 'I had intended to go', &c

Note 1—After the auxiliary verbs, usage permits the use of the perfect infinitive, as, 'I was to have gone', 'He must have come.'

Note 2 —The above rule is that given by Bain. Other grammarians, as Abbot, Angus, &c., think that with verbs of *hoping*, &c., the perfect infinitive may be used when the hope, &c., has not been realised or accomplished. 'I hoped to have succeeded but failed', 'I hope to succeed, and I succeeded'

260 The simple infinitive with the verb 'to be' expresses what it is proposed, or, settled, to do. 'I am to start early to-morrow morning, and with the verb 'to have,' obligation. 'He has to go whether he likes it or not'

261 The passive infinitive with 'be,' as a predicate, expresses, —

1. *Possibility* 'The passage is to be found on the seventh page, i.e., can or may be found'
2. *Duty* 'Conscientious scruples are to be treated with delicacy'
3. *Intention or determination* 'They are to be sold', 'The man is to be hanged to-morrow'

262. The Passive infinitive with 'have' expresses that something has not been done, or has not been finished. 'It has to be bought', 'A good deal has yet to be done to it'

263 The difference between the present and the perfect infinitive may be illustrated by changing them into clauses.

- | | |
|---|--|
| { | 'I am glad to see you' = I am glad that I see you
(This may be said when a person calls on you). |
| | 'I am glad to have seen you' = I am glad that I have seen you
(This may be said when he is leaving) |
| | 'He appeared to be rich' = His appearance showed that he was then rich |
| | 'He appeared to have been rich' = His appearance showed that he had once been rich, but was no longer. |

264. A verb in the infinitive mood has no nominative yet it may take a subject of its own preceded by *for*, as, 'For a man to be proud of his learning is the greatest ignorance'

When the phrase is changed into a clause, this becomes 'That a man should be proud of his own learning is' &c

265 'To,' the sign. of the infinitive, is omitted after the transitive verbs *may, can, shall, will, must, see, do, bid, dare* (= venture), *hear, let, make, need*, and their variations

EXCEPTIONS 'He bids fail to get the prize' (Here *bid* is used intransitively), 'I feel it to be my duty' 'He needed only to have asked for it'

Note 1 —When any of these verbs (except *let*) is used in the passive voice, the *to* must be expressed. 'He was heard to say', 'He was let go'

Note 2 —*Behold, find, have, help, mark, observe*, and a few other words have sometimes the sign of the infinitive understood after them.

THE INFINITIVE, THE GERUND, AND THE NOUN.

266. The infinitive and the gerund have the force of nouns, and as such can be the subject or object of a verb, but they differ from the noun in the following particulars —

- 1 They are capable of shewing whether the action is complete, incomplete, intended, &c.
- 2 If derived from a transitive verb, they may take an object
- 3 They have no inflections for gender, number, or case

Note — When a gerund undergoes inflections it has become a verbal noun see sec 272

THE PARTICIPLE AND THE GERUND

267. (a) Points of resemblance :

- 1 Neither of them can affirm or deny by itself, i.e., can be a predicate
- 2 Both may take objects, as, ' *Loving* our parents is a duty ' ; ' *Loving* his own ease, he would not study '
- 3 Both may be qualified by adverbs, as, ' *Walking* fast makes one perspire ' , ' *Walling* fast, he stumbled and fell. '

(b) Points of difference.

1. The participle must have a subject, the gerund has none ; as, ' *Walking* on the road, I met a beggar ' , ' *Walking* is good exercise '
2. The participle cannot be qualified by an adjective or a possessive, the gerund can, as, ' No sighs but of my *breathing* '
3. The participle tends to become an adjective, the gerund to become a noun

Hence such adjectives as *striking* (in ' a *striking* clock '), originally participles and such nouns as *blessing* , originally gerunds.

THE PARTICIPLE AND THE PARTICIPIAL ADJECTIVE.

268. The participial adjective is used exactly like an adjective, and may qualify the noun *attributively* , the participle cannot.

EXAMPLES.

{ *Participle* — *Striking* against a stone, my toe was hurt

{ *Participial adjective* — A *striking* circumstance

{ *Participle* — *Dying* in a foreign land, he was soon forgotten,

{ *Participial adjective* — A *dying* man.

269. Certain participial forms.

(a) Sometimes the perfect participle has *two forms*, one of which is used attributively like an adjective, and the other predicatively or to form the passive voice or the perfect tenses as—

Adjectival form

A drunken man,
Molten lead
A sunken ship
A shrunk limb
A cloven foot
A rotten plank,

Participial form

The man has *drunk* the water
The heat has *melted* the lead.
The ship has *sunk*
The limb has *shrunk*
The lightning has *clef* the ties.
The damp has *rotted* the plank

(b) Shortened forms of the participles occur, as *writ* (= *written*), *smut* (= *smitten*), *chid* (= *chidden*), *slid* (= *slidden*)

These forms are now mostly confined to poetry

(c) *Catch, caught, caught* — Analogous to such forms we find *fraught* (Adj) as well as *freighted, distraught, and distracted*

(d) *Work, wrought, wrought* — *Wrought* is now archaic* but is common in poetry, *worked* is quite a modern form. We say however *wrought-iron*

Note 1 — There are some *pure adjectives* which also cannot be used attributively, as *awake, asleep, aloft, alive, &c*

Note 2 — Participial adjectives retain the termination but not the government of participles, when therefore they are followed by the adjective clause, a preposition must be inserted to govern it, as, 'The man who is most *sparing* of his words is generally most *deserving* of attention.'

THE PARTICIPLE AND THE ADJECTIVE

270 The participle is a sort of verbal adjective, but differs from an ordinary adjective in the following particulars —

1 It attributes *action* to a noun, but without any indication of *time*.

2 If derived from a transitive verb, it takes an object.

3 It expresses the same modifications of the action as the infinitive

1. Present—*writing, being written*

2. Perfect—*having written, having been written.*

3. Perfect progressive—*having been writing.*

* An archaism is the use of a word or phrase in an obsolete form or sense, or one nearly so, or imitation of an obsolete grammatical construction

✓ THE GERUNDIAL INFINITIVE.

271. The gerundial infinitive has the same form as the infinitive, but may be distinguished from it by the fact that ~~it~~ more or less expresses *purpose*. The best test for ascertaining whether a word is a gerund or a simple infinitive is to expand it. If it becomes a *noun clause*, it is an infinitive, if an *adjectival* or an *adverbial clause*, it is a gerundial infinitive, as

- 1 He likes to write = He likes *that he should write*. To write is therefore an infinitive
- 2 He came to write = He came *in order that he might write*. To write is therefore an adverbial gerund.
- 3 Pens to write with = Pens *which are intended to write with*. To write is therefore an adjective gerund

✓ Note — The gerund when governed by *for* has the force of a gerundial infinitive — as, 'He came *for writing*,' i.e., in order to write

THE GERUND AND THE VERBAL NOUN

272. It is sometimes difficult to say whether a word in *ing* is a gerund or a verbal noun. This is only natural, considering that it is the tendency of the gerund to throw off its verbal character and assume that of the noun, so that it would be difficult to say at what point precisely it becomes more a noun than a verb. The only test is to see whether it has any noun adjuncts or inflections as the adjective or the plural number, or verb adjuncts, as the object or the adverb. In the former case it would be classed as a verbal noun, in the latter as a gerund, as

Blessing him and *cursing* him are alike ineffectual (infinitives).
Perpetual communing is a sign of love (verbal noun)
 He showered *blessings* on my head (verbal noun)

✓ THE PARENTHETICAL INFINITIVE.

273. This is an infinitive of purpose or gerundial infinitive.

1. 'To tell you the truth, I was not up,' i.e., 'In order to tell you the truth (I must say that) I was not up'
2. 'To be brief, the expedition failed'
3. 'To be sure he is not very clever, but he is very kind hearted'
 'To be sure, &c' = 'That you may be sure, I must say that he is not, &c'

THE PARTICIPLE USED ABSOLUTELY.

274 Some participles, through frequent use in certain expressions, have come to be used even where the noun or pronoun qualified by them has been dropped out, so that some of them have almost the force of prepositions —

1. Regular Construction—"Concerning you, the decision is as follows"

Irregular—"We talked for some time concerning the arrangements"

2. Regular—"Considering the circumstances, I do not think him to blame."

Irregular—"Considering the circumstances, it was thought that he was not to blame"

Respecting, regarding, and touching are thus used. More rarely we have .

3 'Talking of books, here is a good one'

4 'Judging from his own behaviour, he cannot be a desirable companion'

5 'Granting that you are right, what do you infer from this?'

6. 'Assuming that he is guilty, what ought to be done?'

In all these cases the participle qualifies *we* understood

THE PARTICIPLE WITH IMPLIED NOUN

275. It is scarcely correct, though not very uncommon, to say—

1. 'Having disposed of his first argument, his second argument remains to be considered,' instead of 'we have to consider'

2. 'My farm consisted of twenty acres of excellent land, (I) having given a hundred pounds for my predecessor's good will

Where a *possessive adjective* is used, e.g., *his*, it may sometimes be said that *his* is the same as *of him* and that the participle qualifies '*him*,' implied in '*his*'

3 'Having finished his breakfast, his thoughts began to run on dinner'

4 'Repulsed at all points, then courage grew cold'

Adjectives are also thus used —

5 'Once free from debt, his best course will be to leave the country'

THE PRESENT TENSE.

276. The present tense has *ten* distinct significations —

1. It expresses an act or state in the present time —

'I see before me the Gladiator lie'

2. It is employed in vivid descriptions or narrations to describe past events, and is then called the **historic present**
'Caesar leaves Gaul, crosses the Rubicon, and enters Italy at the head of five thousand men'

Note.—The historic present must not be used in one part of a sentence, and the past in another. The following is therefore wrong

'Pierce as he moved, his silver shafts resound'

3 It is used for the **simple future** 'I start to-morrow,' 'I e, will start,' 'When he comes, I will tell him'

4 It is used for the **future perfect** 'Till thou speak, thou shalt not pass,' 'I e, till thou shalt have spoken'

5 It expresses a **universal truth** 'The earth moves round the sun'

6 A **repeated act** 'He walks every day to school.'

7. An **habitual state** 'I love honour more than I fear death'

8. A **permanent condition** 'The Ganges flows into the Bay of Bengal'

9 The possession of some faculty or acquirement 'He writes a good hand', 'She sings well', 'He smokes.'

10 It is used to denote the actions of persons long since dead, whose works remain 'Seneca reasons well'

THE PAST TENSE,

277. The Past Tense has *five* distinct significations —

1 A **single act in past time** 'I saw him yesterday.'

2 A **repeated act** 'He went home every week'

3 An **habitual state** 'He drank hard towards the close of his life.'

4. **Permanent condition** 'The house was surrounded by a high wall'

5 Possession of some faculty 'He wrote better than any of those whom he employed'

THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

278 The present perfect tense is used to express —

1. An **action just finished** 'I have sent the letter.'

2 An **action done in a space of time not yet exhausted**: 'It has rained all this week'

3. *Something the consequences of which still remain* 'I have wasted my time' (and now feel the consequences)
4. *Completion of a future action*, (when preceded by such words as, *when, before, as soon as, still, after*) 'When he has finished (i.e., shall have finished his work), he shall be rewarded'

Note — A verb in the present perfect tense should never be qualified by an expression denoting past time, nor should a verb be used in the present perfect tense unless the act denoted by it continues in itself or in its consequences, to the present time. It is therefore wrong to say 'I have seen him yesterday,' 'Babur has founded the Moghul Empire.' The latter sentence would mean that the Moghul Empire still exists.

THE PAST PERFECT TENSE.

279. When we have *two past actions, one of which was completed before the other*, the former is denoted by the past perfect (or pluperfect) tense, e.g., 'I reminded him of what he *had promised* to do for me.' Here we have two past actions, the act of promising, and the act of reminding. The former, having been completed before the latter, is denoted by the past perfect tense

THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

280. The future perfect is used to denote that an action will be completed before another future action takes place, as, 'I *shall have left* before you return.'

THE COGNATE OBJECT

281. Some verbs, though generally intransitive, take occasionally after them an object whose *meaning is akin* to the verb. Such objects are called *Cognate objects* (*co*, together, *nat*-, born hence 'born together,' 'related,' 'akin').

Examples of the Cognate Object 1 They have *slept* their *sleep* 2 He has *fought* a good *fight* 3 They *run* a *race* 4 They *shouted* *applause*. 5 He *drank* a draught of water 6 He *wept* bitter *tears*

282. Three kinds of Cognate Objects.—A verb may take a cognate object in three ways

1. The noun may be strictly cognate to the verb in both form and meaning, as —

I have *fought* a good *fight* — E B

He *sighed* a *sigh* and *prayed* a *prayer* — Scott

2 The noun may be strictly cognate to the verb in meaning, but not in form, as —

It blows a heavy gale. The bells rang a merry peal.

3 The noun may be only partially cognate in meaning to the verb. In these instances, either the verb or the noun contains a descriptive sense of its own in addition to its cognate meaning. Thus in 'to look a look' the verb is strictly cognate to the noun, but in 'to steal a look,' which means 'to stealthily look a look,' the verb contains a superadded notion. Similarly, 'He shouted a shout' is regular, but in 'he shouted applause,' i.e., 'He shouted an applauding shout,' the noun contains the superadded notion. Similarly with — 'To fight one's way' (i.e., to make one's way by fighting). *It rained fire and brimstone. He has served his apprenticeship.*

Note—Sometimes there is an ellipsis of the cognate object, as 'He did his best (doing),' 'He tried his hardest (trying),' 'He breathed his last (breath),' [Webb and Poore's "Hints on the Study of English"]

INTRANSITIVE VERBS FOLLOWED BY OBJECTS NOT COGNATE.

283. Idiomatic expressions sometimes occur in which intransitive verbs are followed by objects, other than cognate, depending on them, as "to look a person in the face," to "laugh one to scorn," "talked the night away," "he wept a last adieu."

In parsing these verbs, we should describe them as intransitive verbs used transitively.

THE INDIRECT OBJECT.

284. Find the object of the verb in the first of the following sentences.

1. John brought Thomas a book.
2. I will forgive them their fault.
3. He allowed his son two hundred pounds a year.

Ask the question in the usual way. Brought *whom* or *what*?

Ans. 'Brought a book', therefore *book* is the object of brought.

If any one were to say, "No, the sentence gives the answer 'brought Thomas,'" you would reply, "John did not bring Thomas, but he brought the book *for* or *to* Thomas, and 'brought Thomas' is only a short way of saying 'brought *for* or *to* Thomas.'"

285. Nevertheless, as *Thomas* does, in a certain sense, answer to the question 'Whom?' after the verb, it is called an object. But *book* is called the *direct object*, as it names the first and direct receiver of the action, and *Thomas* is called the *indirect object*, as naming the person indirectly affected by the action.

Definition — The indirect object of a verb, is the word or phrase that answers to the question, '*For, or, to whom?*' '*For, or, to what?*' when asked after the verb and its direct object.

EXCEPTIONS — '*He played me a trick*' Here *on*, not *for*, would be supplied before *me*, also *of* or *from* in '*he asked his sister a question*,' i. e., he asked of his sister a question.'

Note — The *indirect object* can be easily detected as follows. It always comes before the *direct object* and cannot be placed after the direct object without the insertion of a *preposition*, in which case it ceases to be the direct object of the verb, and is governed by the preposition.

- 1 John brought a book *for* Thomas
- 2 I will forgive *their* fault *to* them.
- 3 He allowed two hundred pounds a year *to* his son

—Abbott (adapted)

THE FACTITIVE OBJECT.

286 Certain transitive verbs, signifying *making, appointing, creating, &c.*, occasionally take two objects, one representing the person and the other the office. The latter is often called a *factitive object* or *accusative*. E. g., '*They made him arbitrator*', '*they appointed him general*'

Note — The verbs *promise, teach, give* and some others take a *dative* of the person and an *accusative* of the thing. '*I promised him every indulgence*', '*I taught him geography*'

THE RETAINED OBJECT

287. When certain transitive verbs which take two objects in the active form, are changed into the passive form, either of the two objects may become the subject in the passive form, while the other is simply retained as object. Thus "*My mother taught me grammar*," may become when changed into the passive form (1) "*I was taught grammar by my mother*", or (2) "*Grammar was taught me by my mother*". The object thus retained may be called, for brevity's sake, the *retained object*. In the above example, *grammar* is the retained object in the first, and *me* in the second, passive form.

COMPLEMENTARY OBJECT-INFINITIVE AND SUBJECT-INFINITIVE.

288. The infinitive is often used to *complete*, i.e., to be the complement of a preceding noun or pronoun. For example

1 I like a *rascal* to be *punished*

2 The *prisoner* was ordered to be *executed*.

Here (1) a *rascal*, is not the object of *like*, for you like not a *rascal*, but a *rascal* to be *punished*. Consequently *rascal* is only the *partial object*, and it has for its *complement* the infinitive to be *punished*.

In the same way in (2), (though the subjective construction is less common than the objective), the *prisoner* was not ordered at all, what was ordered was the *execution of the prisoner*, or, in the words of the sentence, *the prisoner to be executed*. Consequently *prisoner* is only the *partial subject*, and it has for its *complement* the infinitive to be *executed* — Abbott (*adapted*).

Note — A Complementary Object-Infinitive cannot always be converted into a Complementary Subject-Infinitive. You may say (1) 'I like a *rascal* to be *punished*,' but not (2) 'A *rascal* is liked by me to be *punished*.' The reason is that in (2) the noun *rascal* is separated and disconnected, in meaning from the infinitive to be *punished*, and therefore *rascal* would be in danger of being regarded as the complete subject of *is liked*.

THE ADVERBIAL OBJECT.

289. An adverbial phrase is sometimes contracted into a noun with a prepositional prefix, e.g., *aboard*, *afoot*, *afield*, and sometimes still further contracted into a noun without a prefix of any kind. 'I am going *fishing*' (this is a contraction of 'go on *fishing*,' or 'go *a-fishing*')

Again, in the earliest periods of the language an adverbial phrase was sometimes represented by an *inflected noun*, the inflection representing a modern preposition, e.g., 'He that was dead came forth bound hand-*um* and fôt-*um*,' i.e., 'as regards, or *in*, hands and feet.' In modern English—'bound *hand*, and *foot*'

Hence even where no preposition was inserted, the objective form is sometimes used in answer to the questions 'How?' 'How far?' 'How much?' 'When?' 'Where?' e.g., 1 He went that *way* 2. He is worth you and me put together 3. He walked a *mile* 4. He is ten *years* old

These adverbial objects are what are otherwise called *accusatives of space, time, measurement, or degree*.

290 In some cases of adverbial objects, a preposition may be inserted before the object, though it is by no means *necessary* to the construction, as 1 We waited (for) *an hour* 2 He is (by) *a trifle* taller than I 3. (At) that *moment* Thomas appeared — *Abbott (adapted.)*

Note — The relative pronouns *that* and *as* may be used as an adverbial accusative, but only if its antecedent can be so used, as, "This was the way *that* he went", "That was the day *that* he was born" Compare "He went *that way*", "He was born *that day*" But we cannot say "This was the stick *that* he beat the boy" any more than we can say "He beat the boy *this stick*" In both cases the preposition *with* must be used

ADVERBIAL SUBJECT OR NOMINATIVE ABSOLUTE

291 The subject is sometimes used with the participle without any verb of which it can be called the subject so as to make an adverbial phrase —

1. They dragged my friend away, I in vain *resisting*
2. *This done*, they departed.
3. *Breakfast ended*, they went out for a walk

The subject in this construction being *loosed from* its usual connection with the verb is sometimes called the *subject (nominative) absolute* (*ab*, from, *solut*, loosed)

292. Sometimes the participle is omitted —

1. *Sword in hand* the captain led on his men
2. They fought *man to man*
3. *Breakfast over*, we started

In all these cases a participle, such as *being* can be easily supplied, thus, in the above examples, we may supply it as follows —

1. *Sword being in hand*, &c
2. They fought, *man being opposed* to man.
3. *Breakfast being over*, &c.

—*Abbott (adapted.)*

APPPOSITION.

293 Apposition explained — Sometimes a noun or pronoun is used not as the ordinary subject of a verb, but as a sort of *repetition and explanation* of the subject or object

In such cases 'I mean,' or 'that is to say,' or some similar expression may be supplied between the two nouns —

1. Next came { Thomas (that is to say) the boy that cleans
2. Then we saw { the boots

Here *the boy* being in close connection with *Thomas* is said to be in apposition to *Thomas* (*ad*, near, *position*, position)

For *the boy* write the personal demonstrative *he*. Then the sentence becomes

1. Next came Thomas, *he* that cleans the boots
2. Then we saw Thomas, *him* that cleans the boots.

In (1) *Thomas* is the *subject*, and the pronoun in apposition has the *subject inflection*, in (2) *Thomas* is the *object* and the pronoun in apposition has the *object-inflection*. Hence we get this rule —

Nouns and pronouns are used subjectively when in apposition to subjects, and objectively when in apposition to objects

By 'used subjectively,' or 'used objectively' is meant that, if the word has subject and object inflections, the subjective-inflection or objective-inflection must be used

294. Apposition with an implied noun—Sometimes a noun is in apposition, not to another preceding noun, but to *some noun implied from the preceding words* —

1. He was said to have disobeyed his parents—a fault deemed unpardonable in those days
2. You were silent when accused—a clear confession of guilt.

In these examples, *fault* is in apposition to *disobeying parents*, and *confession* to *being silent when accused*, both implied in the sentences

The implied noun may be 1 subjective, or 2 objective, e.g.,

1. If he were elected a member of Parliament—not a very probable event, &c
2. He was guilty of *disobedience*—a fault considered unpardonable in those days

295. Apposition with an indirect object.—Sometimes a noun is put in apposition with an indirect object 'Will you give *him* your confidence—a rascal banished from all society?'—*Abbot* (adapted).

APPOSITIONAL VERBS OR VERBS OF IDENTITY

296 It has been shown in sec. 293 that two nouns or pronouns when in apposition are both used subjectively or else both used objectively. There are some verbs whose nature it is thus to connect nouns or pronouns, placing them, as it were, in apposition.

These verbs sometimes express the *identity* or *sameness* between two persons or things. The verb *is* is commonly used thus —

1. The author of that book *is* my brother

Here *is* expresses the identity between *my brother* and the subject of *is*, viz., *the author*. Hence the name *object* could not

be given to *my brother*. Indeed, if I alter the sentence by putting myself in my brother's place, it becomes —

2 The author of that book is *I*

Since, therefore, you are obliged to use the subjective form *I* and not *me*, it follows that *brother* in (1) is used *subjectively*, not *objectively*. For a similar reason the ordinary term *object* cannot be given to the noun following the verb in

3 He was made, appointed, created, *king*

4 He was thought, deemed, believed, supposed, called, named, *a rogue*

5 He seems, appears, looks, *a rogue*

In these sentences, the verb by itself is *incomplete*. 'He was made' is not only not the complete meaning, it is even untrue: the verb is, not 'was made,' but 'was made king,' 'To make-king,' and 'to make beautiful' are as much one verb as 'to be-king' and 'to beautify.'

297 Since the words 'rogue' and 'king' supplement the preceding verbs, they may be called the *supplements of the verb*, and since they are here used subjectively, they may be called *subjective supplements of the verb*. On the other hand, in

6 They made, appointed, created, *him general*

7 We thought, deemed, supposed, believed, called, named, *him a rogue*

Since the identity is here between the object *him* and *general* or *rogue*, we may call 'general' and 'rogue,' *objective supplements of the verb*.

Note —The intransitive verbs, *look, seem, appear, grow, become*, and the transitive verbs *make, create, appoint, deem, consider, esteem, &c.*, being often used to express identity, may be called *verbs of identity*.

Rule —Verbs of identity, when transitive or passive, take *subjective supplements*, when intransitive, *objective supplements* —Abbott (*adapted*)

PREPARATORY "IT" AND "THERE"

298 Instead of saying, 'To walk is healthy,' 'To steal is dishonest,' we sometimes wish to put the subject, e.g. *to walk*, at the end. But we should not like to say, 'Is healthy to walk,' we want to put some little word as the subject of *is*, as it were, to prepare the way for the real subject that is coming later on. So we say, 'It is healthy to walk,' i.e., 'It is healthy—I mean, to walk (is healthy).'

This *it* may be called the *preparatory* or *introductory* subject of *is*, for it is like a servant sent on to prepare the way for his master and to arrange for his accommodation. *To walk* is the real subject of *is*.

^{adv.} 299. The adverb *there* is used in the same *preparatory* way, though of course it is not a subject. For example, if we are beginning a story about a little boy, it does not sound well to say, 'once a little boy was', so we place 'little boy' last, and put in the word *there* not to mean *in that place*, but simply to make us feel that something is coming 'Once *there* was a little boy' When *there* is thus used, we may say that 'it prepares the way for the subject and is a *preparatory* adverb'—Abbott (*adapted*).

EXPLETIVE "WHY" AND "WELL"

300. 'Why' and 'well' are used as expletives.

1 *Why* appears to have been originally thus used as an exclamation of impatience or surprise, equivalent to 'Why do you say this? Why are you surprised? Why are you acting thus?'

2 *Well* seems to mean 'This having been well settled,' and is used in the sense of 'enough of this,' 'to pass on,' &c, in order to prepare the way for a new point —

1 'Snakes? *why* there are no snakes in Iceland'

2 'Well, now let us come to more practical matters'

"MUCH" AND "VERY"

301. It is hard to give exact rules for the use of the adverbs *much* and *very* with adjectives. But generally speaking, we should use *very* with adjectives in the positive degree, and *much* with adjectives in the comparative degree, as,

Very bad — *Much worse*

Ispahan is a *very large* and *very dirty* city

The sun is *much larger* than the earth and is *much farther* from it than the moon

The same rule holds with adverbs, as,

He walks *very briskly*

Your friend converses *much more fluently* than I expected

This artisan does his work *very quickly* and *very quietly*

You must come *much more frequently* to see me

Adjectives in the positive degree take *very*, and generally speaking, participles prefer *much*, as *very pleasant*, but *much pleased*. But this is not at all strictly adhered to "*very tired*," "*very pleased*" are phrases in common use

302. We have seen that *very* is used with an adjective or

an adverb in the positive degree This is often overlooked, by native students, and we get such faulty expressions, as—

This stone is *much* heavy
It is *much* cold to-day
He gave a *much* instructive address
To govern a country well is a *much* difficult task.

These ought to be written as follows —

This stone is *very* heavy
It is *very* cold to day
He gave a *very* instructive address
To govern a country well is a *very* difficult task,

303 We have seen that *much* is put with adjectives in the comparative degree *Very* is sometimes added to qualify *much*, as,

The whale is *very much* larger than the shark
The elephant is *very much* stronger than the donkey

Very and *much* are both joined with adjectives in the superlative degree, though giving a slight difference of meaning. The definite article is then used, and the order of words is as follows —

Much the best	The very best
Much the smallest	The very smallest
Jupiter is much the largest of the planets	

Note the position of the article in these examples, it follows *much* and precedes *very*

It should be remembered that the use of *much* and *very*, which has been pointed out in this section, is, for the most part, confined to such adjectives as form their comparative and superlative in *-er* and *-est*

304. *Much*, besides being an adverb, as noticed in the preceding sections, is sometimes used as an adjective and is joined with material or abstract nouns It then denotes *quantity*, or *degree*, as in the following —

Much paper, much ink, much milk, much happiness, much pleasure.

Note the distinction between *much* and *many* *much* denotes *quantity*, and *many* denotes *number*

Much money	many rupees
Much fuel	many sticks
Much rain	many showers
Much poetry	many poems.—McMordie (adapted)

✓ "TOO" AND "VERY."

305. The difference between these two words must be carefully noted. There is hardly any word more frequently misused by students than *too*. They often say *too ill* when they mean *very ill*, and *very ill* when they mean *too ill*.

306. *Very* simply denotes a *high degree* of a quality, *without reference to any particular standard*. 'This mango is *very* sour' means simply that it possesses the quality of sourness in a high degree.

Too denotes *excess above a certain fixed degree*. 'This mango is *too* sour' means that it exceeds the limit beyond which sourness becomes disagreeable.

307. *Too* is generally followed by an infinitive or a prepositional phrase *which marks the limit exceeded*, e.g.,

It is *too* hot to ride out (for a ride) to-day.

There is a limit beyond which the heat prevents riding, and that limit has been exceeded by to-day's heat.

When this phrase is omitted, *too* signifies *excess over what is enough, just, right, convenient, fitting, or desirable*. 'He is *too* kind,' means 'that he is kinder than he should be.'

308. Suppose a school opens at 10 o'clock, and no boy is allowed to attend later than 10 30, if a boy comes at 10 29, we may tell him, 'You are *very* late' but not 'You are *too* late', because there is still a minute left for the fixed time to expire. But if every boy had to come *precisely at ten*, and a boy came *one minute after ten*, he would be *too* late.

309. Sometimes we hear one boy tell another, 'I am *too* glad to see you'. This can only mean, 'I am *more glad than I should be* to see you'. *Too* should therefore be *very*.

310. *Too* is sometimes used *absolutely* to denote a *very high degree*, as, 'I shall only be *too* happy to oblige you'. This is, however, no exception to the rule we have given. It means, 'Far from being less glad than I should be to oblige you, I shall rather be more glad than I should be'. In this use *too* is always accompanied by *only*.

311. *Very* is also misused for *too*. 'I am *very* ill to attend school' should be 'I am *too* ill to attend school,' the meaning being 'I am so ill that I cannot attend school.'

Note—There is a somewhat similar use of *very* in English which is quite correct, but it gives a different meaning from *too*, e.g., 'It is *very* hot for work to-day' means that, though it is very hot, work *will* nevertheless be proceeded with, but 'It is *too* hot for work to-day' means that it is so hot that work cannot be proceeded with.

312 *Too*, when used as an adverb of comparison, or degree, can always be changed into *so as not*, or *so that not*, e g.,

- 1 He was *too* late to get admittance—
2. He was *so* late *as not* to get admittance—
3. He was *so* late *that* he could *not* get admittance.

Note—When the completing phrase is negative, the negative sign is omitted and *too* changed into *so as*, *so that*. This is only an application of the rule that *two negatives destroy each other*, to the above rule. *Eg*, (

- 1 He is *too* good *not* to comply,
- 2 He is *so* good *as* to comply,
- 3 He is *so* good *that* he *will* comply

CORRESPONDING OR CORRELATIVE CONNECTIVES.

313. Some conjunctions are composed of two corresponding words. The following list contains most of this class of connectives, and shows how to use them —

Because, therefore (in reasoning, as in Euclid).

Both—and 'A mind fitted *both* for minute researches *and* for large speculations.'

Though, although—yet 'Though (although) he slay me, *yet* will I trust in him.'

Whether—or 'whether it be I or they'

Either—or 'No leave ask'st thou of *either* wind or tide'

Neither—nor 'Neither act *nor* promise hastily'

If—then 'If you go, *then* I will come with you'

If—then—in reasoning

Note—*Though, if, either* may be used without their correlatives. 'Though I have been here six months, I have not made half a-dozen acquaintances,' 'If you say it is so, it must be so,' 'You or I must go'

314 Some conjunctions and adverbs are used with corresponding adverbs or adjectives. The following are the principal connectives of this class —

As—as, so 'She is *as* amiable *as* her sister', 'As he excels in virtue, *so* he rises in estimation'

So—as 'No riches make *so* happy *as* a clear conscience'

So—that (expressing consequence) 'She speaks *so* low *that* no one can hear what she says'

Not only, not merely—but, but also, but even 'He was *not only* prudent, *but also* industrious'

Scarcely, when 'He had *scarcely* sat down, *when* he had to resume his journey'

Such—as 'There never was *such* a time *as* the present'

Such—that 'The change is *such* *that* any one may perceive it'

No sooner—than, just—when, hardly—before 'No sooner had he landed, *than* he was arrested by the bailiff', 'He had *just* landed *when* he was arrested, &c.' 'Hardly had he landed, *before* he was arrested.'

More, (and other comparatives)—*than* 'They have *more* than heart can wish.' 'The Greeks were *braver* than the Persians.'

315 *As—as*, *so—as*; *As—as* affirms equality in degree *so—as* is now generally used when the principal sentence is *negative*: 'This is *as* good as that', 'This is not *so* good as that'

Equality in *manner* is expressed by *so—as* but the *so* is generally omitted, except when the sentence with *as* is placed first. 'He speaks *as* he thinks', 'As he thinks, so he speaks'

SYNTAX.

CONCORD.

316. Concord is the agreement which one word has with another in gender, number, person, or case

CONCORD OF NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

317. The verb agrees with its nominative in number and person 'I love', 'thou lovest', 'he loves', 'Robert loves', 'riding is pleasant.'

318. When an adjective, with the definite article prefixed, is used as the subject of a verb, the verb should be in the *plural* number, as, "The virtuous *are* respected"

319. When the verb has several forms, that form should be adopted which is the most appropriate, and the *same form*, whether simple, progressive, or emphatic, should be preserved throughout the sentence, thus, "The Lord *giveth* and the Lord *takes* away," should be either, "The Lord *giveth* and *taketh* away," or, "The Lord *gives* and *takes* away" "He *conferred* great favours, but *did* receive nothing in return but ingratitude," should be, "He *conferred* great favours, but *received*, &c"

320 "Mathematics," "ethics," "optics," "conics," "physics," "pneumatics," "politics," &c., have preferably a *plural* verb though some recent writers prefer a *singular* verb, as, "*Mathematics is* the science, &c"

Sometimes a different construction of the clause may be employed, as, "The *science* of optics *is* intended."

"Alms," "annals," "ashes," "manners," "morals," "pains," "riches," "tidings," "vespers," and "wages," are always *plural*

"Means" and "amends," when signifying one object,

have a singular verb, when signifying more than one, a plural verb

"News" is generally singular

321 When a phrase or a clause is the subject of a verb, the verb must be in the *third* person singular, as, "*To rise early conduces to health*", "*That we should obey our parents is our duty*"

322 A plural nominative denoting an object thought of as a whole, whether expressed by a single word or by several words, requires a singular verb '*Fifty Rupees was paid for that book*'. Here we mean, not that each of the fifty Rupees was paid, but that the *sum* of fifty Rupees (50 Rs taken in a lump, or one sum), was paid. So "*Rackets was the game he loved*"

The same rule applies to a plural nominative denoting a single thing '*The Pleasures of Memory was published in 1792,*' i.e., the book entitled '*The Pleasures of Memory,*' '*Goldsmith's Edwin and Angelina is a ballad*'

323 Nouns used only in the plural, as *trousers*, *scissors*, take plural verbs '*His trousers were too tight*', '*The scissors are blunt*'

324. "Alms," "riches," "eaves," though singular in origin take plural verbs, as '*Alms are distributed there once a week*', '*Riches are not for ever*', '*The eaves cast off the water falling on the roof*'

"Amends," "pains," "news," "means" some times take plural, and sometimes singular, verbs

"Summons" always takes a singular verb '*The summons was served too late*'

✓325. Many a: 'Many a' used with a singular noun gives it a plural force, but the verb agreeing with a noun qualified by *many a* must be singular '*Many a hill was climbed, and many a desert traversed*'

326. The form of the verb is not affected by adjuncts to the nominative, explanatory or parenthetical terms, terms particularized or excepted, terms set aside for more correct or expressive ones '*The long row of elms was luxuriantly green*', '*The Bible or Holy Scriptures, is a noble book*', '*This man (and indeed all such men) deserves death*', '*Our statesmen, especially Gladstones, have reached a good old age*', '*All the boys, except the last, have done well*', '*His father, or rather his father's advisers, do not approve of his continuing his studies.*'

327. When the nominative is omitted, the verb must agree with the understood nominative "*Poor and content is rich enough*," i.e., he who is poor and content, "*Slow and steady wins the race*", "*Handsome is that handsome does*", "*Upwards of forty houses were burnt*," i.e., houses upwards of forty houses

NOMINATIVES CONNECTED BY CONJUNCTIONS.

328. If the subject of a sentence consists of two singular nouns* or pronouns connected by the conjunction *and*, expressed or understood, the verb must be in the plural, as, '*John and James are in the field.*' '*Art, empire, earth itself to change are doomed*'

Note 1.—If the two nouns are names for the same things, the plurality is only apparent and the verb must be in the singular, as, '*That scholar and antiquarian has published a new book*'

Note 2.—Where the two nouns are synonymous or almost so, the singular verb is generally used, as, '*Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kings*', '*Time and tide waits for no man*', '*The mind and spirit remains invincible*

Note 3.—Where the two nouns form only one subject by their combination, or express one complex idea, the verb is singular as, '*The horse and carriage is at the door*', '*The wheel and axle is out of repair*', '*Two and three is five*', '*Much blood and treasure was wasted in these wars*' But '*The wheel and the axle were both injured*'

329. Nouns coupled by *as well as* take a singular or plural verb according to the context. If the predicate is meant to be affirmed of both, the plural is employed, the phrase being then equivalent to *and* '*Pompey as well as Cæsar were great men*' But if the *as well as* merely makes a comparison, the predication is confined to the first noun and the verb is singular '*Cæsar, as well as Orceio, was remarkable for eloquence.*'

Note.—'The king with his life-guards has just passed' Here we have not a conjunction, but a preposition, and the prepositional phrase does not affect the number of the verb. Some think we should say *have passed* because the king did not come by himself, the life guards also came with him. If this were so, we should say 'Virtue, joined to knowledge, confer respectability,' for here it is not *virtue alone* but *virtue and knowledge together* that confers respectability, nevertheless we should say *confers*, not *confer*

330. When *each*, *every*, or *no* is joined to two nouns connected by *and* or *as well as*, the singular verb is preferred '*Every clergyman and every physician is a gentleman*', '*Each limb and feature appears with its appropriate grace*', '*When no part of their substance and no one of their properties is the same*'

* The term *noun* is used in these rules as including the infinitive and the gerund, and sometimes the pronoun

331 When the same noun is coupled with two or more adjectives so as to mean different things, there is a plurality of sense, and the plural verb is required as, 'In the latter also, *religious and grammatical learning go hand in hand*'

332 When in a sentence there is an *ellipsis of a noun*, and more than one is implied, the verb is still plural as 'A *literary, a scientific, a wealthy, and a poor man* are to take part in the meeting'

333 When two nominatives are connected, the one affirmative, the other negative, they make two sentences, and the verb agrees with the affirmative, as, 'Not a loud voice, but strong proofs, bring conviction', 'Our own heart, and not other men's opinions, forms our true honour'

334 Sometimes, when the nominatives follow the verb, the verb agrees with the first, and is understood of the rest 'Now abideth faith, hope, and charity'

'Ah' then and there was hurrying to and fro,
And gathering tears, and tremblings of distress.'

So also when the verb separates its nominatives, as 'The earth is the Lord's and the fulness thereof'

335 Two or more singular nouns, connected by *or* or *nor*, implying that they are separately taken, must have a singular verb 'John, James, or Andrew intends to accompany you'

336 When one of two nominatives separated by *or* or *nor* is in the plural, the verb should be plural 'He or his servants were to blame' It is proper in such cases to place the plural nominative next the verb

Note 1 —In familiar language we say 'There are one [point] or two points remaining to be considered,' thus connecting *are* with the plural noun, but not placing the plural noun next the verb But such a sentence as 'One or two points remain to be considered' conforms to the rule.

Note 2 —When the plural nominative after *or* simply explains the singular one before it, the verb agrees with the latter 'The Decalogue, or Ten Commandments, is in two parts'

337 When two nominatives of different numbers, having the same verb, are found in *different clauses* of the same sentence, the verb must be repeated 'The voice is Jacob's, but the hands are Esau's', 'Neither were their numbers, nor was their destination known'

338 When pronouns of different persons, and of the sin-

gular number are connected by *or* or *nor*, the following rules are generally observed —

1 When *either* or *neither* precedes the pronouns, the verb is in the third person: 'Either he or I *is* in the wrong', 'Neither he nor I *is* in the wrong'

2. When *either* or *neither* does not precede the pronouns, the verb agrees with the first 'I or he *am* in the wrong', 'You or he *are*, he or you *is*, in the wrong'

The above is from Latham Lowres in his 'Grammar of Grammars' says —

"When two or more nominatives in the same number, but of different persons, are connected by *or* or *nor*, the verb agrees with the person of the nominative next to it,
'Lather thou or he *is* to blame'

But in general it is more elegant to express the proper verb after each, as

'Lather thou *art* to blame, or he *is*'"

CONCORD OF COLLECTIVE NOUNS AND VERBS

339. When the nominative is a collective noun, the verb is 1 *singular*, if the predicate applies to the objects denoted by the collective noun *taken collectively* only, and 2 *plural*, if the predicate applies to them *taken individually* as 1 'The army *was* dispersed', 2 'The army *were* discontented,' Here the verb in the first example is *singular* because the predicate *was dispersed* is applicable to the army only *as a whole*, for we cannot say of each soldier that *he was dispersed* Whereas in the second example, the verb is *plural* because the predicate *were discontented* is applicable *individually* to the army, for we mean that *each soldier was discontented*.

Verb singular — 'The fleet *is* under orders to sail', 'The Senate *is* of opinion', 'The meeting *resolves*'

Verb plural — 'The majority *were* induced to consent', 'The public *are* often deceived by false appearances', 'The generality of his hearers *were* favourable to his doctrines.'

Note — Collective nouns are called nouns of multitude when they require a plural verb

The following examples are incorrect —

'The meeting *were* large', 'Stephen's party *were* entirely broken up'; 'Mankind *were* not united by the bonds of civil society', 'The church *have* no power to inflict corporal punishment', 'One man of genius *accomplishes* what a crowd of predecessors *has* essayed in vain', 'The jury *was* kept without food'

CONCORD OF NOUN AND PRONOUN.

340. Pronouns, whether personal, demonstrative, or relative, agree in *gender*, *number*, and *person* with the nouns for which they stand, but may or may not do so in *case*, as "The book *which* I bought at the auction has been stolen, *it* was a very useful one" Here the agreement of the pronouns *which* and *it* with *book*, for which they both stand, may be seen from the following —

Book—neuter, singular, third person, nominative case;

Which—neuter, singular, third person, objective case,

It—neuter, singular, third person, nominative case

341. When a noun is qualified by a distributive adjective, the pronoun agreeing with it is *singular*, if only one gender is meant, as 'England expects *every man* to do *his* duty', 'It is natural that *every mother* should suckle *her* own child' But when both genders are meant or implied, *the plural is allowable*, as, 'Every person's (i.e. man's or woman's) happiness depends upon the respect *they* meet in the world'

The only way of avoiding this violation of grammar is to use '*he* or *she*,' '*his* or *her*,' '*him* or *her*,' whenever the pronoun has to be used But this construction is too cumbrous to be kept up

342 When two or more nouns are connected by *or* or *nor* and are of different genders, the plural pronoun is sometimes used as, 'Not on outward charms should man or woman build *their* pretensions to please', 'If an ox gore a man or a woman so that they die'

343 Pronouns standing for collective nouns.—When a collective noun is used to denote a group of persons or other beings or things as *one whole*, the pronouns agreeing with it must be of the neuter gender and of the singular number 'The mob, *which* assailed the palace, soon lost *its* leader' But with nouns of multitude, a plural pronoun must be used 'The jury *have* not had *their* luncheon'

Note—A collective noun is sometimes used with a singular verb and a plural pronoun in the same sentence 'There is a certain class of men who never *look*, &c' This may be justified on the ground that in the first part the class is spoken of collectively, and in the second as individuals So in 'It is vain for a people to expect to be free, unless *they* are first willing to be virtuous'

344 Pronouns in Answers—A pronoun answering a question must be in the same case as the interrogative pronoun 'Who spoke? *I*,' not *me*.

345. Concord of Antecedent and Relative.—The relative must be of the same gender, number, and person as its antecedent ‘Happy is the *man that* findeth wisdom.’

Note 1—The relative sometimes agrees with the antecedent implied in a possessive adjective ‘Hear *my* words, whom am, your senior’; This usage is now to be found only in poetry.

Note 2—The antecedent is sometimes an adjective ‘He is said to be honest, *which*, however, I do not believe he is’

Note 3—Instead of ‘*of which*,’ *whose* is frequently applied to nouns denoting inanimate objects ‘pleasure *whose* nature,’ or ‘pleasure the nature *of which*’ The latter is generally preferred

Note 4—When there are two antecedents of *different persons*, the relative generally agrees with the *latter*, as, ‘You are the friend *who* has often relieved me’ Regard must, however, be had to the sense intended, thus ‘I am the man who *command* you’ means ‘I who command you (I your commander) am the man *previously* mentioned’, ‘I am the man who *commands* you’ means ‘I am your commander.’

Note 5—The same antecedent requires the same relative to be preserved throughout the sentence The following sentence is therefore inaccurate ‘I am the father who loves you, that provides for you, that cherishes you.’ It should be ‘who loves, who provides, who cherishes,’

CONCORD OF ADJECTIVE AND NOUN.

346. Numeral and demonstrative adjectives agree in number with the nouns they are joined to *one man, two men, this man, these men*

Note—Such phrases as ‘forty sail,’ ‘two brace,’ allowed by usage, are exceptions

347. The distributives “each,” “either,” “neither,” agree with singular nouns each year, every animal, either sex, neither way. ‘Every three hours’ is only an apparent exception Three-hours has a singular sense, meaning the space of three hours Cf. *sixmonth, twelvemonth*.

348. “Few,” “many,” “several” are accompanied by plural nouns *few persons, many years, several times*.

349. Adjectives of Quality have no agreement and may be joined to singular as well as plural nouns. *a good boy, good boys*

Note—An adjective has sometimes no noun or pronoun, or has only an implied one, to qualify ‘To be good is to be happy,’ *i.e.* for a person to be good is for him to be happy. ‘His being rich’ *Rich* may here be said to qualify *he* implied in *his*.

350. Concord of Article and Noun.—The indefinite article agrees with a singular noun only: *a man*. The exceptions are given in sec 97.

The definite article may be joined to singular or plural nouns 'the men'

Note—Besides the cases given in sec 97 *a* may be used before plural nouns when they are preceded by *few*, or *great many* 'a few men,' 'a great many apples'

351. Attributive and Predicate qualification.—An adjective or a participle may qualify a noun or a pronoun either *directly* or *through a verb*, the former is called attributive, and the latter predicative, qualification. Examples (*attributive*) "a good man," "a striking clock," "a sunken rock", (*predicative*) "the wine is sour," "the man is afraid," "the wood is rotten"

352. Non-attributive adjectives.—There are some adjectives that cannot be used attributively, but only predicatively. such are *afraid, alive, awake, asleep, aware, well*. We may say of a man that he is afraid, alive, &c, but we cannot say "an afraid man," "a well man," &c

Some adjectives that may be used both attributively and predicatively have a different meaning in each case, as "a sorry horse", "The man is sorry"

CONCORD OF NOUNS OR PRONOUNS IN APPPOSITION.

353. Nouns or Pronouns in apposition are generally in the same number and case, but.—

(1) When two or more nouns of the possessive case are in apposition, the possessive termination added to one denotes the case of both or all 'his brother Philip's wife', 'John the Baptist's head'; 'at my friend the bookseller and publisher's' In these cases the nouns in apposition are viewed as almost forming a compound

(2) When an explanatory noun or phrase is appended to a name by way of apposition, the possessive sign is added to the name only 'I left the parcel at Mr. Smith's, the chemist', 'These psalms are David's—the prophet and king of Israel' But perhaps in these cases it would be better to avoid the possessive in *s* and say 'I left the parcel at the shop of Mr. Smith, the chemist', 'The psalms were written by David, the prophet, &c.' 'I left the parcel at the shop (house) of Mr Smith, the chemist.'

(3) A noun without the possessive sign is sometimes put in apposition with a noun or pronoun in the possessive case 'As an author, Gladstone's (*his*) reputation is not great.' Here we may parse *author* as in apposition with *Gladstone* (*him*) implied in *Gladstone's* (*his*), *Gladstone's* (*his*) being equivalent to *of Gladstone* (*of him*)

(4) A *distributive* term in the singular is frequently put in apposition with a comprehensive plural 'They went every man * to his house' And sometimes a plural word is emphatically put after a series of particulars comprehended under it 'Ambition, interest, honour, all concurred.'

(5) A plural word used in a collective sense, and a collective noun in the singular number may be in apposition. 'The Bedouins, a wandering tribe, are the pest of Arabia'

CONCORD OF PARTICIPLE AND SUBSTANTIVE

354. The participle qualifies some noun or its equivalent, expressed, understood, or implied see secs 267, 269 (a), 270.

GOVERNMENT.

355. When one word in a sentence requires another in the same sentence to be put in a particular form or inflection, the former is said to govern the latter.

GOVERNMENT BY VERBS.

✓356. Transitive verbs govern nouns, pronouns, gerunds, and infinitives in the objective case 'I like John', 'I like him'; 'He is the boy whom I like best', 'I like riding', 'I like to ride.'

357. A transitive verb may govern a phrase or a clause 'He hates to be questioned', 'He does not wish that you should allude to the matter.'

358. Intransitive verbs may govern the objective cases of nouns of a kindred meaning, *i.e.*, may take cognate objects. See secs 281-2

Note—The participles and infinitives of all verbs which can take objects can also take objects 'Disliking hard work, he ran away from his master.' 'It is no use trying to do it' 'I saw him weep bitter tears.'

For Sequence of Tenses, see Chap III.

GOVERNMENT BY PREPOSITIONS.

359. Prepositions govern nouns, pronouns and gerunds in the objective case, as well as clauses 'I spoke to John (him)'; 'in trying to do it', 'as to whether he will come.'

* This may also be construed 'They went, every man went to his house, so as to make man the nominative of went understood.'

360. A preposition is sometimes used as part of a verb, and then it does not govern any word thus "He has no pen to write with", "He was laughed at by his friends". In the first example the preposition forms part of a gerundial infinitive, in the second it forms a transitive verb, by combining with an intransitive verb

RELATIONS.

361. Relation is the particular dependence or connection that exists between certain words in a sentence. The following are the relations of Syntax

- 1 Adjectives relate to nouns or pronouns
- 2 Participles relate to nouns or pronouns
- 3 Nouns or pronouns in the nominative case relate to finite verbs
- 4 Relative pronouns relate to antecedent (correlative) words
- 5 Finite verbs relate to nominative cases
- 6 Adverbs relate to verbs, adjectives or other adverbs See sec 120
- 7 Prepositions express a relation between words

THE ORDER OF WORDS

THE POSITION OF THE NOMINATIVE

362. The nominative generally precedes the verb, but this position is sometimes varied, as :

- 1 In *interrogative* sentences without an interrogative pronoun as subject 'Are ye alone?' but 'Who said so?' In 'what is your name?' *what* is not subject but in apposition with *name*
- 2 With the *imperative* mood when the nominative is expressed. 'Come ye'
- 3 In conditional clauses without *if* 'were I a rich man'
- 4 When a *wish* or *exclamation* is expressed 'May you be happy', 'How would we wish that heaven, &c'
- 5 When *neither* or *nor* (meaning *and not*), *not only*, *no sooner*, precede the verb, 'Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch of it'; 'This was his fear not was the apprehension groundless', 'Not only was he sick, but he was very much fatigued', 'No sooner did he hear of it, &c'
- 6 With preparatory *there* 'There is a house'
- 7 In introducing parts of a dialogue 'said he,' 'thought I'
- 8 For emphasis 'Great is Diana of the Ephesians.'

- 9 When the sentence is introduced by *there, here, hence, thence, above, below, now, then, hereafter, thus, up, down, &c.*, or by a prepositional phrase 'There is a house', 'Hence sprung his eminence', 'Above were the seraphim', 'In such misery ended his long career of worldly prosperity.'
- 10 In *poetry*, for emphasis or simply for the sake of *metre*
 'Then shook the hills with thunder riven
 Then rushed the steed to battle driven'

THE POSITION OF THE OBJECT.

363. Generally the object follows the governing verb, but it precedes the verb:

1 When it is an *interrogative* or a *relative* pronoun, or qualified by an interrogative or relative adjective 'What do you want?', 'the book *which* you gave me', '*which* promise he kept,' 'Which book do you want?'

2 When *emphasis* requires such a change 'So great a rogue I never saw before'

3. In *poetry*

'The snake each year fresh skin resumes'

Note—When two verbs govern the same object, the object is often, in poetry, placed after the first verb, and before the second, as "Hear thee so missay me and revile," i.e., hear thee so missay and revile me

THE POSITION OF PRONOUNS.

364. Generally pronouns come after the words they stand for; but this order is sometimes reversed—

'Hark! *they* whisper, angels say'

It at the beginning of sentences, and therefore *before* its antecedent, is common

365. Order of words of different persons.—When the first person is used with the second or third or both, the first person should be placed *last* '*you and he and I*', '*you or I*', '*he and I*'. But in confessing a fault, the speaker may put himself first '*I and Robert* are to blame for it' Also when there is great *difference in rank* between the speaker and the person spoken to, or spoken of, the first person may be put first '*I and my butler*.'

When the second and third persons are used, the third should come after the second '*You and he*'

366. The position of the Relative.—The relative

pronoun follows its antecedent except sometimes, especially in poetry 'Whom the cap fits, let him put it on'

'Who stoops to plunder at this signal hour
The birds shall tear him, and the dogs devour'

367. The Relative always precedes the Verb* whatever case it may be in 'He is wise to no purpose who is not wise for himself', 'God, whose creatures we are, &c.', 'We shun those whom we fear'

THE POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

368 The Adjective precedes the noun except—

- 1 When it qualifies a pronoun 'They left me uneasy' We do however sometimes say 'poo! me'
- 2 When other words depend on the adjective 'a mind conscious of right', 'a wall three feet thick'; 'a person worthy to be praised'

Note—Hence such adjectives as *averse*, *afraid*, *conformable*, which require modifying words or phrases, are never found before the nouns they qualify

- 3 When the quality expressed by the adjective results from the action expressed by the verb 'Virtue renders life happy'
- 4 When the adjective becomes more emphatic by being placed after the noun 'Goodness infinite'
- 5 When it qualifies the noun not directly but through a verb 'John is lazy' 'He became rich'
- 6 When it is used as a title 'Alfred the Great' 'Tarquin the Proud'
- 7 In certain titles of French origin *Princes Royal*, *Heir Apparent*, *Poet Laureate* Also in the grammatical term *nominative absolute*

Note—First, Second, &c, applied to a series of Kings follow the name 'Henry the Sixth' But we sometimes say "In the reign of the third Edward"

369. The Adjective may either precede or follow the noun—

- 1 In poetry 'The isles Atlantic,' 'the rich Hesperian clime'
- 2 When an adverb precedes the adjective 'A being infinitely wise,' or 'an infinitely wise being'
- 3 When there are several adjectives qualifying the same noun 'A woman, modest, sensible and virtuous,' or 'A modest, sensible and virtuous woman'
- 4 In some technical expressions 'A public notary,' or 'a notary public'

Note—When two or more adjectives connected by a conjunction qualify a noun, it is not unusual in poetry for one to precede the noun, and the others to follow it 'An honest man and wise'

* The verb in the relative clause, of course.

370. When a noun is qualified by *two adjectives* connected by *and* or *nor*, the shortest and simplest is generally placed first 'He is older and more respectable than his brother'

371. When *two adjectives* qualify the same noun without being connected by a conjunction, that expressing the most distinguishing quality should be expressed next to the noun 'a *fine* young man,' not 'a *young fine* man'

372. When *two adjectives* are combined, and both are in the comparative or in the superlative degree, one formed by *er* or *est*, and the other by *more* or *most*, it is better to put the former first 'He is the *ablest* and *most* conscientious defender they have', 'the *better* and *more* expeditious of the two routes'

373. "The first two", "the two first"—Adams says 'In speaking of two sets of objects, *the two first* means the *first* of each series. In speaking of one set of objects, *the first two* denotes the *first* and *second* of the series. Hence such errors as the following should be avoided 'We are now arrived at the conclusion of the *three first* chapters' "

Arnold is of a different opinion. He says "It has been fashionable of late to write the *first three*, and so on, instead of the *three first*. People write in this way to avoid the seeming absurdity of implying that more than *one* thing can be the first, but it is at least equally absurd to talk of the *first four* when (as often happens) there is no *second four* "

It may perhaps remove the scruples of those who ask *how* there can be more than one first, to consider that as soon as *the first* is removed, *another first* succeeds, and so on 'The fathers of the *five first* centuries'—Middleton 'I have not numbered the lines except of the *four first* books'—Couper.

THE POSITION OF THE ARTICLE

374. Both articles, when used with a noun only, *precede* the noun, when an adjective qualifies the noun, the adjective is generally placed between the article and the noun 'a man', 'the lost book.'

Note 1—When an ordinal is used to denote the position of anything in a series the article and the adjective may *precede* or *follow* the noun 'the fifth chapter' or 'chapter the fifth'

Note 2—When an adjective is used as a title or designation, the article and the adjective *follow* the noun 'Alfred the Great' 'George the Third'

Note 3—In other cases in which the noun precedes the adjective, the article is placed as usual *before* the noun 'a cause so glorious', 'the isle Atlantic'

375 The adjectives *all*, *both*, *many*, *such*, and *what* and other adjectives when preceded by *too*, *so*, *as*, *how*, stand before the article when it is used 'all the world', 'such a man', 'both the books', 'what a crowd', 'how long a letter'

EXCEPTION — *Many* is sometimes preceded by *the* 'the many favours you have done me', and by *a*, when *great* intervenes 'a great many books'

Note — When *so* is substituted for *such* in a phrase in which *such* and another adjective qualify a noun, the position of the article is changed. When *such* is used, the article comes between it and the other adjective 'such a tall man'. But when *so* is used instead of it, the article comes between the other adjective, and the noun 'so tall a man'

Few admits either *a* or *the* before it, or it is used *alone* but in each case with a different sense as—

'A few who were present were in the secret,' i.e., a very small number

'The few who were present were in the secret,' i.e., only a small number were present, but they were in the secret

'Few who were present were in the secret,' i.e., of those who were present (perhaps many) hardly any were in the secret

Note — Not a few is more emphatic than many

THE POSITION OF ADVERBS

376 Adverbs may ordinarily be inserted in any part of the clause of the sentence they qualify 'Unfortunately he thinks-too highly-of himself.' Here the adverb may be placed wherever there is a hyphen. But when they are found in the same clause with various words, any one of which they may qualify, they must be closely connected with the words to which they belong, and are *generally* placed *before* adjectives, *after* verbs and their objects, and *between* the auxiliary and the participle. Hence the following are wrong 'Sixtus the Fourth was a great collector of books, *at least*' 'By greatness I do *not only* mean the bulk of any single object, but the largeness of the whole view'

377 Position of the Adverb.—The *Adverb* is placed

1 *Before* adjectives, as, "A *truly* diligent man"

2 *After* a verb when it is single, and *after* the object of a transitive verb, as, "He speaks *correctly*", "He loves him *sincerely*" Sometimes, however, it precedes the verb, as, "He *really* respects him"

3 With verbs which have *one* auxiliary, either *between* the auxiliary, and the verb, or *after* both, as, "He has *diligently* employed his time", "He has spoken *well*", "He might *easily* have known the result", "He should have *earnestly*

urged it upon him." (But sometimes, when anything emphatical is intended, it *precedes* the auxiliaries, as, "And *certainly* you must have known")

4. When there are *two* auxiliaries, it is placed either *between* them, or *after* both, as 'He has *always* been my friend', 'He was a bad man *always*'

5. In *passive* verbs, generally *after* the auxiliary, when there is *one*, and frequently after the *last*, when there are *two* or *more*, as, "He was *graciously* received", "He might have been *correctly* instructed in that science"

6. When there are *several* adverbs, and *several* auxiliaries, to the same verb, in *different positions*, as, "I have *always* been *very much* perplexed under these circumstances"

7. In interrogative and exclamatory expressions, generally at the beginning of the sentence, as, "*How completely* this most amiable of human virtues had taken possession of his soul"

Note — 'A negative adverb is always placed before the participle, whether it is active or passive', as, 'Not having heard', 'Not having been seen'

378. The adverb requiring most attention is *only*. According to the position of *only* the very same words may be made to express very different meanings

- (1) 'He *only* lived for their sakes,' i.e., he *lived* but did not *work* or *die* or do any other thing for their sakes. *Only* qualifies *lived* for their sakes
- (2) 'He lived *only* for the sakes,' i.e., he lived for that one reason and no other. *Only* qualifies for their sake.
- (3) 'He lived for their sakes *only*,' and not for any more worthy person. *Only* qualifies for their sakes as in (2). When thus placed at the end, *only* gives a diminutive or disparaging signification
- (4) '*Only* he lived for their sakes,' and no one else lived for their sakes. *Only* qualifies *he*

Note 1 — *Only* is sometimes used as an adversative conjunction, at the beginning of a sentence or clause

→ 'Do as you please, *only* let your intention be apparent'

Note 2. — *Only* should generally be placed *before* the word it modifies
✓ 'Edward VI. reigned *only* *17* years'

✓ 379. In interrogative and exclamatory sentences the adverb which expresses the question or exclamation is generally placed first. 'When did you see him?' "How tall you have grown!"

380. The negative *not* always precedes participles, infinitives, and gerunds "not heaping", "not having heard", "He thinks of not agreeing to the proposal"

381. The adverb *enough* always follows the adjective it modifies "This house is not large enough for me."

THE POSITION OF PREPOSITIONS

382 Prepositions usually precede the words which they govern, but—

1 In sentences with a relative clause, the preposition is often placed last 'The book I am speaking of'

2 So also when the object is an interrogative pronoun or qualified by an interrogative adjective "What are you thinking of?", "Which book do you refer to?"

3 When the relative in such a clause is omitted, or when *that* is used as a relative, the preposition *must* come last 'Here is the book (that) I spoke of'

4 In poetry, the preposition is sometimes put after the word it governs

'Thy deep ravines and dells among'

ELLIPSIS

ELLIPSIS OF THE SUBJECT

383 The subject is omitted in English

1 In the present imperative 'Awake, arise, or be forever fallen'

2 In the expression of a wish with *would* '(I) Would he were here!'

3. In the elliptical expressions 'Thank you', 'Pray, be careful' Compare *Præthee* (= I pray thee)

4 In poetry when the verb is in the second person singular, and the sentence is interrogative The suffix determines the person 'Art in prison?' Make right use of it, and mortify thyself'

5 In the impersonal verbs *methinks*, *methought*, *meeseems*, where it is understood. *Methinks* = *it thinks* (i.e., seems) to me. In these, the real subject is the noun clause which follows the verb

6 In contracted sentences 'He played and sang'

Note—When there is *one* subject to two or more finite verbs, it is, in general, expressed only before the *first*, and understood before the rest, as, "Herod sent and beheaded John" But, when emphasis is intended, the nominative is repeated before each verb, as, "He walked, he ran, he leaped for joy"

If the verbs are in *different* Moods and Tenses, the nominative is *generally* repeated, when connected by *and*, as, "I know it *and* I can prove it"—The nominative is *always* repeated when the sentence is interrogative or emphatical, as, 'Do you say so, and can you prove it?'

The subject or nominative is also repeated when it is separated from the verb by an adjunct of considerable length, as one consisting of a number of phrases or clauses, as "John whom I picked up in the streets, an orphan and a beggar, whom I got educated at my own expense, who, in short, owes everything to me—*John*, I say, has turned his back on me in my distress."

ELLIPSIS OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

384. The Relative Pronoun is omitted—

1 Often when it is an *object* 'The book [*that*] you sent me

2 In poetry and sometimes in colloquial language, when it is a *subject* 'There is a man at the gate [*who*] wants you,'
i.e., *our* wants

'His distance [*that*] lends enchantment to the view

ELLIPSIS OF THE ANTECEDENT

385 The antecedent is sometimes omitted, especially in poetry 'How shall I curse [*them*] whom God hath not cursed ?'

'Who steals my purse steals trash'

386. The antecedent is sometimes not expressed but *implied* 'He has paid all his debts, which is more than I expected.' The antecedent of *which* here is *his paying his debts*, or some such words to be supplied from the previous clause

The antecedent is sometimes implied in a possessive case

'Can I believe *his* love will lasting, prove

Who has no reverence for the God I love'

i.e., *love of him who has*, &c

ELLIPSIS OF THE VERB

387. The verb *to be* is frequently omitted in poetry, and occasionally in prose 'Nothing [*is*] so good but it may be abused'

'Sweet [*are*] the hum

Of bees, the voice of girls, the song of birds,

'The hush of children, and their earliest words'

388. Sometimes the verb *said* or *spoke* is omitted, in imitation of classic idiom

"Then Hector [*spoke*] thus 'Ye dauntless Daidans here,
&c.'

"Thus Satan [*spoke*], talking to his nearest mate"

389 In exclamatory sentences the main verb is often omitted 'To think that he should have been so unfortunate,' i.e., how sad it is to think, &c 'O woe [be to] the day!'

390. The omission of the infinitive after *may*, *can*, *shall*, *will*, *must*, *do*, is usual in replies to questions, and in secondary clauses "'Do you know him?' 'No, I *do* not'" "I could not sleep last night, I never *can* when it rains." "'Will you go?' 'I will'"

391 The auxiliary verb may be omitted in the second of two co-ordinate clauses if the nominatives of both the verbs to which it belongs can take the same form of the auxiliary, as, "We are speaking of one thing, and you thinking of another," but not "I am speaking of one thing, and he thinking of another."

392 When one nominative takes two or more verbs composed of the same principal verb with different auxiliaries, the principal verb may be omitted in all except the last, except when *ought* is one of the auxiliaries, as, "I can, must, and will go", but not "I can and ought to go." The latter sentence should be "I can go, and ought to go"

393 In making comparisons, the verb is frequently in the latter of two clauses 'You are taller than I [am]' 'I am as tall as you [are]'

ELLIPSIS OF THE PREPOSITION

394 A preposition governing two or more nouns, pronouns, &c, is generally expressed only with the first, as "For England, [for] home, and [for] beauty", "We succeed by industry and [by] perseverance"

395 A preposition is sometimes wrongly supposed to be omitted before *adverbial accusatives*, as in "He came this morning," "He walked ten miles." For the explanation of this construction, see secs 285-6

396. Certain adjectives, as *like*, *nigh*, *neat*, *near*, have, in modern English at least, the power of governing a noun or pronoun in the objective case, and it is wrong to say that the preposition *to* is understood after them, as, "His house is near mine", "He is not at all like his brother."

ELLIPSIS OF THE CONJUNCTION.

397 When several words of the same part of speech, or several clauses come together, the conjunction is placed before the last only, and is understood between the others 'John, James, and Harry have commenced their studies', 'I spoke to him, he insulted me, and I knocked him down'

Sometimes the conjunction is entirely omitted the better to express a close connection, or a quick succession of objects or events 'I came, I saw, I conquered.'

398 When the same conjunction is attached to two or more clauses, it is generally expressed before the first only, as 'If the weather be fine and [if] all be well, we shall go for a walk'

399 The conjunction *if* is frequently omitted from before a verb in the subjunctive mood, the condition being expressed by putting the nominative after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the principal verb "Were he a fool", "Had I gone"

400. The conjunction *that* is often omitted in assertive or declaratory sentences "He told me he was going"

401 The conjunction *yet* is often omitted after a concessional clause "Though he has often questioned me about the matter, I have not told him the truth."

402 The conjunctions *either* and *neither* are sometimes omitted, especially in poetry, as,

"[Neither] helm nor hauberk's twisted mail,"
"Bring him hither [either] alive or dead"



D The Gerundial Infinitive—

1. Form. 2. Syntax:—

- i. **QUALIFYING** (1) —
(2) —understood
- ii. **MODIFYING** (1) *the verb* (a) —
(b) —understood
(2) *the adjective* (a) —
(b) —understood
(3) *the adverb* (a) —
(b) —understood

E The Participle—

1. Form. 2. Syntax:—

- i. **QUALIFYING** (1) —
(2) —implied in the possessive—
- ii. **USED ABSOLUTELY.**
- iii. **USED INSTEAD OF THE INFINITIVE.**

410. THE ADVERB.—

A. The Simple Adverb—

1. Kind. 2. Degree. 3. Syntax:—

- i. **MODIFYING** (1) *the verb* —
(2) *the adjective* —
(3) *the adverb* —
(4) *the noun* —
(5) *the pronoun* —
(6) *the noun, &c., phrase* —
- ii. **USED TO INTRODUCE THE SUBJECT** —
- iii. **USED EXPLICITLY**
- iv. **EQUIVALENT TO A SENTENCE**

B. The Relative Adverb—

1. Kind. 2. Syntax:—

- MODIFYING**—(as for the simple adverb) and
connecting—
(1) *the subordinate clause* —with—
(2) —(word or phrase) with—

411. THE PREPOSITION —

Syntax —

- GOVERNING** (1) *the noun* —, and joining it to —
(2) *the pronoun* — — — —
(3) *the infinitive* — — — —
(4) *the gerund* — — — —

- GOVERNING (5) *the noun phrase*— and joining it to —
 (6) *the noun clause*— ————
 (7) *the adjective*— ————
 (8) *the adverb*— ————
 (9) *the adverbial phrase*— ————

412. THE CONJUNCTION —

A *The Co-Ordinative Conjunction—*

Syntax —

- CONNECTING (1) *the co ordinate clauses*— and —
 (2) *the words (not verbs)*— and —
 (3) *the phrases*— and —
 (4) *the word*— and *the phrase*—

B *The Subordinative Conjunction—*

Syntax—

- CONNECTING (1) *the subordinate clause*— with —
 (2) *the adjective (participle, or adjective phrase)*— with —
 (3) *the noun (or noun phrase)*— with —
 (4) *the adverb (or adverbial phrase)*— with —

413. THE INTERJECTION—

Interjections are simply described as such they have no syntax

HINTS AND CAUTIONS

414 Words to be parsed in combination with other words Each *separate* word in a sentence should be *parsed by itself*, except in the following cases

- (1) *Complex names* "the property of John William Brown"
- ✓(2) *Names joined together by a conjunction, and taking the possessive inflection for the last only* "John, William, and Mary's uncle."
- (3) *Noun phrases in the possessive case* "the Queen of England's crown"

- (4) *Noun phrases governed as phrases by prepositions* "There is an agreement between Robert and Richard."
- (5) *Pronominal phrases governed as phrases by prepositions* "A fight took place between him and me."
- (6) *Comparatives and superlatives formed by "more," "less," "most," "least" "a most stupid mistake", "he speaks less distinctly than before"*

Note—In such cases, *more*, *less*, &c., may, if required, be parsed as adverbs modifying the adjectives or adverbs to which they are joined

- (7) *Passive forms of verbs, whether simple or complex* "He was beaten severely", "They were laughed at", "The horse was taken care of."
- (8) *Future indefinite tense forms* "He will die"
- (9) *Compound tense-forms* "I have been writing", "I did write", "He will have finished the work by evening"
- (10) *Infinitives, participles, and gerunds consisting of two or more words* "to go," "to be writing," "having been beaten," "a house to let."
- (11) *Complex nouns, complex adjectives, complex verbs, complex adverbs, complex prepositions, and complex conjunctions* "A greater than Solomon is here", "It was more than sufficient", "He more than redeemed his promise", "He spoke more than bluntly", "As to his ability there is no question", "John as well as James were absent"
- (12) *Gerundial infinitives with prepositions joined to them* "We are not eyes given to see with?"
- (13) *Interrogative and negative forms with "do"* "Did he go?", "I did not say so"
- (14) *Verb forms with clefture "do"* "They set bread before him, and he did eat"

415 Words that may be parsed together or separately. In the following cases, the conjoined words may be parsed together or separately —

- (1) *Double prepositions* "from amongst," "amounting to between two and three pounds."
- (2) *Some prepositional phrases, as "by way of," "with regard to," "in spite of," "as regards"*
- (3) *Some phrase conjunctions, as "as far as," "seeing that," "in as much as"*

416 **Interrogative Pronouns** Care should be taken to distinguish between the subjective and the appositional use of interrogative pronouns. "*What is his name?*" Here *what* is in apposition to *name*, which is the nominative of *is*, as will be evident if we change *name* into *names* "*What are their names?*" As the verb changes in number with *name*, it must agree with *name*. But in the sentence "*Who said so?*", *who* is the nominative to the verb *said*.

417. **Reflexive Pronouns.** The reflexive pronouns are always in the objective case, and may be governed by a transitive verb, by an intransitive verb used transitively, or by an intransitive verb and a preposition taken together, as "*I hurt myself*," "*He talked himself out of breath*", "*He laughed at himself*."

418. **Emphatic Pronouns** The emphatic pronouns are generally in apposition to nouns or pronouns, as "*He himself told me so*", "*I spoke to John himself*" Here *himself* is in the nominative case in apposition to *he*, in the first example, and in the objective case in apposition to *John*, in the second. But sometimes they are used by themselves as nominatives to verbs, or are governed by transitive verbs or prepositions, as "*Himself is to blame for it*", "*I meant yourself and no one else by that term*", "*None but yourself would imagine such a thing of me*."

419 **Adjective used absolutely.** The adjective is sometimes used without qualifying any noun or equivalent of a noun, expressed or understood, as, "*To be wise is better than to be rich*" In parsing, adjectives so used are simply described as "*used absolutely*" No noun is supplied, to complete the construction.

420 **"Active" and "Neuter" Verbs.** Avoid the terms "*active*" and "*neuter*" as sometimes applied to verbs. *Active* verbs, if the term has any meaning, must be verbs which express action, but syntax does not distinguish between verbs which express action, and verbs which do not express action—it only distinguishes between verbs which express *action passing to an object*, and those which do not, the second class including verbs that do not express any action at all. As to the term "*neuter*," it is simply nonsensical as usually applied to verbs. *Neuter* means *neither*, and there must be *two other classes* of verbs before we can have a class of "*neuter verbs*" To divide verbs therefore into "*active and neuter verbs*" is obviously absurd.

421. **Adverb.** Simple adverbs modify verbs, adjectives,

other adverbs, &c. *Relative* adverbs *modify* the verbs in the clauses which they introduce, and *connect* those clauses with other clauses.

422 Prepositions governing phrases Some prepositions, as *between*, govern *whole phrases*, not single nouns or pronouns "John sat *between* James and Robert." To say that *between* here governs *James* and *Robert* separately is to commit the obvious absurdity of saying "John sat *between* James, and *between* Robert"

In such phrases also as "from on high," the preposition must be taken as governing the whole phrase, which, though not a noun phrase, has the force of one "from a place on high."

423 Conjunctions connect not only clauses, but also words and phrases Some grammarians insist that in *all* cases in which conjunctions join words or phrases together they really connect clauses forming a contracted or elliptical sentence This explanation might do very well for such a sentence as "John and James have arrived," that is, "John has arrived, and James has arrived", but it is simply absurd when applied to such sentences as "Two and three is (or, make) five," "John and Mary are cousins", "He and I are of the same age", "Blue and yellow make green"

424 Adverbial accusative The adverbial accusative, which is a use of the objective case, always modifies a verb, a noun phrase, a pronoun, an adjective, or an adverb, as, "I went *ten miles* from home," "I buy sugar at three annas a *pound*," "He sold them at a rupee *each*", "I am three *years* older than he", "I walked a great *deal* faster than was necessary."

425 Infinitives have no tense, and therefore it is absurd to speak of present infinitives They should be called *imperfect*, or *simple*, infinitives.

426 Participles also have no tense, and we should not speak of present and past participles We should call them *imperfect* and *perfect* participles (or *complete* and *incomplete* participles, as some grammarians prefer to call them) The construction of a participle is like that of an adjective.

427 Participle used absolutely. When a participle is used absolutely, that is, without a noun or pronoun to refer to, it is simply described as so used, or is parsed as a "participle qualifying *we* understood", as, "*Talking* of novels, here is one just published"

428 "Participial nouns" The gerund is sometimes,

but wrongly, called "a participle used as a noun," or "a participial noun" The participle is an adjective, and adjectives are used as nouns, it is true, but an adjective cannot pass into an *abstract* noun (which the gerund virtually is) without having the definite article before it (except in poetry) No more can a participle become an abstract noun without the definite article before it When a form in *-ing* without the definite article before it, has the force of an abstract noun, it is either a gerund or a verbal noun, as "*Walking* is healthy", "*Painting* is one of the fine arts"

429 **Gerundial Infinitive** The gerundial infinitive originally expressed purpose, but has lost that force in some of its uses, as "I am glad *to see* you," "He was the first *to come*," "To hear him talk, one would suppose he was master here." It, however, has always the force of an *adjective* or an *adverb*, and may be distinguished from the infinitive by that fact When it has an adjectival force, it *qualifies* a noun, and when it has an adverbial force, it *modifies* a word, phrase, or clause The gerundial infinitive is sometimes called the *infinitive of purpose*

430. **Participle used for Infinitive.** Sometimes the participle is used instead of the infinitive, as "in consequence of the telegram *being delayed*" This does not mean "in consequence of the telegram, when it was (or, which was) delayed," but "in consequence of the being delayed, or delay, of the telegram" But to avoid the harshness of saying "the telegram's being delayed," the participle is used for the infinitive, and may be parsed as a "participle used instead of the infinitive, referring to the noun or pronoun—."

431 **Complex subjects.** "*Fifty Rupees* was given to him", "*The Pleasures of Hope* is a delightful poem" Here the entire phrases form the subjects of the verbs, which, in such cases has no *nominative* *Was given* agrees with "*Fifty Rupees*," and is with "*The Pleasures of Hope*"

432 "**Expressed,**" "**understood,**" &c When a word is *expressed*, the fact is not mentioned in parsing, but when a word is *understood*, or *implied*, it is described as *understood*, or *implied*

433. "**Coming after**" It is absurd to describe a noun or pronoun, in parsing as "coming after the verb—." Parsing has nothing to do with the *position* of a word, it requires the *construction* to be given Besides, a word parsed as "coming after" some other word, will have to be parsed as "going before" it, if the order of the words is changed, "The

smith is a mighty man", "a mighty man is the smith" These sentences are identical in meaning and construction, and differ only in the order of the words, and *man* has precisely the same construction in both, being in opposition to *smith*. If we parse it as "*coming after* the verb *is*" in the first, we should, to be consistent, parse it as "*going before* the verb *is*" in the second, which we do not suppose any one would do.

434. "Depending on" is another phrase often used in parsing, when a person is unable, or is too lazy, to ascertain the exact nature of the relation of one word to another. Syntax only recognises two kinds of relation between words—concord and government, the relation between adjectives or participles and nouns or pronouns, between nouns and adjectives, &c, coming under the first. If one word depends on another, there is no use of stating the fact unless you specify the nature of the dependence, and if you state the nature of the dependence it is unnecessary to state the fact of its dependence.

435. "Referring to" This term should be used only with reference to pronouns or participles.

436. "Object after"; "object on" The objection urged against "*coming after*" applies to "*object after*" with greater force, for it is a common usage, especially in poetry, to put the object *before* the verb which governs it. What "object on" means we do not know, nor do we know who invented the phrase. As the object denotes the person or thing that the action falls *on*, it should be described as *under*, rather than *on*, the verb.

437. Words and things Do not confound words with things, or things with words. Do not parse a noun or pronoun in the possessive case, for example, as "*possessing* the noun ——" A word cannot possess anything except the letters of which it is composed. If I say "John's hat is new," I do not assert that the word *John's* possesses the word *hat*, but only that the person called John possesses a thing called a hat.

An adjective is often defined as "a word which denotes the *quality of a noun*." An adjective does not denote the quality of a noun, but of the *thing denoted by a noun*.

Take care, also, not to confound words with the forms of words. Do not say, for example, that a noun is the *nominative case* to a verb. A noun is not a case, and the *nominative* of a verb is a word, and not a form of a word.

EXAMPLES OF FULL PARSING.

438

- (1) When through life unblest we rove,
 Losing all that made life dear,
 Should some notes we used to love
 In days of boyhood meet our ear,
 Oh ! how welcome breathes the strain ,
 Wakening thoughts that long have slept,
 Kindling former smiles again
 In fading eyes that long have wept

When—a relative adverb of time, modifying the verb *rove*, and connecting the subordinate clause “through life unblest we rove,” with the clause “how welcome breathes the strain !”

Through—a preposition governing the noun *life*

Life—an abstract noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, objective case, governed by the preposition *through*

Unblest—an adjective qualifying the pronoun *we*

We—a personal pronoun, first person, plural number, nominative case, nominative to the verb *rove*

Rove—an intransitive verb, weak conjugation, active voice, indicative mood, present indefinite tense, first person, plural number, agreeing with its nominative *we*.

Losing—an imperfect participle, qualifying the pronoun *we*.

All—an indefinite pronoun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, objective case, governed by the transitive verb *losing*

That—a relative pronoun, agreeing with its antecedent *all* in gender, number, and person, nominative case, nominative to the verb *made*

Made—a transitive verb, weak conjugation, active voice, indicative mood, past indefinite tense, third person, singular number, agreeing with its nominative *that*.

Dear—a qualitative adjective, positive degree, qualifying the noun *life* factitively (or, predicatively).

Should †—an auxiliary verb, transitive, weak conjugation, active voice, subjunctive mood, past indefinite tense, third person, plural number, agreeing with its nominative *notes*

N B —“Should some notes meet” = if some notes should meet

* Or these particulars may be expressly stated, thus “referring to the antecedent *all*, neuter gender, third person, singular number,” &c

† Mason would parse “should meet” together, as a subjunctive,

Some--an indefinite numeral adjective, qualifying the noun *notes*.

Notes--a common noun, neuter gender, third person, plural number, agreeing with the verb *should* [*meet*]

Used--a transitive verb, weak conjugation, active voice, indicative mood, past indefinite tense, first person, plural number, agreeing with its nominative *we*

To love--a simple infinitive, complement of the intransitive verb *used*

Meet--a simple infinitive, governed by the transitive verb *should*

Our--a (personal) possessive adjective, qualifying the noun *ear*.

Oh!--an interjection, expressing surprise.

How--a simple adverb of degree, modifying the adjective *welcome*.

Welcome--a qualitative adjective, positive degree, qualifying the noun *strain* predicatively

The--the definitive article, defining the noun *strain*.

Long--a simple adverb of time, modifying the verb *have slept*

Former--a demonstrative adjective, defining the noun *smiles*

Fading--a participial adjective, qualifying the noun *eyes*.

The parsing may be shortened as shown below --

When--relative adverb, modifying *love*, and connecting, &c, (as before).

Through--preposition governing *life*

Life--abstract noun, neuter, third person, singular, governed, &c (as before)

Rove--intransitive verb, weak, active, indicative, present indefinite, first person, plural, agreeing, &c, (as before)

Dear--adjective, qualifying *life*.

Oh--interjection -

Note --Instead of saying "common noun," "personal pronoun," "transitive verb," &c, we may say "noun, common," "pronoun, personal," "verb, transitive," &c

(2) Adieu ! If this advice appear the worst,
 E'en take the counsel which I gave you first,
 Or, better precepts if you can impart,
 Why do, I'll follow them all with my heart.

Adieu!--an interjection expressing courtesy.

The—the definite article, defining the noun *advice* understood

Worst—a qualitative adjective, superlative degree, qualifying the noun *advice* understood.

E'en (= *even*), a simple adverb of degree,* modifying the verb *take*.

Take—a transitive verb, weak, active voice, imperative mood †, second person, plural number, agreeing with its nominative *you* understood

You—a personal pronoun, second person, plural number, objective case, indirect object, governed by the transitive verb *take*

Or—a co-ordinative conjunction, connecting the co ordinate clauses "even take the counsel," and "do [you]"

Impart—a transitive verb, weak, active voice, simple infinitive, governed by the transitive (auxiliary) verb *can*

Why—a simple adverb of reason, used expletively (or, interjectionally)

[*Pl* = *I will*]

I—a personal pronoun, first person, singular number, nominative case, nominative to the verb *will follow*

Will follow—a transitive verb, weak, active voice, indicative mood, future indefinite tense, first person, singular number, agreeing with its nominative *I*

All—an indefinite numeral adjective, qualifying the noun *heart*.

(3) Verily, methinks,

Wisdom is oft-times nearer when we stoop
Than when we soar

Verily—a simple adverb of certainty, modifying the clause 'wisdom is oft-times nearer'

Methinks—an impersonal verb, resolvable into *me* + *thinks*

Me—the old dative case of the first personal pronoun.

Thinks (= *seems*), an intransitive verb, strong, active voice, indicative mood, present tense, third person, singular, agreeing with the subject the clause 'verily wisdom is soar.'

Nearer—a qualitative adjective, comparative degree, qualifying the noun *wisdom* predicatively.

Than—a subordinative conjunction, connecting the clause "it is," understood, with the clause "wisdom is oft times nearer"

* 'I can take' = "Just take, do not more than take"

† The imperative mood has no distinction of tense. It is always in the present tense.

CONSTRUCTIONS OF FAMILIAR WORDS EXPLAINED

✓ 439 About—

1 'What are you talking *about*?'—*About*, preposition governing *what*

2 'He wrapped his cloak *about* him.'—*About* (=around), preposition governing *him*.

3 'He is wandering *about* the place'—*About* (=over), preposition governing *place*

4 'He is wandering *about* from house to house'—*About*, adverb modifying *wandering*

5. 'He is *about* to start'—*About*, preposition governing the infinitive *to start*

6 'He is *about* as tall as my brother'—*About*, adverb modifying "as tall"

440. After—

1 'He came *after* the appointed time'—*After*, preposition governing *time*

2 'He came *after* the appointed time had passed'—*After*, relative adverb connecting the subordinate with the principal clause

3 'Jack fell down and broke his crown,
And Jill came tumbling *after*'—*After*, adverb modifying *came*.

4 'He came three days *after*'—*After*, adverb modifying *came*

5 'This will be remembered in *after* ages'—*After*, preposition used as an adjective, qualifying *ages*

✓ 441 Ago—

'I came here three days *ago*'—*Ago*, adverb modifying the phrase "three days." *Ago* is an abbreviation of *anyone* (=a + gone), being gone, and the phrase "three days ago" is really an example of the absolute construction.

✓ 442 All—

1. 'All of us perished.'—*All*, adjective used as a noun

2. ✓ 'He rushed up *all* out of breath'—*All* (=entirely), adverb modifying *out of breath*

3 ✓ 'All the better'—*All*, adverb modifying *the better*.

4 ✓ 'All is in vain, he will not help us at *all*'—*All*, noun

5. 'The men *all* perished'—*All*, adjective to *men*, or, used as a noun, nominative absolute 'the men perished, *all* perishing'

443. Any—

1. 'Have you *any* money with you?'—*Any*, adjective qualifying *money*

2. 'Do *any* of you want this book?'—*Any*, pronoun (or adjective used as a noun).

3. 'Are you *any* better?'—*Any*, adverb modifying *better*.

444. As—

1. 'I have not such kind treatment *as* I used to have'

As is here a relative and is governed by *to have*.

2. 'I have never seen such a man *as* this'

Here also *as* is a relative pronoun and is in apposition with *this*, *this* being nominative to *is* understood.

3. 'You are late again, *as* usual'

Filling up the ellipsis, we have 'You are late again, *as* is usual'

As, relative pronoun nominative to *is*.

4. 'You must work before you play, *as* I told you before'

As is here equivalent to *which*, and is a relative pronoun, objective case, governed by *told*

5. 'This shall serve us *as* ink,'

i.e., 'This shall serve us *as* ink would serve us'

As, relative adverb connecting the subordinate with the principal clause

6. 'He considered pleasure *as* the object of life,'

i.e., (1) He considered pleasure *as* the object of life (would be considered), or,

(2) He considered pleasure *as* (he would consider) the object of life

(3) He considered pleasure *as* (he would consider it if it were) the object of life

Note—*Object* may be parsed in three ways

1. *as* in apposition with *pleasure*,

2. *as* nominative to *would be considered*

3. *as* object governed by *would consider*

7. 'He loved her *as* if she had been his own daughter,'

i.e., He loved her *as* (he would have loved her) if she had been his own daughter.

This shows the construction of *as*, and of the adverbial

clause
 8. 'He loved her *as* though she had been his own daughter'
 i.e., He loved her *as* (much as he could, so that he could not have loved her more) though she had been his own daughter

9. 'Young as I am, I cannot be deceived by this'—*As* (=though), conjunction

The fuller construction is "As young as I am," and this appears to be an abbreviation of "(Be I) as young as I am," i.e., though I be

10. 'As an author he did not succeed'—He did not succeed as an author (would be said to succeed).

11. 'The arguments were as follow', 'The argument was as follows'

As is in both cases a relative pronoun, and is nominative to *follow*, *follows*. The given sentences may be written thus 'The arguments were such as follow,' 'the argument was such as follows'

12. 'He spoke as follows'—He spoke in such a manner as follows. *As* would still therefore be a relative. Some regard *follows* as used impersonally 'He spoke as it follows'

13. 'You will reap as you sow', 'He trembled as he spoke', 'As you are so anxious to go, you may have leave for to-morrow'—*As*, conjunction

14. 'As to (as for) that, you may please yourself'—*As* here forms a prepositional phrase with *to* (*for*), if we parse it separately, we may take it as an adverb modifying the phrase 'to (for) that'

✓ 15. 'He spoke so loud as to be heard distinctly from the street'—*As*, relative adverb "so loud as he would speak (in order) to be heard, &c."

Note—In poetry *as* is often used for *as if*, *as*

"I will obey, not willingly alone,

But gladly as the precept were her own"—*Corpus*
To parse *as* supply *if* after it

✓ 445 Before—

1. 'Come and see me before you leave.'—*Before*, conjunction or relative adverb

2. 'He came before me'—*Before*, preposition.

3. 'I told you that before'—*Before*, adverb

✓ 4. 'He was assailed before and behind.'—*Before* (=in front), adverb modifying *was assailed*

✓ 5. 'The son died before the father.'—*Before*, preposition governing *father*

446. Behind—

1. 'He hid behind a wall'—*Behind*, preposition governing *wall*.

2 'Do not lag *behind*'—*Behind*, adverb modifying *lag*
 ✓ 447 *Beside*, *besides*—

1 'His bow hung *beside* him', 'He was *beside* himself with anger'—*Beside*, preposition

2 'He has no income *besides* his pay'—*Besides*, preposition

✓ 3. '*Besides*, there is the expense to be considered.'—*Besides*, conjunction (= moreover)

✓ 4. 'He is a rogue, whatever else he may be *besides*.'—*Besides*, adverb.

448 *Both*—

1 '*Both* countries were eager for war'—*Both*, adjective qualifying *countries*

2 'I *both* sent and wrote'—*Both*, conjunction

3. '*Both* of them were absent'—*Both*, adjective used as a noun

4 '*Both* the living and the dead'—*Both*, conjunction

✓ 449 *But*—

1 'I went to see him, *but* he was from home'—*But*, conjunction

2 'It is *but* proper you should do so'—*But* (=only), adverb

3 'All *but* John, were present'—*But* (=except), preposition

✓ 4 'The brand which none *but* he could wield.'

Some grammarians say that *but* and *save*, when they mean exception, should govern the objective case but this is not according to the usage of the best authors Cf

The boy stood on the burning deck
 Whence all *but* he had fled

Perhaps we may take *but* as used with the force of the participle *excepted* in these cases 'But he'=he (except) excepted

5 'Who knows *but* he will improve'=who knows (any thing) *but* (except) that he will improve=who knows that he will not improve—*But*, preposition governing the noun clause following it

6 'There is no one *but* likes him'

'*But* likes'=who does not like—*But*, relative pronoun, nominative to *likes*

7. '*But* for you, we should have failed'

But (except) used without a verb, generally in connexion with some preposition *but for*, *but to*, &c., may be explained either as a preposition governing an adverbial phrase (as does *from* in 'from on high'), or as a conjunction with a verb omitted.

'*But for you, we should have failed*' = '*If it had not been (otherwise) for (i.e., because of) you, we should have failed*'

The first mode of parsing seems preferable

8 "No cliff so bare *but* on its steep
Thy favours may be found"

But, negative conjunction equivalent to *that not*.

✓ 9 '*But me no buts*'—*But*, conjunction used as a verb, ✓
imperative mood, *buts*, noun. Cf. '*I thou thee, thou traitor.*'

450 *By*—

1 '*Sit by me*', '*By land and water*', '*He passed by me*',
'*Take by force*'—*By*, preposition

✓ 2. '*I stood by, while they fought.*'—*By*, adverb

451 *Close*—

1. '*Close the gate.*'—*Close*, verb, in the imperative mood

2 '*This is a close compartment*'—*Close*, adjective, qualifying the noun *compartment*.

3. '*The music came to a close*'—*Close*, noun, governed by the preposition *to*

4. '*Sit close so as to provide room for all*'—*Close*, adverb, modifying the verb *sit*

452. *Down*—

✓ 1 '*I came down by train.*'—*Down*, adverb

2. '*He went down the road*'—*Down*, preposition

✓ 3 '*He sank down with fatigue*'—*Down*, adverb.

✓ 4 '*The up and down trains*'—*Down*, adjective

✓ 5 '*Down with the tyrant*'—*Down*, verb in the imperative mood

✓ 453 *Each other ; one another*—

They loved { *each other* } is a contraction of
{ *one another* }
'they loved, *each loved the other* (*one loving another*).'

Each and *one* are nominatives to *loved*, and *other* and *another* objects to *loved* understood.

Similarly '*They looked at each other*' = '*They looked, each looked at the other.*'

Each, nominative to *locked* understood, *other*, governed by *at*

454. *Either*, *neither*—

1 ' *Either* (*neither*) book will do '—*Either* (*neither*), distributive adjective

2. ' *Either* you must go of your own accord, or I will make you go '—*Either*, conjunction

3 *Either* (*neither*) of them will serve my purpose.—*Either* (*neither*) distributive pronoun

455 *Else*—

1 'There was no one *else* in the room '—*Else*, adjective

2 'I do not know what we should have done *else* '—*Else*, adverb (=otherwise).

3 'I do not know him, *else* I would have spoken to him on your behalf.'—*Else*, conjunction

456 *Enough*—

1 'He has been punished *enough*.'—*Enough*, adverb to *punished*

2 'We have had *enough* of wandering'—*Enough*, noun, object of *have had*

3 'We have not *enough* men'—*Enough*, adjective to *men*

4 'We have not men *enough* '—*Enough*, adjective to *men*

457 *Even*—

1 ' *Even* numbers '—*Even*, adjective.

2 ' *Even* now '—*Even*, adverb

3 ' *Even* so did he say '—*Even* (exactly), adverb

458 *Every*—

'There is a lamp-post *every* hundred yards '—Here *hundred-yards* may be taken as a compound noun, like *fortnight* (=fourteen night), *twelvemonth*, &c, and *every* qualifying it

459 *Fell*—

1 'He *fell* from a tree '—*Fell*, intransitive verb, past tense.

2 'He was going to *fell* the tree.'—*Fell*, transitive (causative) verb

3. 'A *fell* enemy '—*Fell* (=dreadful), adjective

4 'They fled o'er flood and *fell*.'—*Fell* (=mountain), noun

460. *Fai*—

1. 'He comes from a *fai* country'—*Fai*, adjective qualifying *country* attributively

2. 'It is *fai* from my intention to justify his conduct'—*Fai*, adjective qualifying *it*, predicatively

3. 'He lives *fai* from this place.'—*Fai*, adverb.

4. 'This book is *fai*, better than that'—*Fai*, adverb modifying *better*.

✓5. 'This is by *fai* the best book on the subject'—*Fai*, noun.

461. *Fast*—

✓1. 'To make *fast* the door', 'a *fast* horse', 'a *fast* friend.'—*Fast*, adjective.

2. 'He ran *fast*'—*Fast*, adverb.

3. 'A forty days' *fast* was proclaimed'—*Fast*, noun.

4. 'They *fast* to-day, as it is Good Friday'—*Fast*, verb

✓5. '*Fast* by the throne obsequious Fame resides.'—*Fast*, adjective "fast by"=close to

462. *For*—

1. 'He works *for* daily hire'—*For*, preposition

2. 'I cannot believe you, *for* you have once deceived me'—*For*, conjunction

463. *Full*—

1. 'A *full* pot', 'the pot is *full*'—*Full*, adjective

✓2. 'I have paid him in *full*'—*Full*, noun.

✓3. '*Full* fain was he.'—*Full*, adverb "full fain"=quite glad.

464. *Half*—

✓1. '*Half* a rupee', 'a half holiday'—*Half*, adjective.

2. 'He was *half* murdered', 'it is only *half* done', 'he has not been punished *half* enough'—*Half*, adverb.

✓3. 'He gave me *half* of his money.'—*Half*, noun.

465. *Hard*—

1. 'A *hard* task', '*hard* times'—*Hard*, adjective

2. 'He works *hard*'—*Hard*, adverb.

✓3. 'There was a little stream *hard* by'—*Hard* (=near), adjective

✓466. *How*—

1. '*How* do you do?'—*How*, interrogative adverb.

2 'He told me *how* it was done'—*How*, relative adverb

3 'You must do it *somehow*', 'the *how* and the *why*.'—*How*, noun

4 '*How* good he is.'—*How*, adverb of degree.

467 However—

1 'I will refuse the present, *however* valuable it may be'—*However*, adverb

2 'You have disobeyed me again, and ought to be punished, *however*, I shall excuse you this time'—*However*, (= but, nevertheless), conjunction

468. If—

1. '*If* you go, I shall be angry.'—*If*, conjunction (of condition)

2 'Tell me *if* you mean to go'—*If* (= whether), conjunction (alternative)

3. 'There is no *if* in the case'—*If*, noun

469 Least—

1 'The *least* of them would suffice'—*Least*, adjective used as a noun, nominative to *would*

2 'The *least*, hesitation would spoil the affair'—*Least*, adjective qualifying the noun, *hesitation*

3 'This is the *least* praiseworthy'—*Least*, adverb modifying the adjective *praiseworthy*

470. Like—

1 'How do you *like* the book?'—*Like*, verb

2. 'We shall never see his *like*'—*Like*, noun

3. 'He is *like* his father'—*Like*, adjective

4. 'He was dressed *like* a woman.'—*Like*, adverb

471. Little—

1 'A *little* boy'—*Little*, adjective

2 'He has *little* enough'—*Little*, noun

3. 'He *little* liked this'—*Little*, adverb.

4. '*Little* by *little*'—*Little*, noun

472. Many (more, most)—

1 'Many men', 'more boys', 'most girls'—*Many*, *more*, *most*, adjectives

2 'Many are called'—*Many*, indefinite pronoun.

3. 'More came than were invited'—*More*, indefinite pronoun.

473 *Methinks*.—*Methinks* is derived from A S *me*, to me (dative), and *thinks*=seems, A S *thincan* '*Methinks* he is a fool' = It thinks (=seems) to me (that) he is a fool.'

✓ 474 *More*—

'They saw him no *more*'—*More*, adverb modifying *aw*

475 *Much* (more, most)—

1 'How *much* money have you.'—*Much*, adjective.

2 'I feel it very *much*', '*much* better'—*Much*, adverb

3 'He has spent *much* on me', 'He asked for *more* than was due'—*Much*, *more* nouns

4 'He is *most* lazy.'—*Most*, adverb

✓ 476 *Near*—

1 'His house is quite *near* mine'—*Near*, adjective

2 'The news spread far and *near*.'—*Near*, adverb

3 'He sat *near* me'—*Near*, adverb.

✓ 477. *Need, needs*—

1 'He *need* not go till Monday.'—*Need*, auxiliary verb

2 'He is in great *need* of help'—*Need*, noun

3 'He greatly *needs* help'—*Needs*, verb

4. 'He must *needs* interfere in that affair'—*Needs* (=of need, necessarily), adverb

✓ 478 *Next*—

1 'The *next* moment'—*Next*, adjective

2 'He was *next* me'—*Next*, adjective

3. 'He sat *next* me'—*Next*, adverb.

4. 'What happened *next*?'—*Next*, adverb

✓ 479. *No, none*—

1 'He is *no* happier (*none* the happier) for his wealth'—*No* (*none*), adverb to happy *is*.

2 'You are *no* soldier'—*No*, adjective.

3 'We saw him *no* more.'—*No*, adverb modifying the adverb *more*.

4 'I have *no* paper.'—*No*, adjective to *paper*

5 'None knew of his retreat'—*None*, adjective used as a noun (or pronoun)

✓ 6 'Silver and gold have I *none*.'—*None*, adjective (used for *no* "I have no silver and gold")

480 Now—

1 ' Now is the seed-time of life '—*Now*, adverb used as a noun, nominative to *is*

2 ' *Now* you have finished your exercise, you may go '—*Now*, conjunction (showing reason).

3 ' Every *now* and *then* '—*Now*, *then*, used as nouns

4 ' *Now* there was in the same town another little boy, &c '—*Now*, conjunction (used for introducing the continuation of a narrative or story)

481 On—

1 ' The book is *on* the shelf '—*On*, preposition

✓ 2. ' How are you getting *on* ? '—*On*, adverb

✓ 3 ' *On* with the dance, '—*On*, adverb used as a verb, imperative mood

✓ 482. One—

1 ' *One* does not know what to make of it. '—*One*, indefinite pronoun

2 ' All creatures love their young *ones* '—*Ones*, noun

3 ' I do not like this book, give me that *one*. '—*One*, pronoun, being put for *book*

4 ' I have no book, give me *one* '—*One*, adjective used as a noun, or qualifying *book* understood

483 Only—

See sec. 378

✓ 484 Other—' I must help you somehow or *other* '—*Other*, adjective qualifying *how*, which is used as a noun

485 Otherwise—

1 ' That is my opinion, but he thinks *otherwise* '—*Otherwise* (=differently), adverb

2 ' You must go at once, *otherwise* you will be punished '—*Otherwise*, conjunction.

486. Past—

1 ' He went *past* my house ', ' It is *past* four o'clock. '—*Past*, preposition.

2 ' We saw the regiment marching *past* '—*Past*, adverb

3 ' *Past* ages '—*Past*, adjective (participial).

4. ' The *past* and the present. '—*Past*, noun.

487 Prove—

1 ' He cannot *prove* his statement. '—*Prove*, transitive verb.

2 'He *proved* to be a rogue as I had suspected him to be'—*Proved*, intransitive verb

488 Rather—

'He has got worse *rather* than improved since yesterday'
'He would *rather* resign, than obey the order'—*Rather*, adverb

489 Right—

1. 'You will soon find out whether I am *right* or wrong'
'the *right* way', 'the *right* hand'—*Right*, adjective

2. 'He cannot distinguish his left from his *right*', 'He has very loose ideas of *right* and wrong'—*Right*, noun.

3 'He has not told you the story *right*', 'Let your eyes look *right* on', '*Right* glad was he'—*Right*, adverb

4 'He has been sent to *right* our wrongs', 'The ship *righted* itself'—*Right*, verb

490 Round—

✓1 'The *round* of duties'—*Round*, noun

2 'A *round* table'—*Round*, adjective qualifying 'table'

3 'He *rounds* his phrases well'—*Rounds*, verb agreeing with its nominative *he*

4 '*Round* goes the wheel.'—*Round*, adverb modifying the verb 'goes'

✓491 **Save, except**—*Save* and *except* are really imperatives used as prepositions

'All *save* (*except*) the pilot perished' = *Save* (*except*) the pilot, (then) all perished, i.e., if you *save* (*except*) the pilot, all perished

✓492 Since—

1 '*Since* the world began'—*Since*, relative adverb

2 '*Since* the beginning of the world'—*Since*, preposition

3 'I have not seen him *since*'—*Since*, preposition used as an adverb

✓4 'I was here two years *since*'—*Since* (= ago), adverb

5 '*Since* you say so, I must believe it'—*Since*, conjunction

✓493. So—

1 'If you are busy, say *so*'

So is here used a demonstrative pronoun and the object of the transitive verb *say*.

2 'I thought he was a rogue, and he is so'

Here also, *so* is a demonstrative pronoun (standing for *rogue*), and it is in apposition with *he*

3 'I am sorry and so is he'—*So* used for *sorry* and is an adjective qualifying *he* It may be called a (*pro-adjective*)

4 'The sailors furled the sails *so* as to be prepared for the storm'

The regular construction is — 'The sailors furled the sails *so* (in the way) *as* (in which way) [they would furl the sails] to be prepared for the storm'

This shows how to parse *so* and *as*

Note—*So* is sometimes used not for the preceding noun, but for something like it, i.e., for the preceding noun modified by some such adverb as *about*, *nearly*, as, 'I am going out for a minute or *so*,' i.e., about a minute *So* should here be parsed as a pronoun

494 Some—

1 'Some twenty men arrived'—*Some* (*about*), adverb modifying *twenty*

2 '*So* *ne* how or other', '*some* where or other.'—*Some*, qualifying *how*, *where*, which are used as nouns

495 Still—

1 'Mother *still* their babes with his name'—*Still*, verb.

2 'The audience was perfectly *still*'—*Still*, adjective

3 'He passed away in the *still* of midnight'—*Still*, noun (poetical use)

4 'The point is *still* unsettled'—*Still*, adverb of time

5 'That will be better *still*'—*Still*, adverb of degree

6 'You are of age, it is true, *still* you should consult your parents wishes before you take this step.'—*Still* (=nevertheless), conjunction

7 'The vapour ascends from the *still*'—*Still* (a vessel for distilling liquors), noun

496 Such—

1 '*Such* boys as are willing may join'—*Such*, adjective

2 '*Such* as are willing may join'—*Such*, demonstrative pronoun

3 'I thought him a rogue, and he has proved to be *such*'—*Such* demonstrative pronoun used for *rogue*;

497 *That*—The self-educated scholar is apt to be distinguished by a *more than* usually perfect acquaintance with the subjects which he has studied with *more than* usual effort.'

The sentence may be written as follows —

The self-educated man is apt to be distinguished for an acquaintance *more perfect than it usually is*, with the subjects which he has studied with more effort *than it is usual* to study them with

This makes the construction of the words in italics in the given sentence clear

✓ 498. That—‘His answer was not so absurd as (1) *that* of the boy, (2) *that* said, (3) *that*, (4) *that*, (5) *that* was a relative’

1st *that*, demonstrative pronoun, nominative to *was* understood

2nd *that*, relative pronoun, nominative to *said*

3rd *that*, conjunction connecting *that said*, and *that that was*, &c

4th *that*, demonstrative adjective qualifying the noun *that*

5th *that*, noun (meaning the word ‘*that*’) nominative to *was*

Note—‘I must now go, not *that* I want to go, but I have an engagement’ *That* (=because) conjunction

✓ 499. The—‘*The* better I know him, *the* more I love him’ ‘He is all *the* more stubborn for the punishment he has received’ ‘That is so much *the* better’

The in all these cases is the ablative of the Anglo-Saxon demonstrative, equivalent to an adverb ‘*By how much* more I know him, *by so much* better I love him’ *The* in the above sentences must be parsed as an adverb modifying the comparative adverb or adjective which follows it

The is used as an adverb only when followed by a comparative adverb or adjective

✓ 500. Then—

1 ‘I was not *then* aware of the fact’—*Then*, adverb

2 ‘If he will not go, *then* you must go, that is all’—*Then*, conjunction

3 ‘Till *then*’, ‘every now and *then*’—*Then*, noun.

4 ‘The *then* king’—*Then*, adverb used as an adjective ✓

501. There—

1 ‘*There* is a dog in his house.’—*There*, introductory adverb

2 ‘When I got *there* I found that he had left’—*There*, adverb

3. ‘The church *there* is a small one.’—*There*, adverb used as an adjective.

502 Therefore—

✓ 1 'I have business, and *therefore* I stay'—*Therefore*, adverb.

2 'He blushes, *therefore* he must be guilty'—*Therefore*, conjunction But see sec 575

503. Through—

1 'He passed *through* the gate'—*Through*, preposition

✓ 2 'He read the letter *through*.'—*Through*, adverb

504 Till—

1 'You may have leave *till* Monday'—*Till*, preposition

2 'Wait here *till* I return.'—*Till*, conjunction

3. 'They *till* the ground for their subsistence'—*Till* (= cultivate), verb

4 'There was no money in the *till*'—*Till* (drawer), noun

505 Unaware, unawares—

1 'He was not *unaware* of the fact'—*Unaware*, adjective

2 'They came upon me *unawares*'—*Unawares*, adverb

506 Up—

1 'He ran *up* the hill'—*Up*, preposition

2 'He was walking *up* and down'—*Up*, adverb

3 'Up guards, and at them'—*Up*, adverb used as a verb

4 'The *up* train was late to day'—*Up*, adverb used as an adjective

507 Usual, usually (see sec 497)

✓ 1. 'He is late as *usual*.'—*Usual*, adjective 'as (= which) is usual.'

2 'He is *usually* late'—*Usually*, adverb

508 Well—

(1) He is not *well* — *Well*, adjective.

(2) He speaks *well* — *Well*, adverb modifying *speaks*

✓ (3) *Well*, are you going?—*Well*, adverb used expletively.

(4) He fell into the *well* — *Well*, noun.

✓ (5) Let *well* alone — *Well*, adjective used as a noun (= that which is well)

✓ 509 What—

1 'I do not believe *what* you say' = 'I do not believe *that* what you say'—*What*, relative pronoun, governed by *say*

2 'Tell me *what* you mean by behaving in this way.'—*What*, interrogative pronoun, objective case, governed by *mean*

3 'What books are you reading now?'—*What*, interrogative adjective qualifying *books*.

4 'He saved *what* money he could get'—*What*, relative adjective qualifying *money*.

5 'What with his persuasive eloquence, and *what* with the presence of his armed followers, he soon overcame all opposition'

What is here equivalent to *partly*, and is accordingly paired as an adverb modifying the adverbial phrases *with his persuasive eloquence* and *with the presence*, &c

6 'He was absent, and *what* was worse, he did not apply for leave' (*What was worse*=that what was worse)—*What*, relative pronoun, nominative to *was*—*that*, the understood antecedent being in apposition to *not applying* implied in "did not apply"

7 'What' Are you really going'?—*What*, interrogative pronoun used as an interjection

Note.—Interrogative "*what*" and relative "*what*" It sometimes seems difficult to say whether *what* is an interrogative pronoun, or a relative pronoun, in such sentences as "He asked me *what* my name was" The test is this—If *what* is an interrogative pronoun, the clause in which it is used can be changed into a *direct question*, and if it is a relative pronoun, *that* or *the thing* can be inserted before it—the meaning, of course, not being changed or spoiled *Thus*—

(1) "He asked me *what* I had in my hand"="He asked me 'What have you in your hand'?"—We cannot here supply an antecedent and say "He asked me *the thing what* I had in my hand," for that is not the meaning of the sentence *What* is therefore an interrogative pronoun in this sentence

(2) "He gave me *what* he had"="He gave me the thing what he had"—We cannot here change the clause into a question *What* is therefore a relative pronoun in this sentence

510 *Whatever*, *whoever*, *whichever*, *whatsoever*, &c.—All these are used as relative pronouns or as relative adjectives. When the former, they have *he* or *that* understood as the antecedent, as 'He does [that] *whatever* he pleases', '[He] *whoever* leaves his seat will be punished'

They may also be used as interrogative pronouns, as 'Whatever shall we do?'

511 *Whether*—

1 'Whether of them two did the will of his father?'—*Whether*, interrogative pronoun (archaic).

2 'Whether is the gold or the temple greater?'—*Whether*, interrogative adverb

3 'I asked him *whether* he intended to go'—*Whether*, conjunction

✓ 512 Which—

1 *Which* of the two do you want?—*Which*, interrogative pronoun governed by *do want*

2 *Which* book do you want?—*Which*, interrogative adjective qualifying *book*

3 I have lost the book *which* he gave me—*Which*, relative pronoun governed by *gave*

4 He has been guilty of impertinence, *which* conduct is impardonable in a student—*Which*, relative adjective qualifying *conduct*

513 While—

1 'While he was yet speaking, his hearers began to drop off'—*While*, conjunction.

2. 'It is not worth my *while* to go', 'He waited a long *while*'—*While*, noun

3 'He has two copies of the book, *while* I have not even one'—*While* (= whereas), conjunction

4. 'I am trying to *while* away the time.'—*While*, verb

514 Why—

1 *Why* did you tell a lie?—*Why*, interrogative adverb

2 He wants to know the *why* and the wherefore of it—*Why*, adverb used as a noun

3 Is he gone? *Why*, I told you he would go—*Why*, adverb used expletively see sec 300

✓ 515. Worth—

1 'It is *worth* nothing.'—*Worth*, adjective taking an adverbial object, or accusative (of degree)

2. 'Woe *worth* the day'=(may) woe be to the day—*Worth*, verb, subjunctive mood.

516 Yet—

1 'Though he slay me, *yet* will trust in him'—*Yet*, conjunction.

2. 'A little longer, *yet* a little longer'—*Yet*, adverb.

3. 'He has not *yet* left school.'—*Yet*, adverb

 NOTES ON SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS

517 'A friend of mine'—

The following curious idiom requires explanation—

1. 'That ugly face of *his* quite frightened the child'

The regular construction would have been 'that ugly face of *him*,' and in the same way instead of saying,

2 'This news of *John's* is very strange.'

3 'A friend of *mine* is here'

The regular construction would be 'this news of *John*,' 'a friend of *me*.'

In (3) it may be said that *mine* is put for *my friend*, but this explanation will scarcely apply to (2), and certainly not to (1) 'the ugly face of *his faces* !'

"The truth is that *of him*, and *of me*, used possessively, are intolerably harsh, and ambiguity also might often result from the regular construction, for 'this news of *John*' would naturally mean 'this news about *John*.' Consequently partly to avoid the ambiguity caused by the double meaning of *of* (*viz*, *belonging to* or *about*), and partly to avoid harshness of sound, we adopt the following illogical but serviceable device to make our meaning clear we retain the preposition *of*, but also add the possessive *'s*. Thus we combine the prepositional and inflectional idioms"—Abbott

"A bust of *Cicero*—a bust of *Cicero's*—The former means a representation of *Cicero*, the latter, a bust belonging to *Cicero*. This is sometimes explained as an elliptical expression a bust of *Cicero's* busts, i.e., one of the busts belonging to *Cicero*. It usually implies position, when the unexpressed noun upon which it is dependent is a *partitive genitive* (as 'the highest of mountains'). Hence we can say *your father*, but not *a father of yours*. On the other hand we can say *your son*, and *a son of yours*, if there are more sons than one. But in such phrases as *that son of yours*, *that book of mine*, when there is but one son or book, it seems to be simply a pleonastic expression"—Adams

Our idea regarding this construction is that when the demonstrative *this*, or *that* is used, *of* has not necessarily a partitive meaning, in all other cases it has.

That son of yours does not mean that there must necessarily be more than one son.

A friend of mine, *two books of mine*, imply plurality of friends or books.

518. 'Many a man'—Trench suggested that *a* in this construction is not the article but a remnant of the preposition *of*, and that the plural noun was changed into the singular on account of the preposition assuming the form of the indefinite article. On this supposition, *many* would be derived from the French *mesme* (a household, train, hence, number), and the phrase would be traced thus 'a many of men = many of men = many a men = many a man.'

But this is extremely doubtful and besides, the hypothesis is unnecessary. *Many* is one of those few adjectives in English (*many, what, such*) which take the indefinite article *after* them *many a man, such a man, what a man*. Or we may suppose that a *many men* (which we find in Old English) was the original expression, and that the indefinite article was taken from before *many*, and put after it, in imitation of *such a man, what a man*, this change necessitating the change of the plural noun into the singular.

✓ 519 A great many—

Many (*manq*) was originally an adjective, as—

Many men were killed

After a time it was followed by *one* in such expressions as “*Many one thing*,” which is the modern “*many a thing*,” as—

Many a man was killed

Next, like *few*, it was used for a pronoun, *many* being equivalent to “*many persons*,” e.g.

Many are called, but few are chosen

Lastly it came to be regarded (like *few*) as having the force of a collective noun, and took the article before it, or the adjective *great*. Sometimes the preposition *of* may be understood before the following noun, e.g.

A great many (of) men were killed

“They have not shed a many (of) tears,

Dear eyes, since first I knew them well”—Tennyson.

“*The many (i.e., the crowd) rend the skies with loud applause*”—*Dryden*

520 ‘*He walked a mile*’—*Mile*, adverbial accusative modifying *walked*.

✓ 521 ‘*The day that thou eatest thereof, thou shalt die*’—*That* is here to be parsed as the accusative of *time*, just like *day* in the sentence last given

522. ‘*He is come*’—*Is* agreeing with its nominative *he*, *come*, perfect participle qualifying *he*.

The two words cannot be parsed together, like *has come*, the perfect participle taken with the auxiliary *to be* is the passive form, but *come*, being intransitive, can have no passive voice

Note—“A few intransitive verbs that merely imply motion, or change of condition may be put into the passive form making not passive but neuter verbs, which express nothing more than the state which results from the change, as, *I am come, He is risen, They are fallen*. Present usage is, however, in favour of the auxiliary *have* in preference to *be* whenever the perfect participle is not passive, as, *They have arrived*—not, *They are arrived*.”

"Every form in which the verb *to be* is found is not passive 'I am writing' is an active voice, and 'He is come' is an active form of an intransitive verb 'He has fallen' is an active form, so is 'He is fallen' Whether, therefore, the verb is passive or intransitive is decided not by the presence of the auxiliary, but by the nature of the participle If the participle is *passive*, so also is the verb, if it is not passive, but only a perfect participle of an intransitive verb, neither is the verb as 'He is arrived'"

523. 'He was banished the kingdom'—This is the *passive* form of 'The king banished him the kingdom'

Banished takes two objects *him* and *kingdom*, and when it is changed into the passive, one object becomes the subject, and the other is *retained* as object

Note—Some would say that *kingdom* is governed by *from* understood, but this explanation would not hold good in the *exactly similar* example 'He was given a present by the king,' where *present* could not possibly be governed by any preposition understood

524. 'With him saying was doing'—*Saying*, gerund, nominative to *was doing*, gerund, in apposition with *saying*

525. 'He loves to read, and reads to know.'—

To read, infinitive, object of *love*

To know, gerundial infinitive modifying *reads*

526. 'To confess the truth, I am in fault'—This is the parenthetical infinitive

527. 'I had rather.'—This phrase has been used by the best writers for 'I would rather,' as

'I had rather be a dog and bry the moon
Than such a Roman'

The usual explanation is that the expression was originally 'I would rather' which was abbreviated into 'I'd rather' As *I'd* is a contraction for *I would* as well as for *I had* the abbreviation was misunderstood, and *I'd rather* was changed into *I had rather*

Mason thinks that this is a legitimate use of *had*, not the result of a mistake Compare 'I had like to have' (= I was likely to have)

Had must be parsed by itself and the verb following *rather* as infinitive governed by *had* (= would)

I had rather go = I had (would) rather to go

528. 'It is you that say so'—The antecedent of *that* is *it*, and *say* should therefore be *says*. The irregularity is due to two causes desire to avoid harshness, and confusion between two constructions The regular construction would have been 'It that says so is you' Here steps in the desire to

avoid the harshness of *it* used so emphatically, hence *it* is deprived of its emphasis by being separated from its relative that 'It is you that say so'. Here steps in *confusion* between this construction and the straightforward construction 'You say so,' resulting in the idiom logically incorrect, but by process of custom stamped as perfectly good English 'It is you that say so'

529 'The house is building'—In such sentences as 'The house is building,' 'The book is printing,' *building* and *printing* are generally regarded as present participles used passively. But they are really infinitives governed by prepositions understood as 'a *building*, a *printing*,' i.e., *in building*, *in printing*.

530 'It came to pass'—*Pass* is here evidently a verb in the infinitive mood just like *to understand* in 'I came to understand' (Dr. Johnson however, thinks that it may be a noun with the article understood 'It came to (the) pass (that)'. The primary meaning to *pass* is *to step*, and hence it came to signify *to move progressively*, *to arrive or come to*, *to happen*. 'It came to pass,' i.e., the event or thing referred to came or happened in the order of time.

531 'If you please'—Some think that *you*, though apparently nominative of *please*, is really its object, the construction being 'If it should please you'. But it appears better to consider *please* as usual in a passive sense, as equivalent to *be pleased*, and agreeing with its nominative *you*. If you please = 'if you be pleased.'

532 'He is to blame'—*To blame* is a gerund qualifying *he*. The peculiarity of the construction is that, though *to blame* is active in form, it is passive in meaning, being equivalent to *to be blamed*.

533. 'Passing rich with forty pounds a year'—*Passing* (=surpassingly), adverb modifying *rich*.

534. Notwithstanding, during, pending—These words, though generally considered as prepositions, are really particles.

'Notwithstanding his defeat he persevered' = He persevered, his defeat notwithstanding his perseverance, i.e., not preventing him from persevering.

'He came here during your absence' = He came here, your absence during (i.e., while your absence was (en)during or lasting.

'A person, pending suit with the diocesan, shall be deposed in the possession,' i.e., (while the) suit [is] pending or hanging over him.

535. Than whom—

Which when Beelzebub perceived, *than whom*,
Satan except, none higher sat —Milton.

"This phrase is generally found before negatives. We have here an instance of *than* with a prepositional force, and not only do we find this usage in Milton and other classical writers, but it is authorized by the invariable custom of modern writers and speakers we never read or hear *than who*. The reason perhaps is that it is impossible here to fill up the ellipsis, as may be done when *than* is a conjunction. We cannot say 'None sat high, *than who* sat high,' as we can say, 'First John sat high, then Thomas sat high,' in explaining 'John sat higher than Thomas.' We are, therefore, constrained to give *than* a governing force of its own, and make *than whom* a construction complete in itself, without any ellipsis."

536 "Three yards long."—"A common mistake in parsing the word *yards* in such a sentence as the above, is to govern it by the preposition *by* or *through* understood

Now, when any word is understood, the insertion of it invariably tends either to restore some original construction, or to make the sense complete. But by inserting either *by* or *through* (or any preposition whatever) before *yards* 'the rope is *by* three yards long,' we not only do not make the sense complete, but actually render the sentence unintelligible. This, in itself, should be enough to show the absurdity of this method of parsing. But we have a further proof that *yards, feet, &c.*, in such sentences, need no preposition to govern them in the fact that in Greek, Latin, German, &c., extent of space and duration of time are marked by putting the noun in the accusative case without a preposition

Eng.	three	feet	long
Gr	treis	podas	macios,
Lat	tres	pedes	longus
Ger	drei	fusze	lang

537. Never so just, ever so just —

"Are we to say '*ever so*,' or '*never so*,' in expressions like 'be he *ever* (*never*) so old,' and the like? Usage seems divided. In familiar speech we mostly say '*ever so*' in writing, and especially in the solemn and elevated style, we mostly find '*never so*.' We say to a troublesome petitioner, 'If you ask me *ever so* much, I won't give it you' but we read, 'Which refuseth to heare the voice of the charmer, charm he *never so* wisely.' Can we give any account of this? What is the difference between the expressions? Because one would think there must be some difference, when two such words are concerned,

which are the very opposite one of the other Sentences similarly constructed with these two words are as different in meaning as possible. "Had he *ever* loved at all," and "he *never* loved at all," are opposite in meaning to one another. And so, actually and literally are the two which we are now considering but in the general sense they both convey the one meaning which is intended. This may be made plain as follows. "Be it *ever* so large," means, "though it attain every imaginable degree of size." "Be it *never* so large," means, "though there be no imaginable degree of size which it does not attain." The former is inclusively affirmative, the latter is exclusively negative and these two amount to the same."—*Alford's "Queen's English."*

538 "At three years old", "at a mile distant"
We can say

- (1) The child died when he was *three years old*, or
- (2) The child died *at three years of age*
- (1) I live *a mile distant* from the town, or
- (2) I live *at a miles distance* from the town

Owing to a confusion of these two constructions, we get

- (1) The child died *at three years old*.
- (2) I live *at a mile distant* from the town.—*Rowe and Webb*,

539. "One by one," "little by little"

In Old English, the *repetition* of an action was sometimes expressed by *repeating* an adverbial phrase with *by* (as, "by hundreds"), so that the sentence ran

(2) "The citizens streamed out *by hundreds, by hundreds by one and by one, by thousand and by thousand, by little and little,*" &c

So even Pope —

- (3) "Loth to enrich me with too quick replies,
By little and by little drops his lies"

When some of these phrases were condensed for brevity's sake, the first "by" was omitted —

- (4) "They streamed out *one by one*,"
- (5) "The water oozed out *drop by drop*,"
- (6) "He is growing stronger *year by year*,"
- (7) "The army is diminishing *little by little*"

In parsing, we may take the first word as a nominative absolute "They went, one [going] by [=after] one" Or we may take it as an adverbial accusative of manner — *Abbott*

540 'Fare thee well.'

The objective *thee* seems to be used for the nominative *thou* in such sentences as "Fare *thee* well." It is usual to explain such constinctions by considering the simple pronoun as used for the reflexive. But though, "Haste *thee*," "Ger *thee* hence," and some other phrases with verbs of motion may be thus explained, and verbs were often thus used in early English, it is probable that in "Look here," "Hark *thee*," "Fare *thee* well," &c. we have *thee* used for *thou* for the sake of euphony. The Elizabethans changed *thou* into *thee*, and in later English the pronoun was rejected altogether.

541 "It is me whom he fears"

When a relative clause explains the anticipatory subject 'it,' to which a personal pronoun is joined predicatively, the relative commonly agrees with the personal pronoun and not with its antecedent 'it.' Thus we say "It is I who *am* in fault," though the sentence really means "It (the person) who is in fault, is I." This is a case of *attraction*. Contrariwise the predicative pronoun is sometimes *attracted* into the case of the relative. It is usual to say "It is *I* who did it," but "It is *me* whom he fears"!

542 "I am the man who commands you"

When there are two antecedents of *different persons*, the relative generally agrees with the *latter*, as, "You are the friend who has often relieved me." Regard must, however, be had to the sense intended. thus "I am the man who *command* you" means "I who *command* you (I your commander) am the man previously mentioned", "I am the man who *commands* you" means "I am your commander."

543 Like, near, &c

The adjectives *like*, *near*, &c., have this peculiarity, that they are followed by an objective case in modern English, as "like *me*" "near *him*," etc., having been followed by a dative in Anglo-Saxon, e g, *eow ge lic*, "like you." Some writers assert that the preposition *to* is always understood, and that this preposition, though not expressed, governs the noun or pronoun to which these adjectives are joined. But in Old English *like* was followed by the *dative* case and no preposition was required after it. As we never say now "like *to*," "near *to*," &c., there is no reason why the adjective should not be taken as governing the noun, the force of the preposition being implied in it.

544. "I was mistaken"

The usage of the verb to *mistake* is somewhat anomalous. Its etymology seems simple enough—to *take amiss*. And by the analogy of "misunderstand," "misinterpret," "mislead," "misinform," "miscalculate," it ought to be simply an active verb, as in the phrases, "You mistook my meaning," "He had mistaken the way." This would give as its passive use, "My meaning was mistaken by you." But our English usage is different, we have these phrases, it is true, but we far more commonly use the verb in the passive, to carry what should be its active meaning. To *be mistaken* is not, with us, to be misapprehended by another, but to commit a mistake oneself. This is a curious translation of meaning, but it is now rooted in the language and become idiomatic. "I thought so, but I was mistaken," is universally said, not "I mistook." We expect to hear "You are mistaken," and should be surprised at hearing asserted "You are mistaking," or "You mistake," unless followed by an accusative, "my meaning," or "me"—*Alford*.

545. "I beg to state"

Some find fault with the very common expression, "I beg to inform you," "I beg to state," &c, requiring that the word "leave" should be inserted after the verb, otherwise, they say, the words are nonsense.

In this case, I think custom has decided for us, the ellipsis, "I beg," for "I beg leave," is allowable—*Alford*.



CHAPTER III

ANALYSIS.

546 Analysis is the process of taking a sentence to pieces in order to show the parts of which it is made up.

The parts of a simple sentence are the subject, predicate, &c., but the parts of a complex or a compound sentence are themselves sentences, or, as they are specifically termed, *clauses*. The analysis of such a sentence is therefore a two-fold process: we have first to break it up into the clauses of which it is composed, and show their relation to one another or to the whole sentence, and then taking each of these clauses successively, to break it up into the parts of which it is made up.

547. Sentence, Subject, Predicate—A sentence is a collection of words of such kinds, and arranged in such a manner, as to make some complete sense.

By making "some complete sense" is meant, that *something is said about something*.

It is plain, therefore, that every ordinary sentence must consist of two essential parts —

1. *That which denotes what we speak about*. This is called the *Subject*.
2. *That which is said about that of which we speak*. This is called the *Predicate*.

A sentence may consist of a simple subject and a simple predicate, *i.e.*, it may have a single word for its subject and predicate. But more generally these parts are enlarged by additions, as

Simple form.	Men	Pred.
Enlarged form.	Wise men	think
		think rightly

When the predicate is an incomplete verb, it is necessary to state its *object* or *complement* as "Wise men employ their talents rightly", "He became rich".

Some verbs have a *direct*, and an *indirect*, object, "He taught me grammar".

548 Subject.—The subject of a sentence may be

1. A noun (or verbal noun) "James is a lazy boy", "Dogs are faithful", "Erasmus is a fine art".

- 2 A pronoun : "He was sent to Madras"
- 3 Any word used as a word "If is a conjunction"
- 4 An infinitive "To cry is human"
- 5 A gerund "Riding is pleasant exercise"

Note—The infinitive as well as the gerund may have an object, or a complement, with or without an adverbial adjunct "To take regular exercise is a good thing for health", "To be wise is better than to be rich", "Where to find him is the question", "Playing with fire is dangerous", "To steal the jewel in the night was his design"

- 6 A noun with an article "The road is heavy", "An accident happened"

Note—Some grammarians take the article when joined to a subject, object, or complement, as an enlargement

- 7 An adjective (or participial adjective) with the definite article, and with or without an adverbial adjunct "The virtuous are not always happy", "The early wise are admired", "The dead strowed the plain"
- 8 A compound phrase consisting of two or more nouns, pronouns, etc., coupled together by and "John and James are cousins"
- 9 A noun clause "That he should have passed at all is surprising"
- 10 A quotation "'Down with him' was repeated on all sides"
- 11 The pronoun *it* with a noun phrase or clause in apposition with it "It is good for us to be here", "It is most fortunate that I happened to be present"

✓ 549. **Attributive Adjuncts Enlargement of Subject, Object, or Complement**—Any adjective, or any word, phrase, or clause equivalent to an adjective, which is attached to a noun, pronoun, or gerund, or to any word used as a noun, is said to be an *attributive adjunct* to it. An attributive adjunct to the subject, or the object, or the complement, when it is a noun, pronoun, or the like, is generally termed an *enlargement* of it

An *attributive adjunct* may be

- 1 An adjective (or participial adjective) with or without an adverbial adjunct "young men", "much better advice", "a very straggling town"
- 2 Any word used as an adjective "a gold ring", "our return home", "the after effects"
- 3 A noun, noun phrase, infinitive, or gerund, in apposition "John Brown the Highlander", "the man Johnson", "his proposal to resign", "It is not easy getting hold of an honest servant"

Note—The infinitive as well as the gerund may have an object, a complement, or an adverbial adjunct, or two of them together

- 4 A noun, pronoun, or noun phrase in the possessive case, or a noun in the possessive case with an adjective or article "John's hat", "his poverty", "the Maharajah of Tirunagari's death", "the monkey's tail", "poor folk's friends"

5 A *gerund* or *gerundial infinitive phrase* "drinking water", "pens to write with", "chairs on which to sit"

6 A *participle*, or *participial phrase* "A penny saved is a penny gained", "a man wearied of life", "a cow eating grass"

Note—The *gerund*, *gerundial infinitive*, or *participle* may have an object, or an *adverbial adjunct*, or both

7 A *prepositional phrase* "a dog in the manger", "the love of money"

8 An *adjective clause* "the dog that worried the cat"

9 A *noun clause* or a *quotation*, in *apposition* "the fact that he was absent", "the question 'who is he?'"

10 Any combination of these, with or without a conjunction "a nice young man", "the large house by the side of the lake, which was lately repaired", a poor but respectable man"

11 A *compound phrase* formed of two or more *adjectives* coupled together by *and* "The red, white, and blue flag of England"

550 Predicate—The predicate of a sentence may be

1 A *simple finite verb* "The thunder roared"

2 A *complex finite verb* "He will be taken care of"

3 A *compound phrase* formed of two *verbs* coupled together by *and* "It is best that we ride and tie"

551, **Direct and Indirect Object: Dative, Factitive, Retained, and Cognate Object**—Many verbs, such as *give*, *bring*, *tell*, *teach*, *forgive*, etc., may take two objects. One of these denotes a person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb and is called the *direct object*, the other denotes a person or thing indirectly affected, and is called the *indirect object*. Thus in "Give me the book," *book* is the direct object, and *me* the indirect object, of the verb *give*.

Note—The verbs *promise*, *teach*, *give*, and some others, take a *dative* of the person and an *accusative* of the thing "I promised him every indulgence", "I taught him geography"

Certain transitive verbs signifying *making*, *appointing*, *creating*, etc., occasionally take two objects, one representing the person, and the other the office. The latter is often called a *factitive object*, or *factitive accusative*, e.g., "They made him arbitrator", "They appointed him general"

When certain transitive verbs, which take two objects in the active form, are changed into the passive form one of the two objects becomes the subject in the passive form, while the other is simply retained as object "My mother taught me grammar," becomes when changed into the passive form " (1) I was taught grammar by my mother", or (2) "Grammar was taught me by my mother" The object thus retained may be called, for brevity's sake, the *retained object*. In the above example *grammar* is the retained object in the first, and *me* in the second, form of the passive

The factitive object and the retained object are *complements* (sec 554) of the verb

Some verbs though, generally intransitive, take sometimes after them an object which is akin to the verb in form, or meaning, or both, "They have slept then *sleep*", "He drank a deep *draught*" Such objects are called *cognate objects*.

Mason considers that the *cognate object* and the *retained object* may properly be taken as adverbial adjuncts, but as the question they answer is "What?", and not "When?", "Why?", or the like, we prefer to take them as objects. Another argument, which seems fatal to Mason's theory as far as the cognate object is concerned, is that it can become the object of the verb in the passive voice, as "Canute, thy royal race is run" How can an *adverbial adjunct* be the subject of a sentence?

552 Direct Object —The *direct object* of the verb may be

- 1 A noun (or verbal noun) "Brutus killed *Cæsar*", "He likes *painting* more than any other of the fine arts"
- 2 A pronoun "They suspected *me*"
- 3 Any word used as a word "Parse all the *that's* in that sentence"
- 4 An infinitive "He is learning to *write*"
- 5 A gerund "He likes *riding*"

Note—The infinitive as well as the gerund may have an object, or a complement, or an adverbial adjunct, or two of them together "He fears to *spend money*", "I hate *writing letters*", "He expected to *make his fortune in a few years*", "I do not know how to *do it*"

- 6 A noun with an article "John perceived the *danger*"

Note—See note on sec 548 (6)

- 7 An adjective (or participial adjective) with the definite article, and with or without an adverbial adjunct "God loves the *poor in heart*"
- 8 A compound phrase, consisting of two or more nouns, pronouns, etc, coupled together by *and* "Add *five and seven* together", "I thought *you and him* to be related", "Mix me some *sugar and water*"
- 9 A noun clause "I hope that *there will be no famine*"
- 10 A quotation "'What do you mean?' asked John"
- 11 The pronoun *it* with a noun phrase or clause in apposition with it "He thought *it wiser to pay up the amount*", "No one considers *it likely that he will pass*"

Any attributive adjunct to a direct object is called an *enlargement* of it

553. Indirect Object.—The *indirect object* of a verb may be

- 1 A *noun* (or *verbal noun*), "They made him *king*", "They have not given *dancing* a place in the curriculum"
- 2 A *pronoun* "He gave *me* good advice"
- 3 A *noun* with an *article* "They gave *the* beggar some food"
- 4 An *adjective* (or *participial adjective*) with the *definite article*, and with or without an *adverbial adjunct* "He giveth the *rich* *rest*", "They pray the *dead* no honours", "They give the *truly* good every honour"
- 5 A *compound phrase*, consisting of two or more *nouns*, or *pronouns*, coupled together by *and* "We gave *John and James* the nickname of 'the inseparables'"

Any *attributive adjunct* to an *indirect object* is called an *enlargement* of it

554. Complement.—The complement is of *three* kinds

- i **Subjective Complement.** When a verb of incomplete predication is *passive* or *intransitive*, the complement of the predicate stands in the *attributive relation* to the subject of the sentence, as, "He was called *Cunctator*", "I feel *ill*", "The wine tastes *sweet*". This kind of complement may be called the *subjective complement*, inasmuch as it is closely connected with the subject of the sentence
- ii **Objective Complement** When the verb is *transitive*, and in the *active voice*, the complement of the predicate stands in the *attributive relation* to the object of the verb, as, "He painted the shutters *green*", "I made him *my* *hen*", "they call that strip of sea *the Solent*". This kind of complement may be termed the *objective complement*, inasmuch as it is closely connected with the object of the verb
- iii **Infinitive Complement** The third kind of complement is that which follows such verbs as *can*, *will*, *must*, etc.—as, "I can *sing*", "We must *wait*", "He will *succeed*". This may be termed the *infinitive complement*

Note—In analysis, the *infinitive complement* is usually taken along with the verb to which it is joined

(i) The *subjective complement* may be

- 1 A *noun* (or *verbal noun*) "He is *Chairman* *to day*"
- 2 A *pronoun* "What is your name?", "He is *himself* again"
- 3 Any *word* used as a *word* "The word he meant was *conscientious*"
- 4 An *infinitive* or *gerund* "The only course is *to run away*", "He seems *to have forgotten me*", "The prisoner was ordered *to be executed at once*", "The best exercise for him will be *playing cricket*"
- 5 A *noun* with an *article* "He looks a *fool*"
- 6 An *adjective* (or *participial adjective*), with the *definite article*, and with or without an *adverbial adjunct* "These are the *elect*", "They are the *chosen* of God"

- 7 An adjective (or participial adjective), or adjective phrase "He is kind", "The wine tasted sour", "They seemed distracted", "The diamond was of immense value"
- 8 A compound phrase consisting of two or more nouns, or pronouns, coupled together by and "The rivals were John and James (you and he)"
- 9 A participle "He was caught napping", "He got drunk"
- 10 A gerundial infinitive "The profits are yet to come"
- 11 A noun clause "My hope is that he will turn out well"
- 12 A quotation "His answer to every question was, 'I don't know'"
- 13 A compound phrase formed of two or more adjectives coupled together by and "The English flag is red, white, and blue"
- (11) The objective complement may be
 - 1 A noun (or verbal noun) "They elected him Secretary", "They call this art engraving"
 - 2 A pronoun "They thought Richard himself again" (i.e., to have become himself again)
 - 3 Any word used as a word "He pronounced the word conduct"
 - 4 An infinitive or gerund "He ordered the spy to be hanged", "I like a rascal to be punished", "They call it testifying"
 - 5 A noun with an article "She called the man a liar"
 - 6 An adjective (or participial adjective), with the indefinite article, and with or without an adverbial adjunct "They think themselves the truly righteous"
 - 7 An adjective (or participial adjective) or adjective phrase "He dyed the cloth red", "this made him quite dejected", "this fact rendered his arrival of great importance"
 - 8 A participle "I found my friend dying"
 - 9 A gerundial infinitive "He found the profits yet to come"
 - 10 A compound phrase consisting of two or more adjectives coupled together by and "They beat him black and blue"

An adjunct to a complement will be *attributive* if the complement is of the nature of a noun, and *adverbial*, if the complement is of the nature of an adjective

✓ 555 **Adverbial Adjunct Extension of the Predicate.**—Any word, phrase, or clause, which modifies or limits a verb, an adjective, or an attributive phrase, is in the adverbial relation to it, or is an *adverbial adjunct* to it

An *adverbial adjunct* to the predicate is called an *extension* of it

An *adverbial adjunct* may be

- 1 An adverb "He writes neatly", "He walks fast"
- 2 An adverb modified by one or more adverbs, or by an adverbial phrase "He spoke very indistinctly", "John writes very much better than James", "He went away a great deal too soon,"

- 3 Any word used as an adverb "The sun shone *bright*", "They came *flying*"

Note—An adjective or participle so used may itself take an adverbial adjunct, and the participle may take an object as well

- 1 A noun, pronoun, or noun phrase in the adverbial accusative.
"He walks *miles* daily", "What do I care for his *anger*?";
"He has walked *ten miles* to day", "He is just *my age*",
"I shall come *another day*", "I don't care a *straw* for him"
- 2 A *datum* of interest "He plucked me *ope* his doublet"
- 3 A prepositional phrase "Thieves came *in the night*", "He went *on his bicycle*"
- 4 A noun or pronoun governed by an adjective "He lives *near me*", "He speaks *like his father*"
- 5 A participial phrase "Being *informed of my arrival*, he came at once to see me"
- 6 An absolute phrase "The wind *being favourable*, we set sail",
"He *excepted*, all were present", "Sword *in hand*, they rushed on the enemy"

Note—When the nominative absolute and the subject of the sentence denote the same person or thing, a participial phrase is preferable to the absolute phrase. Thus instead of saying "John *being ill*, he could not come to school" it is better to say "Being *ill*, John could not come to school"

- 7 A gerundial infinitive "I went *to receive* him at the station"

Note—The participle or gerundial infinitive in such phrases may have an object, or an adverbial adjunct, or both, as in the examples given above.

- 8 A noun clause governed by a preposition "Our success depends *on who are appointed judges*", "For *in that he himself hath suffered being tempted*, he is able to succour them that are tempted" (Bible)
- 9 A noun clause in the absolute construction (together with the participle) "Granted *this is true* [=that this is true being granted], what follows?"
- 10 An adverbial clause "He came *while I was away*"

556. Classification of Sentences.—Sentences may be classified according to 1 their meaning, 2 their structure, or 3. their (logical) quality. According to meaning, sentences are *assertive*, *interrogative*, *imperative*, *optative*, or *exclamatory*, according to structure, *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*, and according to quality, *affirmative* or *negative*.

557. A Simple Sentence contains only one subject and one predicate or finite verb, as, 'A man of upright character (*subj*) is sure to be respected' (*pred.*)

558. A Complex Sentence has but one principal assertion with one or more dependent or subordinate assertions, i.e., while consisting of one principal subject and predicate, it contains two or more finite verbs as 'I *saw* that something *was* wrong', 'Whither thou *goest*, I *will go*'

559 Phrases, Clauses, and Sentences—Both *phrases* and *clauses* are combinations of words which form members of sentences, the difference between them being that a phrase cannot contain a finite verb, while a clause must contain one, expressed or understood

Clauses are of two kinds *co-ordinate* and *subordinate*

The *principal clause* in a complex sentence is really a sentence, for, if all the subordinate clauses are removed, it will still express some complete sense, but it will prevent much confusion if the term *sentence* is restricted to a combination of words forming a complete whole, and the term *clause* to a member of a sentence, containing a finite verb

560 Kinds of Phrases and Clauses.

There are three kinds of Phrases *Noun*, *Adjective*, and *Adverbial*. These stand respectively in the relation of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb, to some word or words in the sentence, as, (noun) '*To walk is healthy*,' '*Victoria is the Queen of England*', (adjective) '*William the Conqueror*,' '*a walk in the fields*', (adverbial) '*He is gone to Calcutta*,' '*they arrived too late*'

Subordinate clauses are similarly divided into *Noun*, *Adjectival* and *Adverbial*, according as they stand in the relation of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb to some word or words in the sentence, as, (noun) '*That he is dead is certain*', '*The boy who gave me the book has left the school*', '*He came here while I was away at Vellore*'

Note—When we speak of a *prepositional phrase*, a *participial phrase*, and so on, we refer to the character or structure of the phrase, taken by itself, and not in its relation to the sentence

561 The Noun Phrase performs the function or work of a noun in the sentence, that is, it may be

1. *The subject of a sentence* '*His residence is unknown to me*,' '*The wicked will be punished*', '*To swim is not quite as easy as to walk*'

2. *In apposition with a noun, pronoun, or an infinitive* '*William the Conqueror was succeeded by his second son William*', '*I never expected this from you, my oldest friend*', '*To steal even a pin is a sin*'

3. *A nominative absolute* '*His guilt having been clearly proved, nothing remains for the judge but to pronounce sentence*'

4. *A vocative* '*Sons of India, be loyal to your country*'

5. *Governed by a transitive verb* '*He hates to be idle*'

6. *Governed by a preposition* '*He takes pleasure in speaking ill of others*'

7. *An indirect object* 'He gave the boys of his class a holiday'

8. *A cognate object*. 'He dreamt a pleasant dream.'

9. *Governed by an intransitive verb* 'He talked the night away'

10. *Governed by an adjective* 'He is near his end'

11. *A retained object*. 'He was permitted to resign'

12. *The complement of an incomplete intransitive verb* 'He seems to be very ill'

13. *An adverbial accusative* 'He walked a long distance.'
(Here the noun phrase has become an adverbial phrase)

14. *In the possessive case* 'The Queen of England's crown'
(Here the noun phrase has become an adjective phrase)

Note—A noun phrase may be—1. an infinitive with or without an object—'To listen to him is a pleasure', 'It is our duty to fulfil our promises', 2. a infinitive with a modifying word or phrase 'It is healthy to rise early', 'He loves to speak of himself', 3. a noun (or gerund) with a qualifying word or phrase 'He is a very bad boy', 'He does not like loud talking', 4. an adjective or participial adjective with the definite article before it 'The just and the unjust', 'The living and the dead', 5. a noun or pronoun with a complement or infinitive 'I like a man to be exposed'

562. The adjectival phrase performs the work of an adjective in the sentence, that is, it qualifies a noun or its equivalent, as 'John, surnamed Lackland, succeeded Richard', 'Sir Ralph the Rover tore his hair', 'This prize was founded by the late Zemindar of Ettimuram'

Note—An adjectival phrase may be 1. a noun phrase in apposition 'William the Conqueror', 2. a noun phrase in the possessive 'The Maharajah of Travancore's scholarship', 3. a prepositional phrase 'a man of wisdom', 4. a participial phrase 'a man carrying a burden passed a cow quietly grazing', 5. a gerundial infinitive phrase 'pens to write with', 6. phrase made up of two or more adjectives, whether joined by a conjunction or not 'a bold, round hand', 'a great and good man', 7. a phrase made up of one or more adjectives modified by one or more adverbs 'a very good man', 'much the better man of the two'

Note—An adjective phrase if taken with the noun or noun phrase it qualifies, may be considered a noun phrase 'a very good man', 'a man of good sense'

563. The adverbial phrase performs the work of an adverb in the sentence, that is, modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb, as 'he walked very fast', 'It is useful for food', 'He spoke so as to be heard by every one in the room'

Note—The adverbial phrase may be 1. phrase consisting of an adverb modified by another adverb or by an adverbial phrase 'She sings very sweetly', 'He spoke a little too fast', 2. a prepositional phrase 'He went against his will', 3. a phrase consisting of a noun with an

adjunct 'He walked ten miles', 4 a participial phrase 'He stood gazing on the scene', 5 a gerundial phrase 'I have come to learn, not to play', 6 an absolute phrase 'The wind being favourable, we set sail'

564 A noun clause stands in the relation of a noun to some word or words in the sentence. It may be

1 The subject of a sentence 'That we obey the laws of our country is wise'

2 In apposition with a noun, a pronoun, or an infinitive 'The fact that he was absent remains to be proved', 'It is certain that he will not attend'

3 A nominative absolute 'That he took the money having been proved, it rests on him to show that he did not take it with any dishonest intention'

4 Governed by a transitive verb 'He says that he will not do so again'

5 Governed by a preposition 'Our success depends on who are appointed judges'

6. Governed by a noun or an adjective 'There is no proof that he did it,' 'I am sure that he will pass.'

7 A retained object 'I was told by the teacher that we are to have a holiday to-morrow'

8 The complement of an incomplete intransitive verb 'My belief is that he will disappoint us in the end'

Note—"The objective relation, which properly belongs to verbs, may be sustained also by nouns and adjectives, hence these are sometimes followed by noun clauses thus 'there is no proof that he did this,' 'I am sure that this is so,' 'I do this in the hope that he will deserve it' But these nouns and adjectives have the full force and meaning of verbs they are the same as 'there is no evidence to prove that he did this,' 'I believe that this is so,' 'I do this because I hope that he will deserve it'

565 Connectives of Noun Clauses

1 When the noun clause expresses an assertion or statement it is introduced by the conjunction *that* (which is often understood) 'He said that he was going', 'I told him he was a fool'

2 When the noun clause is an indirect question, it is introduced by (1) the *interrogative pronouns* 'Do you know who he is?' 'I know who you are', and (2) by the *interrogative adverbs* 'I know where he is going,' 'Do you know when he will return?'

3. When the noun clause expresses a doubt, or is the indirect form of a question requiring the answer *yes* or *no*, it is introduced by *whether* or *if* 'I doubt whether he will pass,' 'I asked him (if) whether he was going'

566. An adjectival clause is one that stands in the relation of an adjective to (*i.e.*, qualifies) some noun or pronoun in the sentence. Thus 'The merchants, *who dwell there*, are wealthy', 'I love them *that love me*', 'I know the reason *why it is so*'

Note 1—Care must be taken to distinguish adjective clauses introduced by *who*, *when*, *where*, *why*, &c, from noun clauses introduced by the same words. Thus 'I know *where it is*' (noun), 'I know the place *where it is*' (adj). These may be easily distinguished by attending to the definitions of the two kinds of clauses.

Note 2—*Whom* and *which*, when governed by prepositions, sometimes introduce phrases having the force of clauses. 'eyes with which to see,' 'a person to whom to speak.'

An adjectival clause may be attached to (1) the subject, (2) the object, or (3) the completion (if a noun or its equivalent) of a clause, or (4) to any noun or equivalent of a noun, in the sentence, as (1) 'The appointment *which was promised me* has been given away to another', (2) 'I have lost the book *which you gave me*', (3) 'He is the man of *whom I spoke to you last night*', (4) 'The book was stolen on the very day *on which I bought it*'

567 Connectives of adjectival clauses. Every adjectival clause *must* be introduced either by a *relative pronoun* (often understood when in the objective case, or an adverbial accusative, or by a *relative adverb*, as 'the house *that I bought*', 'the house *we live in*', 'the way *he went*', 'the place *where I left it*', 'the country *whence they came*', 'the reason *why I dislike him*'

568. An adverbial clause is one that stands in the relation of an adverb to (*i.e.*, modifies the meaning of) a verb, adjective, or adverb in the sentence. Thus 'The boy ran *when he heard the noise*.'

An adverbial clause may be attached to (1) a verb whether finite or not, (2) an adjective, or (3) an adverb, as (1) 'The table is *where it used to be*', 'The table began to turn *as it never did before*', (2) 'He is much taller *than I am*', 'The darkness was such *that it could almost be felt*', (3) 'He is so ill *that he is not expected to recover*'

569. Adverbial clauses classified Adverbial clauses may be classified according to their meaning, as follows —

1 *Adverbial Clauses of Place*

- (a) *Rest in a place* 'I will remain *where I am*'
- (b) *Motion to a place* 'Whither I go, ye cannot come'
- (c) *Motion from a place* 'He returned *whence he came*'

2 *Adverbial Clauses of Time*

- (a) *Point of time* 'He left home *before the news arrived*'
- (b) *Duration of time* 'He stood there *whilst the house was burning*'
- (c) *Repetition* 'He goes out *as often as they recommend him*'

3. *Adverbial Clauses of Degree or Measure*

'The more you learn, the more remains for you to learn'

'He went as fast as his legs could carry him'

'He writes better than his brother (writes)'

4. *Adverbial Clauses of Cause and Effect, and Purpose*

'The storm was so severe that many large trees were blown down'

'The string breaks because it is pulled too tight'

'Study hard, that you may improve'

5. *Adverbial Clauses of Manner*

'He failed as his father had done before him'

'When things do not go as we wish, we must do as we can'

6. *Adverbial Clauses of Condition and Concession*

'We shall succeed, if we try'

'Rich as he is, he is unhappy'

'We will find him, whether he be alive or dead'

570 Connectives of Adverbial Clauses

Adverbial clauses are introduced by relative adverbs, or by conjunctions (or conjunctive phrases). The chief of these are given in the following table

1. *Place*

(a) *Rest in a place*

where

(b) *Motion to a place*

whither

(c) *Motion from a place*

whence, whence

2. *Time*

(a) *Point of time*

as, as soon as, when, before, etc,
after

(b) *Duration of time*

while, whilst, until, as, as long as

(c) *Repetition*

when, whenever, as often as

3. *Degree or Measure*

as, than

4. *Cause and Effect and Purpose*

that, because, since, seeing that, in
order that, lest, so that

5. *Manner*

as, according as

6. *Condition and Concession*

if, unless, in case, though, as (=
 though) although, however

571 Co-ordinate Clauses

are clauses connected by co-ordinative conjunctions, the chief of which may be classified as follows, according to the kind of connection expressed by them

1. *Cumulative*

and, also, likewise, moreover, besides, further, but
or but also (with not only), too, now, neither
(=and not), nor (=and not), as well as

2. *Adversative*

(a) *Exclusive* else, otherwise, or (=if not)

(b) *Alternative* (either) or, (neither) in other words

(c) *Contrastive* but, whereas, only, nevertheless, however, on
the contrary, on the other hand, yet (not pro-
ceeded by though), still,

3. *Relative* . . . *therefore, then, wherefore, hence, whence, thence, so, accordingly, consequently, for, therefore, then, etc (except for)*

4. *Causative*

Note—Mason takes *for* as a *subordinative* conjunction. We prefer to take it as a *co-ordinative* conjunction, for this reason. It can introduce a *complete and independent sentence*, as appears clearly from the fact that a sentence consisting of two complete clauses connected by *for* can be broken up into two separate sentences, each independent of the other, a *periphrase* being put at the end of the first. Thus the sentence "You may go home now, for I have no more work for you to do" may be written "You may go home now. For, I have no more work for you to do." Clearly this could not be done if the second clause were subordinate to, that is, dependent on, the first. It is true that there is a logical connexion between the two clauses, but so there is between the two clauses in "I have no more work for you to do, therefore you may go home now," and yet Mason would call these *collateral sentences* (see 575) that is, sentences which are grammatically independent of each other, and therefore not subordinate the one to the other. Clauses connected by *for* are equally independent of each other grammatically (for, if not, how could they be written as two separate, complete sentences?), and therefore the second cannot be subordinate to the first.

572. Compound Sentences—A compound sentence is one which consists of two or more *co-ordinate* complete sentences joined together by *co-ordinative conjunctions*, as "He is rich but I am not", "One is a lawyer, and the other a man of letters", "They toil not, neither do they spin", "Either you have forgotten, or the thing never happened."

Co-ordinate clauses are *grammatically independent* of each other, whereas every *subordinate* clause is a *component part* of some other clause or sentence. They are either simply coupled together (as, "You are lazy and your brother is industrious"), or coupled and at the same time opposed to each other (as, "He is not clever, but he studies hard").

The *co-ordinate* members of a compound sentence may themselves be complex sentences.

573. Contracted Sentences—When *co-ordinate* sentences contain either the same subject, the same predicate, the same object, the same complement, or the same adverbial adjunct to the predicate, it often happens that the portion which they have in common is expressed only once. In this case the sentence is said to be *contracted*.

Examples—"Neither I nor you have seen that," i.e., "Neither I [have seen that] nor you have seen that." "He loved not wisely, but too well", i.e., "He loved not wisely, but [he loved] too well." Here the predicate is expressed only once.*

* The predicate which is expressed must, of course, agree with the nearer of the two subjects. The predicate which is not expressed may have to be modified when supplied to suit its own subject. Thus, "Neither you nor I am right;" "Neither you nor your brother is in fault."

"Religion purifies and ennobles the soul", i.e., "Religion purifies [the soul] and [religion] ennobles the soul" Here the subject and the object are expressed only once

"He is either drunk or mad", i.e., "Either he is drunk or [he is] mad" Here the subject and the verb of incomplete predication is are expressed only once.

"He advances slowly but surely", i.e., "He advances slowly, but [he advances] surely" Here the common subject and predicate are expressed only once

"He reads and writes well", i.e., "He reads [well] and [he] writes well." Here the common subject and the common adverbial adjunct are expressed only once. — *Mason*

Note — A sentence is not necessarily a contracted sentence because we find co-ordinative conjunctions used in it "John and Charles are brothers" is as much one sentence as "Those two boys are brothers" One predication may be made of two things taken together "The child has a red and white ball" does not mean "The child has a red ball, and the child has a white ball" The attributes *co-exist* in the same object. So when the same act is directed *simultaneously* to two or more objects, the verb may have two or more objects after it, but the sentence need not, on that account, be split up into two or more sentences. Thus, "He mixed yellow and red together", "He confounds right and wrong" A similar principle applies to the case of adverbial adjuncts. In "The path led onward and upward" it is not necessary to find more than one predication. But "He came now and then," "I saw one here and there," should be treated as contracted sentences. But every verb makes a distinct predication, consequently every verb requires a separate sentence for itself. The conjunction *or* always involves a complete sentence for each of the words or phrases that it introduces, because the word implies some *alternation*, so that the idea of simultaneousness is excluded. — *Mason*

Contracted sentences should be expressed in full before being analysed. But practically this is only done when the same subject agrees with two or more predicates.

574 Elliptical Sentences — Elliptical and Contracted Sentences are thus distinguished — In *contracted* sentences, a certain portion which is common to two sentences is expressed only once (that is, in one of them), and has to be repeated in the other. In *elliptical* sentences, the part that has to be supplied in one of them, although suggested by what is expressed in the other, is not necessarily the same in form.

Contracted sentences or clauses, again, are always co-ordinate, an elliptical sentence is usually a subordinate one, the portion to be supplied being suggested by the principal clause, e.g. —

Charles is younger than I [am young]

This measure does not hold as much as [holds much]

Elliptical sentences must always be expressed in full before being analysed

575. Collateral Sentences—When sentences are placed side by side without a conjunction expressed, or other grammatical link (as a relative pronoun, or a relative adverb), they are sometimes termed *collateral*, as "I came, I saw I conquered", "this is the way, that road goes nowhere." In analysis, a series of collateral sentences may be treated as though they formed a compound sentence

Note.—A proper consideration of the nature of collateral sentences will enable us materially to thin the usual list of conjunctions. A word not a conjunction because it refers us to something that precedes. Simple demonstratives do this. Such words as *therefore*, *consequently*, *likewise*, also (*i.e.*, all so=*just in that manner*) nevertheless, notwithstanding, are not conjunctions, but demonstrative adverbs.—*Mason*

576 Forms of Analysis—Sentences are usually analysed in a tabular form, the one most commonly used being that of Morell ("Completion of the Predicate" being substituted for "Object") But a sentence may also be analysed by writing the clauses, and then parts one under another, and pointing out the construction of each, thus —

"When I look upon the tombs of the great, every emotion of envy dies within me"

Sentence—Complex

- A. Every emotion *me*—principal clause
 a. Every emotion of envy—subject
 b. dies—predicate
 c. within me—extension of the predicate
 B. When I look . . . *great*—adverbial clause to dies in A.
 a. (when) I—subject
 look upon—predicate
 the tombs of the great—completion of the predicate

The following would be the analysis of the above sentence according to the form adopted by Mason, Bain, and others.—

Subject, 'emotion'

Adjuncts of Subject, { 1 'every,' adj
 2 'of envy,' adv phr., prep and noun,

Predicate, 'dies'

Adverbial Adjuncts of Predicate, { 1 'in me,' prepl adv phr., place
 2 'when I look upon the tombs of the great' adverbial clause (a).

Analysis of (a).

Subject, 'I'

Predicate, 'look upon'

Object, 'tombs'

Adjuncts of Object, { 1 'the,' adj or art
 2 'of the great,' prep adv phr.

Adverbial Adjunct of Predicate, 'when,' adv. of time

This form is capable of being easily modified to suit the special character of the sentence to be analysed, and has therefore the advantage of being more thorough than any tabular form can be, unless it is made so elaborate as to be unwieldy. This may be seen by comparing the two following analyses of a sentence, the first according to Morell's, and the second according to Mason's, form

"The cohort, which had already crossed the river, quickly came to blows with the enemy"

Sentence	Kind of Sentence	Subject	Predicate	Completion of Predicate	Extension of Predicate
(a) The cohort quickly came to blows with the enemy.	Principal	The cohort	came	..	1 to blows 2 quickly 3 with the enemy
(b) Which had already crossed the river	Adjectival (a) to cohort in river	which	had crossed	the river	already

Subject,

Attributive adjuncts of subject, { 1 'cohort'
2 Article, 'the'
3 Adjective clause, 'which had already crossed the river' (1)

Predicate,

Adverbial adjuncts of predicate, { 1 'came'
2 'quickly'
3 'to blows'
'with the enemy'

Analysis of (1)

Subject,

'which'

Predicate,

'had crossed.'

Object,

'river'

Attributive adjunct to object,

'the'

Adverbial adjunct to predicate,

'already'

The following are examples of other tabular forms which may be used —

Sentence	Kind of Sentence	Subject	Adjunct to Subject	Predicate	Completion	Extension

Sentence	Kind of Sentence	Subject	Adjunct to Subject	Predicate	Adjunct to Predicate	Object	Adjunct to Object

Sentence	Kind of Sentence	Connective	Subject	Predicate	Object	Extension

But whatever may be the form used, the student can perform the operation successfully on any sentence only by carefully breaking it up into its component parts, and ascertaining the construction of each. If a tabular form is to be used, he should carefully note the headings of the columns, and see that he puts in each column *all that should be there, and nothing else*. The hints and cautions which follow will assist him in analysing in the ordinary tabular form, and may with slight changes, be made applicable to analysis in any form

HINTS AND CAUTIONS,

577 The First Step in Analysis is to ascertain the character of the given sentence as simple, complex, or compound. This is done by marking all the *finite* verbs in the sentence,

after supplying * any that may be understood. If there is only one finite verb, the sentence is, of course, a *simple sentence*, if there are more than one, it may be either a *complex* or a *compound sentence* which it must be determined by observing the connective or connectives used. If there is any *relative pronoun, relative adverbs, or subordinating conjunction* or more than one of these connectives, it is a *complex sentence*, if there are none, it is a *compound sentence*.

Note — Collateral sentences (see 575) are treated as compound sentences for purposes of analysis.

578 How to Analyse a Simple Sentence — In analysing a simple sentence the first two columns † are unnecessary, and the form should be modified thus —

Subject	Predicate	Completion of Predicate	Extension of Predicate

Then we should proceed as follows :—

- 1 Find the finite verb and set it down as the predicate
- 2 Find the nominative to this verb and set it down as the subject.
- 3 With the subject set down all its adjuncts.
- 4 If the predicate is a transitive verb, look for its object, and set it down as the completion of the predicate
- 5 See whether there is any indirect object. If there is, put it in the "completion" column with "*ind. obj.*" after it in parentheses.
- 6 With either object set down the adjuncts to it, if any.
- 7 If the finite verb be intransitive, but incomplete, find out the complement, and set it down with its adjuncts, if any, as the completion of the predicate

* Words supplied are usually put in brackets or parentheses, in analysis.

† We refer to Merrill's form see sec. 576.

8 Put down any words, or phrases, which modify the predicate, as extensions of the predicate (numbering them when there are more extensions than one)

579. How to Analyse a Complex Sentence —

1 Break up the sentence into its component clauses, and set these down in the first column (of the full form), numbering them, and marking the character of each against it in the second column. It is usual to put the principal clause first and the rest in the order of their connectives.

2 Analyse each clause according to the directions given for the analysis of a simple sentence

580. How to Analyse a Compound Sentence —

1 Supply all understood subjects and break up the sentence into its component co-ordinate clauses

2. Set down the co-ordinate clauses in the first column, detaching from each any subordinate clauses that it may have, and arranging the principal and subordinate clauses as in the case of complex sentences

3 Number all the clauses consecutively, and analyse each clause according to the directions given for the analysis of a simple sentence.

581 Object and Complement — A noun or its equivalent which completes the meaning of a *transitive* verb is called its *object*, and a noun or its equivalent, or an adjective or an adjectival phrase, which completes the meaning of an *incomplete intransitive* verb, or any adjective or adjectival phrase which completes the meaning of a *transitive* verb, is called a *complement*. The term "completion of the predicate" includes both objects and complements. The following examples illustrate this —

Object "Brutus killed Cæsar", "That pleased him",
"He told me that he would go"

Complement—of an *intransitive* verb "He is a fool",
"My opinion is that he will fail", "He seems mad",
"He felt very uncomfortable",—of a *transitive* verb "This made him angry", "I think him very silly"

582. Parenthetical Clauses, which have no grammatical connexion with the sentence, are simply described as such in the second column, and analysed according to the directions given for analysing simple, complex, or compound sentences, as the case may be, as in the following example —

"The virtuous man, it has been beautifully said, proceeds without constraint in the path of his duty."

Sentence	Kind of Sentence	Subject	Predicate	Completion of Predicate	Extension of Predicate
(a) The virtuous man proceeds duty	Principal	The virtuous man	proceeds		1 without constraint 2 in the path of his duty
(b) It has been beautifully said	Parenthetical clause	It	has been said		beautifully

583. Direct Quotations—When a direct quotation occurs in a sentence, it should first be taken as part of the clause to which it belongs, and then taken by itself, and analysed as an independent sentence, as in the following example—

" 'Shall we try to catch it ? ' asked Francis "

Sentence	Kind of Sentence	Subject	Predicate	Completion of Predicate	Extension of Predicate
(a) "Shall we try to catch it ? " asked Francis		Francis	asked	"Shall we try to catch it ? "	
(b) Shall we try to catch		We	shall try	to catch it	

Note—A quotation is not a substantive or dependent clause. Its form is not affected by its relation to the principal verb, as that of a dependent clause is. Compare "He said 'I am tired'" with "He said that he was tired."

584 Noun clause standing as subject of a sentence—A noun clause standing as the subject of a sentence is treated in the same way as a direct quotation.

"That the crops will fail is evident"

Sentence	Kind of Sentence	Subject	Predicate	Completion of Predicate	Extension of Predicate
(a) That the crops will fail is evident	..	That the crops will fail	is	evident	..
(b) That the crops will fail	Noun clause subject of (a)	(That) the crops	will fail		

Note—In analysing any complex sentence according to Mason's form, the whole sentence, including all the subordinate clauses, noun, adjectival, adjectival or adverbial is first analysed, and then each subordinate clause by itself

585 Clauses with co-ordinating relatives—An adjective clause (like an ordinary adjective) has usually a definitive or restrictive force. But it often happens that clauses containing relatives are, as regards their *force and meaning*, co-ordinate with the principal clause. Thus, in "I wrote to your brother, who replied that you had not arrived," the sense of the sentence would be the same if *and he* were substituted for *who*. So in "He heard that the bank had failed, which was a sad blow to him," *which* should be treated as equivalent to *and this*. In analysis, however, such sentences are considered as complex sentences, as the clause containing the relative, being *grammatically dependent* on the clause which contains the antecedent, is subordinate in *construction* to the other, though co-ordinate to it in *meaning*. Similar remarks apply to adjectival clauses introduced by relative adverbs, as "He is at Madras, *whither* [= *and thither*] he is gone on business."

586 Relative adverbs—A relative adverb has a double

function—it not only modifies some verb, adjective, or other adverb, in its own clause, but connects the clause or phrase in which it occurs, with the rest of the sentence, as *when* ("Come *when* you are ready"), *where* ("I know not *where* to lay my head"), *whither* ("I know not *whither* he has gone") In analysis, the relative adverb, when it introduces a clause, is treated as an extension of the predicate

587 Interrogative, Imperative, Optative, and Exclamatory sentences—The grammatical construction of interrogative, imperative, optative, and exclamatory sentences is the same as that of assertive sentences, and in analysis, they are reduced, as far as possible, to the assertive form thus,

Whither goest thou ?	=thou goest whither ?
Call my men	= [you] call my men.
May you have health and long life !	} =you may have health and long life !
How are the mighty fallen !	=the mighty are fallen how !

588 Adjunct to noun or pronoun—Any adjunct to a noun or pronoun, or to the equivalent of a noun, must be put in the same column with it

589 Adverbs and adverbial phrases—Every *adverb*, or *adverbial phrase*, attached to a word or phrase, must be put in the same column as that word or phrase, *unless it is an extension of the predicate* (in which case, of course, it must go into the column provided for it)

590 Absolute phrase—The absolute phrase is always an adverbial phrase, and an extension of the predicate.

591 Auxiliary verbs are not separated from their principal verbs in analysis. In "They should have been punished," the predicate is "*should have been punished*" Mason, however, would break up such a predicate into a verb of incomplete predication and an infinitive complement, though in some of the examples given by him he does not do so

592 Complex verbs, whether made up of an intransitive verb and a preposition (as "They *laughed at* me", "I *was laughed at* by them"), or of a transitive verb, an object, and a preposition (as "I will *take care of* you", "You shall *be taken care of* by me"), are not broken up in analysis if they are in the

passive voice but are broken up if they are in the *active* voice. The above sentences would be analysed thus —

Sentence	Subject	Predicate	Completion of the Predicate	Extension of the Predicate
1 They laughed at me	They	laughed	.	at me
2 I was laughed at by them	I	was laughed at		by them
3 I will take care of you	I	will take	care	of you
4 You shall be taken care of by me	you	shall be taken care of	..	by me

593 Two subordinative conjunctions (as *that* and *if*), or a relative adverb and a subordinative conjunction (as *as when*, *than when*) cannot come together in the same clause, but must be taken with two different clauses. A co-ordinative and a subordinative conjunction (as *for that*, *but that*) may, however, occur together in the same clause.

Note — 'He was happy, because, though poor, he was contented.' A sentence like this may seem to be an exception to the rule about two subordinative conjunctions coming together in the same clause, but the difficulty vanishes when we remember that 'though poor' is elliptical for 'though he was poor.'

594 A relative pronoun and its antecedent cannot come together in the same clause, except when *whom* or *which* is governed by a preposition and followed by a gerundial infinitive, as 'He had no pen with which to write the letter.'

595. A word or phrase in one clause cannot agree with, be in apposition to, govern, be governed by, qualify, or modify, a word or phrase in another clause, except in the case of a relative pronoun, which must agree with an antecedent in another clause than that to which it belongs, as just stated.

596 Every adverb, adverbial phrase, or adverbial clause is not necessarily an extension of the predicate, for it may be attached to some word or phrase which forms a part of the subject, the completion of the predicate, or even the extension of the predicate, as "His coming *when he did* was a most fortunate thing", "He told me to do *as I pleased*", "He thinks of going to his village *as soon as the school closes*"

597 The object or complement of a verb is not necessarily a completion of the predicate, for it may be the object or complement of an infinitive, a participle, or a gerund, as "He spends half his time in reading *novels*", "Seeing *me*, he turned away his face", "He comes here to prepare *his lessons*"

598 Conjunctions, interjections, vocatives, and expletive "why" and "well" are not integral parts of a sentence, and should be treated separately. They are sometimes however, put before the subject or the predicate, *in parentheses*, thus (a) "I know that he has failed" (b) "Oh what a fall was there!" (c) "Save me, Lord" (d) "Well, what do you say?"

Sentence	Kind of sentence	Subject	Predicate	Completion of Predicate	Extension of Predicate
(a) 1 I know 2 That he has failed	Principal Noun, obj of I know in 1	I (That) he	know has failed	(2)	
(b) Oh what a fall was there	.	(Oh) what a fall	was		there
(c) Save me, Lord	..	(Lord) [thou]	save	me	
(d) Well, what do you say		(Well) you	do say	what	...

599 Mason gives the following rules for analysing a sentence according to the form adopted by him —

- 1 Set down the subject of the sentence

ii Set down the words, phrases, or adjective clauses which may form attributive adjuncts of the subject

iii Set down the predicate verb. If the verb is one of incomplete predication, set down the complement of the predicate, and indicate that the verb and its complement make up the entire predicate

iv If the predicate be a transitive verb, set down the object of the verb. If the predicate be a verb of incomplete predication followed by an infinitive mood, set down the object of the dependent infinitive.

v. Set down those words, phrases or adjective clauses which are in the attributive relation to the object of the predicate, or to the object of the complement of the predicate, if the latter be a verb in the infinitive mood.

vi Set down those words, phrases, or adverbial clauses which are in the adverbial relation to the predicate, or to the complement of the predicate

600 Examples of Detailed Analysis. The following examples of analysis are taken from Mason's *Grammar and Analysis*

(1) "*A man of weak health is incapable of the thorough enjoyment of life*"

Subject,	'man'
Attributive adjuncts of	{ 1 'of weak health'
subject,	{ 2 'is'
Predicate,	{ Verb of incomplete predication, 'is'
	{ Complement of predicate 'incapable'
Adverbial adjunct of the complement of the predicate,	'of the thorough enjoyment of life'

(2) "*And now, when mightiest quelled, the battle swerved, with many an invader gored.*"

Subject,	'battle'
Attributive adjuncts of	{ 1 Article 'the'
subject	{ 2 Participle phrase, 'with many an invader gored'
Predicate,	swerved
Adverbial adjuncts of	{ 1 Adverb, 'now'
predicate	{ 2 Down with attributive adjunct, or the nominative absolute, 'then mightiest quelled'

(3) "*It is not true that he said that*"

Important or provisional subject	'it'
Real subject (substantive clause),	'that he said that'
Predicate made up of	{ Verb of incomplete predication 'is'
	{ Subjective complement, 'true'
Adverbial adjunct of predicate,	'not'

* We would take *not* as part of the predicate

(4) "*The cohort which had already crossed the river, quickly came to blows with the enemy.*"

Subject 'cohort'

Attributive adjuncts of subject $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ Article, 'the'} \\ 2 \text{ Adjective clause, 'which had already crossed the river' (1)} \end{array} \right.$

Predicate, 'came'

Adverbial adjuncts of predicate, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ 'quickly',} \\ 2 \text{ 'to blows',} \\ 3 \text{ 'with the enemy',} \end{array} \right.$

Analysis of (1)

Subject 'which'

Predicate, 'has crossed'

Object, 'river'

Attributive adjunct, 'the'

Adverbial adjunct of predicate, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'already',} \end{array} \right.$

(5) "*When, in Salamanca's cave, Him listed his magic wand to wave, The bells would ring in Notre Dame*"

Subject (with attributive adjunct,) 'the bells'

Predicate, 'would ring'

Adverbial adjuncts of predicate, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ (Adverbial clause) 'when in Salamanca's cave' (1)} \\ 2 \text{ 'in Notre Dame',} \end{array} \right.$

Analysis of (1)

Subject (infinitive phrase), 'to wave his magic wand'

Predicate, 'listed,' (i.e., 'pleased')

Object, 'him'

Adverbial adjuncts of predicate, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ 'when',} \\ 2 \text{ 'in Salamanca's cave',} \end{array} \right.$

(6) "*He is as tall as I am*"* In full—"He is as tall as I am tall"

Subject, 'He'

Predicate, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Verb of incomplete predication, 'is',} \\ \text{Subjective complement, 'tall',} \end{array} \right.$

Co-ordinate adverbial adjuncts of complement of predicate, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ 'as',} \\ 2 \text{ 'as I am [tall]', (A)} \end{array} \right.$

Analysis of (A)

Subject, 'I'

Predicate, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Verb of incomplete predication, 'am',} \\ \text{Complement of predicate, 'tall',} \end{array} \right.$

Adverbial adjunct of complement, 'as'

* It may be taken as a general rule that after *as* we must supply a word of the same kind of meaning as the word qualified by the simple or demonstrative adverb in the main clause

601 Tabular Analysis of the same sentences.
The following table exhibits the analysis of the above sentences according to the common form

No	Sentence	Kind of Sentence	Subject	Prediccate	Completion of Prediccate	Extension of Prediccate
1	A man of weak health of life	Simple	A man of weak health	is	incapable of the thorough enjoyment of life	—
2	And now, then mightiest goied	Simple	(And) the battle, with many on in hand goied	swerved	—	1 now 2 their mightiest 3 quelled
3	(a) It is not true (b) That he said that	Principal Noun, in app with it in (a)	It (that) he	is not said	true that	— —
4	(a) The cohort quickly came enemy (b) Which had already crossed the river	Principal Adj to cohort in (a)	the cohort which	came had crossed	— the river	1 quick-ly 2 to blows 3 with the enemy already
5	(a) The bells would ring in Notre Dame (b) When in Salamanca's cave wave	Principal Adverbial to would ring in (a)	The bells To wave his magic wand	would ring listed	 lum	1 in Notre Dame 2 (b) 1 when in Salamanca's cave 2
6	(a) He is as tall (b) As I am [tall]	Principal Adverbial to tall in (a)	He I	is am	as tall [tall]	— as

SPECIMENS OF ANALYSIS

602 ' *The personal and perpetual antipathy he had for that family, to whose place he thought his own abilities had a right, gave a glow to his style, and an edge to his manner, that never yet have been equalled in political writing* '

Sentence (or Clause)	Kind of Sentence (or Clause)	Subject	Predicate	Comple- tion of Pred	Extension of Predicate
(a) The personal antipathy gave a glow to his style	Principal	the personal antipathy	gave	a glow	to his style
(b) [The personal antipathy] gave an edge to his manner	Principal co-ord with (a)	[the personal antipathy]	gave	an edge	to his manner
(c) [Which] he had for that family	Adj to an tipathy in (a)	he	had	[which]	for that family
(d) To whose place his own abilities had a right	Adj to fa- mily in (c)	his own abilities	had	a right	to whose place
(e) [As] he thought	Adv to (d) (or pr sent)	he	thought	.	[as]
(f) That never yet have been equalled writing	Adj to glow and edge in (a) and (b)	that	have been equalled		1 never yet 2 in political writing

603. 1. 'That which we call a rose, by any other name would smell as sweet'

2. 'Who steals my purse steals trash.'

NB—The antecedent of *who* is *he* understood

Sentence (or Clause)	Kind of Sentence (or Clause)	Subject	Predicate	Comple- tion of Pred	Extension of Predicate
1 (a) That would smell as sweet by any other name	Principal	that	would smell	—	1 as sweet 2 by any other name
(b) which we call a rose.	Adjective to that in (a)	we	call	1 which 2 a rose (factive)	
2 (a) (He) steals trash	Principal	(he)	steals	trash	—
(b) Who steals my purse	Adjective to he and in (a)	who	steals	my purse	—

604. 'The fact that he has been absent has been established beyond a doubt, so that it is unnecessary to bring forward any other proof that he is innocent'

Note.—The noun clause at the end depends on the noun *proof* (which implies the transitive action of *proving*). Or we may suppose of understood after *proof* 'The proof of that he is innocent,' i.e., of the fact of his innocence

Sentence (or Clause)	Kind of Sentence (or Clause)	Subject	Predicate	Comple- tion of Pred	Extension of Predicate
(a) The fact has doubt	Principal	the fact	has been established	—	beyond a doubt
(b) That he has been absent	Noun in app with fact in (a)	(that) he	has been	absent	—

Sentence (or Clause)	Kind of Sentence (or Clause)	Subject	Predicate	Comple- tion of Pred	Extension of Predicate
(c) So that it is un- necessary proof	Adverbial to <i>has been estab-</i> <i>lished in</i> (a)	(so that) it to bring for- ward proof	is	unneces- sary	—
(d) That he is inno- cent	Noun depend- ing on proof in (c) or go- verned by of und	(that) he	is	innocent	—

605 1 'Methinks it were a happy life to be no better than a lowly swain'

2 'Ill blows the wind that profits nobody'

NB—Methinks must be broken up into 'It thinks (=seems) to me'

3 'Would I were dead, if God's will were so'

Sentence (or Clause)	Kind of Sentence (or Clause)	Subject	Predicate	Comple- tion of Pred	Extension of Predicate
1 (a) Methinks	Principal	[It]	thinks (seems)		[to] me
(b) It were a happy life swain	Noun in app with it impli- ed in (a)	It—to be no better swain	were	a happy life	—
2 (a) Ill blows the wind	Principal	The wind	blows	—	all
(b) That profits no body	Adjective to wind in (a)	that	profits	nobody	—
3 (a) I would	Principal	I	would	—	—
(b) That I were dead	Noun object of would in (a)	(that) I	were	dead	—
(c) If God's will were so	Adverb to would in (a)	(If) God's will	were	so	—

606. 1 'To be or not to be, that is the question.'

2 'What thou biddest, unargued I obey'

N.B. — What thou biddest = that what thou biddest

3. 'May it please your Majesty to give us leave freely to render what we have in charge'

(What = that what)

Sentence (or Clause)	Kind of Sentence (or Clause)	Subject	Predicate	Comple- tion of Pred	Extension of Predicate
1 That—to be or not to be—is the question.	Principal.	That—to be or not to be	is	the ques- tion	—
2 (a) Unargued I obey [that]	Principal	I	obey	[that]	unargued
(b) What thou bid- dest	Adjective to that in (a)	thou	biddest	what	—
3 (a) May it please your Majesty ren- der [that]	Principal	It—to give us leave freely to ren- der [that]	may please	Your Majesty	
(b) What we have in charge	Adjective to that in (a)	we	have	what	in charge

607 1 'Who are you ?'

2 'Who was it that told you ?'

Sentence (or Clause)	Kind of Sentence (or Clause)	Subject	Predicate	Comple- tion of Pred	Extension of Predicate
1 Who are you ?	Principal	You	are	who	—
2 (a) Who was it ?	Principal	It	was	who	—
(b) That told you	Adjective to it in (a)	that	told	you	—



CHAPTER IV.

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES AND FORMS

608 When one clause of a sentence is dependent upon another, the general rule is that, 1 if the verb in the clause which stands first is in the *past tense*, the verbs in the other clause *must* also be in the *past tense* [except in the case mentioned in 609 (a)].

But 2, if the verb in the first is in the *present*, or *future*, the verbs in the second may be in the *present*, *past*, or *future*, as the sense requires.

EXAMPLES —

- 1 When I *called* it your house, I *found* that you *had gone* out
The box *was* so heavy that two men *could* not lift it
The farmer *maintained* that his plough *was* in working order
Nerxes *was persuaded* that he *could* easily conquer Greece
The traveller *felt* sure that I *knew* the way and therefore
 followed my directions
He *never told* me that he *was* going away
He *ran* so fast that he *was* out of breath
- 2 I from this poor woman's ravings it is evident that she *is* a
 lunatic
My master *declares* that he *will* give no such promise
At the meeting he *will* affirm that he *is* (*was* *will* *be*) unable
 to do this work
He *assures* me that the train *has arrived*
This log *is* so heavy that three men *cannot* lift it
The teacher *will* ask why I *have* not learnt my lesson
Every one *believes* that the undertaking *was* a mistake
Have you heard that there *was* a destructive fire in Calcutta
 yesterday

Note — The particular form of the present, past, or future to be used in the second clause depends on that used in the first

If he *go* at once, he *may* be in time
If he *goes* at once, he *may* (*will*) be in time
If he *went* at once, he *might* be in time
If he *had gone* at once, he *might have been* in time
If he *has gone*, he *may* (*will*) be in time
I *would* go if I *could*
I *will* go if I *can*
I *would have gone*, if I *could* (*have done* so)
If I *could have gone*, I *would have done* so.

609 (a) When a sentence expresses a *universal truth*, or a *permanent fact* the *present* tense is used, *whatever tense* precedes it.

He <i>does</i> not believe	} that the earth is round
He <i>did</i> not believe	
He <i>will</i> not believe	

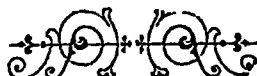
The culprit *seemed* fully convinced that lying is a great sin
 He *admitted* that all men *are* liable to error
 I *remembered* that virtue is its own reward

(b) After verbs of *commanding, hoping, desiring, intending, permitting, &c.* the *present infinitive* is always used, whatever be the tense of the principal verb, as,

He <i>hopes</i>	} to go
He <i>hoped</i>	
He <i>will hope</i>	
He <i>intends</i>	} to go
He <i>intended</i>	
He <i>had intended</i>	

But see Note 2 to Sec. 255

Note—These rules about the Sequence of Tenses must be carefully observed in changing sentences from the direct form into the indirect and vice versa, and from one construction to another, as from simple to complex



CHAPTER V.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH.

610 In reporting the speech of another, there are two forms in which we may put it —

1 We may give his speech in the *exact* words used by him distinguishing them from our own by inverted commas or quotation marks. This is called the *Direct form* or *narration*. Or,

2 We may report his speech *indirectly*, i.e., give his meaning without using the *exact* words employed by him, but making such changes (especially in the tenses of verbs and the persons of pronouns) as are necessary to show that we are not giving the exact words. This is called the *Indirect form* or *narration*, or *oblique narration*.

611 A *Direct* speech may be reported indirectly in *three* ways, viz.

- 1 by the speaker himself
- 2 by one of the audience to whom the speech was delivered
- 3 by an outsider

Illustration

Direct —

The Teacher said — ' Boys, keep quiet '

Indirect —

- 1 I ordered the boys to keep quiet
- 2 Our teacher ordered us to keep quiet
- 3 The teacher ordered the boys to keep quiet

We will consider in detail the changes that we have to make in *direct* speech in order to convert it into *indirect*. Though it is not possible to give such rules as will make the process of changing the direct into the indirect as simple as multiplying one algebraical expression by another, yet it is hoped that the student will find the following rules of some use in performing the operation.

A B—For brevity's sake the verb which introduces and governs the reported speech will be called the *reporting verb* in these rules, and the person reporting the speech the *reporter*.

RULES

FOR CHANGING DIRECT SPEECH INTO INDIRECT.

I.—General Rules

612 (I) *Omit the quotation marks and put in a conjunction, if necessary*

Dir —John said 'I am going'

Ind —John said *that* he was going

In some cases, presently to be pointed out, no conjunction has to be put in. For example —

Dir —John said to me 'When are you going?'

Ind —John asked me when I was going

When the direct speech is an *assertive sentence*, the conjunction *that* is generally inserted, and sometimes it is understood. In some cases, *viz.*, where the direct speech is a *question requiring the answer*, 'yes' or 'no,' *if-or-whether* is the proper conjunction.

Note —"Say," "tell" "speak" In assertive sentences, *say*, may be used as a reporting verb in both the direct and the indirect form, as

Dir —He said to me 'You are not speaking the truth'

Ind —He said to me that I was not speaking the truth

Tell should not be used in the *direct* form as a reporting verb in assertive sentences, it is not idiomatic to say "He told me 'I am going'" When *tell* is used as a reporting verb in the *indirect* form, it should always be followed by a personal object we cannot say "He told he was going" This should be "He told me (him, John) he was going"

Special may be used as a reporting verb in the *direct*, but not in the *indirect* form see the example from Scott in sec 624

613 (II) *Change, if necessary, the tenses of the verbs in the reported speech so as to make them correspond with the tense of the reporting verb*

(a) If the reporting verb be in the *past tense*, all the verbs in the reported speech must be in that tense, (except in the case mentioned in Rule XII) or, if they are already in the *past tense* they should be changed into the *past perfect* (pluperfect), if the context will permit that form being used.

Dir —He said 'I am going'

Ind —He said that he *was* going

Dir —He said 'I have never seen him'

Ind —He said that he *had* never seen him

Dir —He said 'I saw him once before this'

Ind —He said that he *had* seen him once before that

Dir —He said 'John was ill when I went to see him'

Ind —He said that John *was* ill when I went to see him

Note —In the third example, the *past tense* is changed into the *pluperfect*, but in the fourth it is not changed. In the third, we have two past actions, one prior to the other, but in the fourth we have two simultaneous past actions

(b) If the reporting verb be in the *present* or *future* tense, the verbs in the reported speech may be in the *past*, *present* or *future*, according to circumstances.

1 Rep verb present

Dir — John *says* 'I *am* going'

Ind — John *says* that he *is* going

Dir — John *says* 'I *was* going'

Ind — John *says* that he *was* going

Dir — John *says* 'I *will* be going'

Ind — John *says* that he *will* be going

2 Rep verb future

Dir — John *will say* 'I *am* going'

Ind — John *will say* that he *is* going

Dir — John *will say* 'I *was* going'

Ind — John *will say* that he *was* going

Dir — John *will say* 'I *will* be going'

Ind — John *will say* that he *will* be going

The case of the reporting verb being in the future tense is very unusual

Note 1 — When the reporting verb is in the *Historic Present* tense, it is necessary to change it into the past tense in turning the speech into the indirect form. *Says* the king to the Earl "You shall go or hang" = The king *said* to the Earl that he should either go or hang

Note 2 — When the *present* tense is used for the *future* in the reported speech, it should be changed into the future, in turning the speech into the indirect form, as

Dir — He *said* 'I *start* to night'

Ind — He *said* that he *would start* that night

Dir — Thus spoke Fate

'Who *pulls* the foremost foeman's life

His party *conquers* in the strife

Ind — Fate *said* that who *spilt* the foremost foeman's life, his party *would conquer* in the strife

This does not, however, apply to the *present progressive* used for the future

Dir — He *said* 'I *am going* to-morrow'

Ind — He *said* that he *was going* the next day

Note 3 — The change of the *simple infinitive* into the *perfect infinitive*, has the same effect as the change of the past tense into the past perfect, as,

Dir — He *said* if the book were not lost, I should gladly *give* it to you'

Ind — He *said* that if the book had not been lost, he would have gladly *given* it to me

614. (III) *The persons of the pronouns in the reported speech should, if necessary, be so changed in the indirect form that they may refer to the same individuals as they refer to in the direct.*

The persons of the pronouns are to be changed according to the following rules —

1 *Pronouns of the first person* in the reported speech should be changed into the same person as that of the noun or pronoun representing the *original speaker*, i.e., the person whose speech is reported

- Dir* —1 *I* said 'I am going'
 2 *You* said 'I am going',
 3 *He (John)* said 'I am going'

become respectively in the

- Ind* —1 *I* said *I* was going
 2 *You* said that *you* were going
 3 *He (John)* said that *he* was going

Here, in the first example, *I* remains unchanged because the *original speaker* is represented by *I*, the *first* personal pronoun, in the second *I* is changed into *you*, second person, and in the third, *I* is changed into *he*, because the *original speaker* is represented by *you*, second person, and *he (John)*, third person respectively

✓ **EXCEPTIONS**—In the following cases, *we* remains unchanged

- 1 When *we* denote *mankind generally* as,

- Dir* —He said 'We must all die'
Ind —He said that *we* must all die

2. When *we* denotes the *speaker together with the person spoken to*, one of the two being expressed by a pronoun of the first person as,

- Dir* —He (they) told me 'We are late'
Ind —He told me that *we* were late
Dir —You told me 'We are late'
Ind —You told me that *we* were late
Dir —I told him (them) 'We are late'
Ind —I told him that *we* were late
Dir —I told you 'We are late'
Ind —I told you that *we* were late

Note 1 —When *we* is used in its *regal sense*, it must be changed into *he* or *she* according to circumstances —

- Dir* —The king (queen) says 'It is *our* royal pleasure, &c'
Ind —The king (queen) says that it is *His (Her)* royal pleasure, &c
 (Or *we* may say *His Majesty's*, or *Highness*, *Her Majesty's* or *Highness*)

Note 2 —When *we* is used by the editor of a newspaper or magazine, it may be changed into *it* as,

- Dir* —The *Madras Mail* says 'We hear, &c'
Ind —The *Madras Mail* says that *it* hears, &c

Note 3 —When *we* is used by the author of a book, it should be changed into *he* or *she* according to circumstances

- Dir* —The author says "We have already shown, &c"
Ind —The author says that *he (he)* has already shown, &c.

Note 1 — When *we* is used colloquially for *I* it must be treated as if it were *I*.

Dir — I said to him 'Let *us* have a look at your watch.'

Ind — I asked him to let *me* have a look at his watch.

ii *Pronouns of the second person* in the reported speech should be changed into the same person as that of the noun or pronoun representing the *person originally spoken to*, i.e., the person to whom the speech reported is addressed.

Dir — I He said to *me* 'You may go.'

2 He said to *you* 'You may go.'

3 I said to *him* (John) 'You may go.'

become respectively in the

Ind — 1 He said to *me* that *I* might go.

2 He said to *you* that *you* might go.

3 I said to *him* (John) that *he* might go.

Here the *person originally spoken to* is represented by *me*, *you*, *him* (John) respectively in the three examples, and accordingly *you* in the reported speech is changed into *I* and *he* in the first and third examples, and left unchanged in the second.

iii *Pronouns of the third person* in the reported speech should be changed into the same person as that of the noun or pronoun representing the *person originally spoken of*, i.e., the person about whom the speech reported is spoken.

Dir — 1 Speaking of *me*, he said 'He is lazy' or, he said of (about) *me* 'He is lazy.'

2 Speaking of *you*, he said 'He is lazy.'

3 Speaking of *John*, he said 'He is lazy.'

become respectively in the

Ind — 1 He said that *I* was lazy.

2 He said that *you* were lazy.

3 He said that John was lazy.

The words *speaking of me*, &c., are omitted in the indirect, because they would be redundant, though in the direct they are necessary to show to what the pronoun *he* refers.

This last rule will rarely have to be applied, because the indirect form is shorter and less clumsy than the direct in this case, and is therefore preferred to it.

Nb — In changing from the Direct to the Indirect form or *vice versa*, the number and case of the pronoun undergo no change, except when *you* is used instead of *thou* in the direct form.

- 615 (IV) Omit all interjections, vocatives, and other words that cannot be used except in addressing a person directly.

Dir — I said to him 'Friend, lend me your book.'

Ind — I asked him to lend me his book.

Dir — He exclaimed 'Alas! I am undone.'

Ind — He exclaimed that he was undone.

Du —I said to him 'Hie, take this book'

Ind —I told him to take that book

Du —I called out to him 'Hold!'

Ind —I called out to him to stop

Du —I said to him 'Please give me a pen'

Ind —I asked him to give me a pen

Note 1 —In the last example, the meaning of *please* may be retained by putting some word like *kindly*, after *asked*, as 'I asked him kindly to give me a pen'. Whenever we can retain the meaning of words omitted from the reported speech in this way we should do so

Note 2 —Students sometimes try to retain vocatives by using a very unidiomatic form thus they would turn

Du —The boy said to the teacher 'Sir, I am not well,'
as follows into the

Ind —The boy, addressing the teacher as 'Sir,' said that he was not well

In the first place this is not the indirect form, but a mixture of the direct and indirect forms, and would be so in effect even if the *Sir* were not put within inverted commas, and secondly, it is not English

In the example last given, it is unnecessary to retain the vocative, as it may be taken for granted that the student would use it in speaking to the teacher. It will, however, be necessary to retain a vocative in some other form, if there is anything unusual in it, or if it has any special force, thus:

Du —He said to his servant "You rogue, I have caught you at last"

Ind —He called his servant a *rogue*, and told him that he had caught him at last

Note here that the vocative becomes a noun in apposition in the indirect form, and there is therefore no such hybrid form as in the example given in the preceding section

Sometimes it is necessary to retain the vocative in some other form in order to show whom the speaker is addressing

Du —The Secretary then rose, and said "Mr. President, Ladies and Gentlemen, I have much pleasure, &c."

Ind —The Secretary then rose, and addressing the President and the Ladies and Gentlemen present, said that he had much pleasure, &c

Du —His Excellency said in reply "Chairman and Councillors of the Tanjore Municipality, I thank you for the cordial reception, &c."

Ind —His Excellency in reply thanked the Chairman and Councillors of the Tanjore Municipality for the cordial reception, &c

{ 616 (V) '*Shall*,' should sometimes be changed into '*will*' and '*will*' into '*shall*' according to the rules for the use of '*shall*' and '*will*'

Du —You told me 'You will be rewarded'

Ind —You told me that I should be rewarded

Du —He told me 'I am sure you will pass'

Ind —He told me that he was sure I should pass.

Note—When *shall* is used for making a proposal, or asking permission it should be changed in the indirect form, so as to bring out that meaning, as

Dir.—The boy said to his father ‘*Shall I remain at home to day?*’

Ind.—The boy asked his father if he *might* remain at home that day.

617 (VI) Generally, we should change—

<i>Now</i>	<i>into</i>	<i>then,</i>
<i>This and these</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>that and those,</i>
<i>Come</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>go,</i>
<i>Hither, hitherto</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>thither, thither to,</i>
<i>Here, herein, &c</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>there, therein, &c,</i>
<i>Hence henceforth, &c.</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>thence, thenceforth, &c,</i>
<i>Thus</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>so,</i>
<i>To-day, this day</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>that day,</i>
<i>To-night</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>that night,</i>
<i>To-morrow</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>the next day,</i>
<i>Yesterday</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>the previous day,</i>
<i>Last night, week &c.</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>the previous night, week,</i>
		<i>&c</i>

Dir.—He said to me ‘Do not trouble me *now*.’

Ind.—He told me not to trouble him *then*.

(But “He said ‘there are only three cases in English *now*,’” becomes “He said that there are only three cases in English *now*,” because the statement applies to the present time as much as to the time when it was made.)

Dir.—He said to me ‘Take *this* book.’

Ind.—He told me to take *that* book.

Dir.—He said to me ‘Come to my house.’

Ind.—He told me to go to his house.

Dir.—He said to me ‘Come *here*.’

Ind.—He told me to go *there*.

Dir.—He told me last Friday I have no time to speak to you *to day*’

Ind.—He told me last Friday that he had no time to speak to me *that day*.

Dir.—He told me last Friday ‘I will reply to your letter *to morrow*’

Ind.—He told me last Friday that he would reply to my letter *the next day* (on Saturday)

Dir.—He asked me last Tuesday ‘Why were you absent *yesterday*?’

Ind.—He asked me on Tuesday why I had been absent on *the previous day* (on Monday)

Whether these changes should be made or not, depends on the circumstances of each case. Suppose a man says

Dir.—‘The king will come *to night*’

If this is reported *on the same day*, the report will be

Ind —He said that the king would come *to night*

If reported *on the day after*, the report will be

Ind —He said that the king would come *last night*

Again, a man has some pictures, suppose, but *not beside him* and says,

Dis —‘I paid a large sum for *those* pictures’

If the pictures are *beside the reporter*, the report will be

Ind —He says he paid a large sum for *these* pictures

If the pictures are *not near the reporter*, the report will be

Ind —He says he paid a large sum for *those* pictures

Again, suppose a gentleman says in the Town Hall, in Bombay

Dis —‘There will be a public meeting in *this* hall *to-morrow* at four o’clock

If this is reported *in the Town Hall*, and *on the same day* in which the speaker uttered it, the report will be

Ind —He said that there would be a public meeting in *this* hall *to-morrow* at four o’clock

If it is reported *in another place*, yet *still on the same day* the report will be

Ind —He said that there would be a public meeting in *that* hall, (or, in the Town Hall) *to-morrow* at four o’clock

If it is reported *in the Town Hall*, but *on the day after that on which the speaker uttered it*, the report will be

Ind —He said that there would be a public meeting in *this* hall *to-day* at four o’clock

If it is reported *in another place* and *on the day after that on which the speech was made*, the report will be

Ind —He said that there would be a public meeting in *that* hall (or, in the Town Hall) *to-day* at four o’clock

If it is reported generally, as in a newspaper, the report will be

Ind —He said there would be a public meeting in *that* hall (or, in the Town Hall) *next day* at four o’clock

Other Examples—

Dis —When he was *here* last, he told me ‘I will never come *here* again’

Ind —When he was *here* last, he told me that he would never come *here* again

Dis —He told me *this morning* ‘I shall not come to school *to-day*’

Ind —He told me *this morning* that he would not come to school *to-day*

II.—Special Rules

618. (VII) *When the reported speech is an interrogative sentence*

(a) *If the quotation be one requiring the answer 'yes' or 'no,' change the reporting verb into 'ask' or 'inquire,' insert 'whether' or 'if,' and change the direct question into an indirect one by putting the nominative before the verb*

Dir —He said to me 'Are you going?'

Ind —He asked me whether (if) I was going

(Here *said* has been changed into *asked whether*, *if* inserted, and the direct question 'are you going?' changed into an indirect by changing the relative position of the nominative and verb).

(b) *In all other cases, change the reporting verb into 'ask' or 'inquire,' and the direct question into an indirect as in (a).*

Dir —He said to me 'When are you going?'

Ind —He asked me when I was going

Note —"Ask," "inquire" *Note* that *ask* may or may not take a personal object, as, "The lecturer asked if his audience could think of any thing more absurd", "The lecturer asked his audience if they could think of anything more absurd" But *inquire* cannot take a personal object we cannot "He inquired me how I was getting on," but must omit *me* If the person of whom the inquiry is made has to be mentioned when *inquire* is used, we must do it by means of a prepositional phrase "He inquired of me which of my brothers was ill"

619 (VIII) *When the reported speech is an imperative sentence*

(a) *If it denotes an order or direction, change the reporting verb into 'tell,' 'order' or 'command' according to circumstances, and the imperative mood into the infinitive*

Dir —He said to me 'Fetch me that book'

Ind —He asked me to fetch him that book

Dir —The teacher said to me 'Stand on the bench'

Ind —The teacher ordered me to stand on the bench

Dir —The king said to him 'Go at once'

Ind —The king commanded him to go at once

(b) *If it denotes a request, change the reporting verb into 'ask,' 'request,' 'entreat' or 'beg,' and the imperative into the infinitive*

Dir —I said to him 'Lend me a book'

Ind —I asked him to lend me a book

Dir —I said to the teacher 'Please explain the sentence'

Ind —I requested (asked) the teacher to explain the sentence

Dir —The poor man said to me 'Give me some help'

Ind —The poor man (entreated) begged me to give him some help

Note —If it denotes a prohibition, we may change the reporting verb into *forbid*.

Di — He said to me "Do not go there again"

Ind — He forbade me to go there again

620 (IX) When the reported speech is an optative sentence, change the reporting verb into *pray* (wish) and the optative sentence into an assertive

Di — He said to me 'May you be happy'

Ind — He wished (prayed) that I might be happy

Di — The beggar said to me 'May God bless you'

Ind — The beggar prayed that God might bless me

621. (X) When 'let' is used in the direct speech so as to express a proposal, we may change the reporting verb into 'propose' and use 'should' instead of 'let.' As,

Di — He said to me 'Let us start to-morrow'

Ind — He proposed that we should start the next day

Sometimes sentences with *let* must be changed as follows

Di — He said 'Let him abuse me, if he likes'

Ind — He said that he might abuse him if he liked

Di — He said 'Let it rain ever so hard, I will start to dry'

Ind — He said that it might rain ever so hard, he would start that day, or, 'He said that though it rained ever so hard, he would start that day'

622 (XI) When the reported speech is an exclamation, change the reporting verb into 'exclaim' or 'cry out' and the exclamation into an assertion

Di — He said to me 'How unlucky you are!'

Ind — He exclaimed that I was very unlucky

Di — He said 'Alas, I am undone!'

Ind — He cried out (exclaimed) that he was undone'

623 (XII) When the reported speech expresses a universal truth or one that holds good in the past as well as the present, no change of tense is required

Di — He said 'Fever produces thirst'

Ind — He said that fever produces thirst

Di — He said 'The Himalayas are the highest mountains in the world'

Ind — He said that the Himalayas are the highest mountains in the world

Di — He said 'Columbus discovered America in 1492'

Ind — He said that Columbus discovered America in 1492

624 (XIII) Sometimes an ellipsis in thought has to be supplied as,

Di — The poet says

"Breathes there the man with soul so dead,

Who never to himself hath said

'This is my own, my native land?'"

Ind — The poet asks whether there breathes a man with soul so dead who hath never said to himself of some particular country that it is his own, his native land

Here if the italicised words were not supplied, and we simply said 'Who hath never said to himself that *that* is his own, his native land,' *that* would have no antecedent to refer to, and we could not attach any meaning to the sentence, or if we had '*this* is his own, &c,' *this* would mean the land in which we are now, i.e., India, which of course the poet never meant.

Note — The lines above are grammatically incorrect, so should be followed by *that* and we should say 'so dead that he never &c.'

625. (XIV) *In changing a direct speech, which is in verse, into the indirect, the poetical order must be changed into the prose order, poetical ellipsis of expression supplied, and peculiar poetical constructions changed into corresponding prose constructions, as,*

Dir — "Hold" cried the stream, "nor thus repune
For well 'tis known a Power divine,
Subservient to His will supreme,
Has made the dew drop and the stream."

Ind — The stream called out (to the dew drop) to stop and not to repune so (in that manner), for that it is well known (Rule VII) that a divine Power has made the dew drop and the stream subservient to his supreme will.

Dir — "O I will none of thy gold," said Robin [to the Sheriff]

Ind — Robin told the Sheriff that he would have none of his gold.

626. (XV) *In changing a Dialogue into the Indirect, the words 'replied' and 'answered' must be used as the reporting verbs, 'ye,' and 'no' and other words similarly used must be replaced by the sentences for which they stand as Dir — I asked him 'Are you going?' He replied 'Yes' — Ind — I asked him if he was going and he replied that he was.*

627. (XVI) *When the same rule cannot be applied to all the parts of a sentence, apply to each part the rule proper to it, taking care not to destroy the completeness or continuity of the sentences.*

Dir — He said to me "Thank you for coming to see me. When are you returning to your native place? Come to me again before you go away. I will give you a letter to your father."

Ind — He thanked me (XVII) for going to see him, and asked me when (VII) I was returning to my native place. He told me to go to him again before I went away and said that he would give me a letter to my father.

628. (XVII) *Generally the reporting verb is the only word outside the quotation marks affected by the change into the Indirect, but sometimes some words in the introducing clause may be omitted. One case of this has been pointed out in*

sub division (iii) of Rule III The following are other examples

Dir —He said 'I hope you are well'

Ind —He *hoped* I was well

Dir —He said to me, 'I thank you for your kind inquiries'

✓ *Ind* —He *thanked* me for my kind inquiries

629 (XVIII) When in changing from the Direct into the Indirect, we have to use the same pronoun for different antecedents so that uncertainty is caused as to what noun it refers to in each case, we should avoid ambiguity by occasionally *repeating the nouns*, or by *pointing out in parentheses* the noun for which the pronoun stands, whenever there is any likelihood of ambiguity

Dir —John said to James 'You can do me the favour, if you like'

Ind —John said to James that he (James) could do him the favour if he liked,

See examples 1, 4, 5 of section 631

630. (XIX) *When a question is put in the form of an assertion, change it into the interrogative form first*

Dir —John said to me 'So you are going away to-morrow?'

Ind —John asked me whether I was not going away the next day

Note —Observe that when an affirmative question is put in the form of an assertion, it becomes negative, and a negative question affirmative 'Is not your name John?' — 'Your name is John (is it not)?'

631 (XX) *Other changes which it will occasionally be necessary to make, but for which it would be next to impossible to give rules, will be illustrated by the following examples*

1 *Dir* —'Will you help me against a wild boar that has insulted me?' asked a horse of a man 'I will gladly do so,' replied the man 'but I shall afterwards require your services, and you will have to go home with me?' 'I thank thee,' said the horse, 'but I see that revenge may cost more than it is worth and I will not, therefore, accept of your kindness'

Ind —A horse asked a man whether he would help him against a wild boar that had insulted him The man replied that he would gladly do so, but that he should afterwards require his (the horse's) services, and that he would have to go home with him The horse thanked him (*Rule XIII*) but said that he saw that revenge might cost more than it was worth, and that he would therefore not accept of his kindness

2 *Dir* —'Had I but served my God,' exclaimed Wolsey on his death bed 'as faithfully as I have my king, He would not have forsaken me in my old age'

Ind —Wolsey exclaimed on his death bed that had he but served his God as faithfully as he had his king, He* would not have forsaken him in his old age

* Here the use of the capital with the pronoun prevents ambiguity

3 *Dir* — 'Have you finished your lesson, George?' said Mr Pientico to his son. 'No father,' replied George, hanging down his head. 'Why not, my son?' 'Because it is so difficult, father, I am sure I shall never learn it. Besides I could not remember it after I had learnt it, my memory is so bad.' 'If I were to promise you a holiday on the third of next month do you think you would forget the date?' 'No, I am pretty sure that I should not.'

Ind — Mr Pientico asked his son George whether he had finished his lesson. George, hanging down his head, replied that he had not. His father inquired why he had not. George replied that it was so difficult that he was sure he should never learn it and besides, his memory was so bad that he could not remember it after he had learned it. His father asked him whether, if he were to promise him a holiday on the third of the next month, he thought he would forget the date. He replied that he was pretty sure he would not.

1 *Re write the following in the Indirect form beginning 'I met B when A began by, &c.'*

A 'Good morning, how do you do?' *B* 'Pretty well, sir, thank you but these are hard times.' *A* 'Yes, to be sure they are, but we have all to do the best we can. If you haven't employment, you had better get some.' *B* 'Willingly, and if you hear of any one who can help me, please let me know.' *A* 'Suppose I help you, it is not for you to say what you will or what you won't do, it is for you to do what I will.' *B* 'Certainly.' *A* 'Mind, as soon as you begin to grumble, you leave my service.'

Ind — *A* met *B* when *A* began by wishing him good morning and inquiring how he did. *B* thanked him and said he was pretty well, but that those were hard times. *A* replied that they certainly were, but they had all to do the best they could, and that if he hadn't employment, he had better get some. *B* replied that he would willingly get some, and asked him, if he heard of any one who could help him, kindly to let him know. (*Rule IV Note*) *A* answered that, supposing that he, (*A*) helped him, it was not for him to do what *A* would. *B* agreed, and *A* told him to take care, for that as soon as he began to grumble, he should leave his service.

5 *Dir* — The sovereigns wrote 'Cavaliers, Esquires, and other persons who by our orders are in the Indies, we send to you Juan Aquado, our Groom of the Chambers, who will speak to you on our part. Give him faith and credit.'

Ind — The sovereigns wrote to the Cavaliers, Esquires, and other persons who by their orders were in the Indies that they (the sovereigns) sent to them Juan Aquado, their Groom of the Chambers, who would speak to them on their part, and commanded them to give him faith and credit.

6 *Dir* — *Oliver*. 'My dear brother, welcome, when did you arrive here?' *Charles*. 'To day and can you guess why I have come?' *Oliver*. 'No.' *Charles*. 'I want a situation.' *Oliver*. 'For yourself?' *Charles*. 'Yes.' *Oliver*. 'Then I suppose you expect me to help you to one?' *Charles*. 'Exactly.'

Ind. — *Oliver* welcomed his brother *Charles* and asked him when he had arrived there. *Charles* replied that he had arrived that day, and asked him if he could guess why he had come. *Oliver* replied that he could not. *Charles* said that he wanted a situation. *Oliver* inquired whether it was for himself. *Charles* answered that it was. *Oliver* then asked him whether he expected him to help him to one. *Charles* replied that that was exactly what he expected.

7 *Dir*—*Dialogue between Sarah and Jane*

Sarah—I say, Jane, just bring me a sheet of writing paper, will you? for I must write a letter.

Jane—Where am I to find it?

Sarah—Why, there is plenty in my mistress's letter case in the parlour.

Jane—Yes, but that is not mine, nor yours either.

Sarah—Well, what does that signify? I am sure there is plenty, my mistress will never miss it, and what is the value of a sheet of paper?

Jane—Why, whether my mistress should miss it or not makes no difference at all. It is not mine, and I cannot take it, it is not honest.

Sarah—Honest, indeed! Well, I never was suspected of being dishonest in my life, and I lived four years in my last place, and I had a good character for honesty when I came away, and I never scrupled to take a thing of that kind either.

Jane—It seems then that your mistress did not know that these trifles were taken, or perhaps the character she gave you might have been different.

Sarah—Why, as to that, what is the value I say, of a sheet of paper? My mistress can afford that well enough. I can warrant you.

Jane—Why, now, it seems to me that the value of the thing signifies nothing, the question is whether it is mine or whether it is not, and if it is not, I have no business to lay a finger on it. Besides, I look upon it that when we take a little thing because we think it will not be missed, it is a sign that we only keep our hands from greater things because we think they will be missed.

NB—The above dialogue is in the *purely conversational* style, and contains many expressions coming under Rule IV, such as the expletive *why* and *well*. We cannot therefore return in the Indirect all that we have in the Direct.

Ind—Sarah called out to Jane and asked her to bring her a sheet of writing paper, as she had to write a letter. Jane asked her where she was to find it. Sarah replied that there was plenty in her mistress's letter case in the parlour. Jane answered that there was plenty, but that it was not hers nor Sarah's either. Sarah asked what that signified, she was sure there was plenty, and her mistress would never miss it, and what was the value of a sheet of paper? Jane replied that whether her mistress would miss it or not made no difference, that it was not hers, and she could not take it, was not honest. Sarah (expressed her astonishment at this) and said that she had never been suspected of being dishonest in her life, that she had lived four years in her last place, and had a good character for honesty when she came away, but that she had never scrupled to take a thing of that kind either. Jane remarked that it seemed then that her mistress did not know that those trifles had been taken or that perhaps the character she gave her might have been different. Sarah again asked what the value of a sheet of paper was, and said that her mistress could afford that well enough, she could warrant. Jane observed that it seemed to her that the value of the thing signified nothing, that the question was whether it was hers, or whether it was not, and if it was not, she had no business to lay a finger on it. That besides she looked upon it that when we take a little thing because we think it will not be missed, it is a sign that we only keep our hands from greater things because we think they will be missed.

CHANGING THE INDIRECT INTO THE DIRECT.

632. This is simply the reverse of the process we have been explaining. When we are required to change a sentence from the Indirect form into the Direct, we have simply to ask 'what *direct speech*, when change into the *indirect* in the manner explained, will be the same as the given sentence?' The answer to this question will be the required *direct speech*. For example suppose we have to change "*He asked me if I was going*" into the direct, we know that "*He asked me 'Are you going?'*" when changed into the Indirect becomes '*He asked me if I was going,*' which is the same as the given sentence, and therefore the required direct speech is "*He asked me 'Are you going?'*" We subjoin a few examples of the conversion of indirect sentences into direct

1 *Ind.*—He asked him how he did, how he had rested in the night, what his complaint was, where his pain was, and what he could do to help him

Dir.—He asked him 'How do you do? How did you rest in the night? What is your complaint? Where is your pain? And what can I do to help you?'

2. *Ind.*—He said that his mother was just then absent from home, but that I should not on that account defer my visit, as she would without doubt return in a few days, and in the meantime I might arrange with him the details of the business, which I had mentioned to him at our former meeting

Dir.—He said to me 'My mother is just now absent from home, but you should not on that account defer your visit, as she will without doubt return in a few days, and in the meantime you may arrange with me the details of the business which you mentioned to me at our last meeting.'

3. *Ind.*—The magistrate asked the complainers if they had not come from a distance, and what they were doing so far from home, and said that surely it would have been better for them to have laid that complaint of theirs at the Tribunal, instead of coming to him when they saw he was so busy

Dir.—The magistrate said to the complainers 'Have you not come from a distance? And what are you doing so far from home? Surely it would have been better for you to have laid this complaint of yours at the Tribunal instead of coming to me when you see I am so busy.'

4. *Ind.*—Clodius acquainted the people that the priests had given judgment for him, but that Cicero was preparing to recover possession by force, and exhorted them, therefore, to follow him and Appius in the defence of their liberties

Dir.—Clodius said to the people 'The priests have given judgment for me, but Cicero is preparing to recover possession by force. I exhort you therefore, to follow me and Appius in the defence of your liberties.'

633. Unnecessary changes In this, as in other exercises in variety of expression, the student should carefully avoid making any *change not required* in order to effect the change which he is called upon to make. Thus in changing from the direct form into the indirect he should avoid changing the voice of any verb, the structure of the sentence, the affirmative into the negative or *vice versa*, and so on. The following examples contain unnecessary changes.

Dir He said to the Judge "I have no more to say."

Ind He told the Judge he had *nothing* more to say

Dir He asked me "How are you?"

Ind He inquired how I was



CHAPTER VI.

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE FORMS.

634. Definitions—

1 When the *object* of a Transitive verb (e g, John wounds Thomas) is made the *subject* (e g, Thomas is wounded by John), then the verb in the second sentence tells what is *done* to Thomas or what Thomas suffers. Hence this form of the verb is *wounded* is called the *Passive*, i e, suffering voice.

The passive voice is the forms assumed by the verb when its object is made the subject.

Hence only Transitive verbs can have passive voices, for only transitive verbs have objects. It is sometimes said that a verb is in the passive voice when its subject 'denotes a person or thing acted on,' but this is not true. In 'Goliath *fell* or *perished* by the hand of David,' Goliath denotes 'a person acted on' yet *fell* and *perished* are not passive forms.

2 The ordinary form of the verb is often called the *Active* (i e, doing) voice, because it generally tells us what the person or thing denoted by the subject *does*, e g, John *wounds*.

This is not always true. In 'Goliath *fell* or *perished*' *fell* and *perished* tell you rather what Goliath *suffered* than what he *did*, yet they would be called Active.

The active voice of a transitive verb is the form that can be used with an object.

Intransitive verbs are always in the Active voice—Abbott (adapted)

635 Rules for changing a verb in a sentence from the Active Voice into the Passive

1 *When the verb has only a Direct Object*

Make the object the subject of the new sentence, change the verb into the corresponding passive voice, and make the agent* an instrumental extension to the predicate, e g

Active—Brutus killed Cæsar

Passive—Cæsar was killed by Brutus

* We use the term *agent* in this chapter to mean the word or phrase which denotes the agent or doer of the action

In the first sentence there are three parts —

1. *Brutus*—the agent,
2. *Killed*—the verb denoting the action, and
3. *Cæsar*—the object

In changing it into the passive, we make the object *Cæsar* the subject, change *killed* into the corresponding passive voice *was killed*, and make the agent *Brutus* an *instrumental adjunct* to the verb by prefixing the preposition *by* to it

These are the only three parts of the sentence affected by the change of the verb from one voice to another. The other parts generally remain unaltered, though the changes pointed out sometimes make others necessary, e.g.,

Active—He objected to the proposal and the company bade him state his reasons

Passive—The proposal was objected to by him and he was bidden by the company to state his reasons

Here the sign of the infinitive *state*, omitted in the active, has been supplied in the passive

✓ II When the verb has a Direct and an Indirect *dative* object

The same rule holds with this difference, that as there are *two objects*, one of them becomes the subject of the passive verb, and the other is retained as object.

This retained object may be

- (1) the Indirect or (2) the Direct object of the active

1 *Active*—The conqueror offered them then lives

Passive—1 Then lives were offered *them* by the conqueror

2 They were offered *then lives* by the conqueror

2 His master forgave him his fault

1 His fault was forgiven *him* by his master

2 He was forgiven *his fault* by his master

3 My friend refused me this favour

1 This favour was refused *me* by my friend

2 I was refused *this favour* by my friend

4 My father taught me writing

1 Writing was taught *me* by my father

2 I was taught *writing* by my father

EXCEPTION—‘He gave me to understand’ can be changed only *one way* ‘I was given to understand by him’ Here give to understand is treated as a sort of compound verb

Note—When the indirect object is *other than dative*, factitive, for example, there is only one form in the passive, *vis*, with the Direct object as subject, as,

Active—They made, appointed him general

Passive—He was made, appointed general by them

Active—The king banished him the country

Passive—He was banished the country by the king

636. Verb in the Imperative Mood.—When a verb in the imperative mood of command or request is changed into the passive voice, it is changed into the infinitive mood, and the imperative mood of the auxiliary verb *let* is made to govern it

Active Tell him to go home

Passive Let him *be told* [by you] to go home

The only way of avoiding this use of *let* is to use the subjunctive mood (or, as it is sometimes wrongly called, the imperative mood first or the third person), thus "*Be he told* [by you] to go home" But this construction is more suited to poetry than prose

637. An infinitive, gerund, gerundial infinitive, or participle may be similarly changed from the active into the passive, as,

Act—I expect him *to do* the work

Pass—I expect the work *to be done* by him

Act—He went mad through *having lost* his fortune

Pass—He went mad through his fortune *having been lost*

Act—I sent the book for you *to read*

Pass—I sent the book *to be read* by you

Act—This fruit is not ripe enough *to eat*

Pass—This fruit is not ripe enough *to be eaten*

Act—I saw John *beating* James

Pass—I saw James *being beaten* by John

638. When a verb consists of an auxiliary and an active participle, or an auxiliary and an active infinitive, it is changed into the passive voice by changing the participle or the infinitive into the passive voice, as,

Active—They are *repairing* the house

Passive—The house is *being repaired* by them

Active—He may *occupy* this room

Passive—This room may *be occupied* by him

Active—He is (has) *to draw up* the address

Passive—The address is (has) *to be drawn up* by him

639. "Shall" and "Will" have to be interchanged, in changing the voice of a verb in a sentence, if the rules for the use of those auxiliaries require the change, as,

Active—The teacher said "*I will punish* you for this"

Passive—The teacher said "You *shall be punished* for this"

Active—We shall *leave* that matter alone for the present

Passive—That matter *will be left* alone for the present

640. Complex verbs—There are two classes of complex (transitive) verbs 1 those formed by joining a preposition to an intransitive verb, as *laugh-at*, 2 those made up of a transitive verb and its object, together with a preposition, as *take care-of*

1 A complex verb formed of an intransitive verb and a preposition is changed into the passive form according to the usual rule, the preposition being considered as a part of the verb, as,

Active—We have not heard of him since

Passive—He has not been heard of since

2. A complex verb formed of an intransitive verb, its object, and a preposition may often be changed into the passive form in two ways (1) all three may be taken *together* as if forming a single verb, which may be changed according to the usual rule, or (2) the transitive verb may be taken *by itself* as the verb to be changed, as,

Active—We will take care of him

Passive—(1) He shall be taken care of (by us)

(2) One shall be taken of him (by us)

Active—The teacher should take notice of such conduct

Passive—(1) Such conduct should be taken notice of by the teacher

(2) Notice should be taken of such conduct by the teacher

Lay hold of find fault with, make much (little, nothing, a great deal) of, have access to, are other examples of such compound verbs

Note—1 It is not always that the transitive verb can be separated from the compound verb, and changed by itself into the passive form. Thus "We cannot get rid of this nuisance" can be changed only by treating *get rid of* as a compound "This nuisance cannot be got rid of by us," but not "Rid cannot be got of this nuisance by us" So also "I was made a fool of," not "A fool was made of me"

2 On the other hand, every transitive verb with its object and a preposition cannot be treated as a compound verb. Thus "He said nothing to me," "We know everything about him," cannot be changed into the passive form by considering the italicised words in each as forming a compound verb

641 **Verbs with Factitive Objects**—When a verb takes a factitive object, that object should be taken along with the verb in changing the sentence into the passive form, as

Active—They elected him President

Passive—He was elected President by them

642 **Transitive Verbs with Factitive Complements.**—When a transitive verb takes a factitive complement, it should be taken along with the verb in changing the sentence into the passive form, as,

Active—This circumstance made him very glad

Passive—He was made very glad by this circumstance

Active—The enemy took ten men captive

Passive—Ten men were taken captive by the enemy

643. The agent is sometimes to be found in a prepositional phrase attached to an infinitive, as,

Active—This appointment is too high for a matriculate to hold

Passive—This appointment is too high to be held by a matriculate

644. To change the Passive into the Active—simply reverse the process, i.e., find the active which, when changed into the passive according to the above rules, will be the same as the given sentence. For example

Passive—The man was bitten by the dog

Active—The dog bit the man

Note—Sometimes the agent is omitted in the passive form, and then it must be supplied in the active as, 'They were refused quarter' = 'The enemy refused them quarter'

645. The present indefinite tense is sometimes used in the passive voice with the force of the present tense, but in such cases the latter tense only can be used in the active voice, as,

Passive—The examination is postponed to March

The examination has been postponed to March

Active—The University (Government, &c.) has postponed the examination to March

Passive—He is greatly disappointed at your failure

Active—Your failure has greatly disappointed him

646. Where the Passive or the Active form is preferable—

I. *The active is preferable in the following cases*—

(1) When the object of a transitive verb is expressed by an infinitive followed by a noun, as 'He undertook to deliver lectures, and not 'Lectures were undertaken to be delivered by him'

(2) When the object of a transitive verb is in abstract term followed by a qualifying clause, as, 'He perceived the difficulty of arranging this matter' and not 'The difficulty of arranging this matter was perceived by him'

(3) When the object of a transitive verb is a preposition or a noun clause, as 'He found that it was impossible to make any change in his system,' and not 'It was found impossible by him to make any change in his system,' or 'That it was impossible &c., was found by him'

(4) When the verb is reflexive as, 'He shot himself' and not 'He was shot by himself'

(5) Where progressive action has to be expressed, as, 'His writing the letter,' and not 'The letter is being written by him'

II. *The passive is preferable in the following cases*—

(1) When the agent is followed by a long relative clause, as, 'He was admitted into this institution by some gentlemen who had been his father's friends and who had long watched over his interests,' and not 'Some gentlemen who had been, &c., and had long &c., admitted him into the institution.'

(2) When the agent is either *not specified* or *not known* or is *understood to be persons in general*, or *when we do not wish to name the agent*, as, 'The Romans were considered good soldiers,' and not 'People considered the Romans good soldiers' 'He was murdered,' not 'Somebody murdered him'

(3) When the importance of the action is entirely confined to the effect, and the cause or agent is of no practical consideration 'London is built on the Thames'

647 Miscellaneous Examples of Change of Voice—

- ✓ 1 His master *took* him to task
He *was taken* to task by his master
- 2 They *refused* him admission
He *was refused* admission by them
- ✓ 3 Touch me if you dare
Let me *be touched* by you if you dare
- 1 People (or they) *think* you to have done this
You *are thought* to have done this, or,
It *is thought* that you did this
- 5 I *shall be obliged* to go
Circumstances *will oblige* me to go *
- 6 He *was taken* prisoner
The enemy *took* him prisoner
- 7 The race *was run* well
They *ran* the race well
- 8 *Having crossed* the bridge, they *attacked* the enemy
The bridge *having been crossed*, the enemy *were attacked* by them *
- 9 They *will be forced* to submit,
Their enemies *will force* them to submit
- 10 You *are expected* to pass the examination
Your teachers *expect* you to pass the examination
- 11 One *would imagine* he was mad
It *would be imagined* he was mad
- 12 They *laughed* at him
He *was laughed* at by them
- 13 I *commanded* them to fire the guns
They *were commanded* by me to fire the guns
I *commanded* the guns to *be fired* by them.
- ✓ 14 He *ordered* them to get supper ready
He *ordered* supper to *be got* ready by them
They *were ordered* by him to get supper ready
- ✓ 15 More things *are wrought* by prayer than this world *dreams* of.
Prayer *works* more things than *are dreamt* of by this world
- 16 The goodness of the soil soon *raised* a crop
A crop *was* soon *raised* on account of the goodness of the soil.
- 17 The Magistrate *swore* in the constables
The constables *were sworn* in by the Magistrate
- ✓ 18 A stitch in time *saves* nine
Nine stitches *are saved* by one stitch in time

Note 1 —In those marked with an asterisk the active form is preferable

✓ *Note 2* —When the nominative in the Active voice cannot be properly called an *agent*, as when it is an abstract, material, or neuter noun, some other preposition must be used instead of *by* *by* *by*,

- ✓ { *Act* —His conduct displeased me
 Pass —I was displeased *at* his conduct
Act —Little satisfies him
Pass —He is satisfied *with* little
Act —That does not surprise me
Pass —I am not surprised *at* that
Act —The book contains much information
Pass —Much information is contained *in* the book



CHAPTER VII

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

648 The following examples illustrate the principal changes that have to be made in a sentence, when we change an adjective or adverb in it from one degree to another. By carefully studying these examples, the student will be easily able to change the degree of an adjective or adverb in a sentence *similar* to any of them. If, for instance, he is required to change the positive into the comparative in 'This book is not so good as that,' he must recast the sentence as in example 16

Thus

Pos — John | is not so tall as | James
This book | is not so good as | that (book)
Comp — James | is taller than | John
That book | is better than | (this book)

This shows how to make the required change by observing the changes made in example 16

649 The student must bear in mind the following facts

1 *The positive is implied in the comparative and is therefore not incompatible with it.*

That is, when we say 'John is as tall as James,' we do not deny that he may be taller. If we may say 'John is richer than James,' we may also say 'John is as rich as James,' for, if he has more money than James he may *a fortiori* be said to have as much. Consequently in example 8, below, we change 'John is not taller than James' into 'James is (at least) as tall as John,' though the first sentence is quite consistent with James being taller than John

2 *The universal implies the particular*

If we may say 'All the boys in the class are as tall as John,' we may also say 'some boys in the class are as tall as John,' and in fact, we content ourselves with the second statement when we are afraid of stating too much (i.e., more than the fact), by making the first. Consequently in example 2 below, though it is quite possible that every boy in the class is as tall as John, we only say that some are. For the latter must be true (otherwise John would be the tallest), while the former may be true, but we have nothing to authorise us to say that it is

A B — If there be a single boy as tall as John it would be perfectly logical to say 'Some boys are as tall as John'

3 In changing from one degree to another, it is sometimes necessary to state *less* in the new form than we know to be true, but we must never state *more* than the given sentence really means

'No man was *stronger* than Samson'

This does not deny the fact that Samson was the *strongest* man, but, as the statement does not go so far, we are only authorised to say, 'Samson was as *strong* as any man' or 'Samson was *one of the strongest* of men' If the given sentence were 'No man was as *strong* as Samson,' then we might say that he was the *strongest* man

650. Whenever there is a comparison made, the sentence expressing the comparison, when fully stated, has three parts, viz, 1. *the person or thing compared*, 2. *the comparison itself*, and 3. *the person or thing to which the comparison is made*, as,

Henry is the *tallest* of all the boys in the class

When an adjective or adverb in a sentence is changed from one degree to another, the changes that are made in the sentence come under three heads —

1 Change of the *order* of the parts of the sentence,

2. Change of the *quality* of the sentence, i.e., of affirmative into negative, or *vice versa*

3 Introduction of any new word or words, as, *no*, *some*, *any* *any other*, &c

The student must carefully note in the following examples where many of these changes take place, and he must make the same change in dealing with similar examples

In regard to the changes mentioned above, it will be seen from the following examples that

(1) *Change of order and change of quality always go together*, i.e., whenever the order is changed, the quality is changed and *vice versa*

(2) The order and quality are changed *only* when there is a change from the *positive* into another degree or from another degree into the *positive*. The only exceptions to this are the forms 'Some boys in the class are *taller* than John,' 'No boy in the class is *taller* than John,' both of which, when changed into the *superlative*, require change of order and quality (See examples 9 and 10), and 'John is (is not) *one of the tallest* boys in the class' when changed into the *comparative*. (See examples 3 and 4)

(3) Whenever there is change from or into the *positive*, the order and quality are changed.

The following are exceptions — (1) 'John is not so tall as some boys in the class', (2) 'John is as tall as any boy in the class,' when changed into the *superlative*, (3) 'John is (is not)

one of the tallest boys in the class,' when changed into the positive, (See examples 15, 16, 3, 4) (4) When the comparative or superlative of *diminution* (*less tall, least tall*) is changed into the positive See examples 21, 22

The student will find it very useful to remember the above rules and then exceptions, as well as the following cautions —

1 When the positive is used to make a *universal denial*, *other* or *else* should be used if (and only if) the former term is included in the latter 'No metal is so heavy as platinum' is wrong because platinum itself is a metal, and the sentence would mean that platinum is not so heavy as itself. On the other hand it is wrong to say 'No other metal is as light as cotton,' because it would mean that cotton is a metal

2 When the comparative is used, the latter term of comparison should never *include* the former 'Iron is more useful than all the metals' should be 'than all the *other* metals'

Note — But when the assertion is negative, *other* should not be used We should say 'No metal is more useful than iron', for 'no *other* metal is more useful than iron' would imply that iron is more useful than itself

3 When the superlative is used, the latter term of the comparison should never *exclude* the former 'A fondness for show is of all other follies the most vain' should be 'of all follies'

We will now proceed to illustrate what we have said by examples

651 Example 1

Sup — *John is the tallest boy in the class*

Comp — *John is taller than any (every) other boy in the class*

Pos — *No other boy in the class is so tall as John*

652 Example 2

Sup — *John is not the tallest boy in the class*

Comp — *John is not taller than every other boy in the class*

Pos — *Some boys in the class are (at least) as tall as John*

Note — Of course the comparative does not mean that John may not be the shortest, for it is quite consistent with his being *shorter than every other boy*, nor does the positive deny that some may be taller than John (for, if they are taller, they are also as tall) Just as the superlative is the denial of the fact that *John is the tallest boy*, so the comparative is the denial of the *very same* fact otherwise expressed, viz, *John is taller than every other boy*

653 *Example 3.*

Sup — *John is one of the tallest boys in the class.*

Comp — *No boy in the class is taller than John*

Pos — *John is as tall as any boy in the class*

654 *Example 4*

Sup — *John is not one of the tallest boys in the class*

Comp. — *Some boys in the class are taller than John*

Pos. — *John is not so tall as some boys in the class.*

Note — When the superlative is used as a superlative of eminence, it cannot be changed into the comparative or positive, as 'it was a most difficult undertaking'. Here there is no comparison meant — most has simply the same force as *exceedingly*.

655 The comparative can always be changed into the positive, but only in some cases into the superlative, viz., where it has one of the following forms (a) *John is taller than any (every) other boy in the class*, (b) *John is not taller than every other boy in the class*, (c) *Some boys in the class are taller than John*, (d) *No boys in the class are taller than John*. See examples 5—8

656 *Example 5.*

Comp — *John is taller than every (any) other boy in the class*

Sup — *John is the tallest boy in the class*

Pos — *No other boy in the class is so tall as John*

657 *Example 6*

Comp — *John is not taller than every other boy in the class*

Sup — *John is not the tallest boy in the class*

Pos — *Some boys in the class are (at least) as tall as John*

658 *Example 7.*

Comp — *Some boys in the class are taller than John*

Sup — *John is not one of the tallest boys in the class*

Pos — *John is not so tall as some boys in the class*

659 *Example 8*

Comp — *No boy in the class is taller than John*

Sup — *John is one of the tallest boys in the class*

Note — Of course John may be the tallest but the given sentence does not warrant our saying so

Pos — *John is (at least) as tall as any boy in the class,*

660 *Example 9.*Comp.—*John is taller than James*Sup.—*None, unless we say 'Of John and James, the former is the tallest' This, however, would not be strictly correct (But see BAIN'S Higher English Grammar 'Comparison of Adjectives')*Pos —*James is not so tall as John*661. *Example 10*Comp —*John is taller than any of his brothers*Sup —*Of John and his brothers, John is the tallest.*Pos —*None of John's brothers are so tall as he*662. *Example 11.*Comp —*John is not taller than James*Sup.—*None.* (See 9th example)Pos —*James is (at least) as tall as John.*

(For the comparative sentence means that John may be as tall as, or shorter than James)

663 *Example 12*Comp —*John is not taller than any of his brothers,*Sup.—*Of John and his brothers, John is not the tallest*Pos —*Every one of John's brothers is (at least) as tall as John*

664 The Positive can be changed into the Superlative only when it has one of the following forms (a) *No other boy in the class is as tall as John*, (b) *Some boys in the class are as tall as John*, (c) *John is not so tall as some boys in the class*, (d) *John is as tall as any boy in the class*, and into the comparative only when it has one of the above forms or one of the following (e) *John is as tall as James*, (f) *John is not so tall as James (any other boy in the class)* (See exs 13—18).

665 *Example 13*Pos —*No other boy in the class is so tall as John*Sup —*John is the tallest boy in the class*Comp —*John is taller than any (every) other boy in the class*666 *Example 14*Pos —*Some boys in the class are as tall as John*Sup —*John is not the tallest boy in the class*Comp —*John is not taller than every boys in the class*

667. *Example 15*

Pos — *John is not so tall as some boys in the class*

Sup — *John is not one of the tallest boys in the class*

Comp — *Some boys in the class are taller than John*

668. *Example 16.*

Pos — *John is as tall as any boy in the class*

Sup — *John is one of the tallest boys in the class*

Comp — *No boy in the class is taller than John*

669. *Example 17*

Pos — *John is as tall as James (anybody)*

Comp. — *James is not (nobody else is) taller than John*

670 *Example 18*

Pos — *John is not so tall as James (any other boy in the class)*

Comp. — *James is (all the other boys in the class are) taller than John*

671 The eighteen examples given above may be arranged in three groups, of which examples 1, 2, and 9 are pegs, as it were on which we may hang the others, so that if these three are thoroughly understood, there will be no difficulty in remembering the other fifteen. The three groups are —

Group I — Examples 1, 2, 5, 6, 13, 14

Group II. — Examples 3, 4, 7, 8, 15, 16

Group III — Examples 9, 10, 11, 12, 17, 18

We shall show how all the examples in Group I may be remembered by the aid of Example I, and the student should deal with the other two groups in the same way himself

Example 1 is —

Sup — *John is the tallest boy in the class*

Comp. — *John is taller than any (every)* other boy in the class.*

Pos — *No other boy in the class is so tall as John*

* Note that when the comparative is affirmative, we may use *any* or *every*, but when negative, only *any*.

Now taking Example 2 we see that the superlative in it is simply the *opposite* of that in Example 1, it may therefore be presumed that the comparative and the superlative in it will also be the opposites of those in Example 1 and such we find to be the case. The comparative in 2 is obviously that in 1 with the negative adverb. As to the positive, we have *some* in 2, while we have *no* in 1. The reason for this will be clear from the consideration that the contradictory or opposite of a *universal negative* is a *particular affirmative*, and not a universal affirmative.* Thus if a person says 'No men are fools,' and I want to contradict him, I should not go the length of saying "All men are fools"—an obviously absurd assertion. I should only instance *some* men who are fools, and say "No, *some* men are fools." Conversely the opposite of a *universal affirmative* is a *particular negative*, if a person says "All men are fools," I should contradict him by instancing *some* men who are *not* fools, and saying "Some men are *not* fools." From this it is clear that the three degrees in 2 are respectively the opposites of the three in 1.

Example 5 can be obtained from 1 by a simple change of order.

Example 6 is the negative form of 5 (The words "at least" are not necessary, but are inserted to show the possibility of some boys being taller than John)

Examples 13 and 14 are simply 1 and 2 respectively turned upside down

672. Example 19

Comp — *John is less tall than James*

Pos — *John is not so tall as James*

* B - Compare this with the 7th example and note that when the comparative is *negative*, no transposition is required as when it is *affirmative*. So also when the superlative is *negative*, *etc.*

673 Example 20

Sup — *John is the least tall boy in the class*

Comp — *John is less tall than any other boy in the class*

Pos — *John is not so tall as any other boy in the class*

* It is only logical that we should consider the direct opposite of a proposition to be one that differs from it in both *quantity* (universality or particularity) and *quality* (affirmativeness or negativeness) and not in quantity or quality alone. (1) "All men are mortal", (2) "No men are mortal" differ in quality alone. (3) so also do "Some men are mortal," (1) "Some men are not mortal." 1 and 3 differ in quality alone, as also 2 and 4. But 1 and 4 differ in both quality and quantity, and so do 2 and 3.

674' The Comparative or Superlative of *diminution* may be changed into the Comparative of *increase*. See examples 21, 22.

675 Example 21

Comp of Dim.—*John is less tall than James*

Comp of Incr —*James is taller than John.*

676 Example 22

Sup of Dim —*John is the least tall boy in the class*

Comp of Incr —*All the other boys in the class are taller than John*

677 Sometimes the form of the given sentence has to be changed into one of the above forms before the degree of the adjective can be changed, e.g ,

Example 23

Pos —*I have never tasted so sweet an apple as this*

We first change this into

No other apple I have ever tasted was so sweet as this.

Then we may easily find the superlative and comparative, as in ex. 11

Sup —*This is the sweetest apple that I have ever tasted*

Comp —*This is sweeter than any other apple that I have ever tasted.*

678. When the comparison is not fully stated, we should first state it fully, and then make the required change, e.g ,

Example 24.

Pos —*I have never seen any thing so grand*

Supplying the ellipsis, we have

I have never seen any thing so grand as this thing (sight)

Then proceed as in example 23, and we get the

Sup —*This is the grandest thing (sight) that I have ever seen*

Comp —*This is grander than any other thing (sight) that I have ever seen*

679 Adverbs may also be changed from one degree to another in the same way, e.g ,

Example 25

Sup —*John writes the fastest of all the boys in the class*

Comp.—*John writes faster than any other boy in the class*

Pos.—*No boy in the class writes so fast as John, (as in ex. 1.)*

680. *Example 26*Comp — *John writes faster than James*Sup — *None*Pos — *James does not write so fast as John (as in ex 7)*

681 In changing from the comparative into the positive or the reverse, few must be changed into most, and most into few

*Example 27*Comp — *Few boys in the class are taller than John*Pos — *John is tall as most boys in the class**Example 28*Comp — *John is taller than most boys in the class*Pos — *Few boys in the class are as tall as John**Example 29*Pos — *Few persons talk as distinctly as he*Comp — *He talks more distinctly than most persons**Example 30*Pos — *He talks as distinctly as most persons*Comp — *Few persons talk more distinctly than he*

682 Other changes are exemplified in the following

*Example 31.*Comp — *The house was scarcely (hardly, little) better than a dungeon.*Pos — *A dungeon would be almost as good as the house was**Example 32.*Pos — *The house was almost as bad as a dungeon*Comp — *A dungeon could hardly be worse than the house was**Example 33*Comp — *John is much (far) better-behaved than James*Pos — *James is by no means (not at all) so well-behaved as James**Example 34*Sup — *John is by far the tallest boy in the class*Comp — *John is much taller than any other boy in the class*Pos — *No other boy in the class is by any means so tall as John*

683. Additional examples—

- 1 Comp—*No friendships among men of talents are more likely to be sincere than those between painters and poets.*
Pos—*Friendships between painters and poets are as likely to be sincere as any among men of talents.* (See ex 8)
- 2 Sup—*Goldsmith's History of England is the most finished and elegant summary of English History.*
Comp—*Goldsmith's History of England is a more finished and elegant summary of English History than any other.*
Pos—*No other History of England is so finished and elegant a summary of English History as Goldsmith's.* (See ex 1)
- 3 Pos—*He was as mean as he was conceited.*
Comp—*He was not more conceited than he was mean.* (See ex 17)
- 4 Sup—*Of all men an author is used most hardly.*
Comp—*An author is used more hardly than any other man.*
Pos—*No other man is used so hardly as an author.* (See ex 1)
- 5 Pos—*We can conceive nothing so odious as these distinctions.*
Comp—*These distinctions are more odious than anything else that we can conceive.*
Sup—*These distinctions are the most odious things that we can conceive.* (See ex 23)
- 6 Comp—*This passage touched him more sensibly than all the rest.*
Sup—*This touched him most sensibly of all the passages.*
Pos—*No other passage touched him so sensibly as this.* (See ex 7)
- 7 Comp—*There is nothing in the world which I should like better (understood than this).*
Pos—*I should like this as well as anything else in the world.* (See exs 24 and 8)
- 8 Comp—*No man is more foolish than Goldsmith when he has not a pen in his hand.*
Sup—*Goldsmith is one of the most foolish of men when he has not a pen in his hand.*
Pos—*Goldsmith is as foolish as any man when he has not a pen in his hand.* (See ex 8)
- 9 Comp—*He was less wise than courageous.*
Pos—*He was not so wise as he was courageous.* (See ex 19)
Comp of Incl—*He was more courageous than wise.* (See ex 21)
- 10 Comp—*They had much worse arms than their enemies.*
Pos—*Their enemies had not arms as bad as theirs.* (See ex 9)
- 11 Com—*Safer are we than were our fathers in forts.*
Pos—*Our fathers in forts were not so safe as we.* (See ex 9)
- 12 Comp—*Socrates was more patient than most men.*
Pos—*Few men were so patient as Socrates.* (See ex 28)



CHAPTER VIII

THE CONVERSION OF SENTENCES.

684 Sentences may be changed from one *kind* to another, as from simple to complex or compound, or *vice versa*, or from one *form* to another as from interrogative to assertive or from affirmative to negative. These changes are illustrated in this chapter.

685 Words, Phrases, and Clauses—Any member of a sentence may be a word, a phrase, or a clause, in other words, it may be said to belong to any one of three “degrees,” if we call words, members of the first, phrases, of the second, and clauses, of the third, degree. It may be expected therefore that a member of sentence may be changed from any degree to any of the other two degrees—words into phrases and clauses, phrases into words and clauses, and clauses into words and phrases, and as a matter of fact this is generally the case.

Note - ‘Expansion’ and ‘Contraction’ so called—It is a mistake to speak of every change of a member of a sentence from a lower to a higher degree as *expansion*, and from a higher to a lower degree as *contraction*. As Mason rightly observes one expression is the *expansion* of another only when the elements of the latter are *still preserved* in the former. Thus, “The lark builds” is *expanded* in the sentence “The lark, which soars so high and sing so sweetly builds its nest on the dairy ground.” But to say that “I saw that he was confused” is an *expansion* of “I saw his confusion” is a misuse of terms. A shoe is not “*expanded*” when it is pulled off and replaced by a jack boot. For similar reasons it is not always correct to describe the change from a higher to a lower degree as *contraction*.

686 Conversion of Phrases into Clauses—In changing a phrase into a clause, we must be guided as to the tense of the verb in the clause by the tense of the verb in connexion with which the phrase stands. If the verb is in the present tense, then the phrase when expanded is *usually* expressed in the present, but if the phrase is connected with a verb in the past, the past tense *must* be used, (except when it expresses a universal truth or permanent fact). Thus ‘Grant him like me to guard the Trojan crown’ becomes ‘Grant that he *may* guard the Trojan crown’. But ‘He went to Madras to see the Museum,’ becomes ‘He went to Madras that he *might* see the Museum’.

But if the phrase refers to a fact of the past, the past tense must be used, even when the phrase stands in connexion with a verb in the present. For example, in the sentence 'I do not know the year of the battle,' *of the battle* refers to a fact of the past, and the past tense must be used when it is changed into a clause 'I do not know the year in which the battle *was fought*' So 'He *speaks* like Demosthenes,' becomes 'He *speaks* as Demosthenes *spoke*'

Sometimes, *i.e.*, when the phrase expresses a *permanent fact*, the present tense must be used, even when the phrase stands in connexion with a verb in the past tense. Thus 'His face *shone* like the sun' = 'His face *shone* as the sun *shines*'

The *participle* being used in many ways, the student must, in changing a participial phrase into a clause, first ascertain what the phrase expresses. A participle or participial phrase may express --

- 1 *Reason* — Being ill, he wrote for leave
= *As (because) he was ill, he wrote for leave*
- 2 *Condition* — Shame being lost, all virtue is lost
= *If shame is lost, all virtue is lost*
- 3 *Concession* — He was condemned *untried*
= *He was condemned though he was untried*
- 4 *Coincidence of time* — I saw the boy *crossing the street*
= *I saw the boy when he was crossing the street*

Note 1 — Phrases in which the adverb *too* occurs require great care. In a phrase where the infinitive after 'too' has no negative in connexion with it, one is inserted when the phrase is changed into a clause. Thus 'The boy is too lazy to study,' becomes 'The boy is so lazy that he will not study' So 'I was too old to learn,' becomes 'I was so old that I could not learn' But when the infinitive has a negative joined to it, the negative must be omitted when the phrase is made into a clause. Thus 'The boy is too clever not to understand the problem,' becomes 'The boy is so clever that he is sure to understand the problem'

Note 2 — When an adjective qualified by an adverb becomes a noun in expression, the adverb becomes an adjective 'a very wise man,' 'a man of great wisdom'

687 Conversion of Simple Sentences into Complex — This is done by changing some word or phrase in the simple sentence into a clause.

(a) *By changing nouns, &c, and noun phrases into noun clauses.*

- 1 Frugality is a duty
That we should be frugal is a duty
- 2 To obey the laws of our country is wise
That we should obey the laws of our country is wise
- 3 He hoped to pass
He hoped that he would pass

- 1 I cannot understand *you acting thus*
I cannot understand *why you act thus*
- 5 The boy prayed for *success*
The boy prayed *that he might succeed*
- 6 *His innocence is still uncertain*
Whether he is innocent is still uncertain

Note—In example 5, the preposition *for* has been omitted in the complex sentence because noun clauses beginning with *that* are not generally governed by prepositions. But in changing into phrases noun clauses before which prepositions have been thus omitted, those prepositions must be expressed. Thus when we change 'I was informed *that he had arrived*,' into a simple sentence, the subordinate clause becomes 'I was informed of *his arrival*.' Here we *seem* to change a noun clause into an adverbial phrase, but what we *really* do is to change it into a noun phrase (*his arrival*), and supply before the phrase the preposition which had been omitted before the noun clause with *that*. (See sec 688 (a), 5, 6, 7)

(b) *By changing adjectives, &c, and adjective phrases into adjective clauses.*

- 1 An honest man is the noblest work of God
An honest man is the noblest work *that God has made*
- 2 The monkey *with the long tail* is dead
The monkey *that had the long tail* is dead
- 3 He brought me a box of clothes
He brought me a box *which contained clothes*
- 4 I am a man of few professions
I am a man *who makes few professions*
- 5 I saw a wooden house
I saw a house *which was made of wood*
- 6 Truly wise philosophers are very rare
Philosophers *who possess true wisdom* are very rare

(c) *By changing adverbs, &c, and adverbial phrases into adverbial clauses.*

- 1 We went to see the Museum
We went *in order that we might see the Museum*
- 2 My pride fell *with my fortunes*
My pride fell *when my fortunes fell*
- 3 He rises *with the lark*
He rises *when the lark rises*
- 4 I have not seen him *since his father's death*
I have not seen him *since his father died*
- 5 *The wind being favourable*, we set sail
As the wind was favourable, we set sail.
- 6 *On my going*, he offered to accompany me
As I was going, he offered to accompany me

688. Conversion of Complex Sentences into Simple—This process is the exact reverse of the above and is performed by changing all the subordinate clauses but one in

the complex sentence into *phrases* or *words*. The examples in 687 illustrate it. Some more examples are subjoined —

(a) *By changing noun clauses*

- 1 It seemed *that he was beside himself*
He seemed *to be beside himself*
- 2 It appeared *that he had forgotten his lesson*
He appeared *to have forgotten his lesson*
- 3 Socrates proved *that virtue is its own reward*
Socrates proved *virtue to be its own reward*
- 4 He believes *that I did it*
He believes *me to have done it*
- 5 The Government resolved *that all children should be educated*
The Government resolved *on the education of all children.*
- 6 I am not sure *but I may go (i.e., that I may not go)*
I am not sure *of not going*
7. The servant trusted *that his master would be generous towards him*
The servant trusted *in his master's generosity.*

(b) *By changing adjective clauses*

- 1 The place *where he was buried* is unknown
The place *of his burial* is unknown
- 2 There was no time *in which a grave might be dug*
There was no time *to dig a grave*
- 3 Some animals *that have no lungs* breathe with the skin
Some animals *without lungs* breathe with the skin
- 4 The fishermen *that walk on the beach* appear like mice
The fishermen *walking on the beach* appear like mice

(c) *By changing adverbial clauses.*

- 1 The ostrich cannot fly *because it has not wings in proportion to its body*
The ostrich cannot fly, *not having wings in proportion to its body*
- 2 He would have passed, *if it had not been for his laziness*
He would have passed, *but for his laziness*
- 3 He is so kind hearted *that he will not hurt even a fly*
He is *too* kind hearted *to hurt even a fly*
- 4 *As he came late*, he was punished.
He was punished *for coming late*

689. Conversion of Simple Sentences into Compound—This is done by changing some word or phrase in the simple sentence into a clause co-ordinate with that sentence, as it is with that word or phrase removed

- 1 *Notwithstanding all his efforts*, he failed
He made *several efforts*, but he failed.
- 2 I punished him *for his negligence*
He was *negligent*, and (therefore) I punished him
- 3 The day began to decline *without the promised visit of the chief*
The day began to decline, *but the promised visit of the chief did not take place, (or the chief did not pay his promised visit)*
- 4 *But for his laziness*, he would have passed
He was *lazy*, or else he would have passed.

690 Conversion of Compound Sentences into Simple—This is done by changing all the co ordinate clauses but one into phrases, any subordinate clauses in the latter being also changed into phrases or words

- 1 *He withdrew into the forties, and set the enemy's forces at defiance*
Withdrawing into the forties, he set the enemy's forces at defiance
- 2 *I am ill, and therefore I request you to grant me leave for to day*
Being ill, I request you to grant me leave for to day

691 Conversion of Complex Sentences into Compound—Change one or more of the subordinate clauses into clauses co-ordinate with the principal clause

- 1 *He withdrew into the fortress, where he set the enemy's forces at defiance*
He withdrew into the fortress, and set the enemy's forces at defiance
- 2 *If you know, it shall be opened*
Know and it shall be opened
- 3 *The mail was late, because the engine met with an accident*
The engine met with an accident, and consequently the mail was late

692 Conversion of Compound Sentences into Complex—Change all the principal clauses but one into subordinate clauses

- 1 *Let and it shall be given*
If you ask, it shall be given
- 2 *Take a farthing from a hundred, and it will be a hundred no longer*
If you take a farthing from a hundred, it will be a hundred no longer
- 3 *Your request is unreasonable, and I cannot grant it*
I cannot grant your request, because it is unreasonable

693 Conversion of Words into Phrases and Clauses—

- 1 *Frugality is a duty*
Being frugal is a duty
That we should be frugal is a duty
- 2 *Envy is human*
To envy is human
That we should envy is human
- 3 *She sang sweetly*
She sang in a sweet voice
- 4 *A honourable man*
A man of honour
5. *Mercy becomes a monarch*
To be merciful becomes a monarch
That he should be merciful becomes a monarch

- 6 They promised him assistance
They promised to assist him
They promised that they would assist him
- 7 Nelson's courage was never doubted
That Nelson was courageous was never doubted
- 8 He is in no danger of prosecution
He is in no danger of being prosecuted
- 9 He is a wise man
He is a man of wisdom
He is a man possessing wisdom
He is a man that is wise
He is a man that possesses wisdom
- 10 This is a laborious undertaking
This is an undertaking involving much labour
This is an undertaking that involves much labour

694 Conversion of Phrases into Clauses—

- 1 The light of the sun
The light which the sun gives
- 2 I like a rogue to be punished
I like that a rogue should be punished.
- 3 I cannot understand your meaning
I cannot understand what you mean
- 4 Having done this, they departed
After they had done this, they departed
- 5 He is too good to refuse this favour
He is so good, that he will not refuse this favour
- 6 He is too strict, not to punish the fault
He is so strict, that he will punish the fault
- 7 Henry writes like me
Henry writes as I write
- 8 It shines like the sun
It shines as the sun shines
- 9 He sank like lead
He sank as lead would sink
- 10 This sad news is too true
This sad news is so very true that it cannot be accepted
- 11 This fact is too evident to require proof
This fact is so evident that it does not require any proof
- 12 In the event of your failure, we must abandon the scheme.
Should you fail, we must abandon the scheme.

695 Interchange of Principal and Subordinate Clauses —

- 1 Many days shall not pass by before I return
= I will return before many days pass by.
- 2 You cannot go home till you have delivered your lesson.
= You must deliver your lesson before you can go home.
- 3 He had hardly arrived when he was arrested
= He was arrested as soon as he arrived

- 4 *When I was younger I thought so*
 = *When I thought so, I was younger*
- 5 *He ran away as soon as he saw me*
 = *No sooner did he see me than he ran away*
- 6 *The book is just where I left it*
 = *I left the book just where it is now*
- 7 *The fact is exactly as you have put it*
 = *You have put the fact exactly as it is.*
- 8 *It always pours when (if) it rains*
 = *It never rains but it pours*
- 9 *Edinburgh, where the government was carried on, was in a state of anarchy*
 = *The government was carried on at Edinburgh, which was in a state of anarchy.*
- 10 *I thought him more clever than he is*
 = *He is not so clever as I thought him*
- 11 *You cannot get the place unless you have good recommendations*
 = *If you want to get the place you must have good recommendations.*
- 12 *He is so poor that he cannot even pay his fees*
 = *He cannot even pay his fees, because he is so very poor, or, too poor to do so*
- 13 *I do not see the force of the objections which you have urged*
 = *You have urged objections of which I do not see the force*
14. *I judged that we were considerably out of our course*
 = *We were, as I judged, considerably out of our course*

696. Conversion of Affirmative into Negative—

Aff —As soon as they saw me, they ran away.

Neg —No sooner had they seen me than they ran away

697. Conversion of Negative into Affirmative—

Neg —He had nothing but a suit of clothes

Aff —He had only a suit of clothes (or, *All* he had was a suit of clothes).

698. Conversion of Exclamatory into Assertive—

1 *Excl* —O that I had the wings of a dove!

Ass —I (wish) would that I had the wings, &c

2 *Excl* —How would he laugh, if he knew it!

Ass —He would laugh very much if he knew it.

699. Conversion of Assertive into Exclamatory—

1 *Ass* —He is a very good man

Excl —What a good man he is!

2. *Ass* —I wish I were happy

Excl —Would that I were happy!

700. Conversion of Interrogative into Assertive—

1. *Int* —To what can I attribute your silence but to forgetfulness?
Ass —I cannot attribute your silence to anything but forgetfulness.
2. *Int* —Do you leave such a matter in doubt?
Ass —You should not leave such a matter in doubt.
3. *Int* —What more could I do?
Ass —I could do nothing more.

Note —When a sentence is changed from Interrogative into Assertive or vice versa the affirmative becomes negative, and the negative, affirmative.

701. Conversion of Assertive into Interrogative—

1. *Ass* —No man of sense will ever do so
Int —Will any man of sense ever do so?
2. *Ass* —It would be very awkward for all of us to be kings
Int —Would it not be very awkward for all of us to be kings?

702. Conversion of Exclamatory into Interrogative—

1. *Excl* —What a large tree that is!
Int —Is that not a very large tree?
2. *Excl* —How old he is!
Int —Is he not very old?

703. Conversion of Imperative into Assertive—

1. *Imp* —Take away the suffixes and prefixes of a word, and the stem remains
Ass —If you take away the suffixes and prefixes of a word the stem remains.

704. Conversion of Optative into Assertive—

1. *Opt* —May you be happy!
Ass —I wish that you may be happy.
Opt —May God bless me!
Ass —I pray that God may bless me.

705. Conversion of Interrogative into Imperative—

- Int* —How old is he?
Imp —Tell me how old he is.



CHAPTER IX.

THE SYNTHESIS OF SENTENCES.

706 "Synthesis" is the converse of *Analysis*. The latter is the breaking down of a sentence into its parts, the former is the building up of parts into a whole

707. Synthesis of Simple Sentences—In building up two or more detached statements into a *simple sentence*, retain one *finite verb*, changing the rest into participles, infinitives, gerunds, gerundial infinitives or nouns, or omitting them altogether

Illustrations

- 1 He worked hard He felt tired
= *Having worked hard*, he felt tired
- 2 He has two books He must get them printed
= He has two books *to get printed*
- 3 The wind was favourable The ship set sail
= The wind *being favourable*, the ship set sail

- 4 William was a great man
He was called the Conqueror
He was corpulent
= William *the Conqueror, a great man*, was corpulent

- 5 He dismissed his old ministers and advisers
This was a foolish act
= He *foolishly* dismissed his old ministers and advisers

- 6 The Presbyterians threw their freedom down
They threw it down at the feet of their tyrant
The tyrant was most heartless
When throwing it down, they cast no glance on the past
= *Without casting* one glance on the past, the *Presbyterians* threw down their freedom at the feet of their most heartless tyrant

- | 7 Tides are periodical swells in the ocean
These swells are produced by the attraction of the sun and the moon
The influence of the moon is six times greater than that of the sun
This is due to its proximity to the earth

= *Tides are periodical swells in the ocean, produced by the attraction of the sun and moon, the influence of the moon, owing to its proximity to the earth, being six times greater than that of the sun*

- / 8 The Rye House Plot was a conspiracy against Charles II
 The king was expected to go to Newmarket races
 The conspirators were to stop his coach on his return
 He was then to be fired upon
 The assassins were to be concealed by the hedges on the road.

= *The Rye House Plot was a conspiracy to stop the coach of Charles II on his return from Newmarket races and to fire upon him under cover of the hedges on the road.*

- 9 Eugene Aram was convicted at the York assizes
 The date of the assizes was 1759
 He had murdered Daniel Clarke at Knarlesburgh
 The murder was committed about fourteen years before the trial
 He was sentenced to death
 Before receiving sentence he delivered an able but unavailing speech
 The subject of his speech was the improbability of a man like him doing such a deed

= *At the York Assizes in 1759, Eugene Aram, on being convicted of the murder of Daniel Clarke, committed at Knarlesburgh about fourteen years before, was sentenced to death, notwithstanding his having delivered an able but unavailing speech on the improbability of a man like him doing such a deed.*

- 10 A certain crime was facilitated in England
 This was done in the end of the reign of Edward I
 The crime was that of clipping the coin
 It was facilitated by the custom of cutting the silver penny
 The custom was sanctioned by law
 The penny was cut into halves and quarters

= *The crime of clipping the coin was facilitated in England in the early part of the reign of Edward I, by the custom, sanctioned by law, of cutting the silver penny into halves and quarters*

708. **Synthesis of Complex Sentences.**—A Complex Sentence has one principal clause and one or more subordinate clauses. In combining a number of detached statements into a *complex sentence*, one must be retained for the principal clause and the rest turned into phrases or clauses one at least being turned into a clause, all redundant expressions and repetitions must be removed, and proper connectives between clauses, and suitable tenses must be employed. *Illustrations*

- 1 Camphor is a solid essential oil
 It is obtained by boiling the wood of a species of laurel
 This laurel abounds in certain parts of China and Japan.

= Camphor is a solid, essential oil, obtained by boiling the wood of a species of laurel *which* abounds in certain parts of Japan and China

- 2 A farmer stepped into a field to mend a gap in one of the fences
At his return he found the cradle turned upside down
He had left his only child asleep in the cradle
The clothes were all torn and bloody
His dog was lying near the cradle, also besmeared with blood

= A farmer, *who had just* stepped into a field to mend a gap in one of the fences, found at his return *that* the cradle, *in which* he had left his only child asleep, *had been* turned upside down, the clothes all torn and bloody, *and that* his dog was lying near the cradle, also besmeared with blood

- 3 He turned up the cradle
He found his child unharmed
He found an enormous serpent lying dead on the floor
The serpent had been killed by the faithful dog
The courage and fidelity of the dog preserved the life of the child
The courage and fidelity of the dog deserved a very different fate

= *Turning up* the cradle; he found that his child had not been hurt, and that an enormous serpent was lying dead on the floor, *killed* by that faithful dog, *whose* courage and fidelity, *in preserving* the life of the child, deserved a very different fate.

- 4 The manners of individuals are generally determined by moral causes
A nation is nothing but a collection of individuals
The character of a nation will therefore much depend on moral causes
This must be evident to the most superficial observer

= *That* the character of a nation will much depend on moral causes must be evident to the most superficial observer, *since* a nation is nothing but a collection of individuals, *whose* manners are generally determined by *these* causes,

- 5 Ivan was Czar of Russia
He frequently went out disguised
He did so to discover the opinion of the people about his administration
One day he entered a small village
He pretended to be overcome by fatigue
He employed relief
He employed it from many of the inhabitants

= One day, *Czar Ivan* of Russia, *who* frequently went out disguised to discover the opinion of the people about his

administration, entered a small village, where, *pretending to be overcome by fatigue*, he implored *relief from many of the inhabitants*

- 6 I was musing thus
While musing, I cast my eyes towards the summit of a rock.
It was not far from me
On its summit I discovered a person.
He was habited like a shepherd
But he was a being of a superior nature
I must say this, if the truth is to be spoken.

= *While I was thus musing (or, while musing thus), I cast my eyes towards the summit of a rock not far from me, on which I discovered a person habited like a shepherd, who, to speak the truth, was a being of a superior nature.*

709 Synthesis of Compound Sentences.

A Compound sentence must contain *at least two principal (co ordinate) clauses with or without subordinate clauses* To build up a compound sentence out of several detached statements select two or more leading statements, connect them by means of proper *co-ordinative* conjunctions and convert the remaining sentences into *subordinate clauses* or phrases and tack these on to the co-ordinate clauses to which they are related in thought

Illustrations

- 1 He was an excellent officer
He was possessed of many knightly qualities
He was somewhat haughty in his bearing
He was one of the best connected cavaliers in the army

= *He was an excellent officer and possessed many knightly qualities, though he was somewhat haughty in his bearing, as he was one of the best connected cavaliers in the army*

- 2 It was proposed to sell our colt at a neighbouring fair as we wanted to buy a horse
My wife proposed this as the colt was grown old.
A horse that would carry single or double upon occasion would make a pretty appearance at church or on a visit.
We were now to hold up our heads a little higher in the world than we had done before

= *We were now to hold up our heads a little higher in the world and so my wife proposed that we should sell our colt, which was grown old, at a neighbouring fair, and buy a horse, which would carry single or double upon occasion and make a pretty appearance at church or on a visit.*



CHAPTER X.

VERBAL DISTINCTIONS.

I—SYNONYMS.

710 Synonyms are words of the same grammatical class which have nearly the same meaning, sometimes the same general meaning but a different specific shade of meaning, as for example, *mix* and *blend*. Both these words denote a similar general meaning of putting things liquid, or resembling liquids, together, but when we speak of *mixing* two colours together, and of the colours of the rainbow *blending* with one another, the particular meaning is very different. *Mixing* makes two colours one if we mix blue and yellow, we get green, *blending* is then gradual, almost imperceptible, running into one another.

711 Words which express nearly the same general notion have often come to express it in very different, sometimes almost opposite, ways, as *unite* and *combine*. These two words are in many uses convertible, they may be exchanged one for the other. They express generally the same act, but they express particularly two different sides of it. *Unite* means *to make one*, and *combine*, *to bring two together*. We use *unite* where the notion of the *oneness* resulting from the action is prominent, as 'the *union* of England and Scotland,' forming *one* kingdom. But we say that two men *combined* to annoy another, because the notion of their *joining* is prominent. *Combination* regards more the *coming together* of two parties, *union* regards more their *oneness* when come together. *Connect*, again, is of more extensive meaning two houses may be connected by a passage, but not combined or united.

712 There are more words which are nearly synonymous in English than in other languages, because we have often two sets of derivatives, one from the Latin or Greek, and the other from the Anglo-Saxon, running, so to say, parallel with each other, as *boyish*, *puerile*, *kingly*, *regal* or *royal*, *laugh at*, *ridicule*, *deride*, &c. But even in these cases it will be found, generally speaking, that the Saxon expression is the stronger of the two,—the plainer and therefore the stronger. If we

speak of *deriding a measure*, it is not so plain what this *deriding* means, but if we speak of *laughing at a measure*, each part of the phrase explains itself, and so it is stronger, it says what it does say more forcibly. So *amicable* and *friendly* the latter is much more forcible. It implies a more positive feeling, hence we speak of an *amicable arrangement* as opposed to a hostile one, but we speak of a *friendly call* without any reference to, or thought of, an unfriendly one.

713 Examples of Synonyms discriminated—

1. *Abandon, forsake, relinquish, desert, give up, leave, quit*

To *abandon* is unwillingly to give up anything, as, we were compelled to *abandon* our object, *forsake* is to leave a person in resentment or dislike, as he has *forsaken* all, *relinquish* is to quit any claim to, as, I *relinquish* my claim to that estate, *desert* is to leave meanly or treacherously, as he *deserted* his friend in need. We may say of a man, 'He *gives up* a place of trust, *leaves* his parents in trouble and *quits* his country.'

2. *Abstain, refrain*

We *abstain* from a thing, we *refrain* from an action. 'He *abstained* from food and drink for a whole day.' 'It was with difficulty I *refrained* from giving him a beating.'

3. *Admiration, wonder*

Wonder amounts to a little more than a pausing of the mind, an incapacity to fix on a discernible point in an object that rouses our curiosity. *Admiration* is *wonder* mixed with esteem or veneration. The *admirer* suspends his thoughts, not from the vacancy, but the fullness, of his mind. He is riveted to an object which for a time absorbs his faculties. Nothing but what is great and good excites *admiration*, and none but cultivated minds are susceptible of it. An ignorant person cannot *admire*, because he cannot appreciate the value of anything.

4. *Admission, admittance*

Admittance is properly confined to the receiving a person or thing into a given place, *admission* includes in itself the idea not only of receiving, but also the purpose of receiving. Whoever is *admitted* or has the liberty of entering any place, with or without an object, has *admittance*, but a person has *admission* to places of trust, or into offices and the like.

5. *Affirm, assert*

To *affirm* is said of facts, to *assert*, of opinions, we *affirm* what we know, we *assert* what we believe. We contradict an *affirmation*, we confute an *assertion*.

6. *Aim, object, end*

The *aim* is that which the person has in his own mind. It depends upon the character of the individual whether it be good or bad, attainable or otherwise. The *object* lies in the thing, it is a matter of choice, it depends upon accident as well as design, whether it be worthy or unworthy, the *end* is that which follows or terminates any course or proceeding, it depends upon the means taken, whether the *end* is arrived at or not. It is the *aim* of the Christian to live peaceably, it is a mark of dulness or folly to act without an *object*, it is sophistry to suppose that the *end* will justify the means.

{ 7. *All, whole.*

All respects a number of individuals, *whole* respects a single body with its component parts. We have not *all*, if we have not the *whole* number; we have not the *whole*, if we have not *all* the parts of which it is composed.

{ 8. *Alter, change.*

To *alter* is to make some difference in a thing or person, to *change* is to substitute one thing for another. *Alterations* are partial, *changes* regard the whole. Some additions and *alterations* are made in every new edition of a book. Constant *change* of government is detrimental to a state.

9. *Amazed, astonished, surprised, confounded.*

We are *amazed* at what is incomprehensible, *astounded* at what is vast or great, *surprised* at what is new or unexpected, *confounded* by what is shocking or terrible.

{ 10. *Ambiguous, equivocal.*

An *equivocal* expression has two meanings, one open, and intended to be understood, the other concealed, and understood only by the person who uses the expression. An *ambiguous* expression has, apparently, two senses, and leaves us in doubt which of the two to prefer. An *honest* man will refrain from employing an *equivocal* expression, a *confused* man may often utter *ambiguous* terms without any design.

11. *Amiable, amicable.*

Both words are ultimately from Lat. *amo*, I love. The former directly from *amabilis*, fit to be loved, means possessing qualities which tend to awaken our feelings of affection or tenderness towards their possessor, the latter, from *amicabilis*, friendly, is the opposite of *hostile*; the former refers to one's disposition or behaviour, the latter to one's conduct.

12. *Answer, reply.*

A *reply* is a distinct response to a formal question or attack, in speech or writing. The word *answer* is used in two senses, viz., (1) in the most general sense of a mere response, as the answer to a question, or (2) in the sense of a decisive and satisfactory confutation of an adversary's argument, as when we speak of a triumphant answer to the speech or accusations of an opponent.

{ 13. *Anger, resentment.*

Anger is a sudden sentiment of displeasure, provoked by injury done to ourselves or to others. *Resentment* is a more settled or lasting feeling.

{ 14. *Appear, seem.*

To *appear* has reference to a thing's being presented to our view, as, the sun appears, to *seem* is connected with the idea of semblance, and usually implies an inference of our mind as to the probability of a thing's being so, as a storm seems to be coming. 'The story appears to be true' means that the fact is presented so to show its truth, 'The story seems to be true' means it has the semblance of being so, and we infer that it is true.

{ 15 *Art, science* -

Art is practical, *science* is theoretical. A *science* is a systematic arrangement of principles. *Art* is the carrying out of principles in practice. Astronomy is a *science*, navigation is an *art* based (partly) on it.

{ 16 *Artist, artisan* -

Both terms have the radical meaning of "one who practises an art," but they differ in their application. *Artist* is limited to those who practise the liberal arts, such as painting, sculpture, photography, engraving, architecture, *artisan* to those who practise the mechanical arts or trades, i.e. carpenters, smiths, jewellers.

{ 17 *Ask, inquire*

We perform both these actions in order to get information, but we *ask* for general purposes of convenience, we *inquire* from motives of curiosity. To *ask* respects simply one thing, to *inquire* respects one or many subjects. Indifferent people *ask* of each other whatever they wish to know, learners *inquire* the reasons of things which are new to them.

{ 18 *Assent, consent.*

Assent respects matters of judgment, *consent* respects matters of conduct. We *assent* to what we admit to be true, we *consent* to what we allow to be done. *Assent* may be given to anything whether positively proposed by another or not, but *consent* supposes that what is *consented* to is proposed by some other person.

{ 19 *Authentic, genuine*

An *authentic* book is one in which matters of fact are related as they really happened, a *genuine* book is one that is written by the person whose name it bears. Thus, we speak of the *authenticity* of Gibbon's History, that is of its authority as a record of facts, and of the *genuineness* of Ossian's Poems, that is, whether or not they were composed by the person to whom they are ascribed.

✓ 20. *Battle, war*

A *battle* is a single engagement between two contending armies. A *war* is a series of engagements arising from the same cause, and undertaken for the same object as the redressing of wrongs, the acquisition of territory, &c.

21 *Behaviour, conduct, carriage, deportment, demeanour.*

Behaviour respects all actions exposed to the notice of others, *conduct* respects the general line of a person's moral proceedings, *carriage* signifies simply the manner of carrying the body, *deportment* is applied only to those exterior actions that have an immediate reference to others, *demeanour* is applied to the general behaviour as it relates to the circumstance and situation of the individual.

{ 22 *Benevolence, beneficence*

Benevolence is, literally, well willing, *beneficence* is literally well-doing. The former consists of intention, the latter of action. The former is the cause, the latter the result. *Benevolence* may exist without *beneficence*, always supposes *benevolence*. A man is not said to be *beneficent* who does good from sinister views.

23. *Big, vast, enormous, immense.*

Big refers to bulk, *vast* to space, *enormous*, out of rule, and so is used of size or extent that is awkward or displeasing, *immense* is that which cannot be measured.

24. *Blunder, error, mistake.*

An *error* is a departure or derivation from that which is right or correct, as, an *error* of the press, an *error* of judgment. A *mistake* is the interchange or taking of one thing for another through haste, inadvertence, &c., as, a careless *mistake*. A *blunder* is a mistake or error of the grossest kind. It supposes a person to flounder on in his course, either from carelessness, ignorance, or stupidity. An *error* may be corrected or forgiven, a *mistake* may be rectified or overlooked, a *blunder* is always considered blameable, and usually exposes a person to shame and ridicule.

25. *Brave, courageous, gallant.*

Courageous is generic denoting an inward spirit which rises above fear, *brave* is more outward, marking a spirit which braves or defies danger, *gallant* rises still higher, denoting bravery on extraordinary occasions in a spirit of adventure. A *courageous* man is ready for danger, a *brave* man courts it, a *gallant* man dashes into the midst of the conflict.

26. *Bravery, courage.*

Bravery lies in the blood, *courage* in the mind. The former depends on the physical temperament, the latter on the reason. The first is a species of instinct, the second a virtue. A man is brave in proportion as he is without thought, he has courage in proportion as he reasons or reflects. The *brave* man who fearlessly rushes to the mouth of the cannon may tumble at his own shadow, as he passes through a churchyard, the *courageous* man smiles at imaginary dangers, and prepares to meet those that are real.

27. *Cause, reason, motive.*

Cause respects the order and connexion of things, *reason*, the movements and operations of the mind, *motive*, the movements of the mind and body. *Cause* is properly the generic term, *reason* and *motive* are specific, every *reason* or *motive* is a *cause*, but every *cause* is not a *reason* or *motive*. *Cause* is said of all inanimate objects, *reason* and *motive* of rational agents. Whatever happens in the world happens from some *cause*, mediate or immediate, the primary or first *cause* of all is God. Whatever opinions men hold, they ought to be able to assign a substantial *reason* for them, and for whatever they do, they ought to have a sufficient *motive*.

28. *Character, reputation.*

Character is the sum of a man's qualities which mark him as good or bad, *reputation* is what people think of those qualities, as far as they know them. A dishonest man has a bad *character*, but if he manages to conceal his dishonesty, he may have a good *reputation*.

29. *Childlike, childish.*

Childlike=simple as a child, *childish*=silly or foolish as a child, Compare *womanly*, *womanish* (effeminate).

30 *Clean, cleanly*

Clean expresses a freedom from dirt or soil, *cleanly*, the disposition or habit of being *clean*. A person who keeps himself *clean* is *cleanly*, a *cleanly* servant takes care to keep things *clean*.

31 *Clearly, distinctly*

That is seen *clearly* of which one has a *clear* view independent of anything else, that is seen *distinctly* which is seen so as to distinguish it from other objects. We see the moon *clearly* whenever it shines, but we cannot see the spots in the moon *distinctly* without the help of glasses. What we see *distinctly* must be seen *clearly*, but a thing may be seen *clearly* without being seen *distinctly*. A want of light or the intervention of other objects, prevents us from seeing *clearly*, distance, or a defect in the sight, prevents us from seeing *distinctly*.

32 *Cloths, clothes.*

Cloths, kinds of cloth, such as, woollen cloth, silk cloth, and so on, *clothes*, garments, such as, coat, trousers, shirt, and so on.

33 *Command, order, injunction*

Command is the general term, *injunction* relates to general conduct, *order* to particular acts. A boy receives orders to learn a lesson, but *injunctions* to be diligent. A *command* is more absolute or despotic than the others.

34 *Common, ordinary, vulgar*

Common denotes what belongs to or is done by, many and so what wants in attraction, *ordinary* signifies what comes round in an orderly or regular succession, i.e., what is repeated many times, and is used to denote what wants in distinction, *vulgar* is opposed to *polite*. It is a *common* notion of the eastern nations that stars influence men's lives. The change of night and day is an *ordinary* occurrence of nature. The *vulgar* classes of India are *Pariahs*.

35 *Commonly, generally, &c*

What is *commonly* done is an action *common* to all, what is *generally* done is the action of the greatest part, what is *frequently* done is either the action of many, or an action many times repeated by the same person, what is *usually* done is done regularly by one or many. *Commonly* is opposed to *rarely*, *generally* and *frequently* to *occasionally* or *seldom*, *usually* to *crusally*. men *commonly* judge of others by themselves, those who judge by the mere exterior are *generally* deceived, notwithstanding every precaution, one is *frequently* exposed to gross frauds, a man of business *usually* repairs to his counting house every day at a certain hour.

36 *Comparison, contrast*

Likeness in the quality and difference in the degree are requisite for a *comparison*, likeness in the degree and opposition in the quality are requisite for a *contrast*, things of the same colour are *compared*, those of an opposite colour are *contrasted*. a *comparison* is made between two shades of red, a *contrast* between black and white.

37 *Compulsion, obligation.*

Compulsion is physical *obligation* moral. We are *generally* compelled to do what is contrary to our inclinations, we are obliged to do what is imposed on us as a duty, whether agreeable or not. If we do not

pay our taxes, Government will *compel* us to do so, we are *obliged* to fulfil our promises, or to conform to customs

38 *Confer, bestow.*

Conferring is an act of authority, *bestowing* that of charity or generosity. Princes and men in power *confer*, people in a private station *bestow*. Honours, dignities, privileges and ranks, are the things *conferred*, favours, kindnesses and pecuniary relief, are the things *bestowed*. Merit, favour, interest, caprice, or intrigue, gives rise to *conferring*, necessity, sollicitation, and private affection, lead to *bestowing*.

39 *Confess, admit*

Confess is a stronger expression than *admit*. We *confess* that we are wrong, we *admit* that we are mistaken.

40 *Confusion, disorder*

Confusion signifies the state of being confounded or confused. *Disorder* signifies the reverse of order. *Confusion* supposes the absence of all order, *disorder* the derangement of order where it exists or is supposed to exist, there is always *disorder* in *confusion*, but not always *confusion* in *disorder*. The greater the multitude the more they are liable to fall into *confusion* if they do not act in perfect concert, as in the case of a routed army or a tumultuous mob. Where there is the greatest order, the smallest circumstance is apt to produce *disorder*, the consequences of which will be more or less serious.

41 *Contented, satisfied*

One is *contented* when one wishes for no more, one is *satisfied* when one has obtained all he wishes. The *contented* man has always enough, the *satisfied* man has enough only for the time being. *Contentment* is a negative quality—the absence of pain, *satisfaction* is positive pleasure.

42 *Contest, conflict*

Contest originally denoted a struggle in argument and then a struggle for some common object between opposing parties, usually one of considerable duration, and implying successive stages. *Conflict* denotes literally a close personal engagement, in which sense it is applied to actual fighting. It is, however, more commonly used in a figurative sense to denote strenuous or direct opposition, as a mental *conflict*, *conflicting* interests or passions, a *conflict* of laws.

43 *Continuous, continual*

Continuous is the stronger word and denotes that the continuity or union of parts is *absolute and uninterrupted*, as 'a continuous stream of water'. *Continual* marks a close and unbroken succession of things, rather than absolute continuity.

'It rained *continuously* for two days,' means that there was no break or interruption whatever in the rain, that it rained *unceasingly* for that time.

'It rained *continually* for two days' would imply that it kept raining for two days *with occasional breaks*.

44 *Cool, cold*

In the natural sense, *cool* simply expresses the absence of warmth, *cold* is positively *contrary* to warmth, the former in regard to objects in

general, the latter to moral objects in the figurative sense the analogy is strictly preserved. *Cool* is used as it respects the passions and the affections, *cold* only with regard to the affections. With regard to the passions, *cool* designates a freedom from agitation or excitement, which is a desirable quality. *Coolness* in a time of danger, and *coolness* in a argument, are alike commendable. As *cool* and *cold* respect the affections, the *cool* is opposed to the friendly, the *cold* to the warm-hearted. *Coolness* is an enemy to social enjoyments, *coldness* is an enemy to affection.

45 *Corporal, corporeal*

Corporal (opposed to *mental*) = relating to or affecting the body, as '*corporal punishment*'

Corporeal (opposed to *spiritual*) = having a body, consisting of a material body or substance, as, '*corporeal substance*'

46. *Corpse, carcase*

Corpse is only applied to the dead body of a human being, *Carcase* to that of a beast, and sometimes to that of a human being in contempt.

47 *Cost, expense*

The *cost* is what a thing costs, or what is to be laid out for it, the *expense* is that what a person actually lays out. A *cost* commonly comprehends an *expense*, the terms are on various occasions used indifferently for each other, we speak of counting the *cost* or counting the *expense* of doing anything, at a great *cost* or at a great *expense*. On the other hand, of doing a thing to one's *cost*, of growing wise at other people's *expense*.

48 *Courage, fortitude*

Courage respects action, *fortitude* respects passion. A man has *courage* to meet danger, and *fortitude* to endure pain. *Courage* is that power of the mind which bears up against the evil that is prospect, *fortitude* is that power which endures the pain that is felt. The man of *courage* goes with the same coolness to the mouth of the cannon, as the man of *fortitude* undergoes the amputation of a limb.

49 *Crime, vice, sin*

Crime is a violation of the law of a country, *vice* is a violation of a moral law, *sin* is a violation of a religious law. Smuggling is a *crime*; idleness is a *vice*, unbelief is a *sin*.

50 *Curious, inquisitive*

Curious denotes a feeling, and *inquisitive* a habit. We are *curious* when we desire to learn something new, we are *inquisitive* when we set ourselves to gain the information by inquiry or research. *Curiosity* is generally used in a good, or indifferent sense, *inquisitiveness* is always used in a bad sense, and implies a desire to penetrate into the concerns of others.

51 *Custom, habit*

Custom refers to the action, *habit* to the *doer* of the action. *Custom* means the frequent repetition of the same act, *habit* means the effect produced on the mind or body by such repetition. 'By the *custom* of walking often in the street, one acquires a *habit* of idleness.' But we say 'He had a *habit* of doing so,' not *custom*, 'There was a *custom* among the Jews,' not *habit*. When a number of persons do the same thing often, it becomes his *habit*, but when a number of persons, as a nation, do the same thing, we call it a *custom*.

52 *Decided, decisive*

Decided marks that which is actually *decided* *decisive* that which appertains to *decision* *Decided* is employed for persons or things, *decisive* only for things A person's aversion or attachment is *decided*, a sentence, judgment, or a victory, is *decisive* A man of a *decided* character always adopts *decisive* measures

53 *Defend, protect*

To *defend* is to ward off, and to *protect* is to cover over so as to secure against, an approaching danger The former implies occasional activity while is the latter a passive but permanent action We *defend* those who are actually attacked but *protect* those who are liable to be attacked or injured A coat *defends* but a house *protects* us from the inclement weather

54 *Delightful, delicious*

Delicious refers to the pleasure derived from certain of the senses, particularly the taste and smell, as, *delicious* food, a *delicious* fragrance *Delightful* may also refer to most of the senses, as, *delightful* music, a *delightful* prospect, *delightful* sensations, but has a higher application to matters of taste feeling, and sentiment, is a *delightful* abode, conversation, employment, *delightful* scenes, &c

55 *Deny, refuse*

We *deny* a fact, we *refuse* a thing or to do something, as, 'He denied that he had done it', 'He refused to leave the room' Sometimes the two words are used synonymously We may say 'They refused him the favour,' and also 'They denied him the necessities of life'

NB—*Refuse* also means to decline to take, as, 'He refused the present'

56 *Desperate, hopeless.*

Desperate is applicable to persons or things, *hopeless* to things only a person makes a *desperate* effort, he undertakes a *hopeless* task *Desperate*, when applied to things, expresses more than *hopeless*, the latter marks the absence of hope as to the attainment of good, the former marks the absence of hope as to the removal of an evil

57. *Destiny, fate, lot, doom*

'*Destiny* is used in regard to one's station and walk in life, *fate* in regard to what one suffers, *lot* in regard to what one gets or possesses, and *doom* depends mostly upon the will of another *destiny* is marked out, *fate* is fixed, a *lot* is assigned, a *doom* is passed It is the *destiny* of some men to be always changing their plan of life, it is but too frequently the *fate* of authors to labour for the benefit of mankind, and to reap nothing for themselves but poverty and neglect, it is the *lot* but of very few to enjoy what they themselves consider a competency, a man some times seals his own *doom* by his imprudence or vices

58 *Determine, resolve*

To *determine* is more especially an act of the judgment, to *resolve* is an act of the will we *determine* how or what we shall do, this requires examination and choice we *resolve* that we will do what we have determined upon, this requires a firm spirit Our *determinations* should be

prudent, that they may not cruse repentance our resolutions should be fixed, in order to prevent variation. There can be no co operation with a man who is *undetermined*, it will be dangerous to co operate with a man who is *indecisive*.

§ 59. *Difference, distinction.*

Difference lies in the thing, *distinction* is the act of the person. the former is therefore, to the latter as the cause to the effect, the *distinction* rests on the *difference*. those are equally bad logicians who make a *distinction* without a *difference* or who make no *distinction* where there is a *difference*. Sometimes *distinction*, is put for the ground of *distinction*, which brings in nearer in sense to *difference*, in which case the former is a species of the latter. A *difference* is either external or internal, a *distinction* is always external. the former lies in the thing, the latter is designedly made. we have *differences* in character, and *distinctions* in dress.

- 60 *Different, unlike*

Different is positive, *unlike* is negative. we look at what is *different* and draw a comparison, but that which is *unlike* needs no comparison. a thing is said to be *different* from every other thing, or *unlike* anything seen before.

61. *Difficulty, obstacle*

A *difficulty* embarrasses an *obstacle* stops us. We remove the one, we surmount the other. Generally, the first expresses somewhat arising from the nature and circumstances of the affair, the second somewhat arising from a foreign cause. Philip found *difficulty* in imaging the Athenians, from the nature of their disposition, but the eloquence of Demosthenes was the greatest *obstacle* to his designs.

62 *Discover, invent*

We *discover* something that existed before but was unknown, we *invent* new combinations. Columbus *discovered* America, and Galileo *invented* the telescope.

63 *Disposition, temper*

These terms are both applied to the mind and its bias, but *disposition* respects the whole frame and texture of the mind, *temper* respects only the bias or tone of the feelings. *Disposition* is permanent and settled, *temper* may be transitory and fluctuating. The *disposition* comprehends the springs and motives of actions, the *temper* influences the action of the moment. it is possible and not unfrequent to have a good *disposition* with a bad *temper*, and vice versa. The *disposition* is properly said to be natural, the *temper* is rather acquired or formed by circumstances.

§ 64. *Distinguish, separate*

We *distinguish* what we want not to confound with another thing. we *separate* what we want to remove from it. Objects are distinguished from one another by their qualities. They are separated by distance of time or place.

65 *Doubt, suspect.*

To *doubt* a fact or statement is to be inclined to think it not true, to *suspect* is to be inclined to think it true. To doubt a man's honesty is to suspect him to be dishonest.

66. *Drown, sink*

Drown is used in reference to living things, and *sink* in reference to inanimate objects 'He was drowned,' 'The horse was drowned,' 'The piece of wood sank in the water'

67. *Dumb, silent, mute*

He is *dumb* who cannot speak, *silent* who does not speak, *mute* who may not speak

68. *Education, instruction.*

Education is properly to draw forth, and implies not so much the communication of knowledge as the discipline or training of the intellect, the establishment of the principles, and the regulation of the heart, *i. e.*, of the feelings and passions *Instruction* is that part of education which furnishes the mind with knowledge

69. *Effect, consequence, result*

These words indicate things which arise out of some antecedent, or follow as a consequence *Effect* is the strongest term, and denotes that which springs directly from something which can properly be termed a cause A *consequence* is more remote, not being strictly caused, not yet a mere sequence, but flowing out of and following something on which it truly depends A *result* is still more remote and variable like the rebound of an elastic body which falls in very different directions A *consequence* may be compared to the track which follows in the wake of a ship, and is occasioned by her motion A *result* may be compared to the action produced on a ball when thrown against the side of a house This will vary according to the force of the throw, the hardness of the wall, and the elasticity of the ball We may foresee the effect of a measure, may conjecture its consequences, but can rarely discover its final results

70. *Empire, kingdom*

The word *empire* carries with it the idea of a state that is vast, and composed of many different people, that of *kingdom* marks a state more limited in extent, and united in its composition In *kingdoms* there is a uniformity of fundamental laws But with *empires* it is different one part is sometimes governed by fundamental laws, very different from those by which another part of the same *empire* is governed

71. *Enough, sufficient*

Enough relates to the quantity which one wishes to have of anything, *sufficient* relates to the use that is to be made of it Hence, *enough* generally denotes a greater quantity than *sufficient* does The covetous man never has *enough* although he has what is *sufficient* for his wants

72. *Enormous, vast, big, huge, immense*

Enormous means out of rule, and so is used of size or extent that is awkward or unpleasant, *vast* (connected with *waste*) refers to space, *huge* and *big* to bulk, *huge* being the stronger word, *immense* is what goes beyond all bounds

73. *Envy, jealousy.*

We are *jealous* of what is our own, we are *envious* of what is another's *Jealousy* fears to lose what it has, *envy* is pained at seeing another have what it wants for itself Princes are *jealous* of their authority, subjects of their rights, courtiers are *envious* of those in favour, women of superior beauty

74. *Equivocal, ambiguous*

An *equivocal* expression is one which has one sense open and designed to be understood, another sense concealed, and understood only by the person who uses it. An *ambiguous* expression is one which has apparently two senses, and leaves us at a loss which of them to take. An *equivocal* expression is used with an intention to deceive, an *ambiguous* one when it is used with design, is used with an intention not to give full information. An honest man will never employ an *equivocal* expression, a confused man may often utter *ambiguous* ones without any design.

75. *Event, occurrence, incident*

An *event* denotes that which arises from a preceding state of things. Hence we speak of watching the *event*, of tracing the progress of the *events*. It never stands insulated, but marks an effect or result. An *occurrence* has no reference to any antecedents, but simply marks that which meets us in our progress of life, as if by chance, or in the course of divine providence. The things which thus meet us, if important, are usually connected with antecedents, and hence *event* is the leading term. An *incident* is that which falls into a state of things to which it does not primarily belong, as, the *incident* of a journey. The term is usually applied to things of secondary importance. A person giving an account of a campaign, might dwell on the leading *events* which it produced, might mention some of its *occurrences* might allude to some remarkable *incidents* which attend it.

76. *Face, countenance.*

The *face* consists of a certain set of features, the *countenance* consists of the general aggregate of looks produced by the mind upon the features, the *face* is the work of nature, the *countenance* the work of the mind. The *face* remains the same, but the *countenance* is changeable. The *face* properly belongs to brutes as well as men, the *countenance* is the peculiar property of man, although sometime applied to the brutes.

77. *Falsehood, lie, untruth, falsity*

An *untruth* and a *falsity* are untrue sayings, which may be unintentional or not, a *falsehood* and a *lie* both express *contrariety to fact*, but a *falsehood* may or may not be uttered with a design to mislead while a *lie* always implies a *direct intention* to deceive.

78. *Fancy, imagination*

Both *fancy* and *imagination* are exercises of the same power—the creative faculty. *Imagination* consists in taking parts of our conceptions and combining them into new forms and images not striking, more delightful, more terrible, &c, than those of ordinary nature. *Fancy* employs itself on light and trivial subjects, and has for its actuating spirit feelings of a lively and gay nature. It seeks to please by unexpected combinations of thought, startling contrasts, flashes of brilliant imagination, &c.

79. *Fault, mistake*

A *fault* is a deviation from duty, actually doing what should not be done. *Mistake* arises from misapprehension, or understanding wrongly, e.g.,
'It was through his own fault he failed.'
'He made a great mistake in thinking he could pass without hard study.'

80 *Female, feminine*

We apply *female* to the sex, as opposed to *male*, and *feminine* to the characteristics of the sex, as opposed to *masculine*. Hence we speak of the *female* character, dress, habits, manners, &c., and of *feminine* pursuits, employments, &c. In a *female* school, *feminine* accomplishments should be particularly taught.

81 *Fetch, bring.*

To *fetch* is to go and come back with,

To *bring* is to come with, without the idea of going

'Fetch me that book' = go and bring me that book

82 *Freedom, liberty*

Liberty implies previous constraint. *Freedom*, absence of constraint at the present moment. A slave is at *liberty*, his master has always been free.

83 *Fluid, liquid*

Fluid signifies that which from its nature flows, *liquid* signifies that which is melted. These words may be employed for the same objects, but they have a distinct office which they derive from their original meaning. When we wish to represent a thing as capable of passing along in a stream or current, we should denominate it a *fluid*, when we wish to represent it as passing from a congealed to a dissolved state, we should name it a *liquid*, water and air are both represented as fluids from their general property on flowing through certain spaces, but ice when thawed becomes a liquid and melts, melted lead is also termed a liquid. Humours of the human body, and the juices of trees, are *fluids*, what we drink is a *liquid* as opposed to what we eat, which is a solid.

84 *Forgive, pardon, excuse*

Forgive points to feeling and supposes alienated affection, *pardon* looks more to outward things or consequences and is often applied to trifling matters, *excuse* means overlook or regard with indulgence. *Forgive* an injury, *pardon* an offence, and *excuse* a fault.

85 *Gather, collect.*

To *gather* is to bring things of a sort together. To *collect* binds or forms into a whole, thus stones are *gathered* into a heap, vessels are *collected* so as to form a fleet. *Gathering* is a mere act of necessity or convenience, *collecting* is an act of design or choice.

86. *General, universal*

General includes the greater part or number of anything, *universal* includes every particular part, i.e. the whole. Pope is *generally*, Shakspeare *universally*, admired.

87 *Give, confer, grant.*

To *give* is the generic word, embracing the others. To *confer* was originally used of persons in power, who gave permanent grants or privileges, as to *confer* the order of knighthood, and hence it still denotes the giving of something which might have been withheld, as to *confer* a favour. To *grant* is to give in answer to a petition or request, or to one who is in some way dependent or inferior.

88. *Gladly, willingly*

We do a thing *willingly* when we feel no dislike to do it, or have no objection to doing it, we do it *gladly* when the performance of it gives us actual pleasure the former has a negative, the latter a positive, force, as 'I will obey, not willingly alone, but gladly'

89. *Gold, golden.*

The former is strictly applied to the metal of which a thing is made, of a *gold* cup, a *gold* coin, the latter to whatever appertains to gold, whether literally or figuratively, as, a *golden* harvest, the *golden* age

90. *Grave, sober, serious, solemn*

Grave, because of weight or important considerations, opposed to *levity*, *sober*, because of the absence of what exultates, opposed to *flightiness*, *serious*, because of reflection, opposed to *sportiveness*, *solemn*, because of something peculiar and rare, often with the idea of religious awe, as a *solemn* promise, a *solemn* silence

91. *Hard, difficult*

Hard is positive, and *difficult*, negative. A *difficult* task cannot be got through without exertion, but a *hard* task requires great exertion. *Difficult* is applicable to all trivial matters which call for a more than usual portion either of labour or thought, *hard* is applicable to those which are of highest importance, and accompanied with circumstances that call for the utmost stretch of every power. It is *difficult* to decide which of two fine paintings is the finest, it is a *hard* matter to come at any conclusion on metaphysical subjects. A child mostly finds it *difficult* to learn his letters there are many passages in classical writers which are *hard* to be understood by the learned

92. *Haste, hurry*

Haste denotes quickness of action and a strong desire for getting on, *hurry* includes a confusion and want of collected thought not implied in *haste*. A man may properly be in *haste*, but never in a *hurry*

93. *Haughtiness, disdain*

Haughtiness is founded on the high opinion we entertain of ourselves, and shows itself in our manners and behaviour, *disdain* is founded on the low opinion we have of others, and finds expression in the same way

94. *Hear, listen*

The distinction between these two words is exactly parallel to that between *see* and *look*, which *see*

Hear is a general term for using the power of hearing, *listen* implies attention or effort, as 'We *heard* some one speaking, but we did not *listen* to what he said'

'I did not *hear* him'—because I was deaf or he spoke indistinctly

'I did not *listen* to him'—because I did not want to hear what he said, for want of time, &c

95. *High, tall, lofty*

The idea of extension upwards is common to all these words. Whatever is *tall* or *lofty* is *high*, but everything is not *tall* or *lofty* which

is *high* *Tall* and *lofty* both designate a more than ordinary degree of *height*, but *tall* is peculiarly applicable to what shoots up or stands up in a perpendicular direction while *lofty* is said of that which is extended in breadth as well as in *height* By this rule we say that a house is *high*, a chimney *tall*, a room *lofty*

96 *Hinder, prevent.*

Hinder is the most general of these terms, as it conveys little more than the idea which is common to them all, namely, that of keeping one from his purpose To *hinder* is commonly said of that which is rendered impracticable only for the time being, or merely delayed, *prevent* is said of that which is rendered permanently impracticable A person is *hindered* by the weather and his various engagements from reaching a place at the time he intended, he is *prevented* by ill health from going thither at all In ordinary discourse these words fall very much into one another, when the circumstances of the case do not sufficiently define whether the action in hand be altogether stopped, or only suspended for a time

97. *Hollow, empty*

Hollow respects the body itself, the absence of its own materials produces hollowness *Empty* respects foreign bodies, their absence in another body constitutes emptiness *Hollowness* is therefore a preparative to *emptiness*, and may exist independently of it, but *emptiness* presupposes the existence of *hollowness* What is *empty* must be hollow, but what is hollow need not be *empty*

98. *Hope, expect, think*

Think is the general term and may refer to the past, the present, or the future *Hope* and *expect* refer only to the future When what we anticipate is *welcome*, we hope for it, when it is *certain*, whether it is welcome or not, we expect it 'I think it is going to rain', 'I think he was absent', 'Even the worst boy *hopes* for promotion', 'He *expects* a present', 'He *expects* a scolding'

99 *House, home*

One's *house* is simply the dwelling occupied by one one's *home* is that dwelling considered as the spot round which one's affections are centred, as being the place of one's birth, or constant residence, or which is otherwise endeared by associations

100 *Idle, indolent, lazy*

A propensity to inaction is expressed by each of these words, they differ in the cause and degree of this characteristic *Indolent* denotes an habitual love of ease, a settled dislike of movement or effort, *idle* is opposed to *busy*, and denotes a dislike of continuous exertion An *idle* person may be active in his way, but is reluctant to force himself to do what he does not like *Lazy* is only a stronger and more contemptuous term for *indolent*

101 *Ill, sick.*

Originally *sickness* meant a continuous disease, but now it is generally restricted to the sense of nausea or inclination to throw up (vomit) *Illness* has now taken its place

In some compounds, as *sick leave*, *sick certificate*, &c, *sick* retains its original meaning

102. *Informant, informer*

Both these words had originally two distinct senses 1 One who gives information in general 2 One who points out persons for punishment At the present time *informant* is applied to the first, and *informer* to the second case

✓ 103 *Journey, travel, voyage*

Journey is any comparatively short passage from one place to another *Travel* signifies any long course A *voyage* is a journey by sea *Journeys* are taken for domestic business, *travels* are made for amusement or information, *voyages* are made by captains or merchants for purposes of commerce

104 *Kind, kindly.*

Kind refers to the feeling, and *kindly* to the manner in which the feeling is shown a *kind* man, a *kind* act, *kindly* behaviour or treatment

105 *Little, small, diminutive*

Little is a general term both in sense and application *Small* and *diminutive* are particular terms conveying some collateral idea What is *little* is so in the ordinary sense in respect to size, it is properly opposed to *great* the *small* is that which is less than others in point or bulk, it is opposed to the large the *diminutive* which is less than it ought to be, as a person is said to be *diminutive* in stature who is below the ordinary stature

106 *Look, glance*

Look, is the generic and *glance* the specific term, that is to say, *glance* signifies a casual or momentary *look* a *look* may be characterized as severe or mild, fierce or gentle, angry or kind, a *glance* as hasty or sudden, imperfect or slight so likewise we speak of taking a *look*, or catching a *glance*

✓ 107 *Mistake, error, blunder.*

A *mistake* is the interchange or taking of one thing for another, through haste, carelessness, &c, as, a careless *mistake* An *error* is a departure or deviation from that which is right or correct, as, an *error* of the press, an *error* of judgment A *blunder* is a mistake or error of the grossest kind A *mistake* may be rectified or overlooked, an *error* may be corrected or forgiven, a *blunder* is always considered blameable, and usually exposes a person to shame and ridicule

108 *Mutual, common.*

Mutual implies interchange of the things spoken of between the parties concerned, as, 'mutual friendship'

Common is applied to that which belongs alike (or in common) to the parties, as, 'a common friend,' 'our common country'

109. *Need, necessity*

Necessity is stronger than *need* *Need* is exigent and requires, *necessity* is unyielding and demands Those in *need* or in a temporary difficulty, from which a moderate help will relieve them, those in *necessity* are in the lowest degree of poverty and have no means of supplying their commonest wants 'A friend in *need* is a friend indeed,' 'Necessity has no law.'

110 *Notorious, famous, illustrious, notable, renowned*

Notorious is always used in a bad sense, *noted* in either a good or bad sense, the best in a good sense. A man is *famous* or *renowned* for his achievements, *illustrious* for his high rank, *notable* for some special act, *notorious* for his crimes, and *noted* for his peculiarities.

111. *Often, frequently*

Often signifies properly, repetition of action, *frequently* plurality of objects. An ignorant man *often* uses a word without knowing what it means, ignorant people *frequently* mistake the meaning of the words they hear. A person goes out very *often* in the course of a week, he has *frequently* six or seven persons to visit him in the course of that time. By doing a thing *often* it becomes habitual. We *frequently* meet the same persons in the route which we *often* take.

112 *Origin, source*

Origin denotes the rise or commencement of a thing, *source* presents itself under the image of a fountain flowing forth in a continuous stream of influences. The *origin* of moral evil has been doubted, but no one can doubt that it is the *source* of most of the calamities of our race.

✓ 113 *Painting, picture, portrait*

A *painting* is a representation by means of colour, a *picture* is any kind of drawing, whether in pencil, crayons or India ink, a *portrait* is that which is drawn or printed in likeness of a person. This distinction holds good in a figurative sense. The historian draws a lively *picture*, the poet *paints* in glowing colours and *portrays* the characters and achievements of his heroes.

✓ 114. *Part, portion*

Part is the general term, a *portion* is a part set aside for a special purpose. A friend may go *part* of the way home with you, a daughter receives a marriage *portion*.

✓ 115 *People, nation*

People is the generic, and *nation* the specific term. A *nation* is a people connected by birth, there cannot, therefore, strictly speaking, be a *nation* without a *people*, but there may be a *people* where there is not a *nation*. The Americans, when spoken of in relation to Britain, are a distinct *people*, because they have each a distinct government, but they are not a distinct *nation*, because they have a common descent. On this ground the Romans are not called the Roman *nation*, because their origin was so various, but the Roman *people*, that is an assemblage, living under one form of government.

116 *Permit, allow.*

To *permit* is to give a decided acquiescence. To *allow* is to abstain from refusal. *Permit* is positive, *allow*, negative. A schoolmaster may *allow* his scholars occasionally to talk in the class room, and *permit* them going out of the room.

117 *Perpetual, eternal*

Perpetual is that which is both continuous and lasting, as 'perpetual motion' etc; *eternal* is lasting through all the past as well as the future.

118. *Persevere, persist*

To *persevere* is to *continue* in a given course in spite of discouragements, &c, from a desire to obtain our end To *persist* is to *continue* from a determination of will not to give up The former is always used in a good sense, the latter frequently in a bad one

119 *Persuade, convince*

We are *persuaded* to do something, we are *convinced* of the truth of something To *convince* is an act relating to the understanding, to *persuade*, to the will or feelings We are *per-suaded* by motives, and *convinced* by argument 'He was *persuaded* to accept the appointment', 'He was *convinced* of the advisability of accepting it'

120 *Piteous, pitiful, pitiable*

Pitiable signifies deserving of *pity*, *piteous*, moving *pity*, *pitiful*, full of that which awakens *pity*, a condition is *pitiable* which is so distressing as to call forth *pity* a cry is *piteous* which indicates such distress as can excite *pity*, conduct is *pitiful* which marks a character entitled to *pity*,

121 *Pity, sympathy, compassion*

Sympathy is literally *fellow feeling* and therefore requires a certain degree of equality in situation, circumstances, &c, to its fullest exercise *Compassion* is deep tenderness for another under severe or unavoidable misfortune *Pity* regards its object not only as suffering but *wel*, and hence inferior

122 *Place, keep*

To *place* means to put in a particular part of space or in a given position, and merely refers to the act of putting, as, 'He placed the book on his table' To *keep* means to deposit for a *lengthened period*, as 'he keeps his book always on the table'

123. *Possible, practicable*

A thing may be *possible*, i.e, not forbidden by any law of nature, and yet may not now be *practicable* for want of the means requisite to its performance Archimedes thought it *possible* to lift the world, but this has not been found as yet *practicable*

124 *Pride, vanity, conceit, arrogance, presumption, haughtiness, insolence*

The *proud* man rates highly what he really possesses, the *vain* man is eager for the praise of others, often on account of qualities which he does not possess, the *conceited* man has too high an opinion of his own abilities, the *arrogant* man has a supreme contempt for all who differ from him in any way, the *presumptuous* man will venture on doing things which others would shrink from doing, the *haughty* man shows his pride in his manners and behaviour, the *insolent* man shows it by *insult*

125 *Protect, defend*

To *protect* is to cover over so as to secure against approaching danger, to *defend* is literally to ward off We *defend* those who are attacked, we *protect* those who are liable to injury or invasion A fortress is *defended* by its guns, and *protected* by its walls

126 *Quiet, calm*

Quiet refers to the present state only, and means that there is no disturbance now, *calm* implies a previous or future state of disturbance. A man's mind is *quiet* when there is nothing to disturb or trouble it, it is *calm* when something that troubled it has ceased to do so. 'The sea is calm' can only be said when a storm has ceased, or is coming.

127 *Rare, scarce*

We call a thing *rare* when but few of the kind are ever to be met with, as a rare plant, &c. We speak of a thing as *scarce*, which, though usually abundant, is for the time being to be had only in diminished quantities. A bad harvest makes corn *scarce*.

128. *Recollection, remembrance, memory*

Memory is the generic term, denoting the power by which we reproduce past impressions. *Remembrance* is an exercise of that power when things occur spontaneously to our thoughts. In *recollection* we make a distinct effort to collect again or call back what we know, has been for merely in the mind. When an idea again occurs without the operation of the like object on the external senses, it is *remembrance*, if it be sought after by the mind, and found with effort, and brought again to view, it is *recollection*.

129. *Refrain, abstain*

To *refrain* is the generic term meaning generally 'to keep from action or interference, as, to *refrain* from speaking or doing, &c. To *abstain* is more frequently used in the specific sense of 'refraining from an indulgence of the passions or appetites', as, to *abstain* from intoxicating drinks, &c.

130 *Refuse, decline, reject*

Refuse is an unqualified action, it is accompanied with no expression of opinion, *decline* is a gentle and indirect mode of refusal, *reject* is a direct mode and conveys a positive sentiment of disapprobation. We *refuse* what is asked of us, for want of inclination to comply, we *decline* what is proposed from motive of discretion, we *reject* what is offered to us, because it does not fall in with our views. We *refuse* to listen to the suggestions of our friends, we *decline* an offer of service, we *reject* the insinuations of the interested and evil minded.

131 *Remark, observe*

To *observe* is a general, to *remark*, a special, act. We *observe* a person's general behaviour, we *remark* particular instances of it. We *remark* in order to remember, we *observe* in order to judge.

132 *Revenge, avenge*

To *revenge* is to inflict pain or injury simply to indulge our resentment or malice. It denotes the gratification of a personal feeling—of anger arising from the sense of an injury, real or fancied, and always implied meanness. To *avenge* is to inflict just punishment on evil doers on behalf of ourselves or of others for whom we act. It does not imply any personal feeling of anger or malice. 'The law avenges the death of a murdered person', 'He *revenge*d himself on his enemy by setting his house on fire.'

133 *Ridicule, deride, mock, taunt*

A man may *ridicule* without any unkindness of feeling, his object may be to correct, as, to *ridicule* the follies of the age. He who *derides* is actuated by a severe and contemptuous spirit, as, to *deride* one for his religious principles. To *mock* is stronger, and denotes open and scornful derision, as, to *mock* at him. To *taunt* is to reproach with the keenest insult, as, to *taunt* one for his misfortunes. *Ridicule* consists more in words than in actions, *derision* and *mockery* show themselves in actions as well as words, *taunts* are always expressed in words of extreme bitterness.

✓134 *Rob, steal (robber, thief)*

To *rob* implies violence by force, a *robber* attacks us openly and strips us by main force. To *steal* is to take away other's property secretly. The *robber* defies the laws, the *thief* endeavours to evade them. 'He was attacked by a number of persons who *robbed* him of all he had', 'His bundle was *toler* from under his head, while he was asleep'. We speak of *stealing a thing*, but of *robbing a person or a thing*.

135 *Royal, regal*

Royal signifies belonging to a king, in its most general sense, *regal* signifies appertaining to a king, in its particular application. A *royal* carriage, a *royal* residence, a *royal* couple, a *royal* salute, *royal* authority, all designate the general and ordinary appurtenances to a king. *Regal* government, *regal* state *regal* power, *regal* dignity, denote the peculiar properties of a king.

136 *Rural, rustic*

Both words are from the Lat. *rus* the country. *Rural* means pertaining to the country, and applies to all country objects except man, and is therefore always connected with the charms of nature, *rustic* applies only to persons, or to what is personal, in the country, and is therefore always associated with the want of culture or refinement. *Rural* scenery, *rustic* manners, a *rustic* cottage.

137 *Secure, safe*

Safe implies exemption from harm, *secure*, the exemption from the danger of harm. A man may be *safe* in the midst of a fire if he is untouched by the fire, but he would be far from *secure*.

138 *See, look*

See simply denotes using the eye, without special effort or attention, *look* implies effort or attention. 'While we were *looking* at the house, we saw a man coming out of it.'

'I could not *see* him —because he was hidden or absent.

'I could not *look* at him'—because his appearance was disagreeable to me.

139 *Sensuous, sensual, sensitive, sentient, sensible*

Sensuous, addressing the senses, often used as a less objectionable form of *sensual*, which generally means voluptuous, *lewd*, *sensitive*, easily taking impressions, *sentient* capable of taking them. *Sensible* now often means possessing good common sense, *wise*.

✓140 *Shade, shadow*

Shade simply expresses the absence of light caused by the interception of its rays, but *shadow* signifies in addition the figure of the intercepting body. Trees give *shade* and cast *shadows* on the ground.

141 *Sick, sickly*

Sick denotes a partial state, *sickly* a permanent state of the body a proneness to be *sick* he who is *sick* may be made well, but he who is *sickly* is seldom really well all persons are liable to be *sick*, though few have the misfortune to be *sickly* a person may be *sick* from the effect of cold, violent exercise, and the like, but he is *sickly* only from constitution

142 *Silence, stillness*

Silence is more applicable to persons, *stillness* to things We say, for example, 'He was remarkably *silent*,' but 'The sea was perfectly *still*' When *silent* is applied to things, any object in nature, for example, it seems to personify the object 'The gliding Lethe leads her *silent* flood'

143 *Silly, foolish*

Silly, often denotes deficiency of intellect, *foolish*, an abuse of intellect *Foolish*, implies blame, *silly*, contempt

144 *Sink, drown*

Sink is used intransitively of inanimate objects, *drown* transitively of living beings a stone *sinks*, a man or a cat is *drowned*

145 *Slumber, sleep*

Slumber is a light sleep, from which we are liable to be roused by the slightest sound

146 *Space, room*

Space is either extended or bounded, *room* is always a bounded space the space between two objects is either natural, incidental, or designedly formed, the *room* is that which is the limit of design to suit the convenience of persons there is a sufficient space between the heavenly bodies to admit of their moving without confusion, the value of a house essentially depends upon the quantity of *room* which it affords in a row of trees there must always be vacant spaces between each tree, in a coach there will be only *room* for a given number of persons

147. *Strict, severe*

Strict points to a person or thing as one that binds closely or keeps under control, as *strict* in discipline, *strict* rules, &c *Severe* denotes a stern adherence to principles or rules, which does not shrink from the infliction of pain, and in some cases even finds pleasure in that infliction *Strict* is generally used in a good sense, *severe* in a bad, except where the circumstances of the case demand the exercise of rigour

148 *Supernatural, preternatural*

Preternatural signifies beside nature, and *supernatural*, above or beyond nature What is very greatly aside from the ordinary course of things is *preternatural* what is above or beyond the established laws of the universe is *supernatural* The dark day which terrified all Europe nearly a century ago was *preternatural*, the resurrection of the dead is *supernatural*

149 *Surprised, astonished*

We are *surprised* at what is new or unexpected, and *astonished* at what is vast or great 'I am *surprised* at your conduct', 'I am *astonished* at your stupidity'

150. *Swim, float.*

A body *floats* in any liquid specifically heavier than itself. *Swim* is applied only to animals, because it means to *move* progressively in the water by means of hands and feet or fins. A log *floats*, a fish or a man *swims*.

✓ 151. *Tell, say, speak.*

Tell, though equivalent in some respects to *speak* and *say*, has not always the same application. We *say*, to *tell* truth or falsehood, to *tell* a number, to *tell* the reason, to *tell* something or nothing. But we never *say*, to *tell* a speech, discourse, or oration, or to *tell* an argument or a lesson. It is much used in commands. 'Tell me the whole story', 'Tell me all you know'. *Tell* refers to the substance of the communication while *say* refers rather, and *speak* refers only, to the words.

Tell takes a dative object without the preposition to the dative object of *say* must have to expressed — 'He *told* me that he was going,' 'He *said* to me that he was going.'

152. *Temporal, temporary.*

Temporal means relating to time, as opposed to eternity. It is the opposite of *spiritual*. 'Our *temporal* welfare' means our welfare in this world as opposed to that in the other world. *Temporary* means lasting only for a time, and is opposed to *permanent*. 'a *temporary* arrangement'

✓ 153. *Timid, cowardly, timorous, dastardly.*

Timid applies to a person's state of mind or to his disposition, *timorous* only to his disposition, *cowardly*, *dastardly* are used alike of character or conduct, *dastardly*, implying also meanness. A *timid* man may on certain occasions be brave, a *cowardly* man never.

✓ 154. *To-morrow, the morrow.*

To-morrow denotes the day following that on which we are speaking, "the *morrow*," the day following that of which we are speaking. "I am going to-morrow," "I promised to see him on the *morrow*."

155. *Trade, commerce.*

Trade is either on a large or small scale, *commerce* is always on a large scale. We may *trade* retail or wholesale, we always carry on *commerce* by wholesale. *Trade* is either within or without the country, *commerce* is always within different countries. There may be a *trade* between two towns, but there is *commerce* between England and America, between France and Germany. Hence it arises that the general term *trade* is of inferior import when compared with *commerce*.

156. *Untruth, falsehood, lie.*

Untruth means an untrue saying, *falsehood* and *lie* mean false sayings. An *untruth* of itself reflects no disgrace on the agent, it may be unintentional or not. A *falsehood* and a *lie* are intentional, *false* sayings, differing only in degree as to the guilt of the offender. A *falsehood* is not always spoken for the express intention of deceiving, but a *lie* is uttered only for the worst of purposes. Some persons have a habit of telling *falsehoods* from the mere love of talking, those who are guilty of bad actions endeavour to conceal them by *lies*. Children are apt to speak *untruths* for want of understanding the value of words. Travellers, from a love of exaggeration, are apt to introduce *falsehoods* into their narrations. It is the nature of a *lie* to increase itself to a tenfold degree, one *lie* must be backed by many more.

157 *Usage, custom*

A *custom* may belong to many or to a single individual, a *usage* properly belongs to the great body of a people. Again, a *custom* is merely that which has been often repeated so as to have become, in a good degree, established, a *usage* must be both often repeated and of long standing. Hence, we speak of a 'new custom' but not of a 'new usage.'

✓ 158 *Vacant, empty*

A thing is *empty* when there is nothing in it, as, an *empty* room. *Vacant* adds the idea of a thing having been previously filled or intended to be filled or occupied, as, *vacant* seats.

✓ 159 *Valuable, precious*

Valuable signifies fit to be *valued*, *precious* having a high price. *Valuable* expresses directly the idea of *value*, *precious* expresses it the same idea indirectly. On the other hand, that which is *valuable* is only said to be fit or deserving of *value*, but *precious* denotes that which is highly *valuable*, according to the ordinary measure of *valuing* objects, that is, by the price they bear. Hence the latter expresses the idea much more strongly than the former.

160. *Value, price*

The *value* of a thing is what it is really worth, or what we can obtain in exchange for it, in consideration of its usefulness, the *price* of a thing is what is demanded for it, or what we pay for it. 'The *price* I paid for the clock is considerably above its real *value*.'

161 *Visitor, visitant*

Visitor is the common term, but we should speak of an angel as a celestial visitant, not *visitor*.

162 *War, campaign*

A *campaign* is the time than an army keeps the field in action, marches, or in camp. *War* includes the whole time from the commencement of the hostilities to the declaration of peace. A *war* generally consists of several campaigns, though sometimes it may be over in one, like the last Burmese war.

163 *Whole, entire, complete*

Nothing is *whole* which has anything taken from it, nothing is *entire* that is divided, nothing is *complete* that has not all its parts, and those parts fully developed. *Complete* refers to the perfection of parts, *entire* to their unity, *whole* to their junction. 'A *whole* orange,' 'an *entire* set,' 'a *complete* success.'

164 *Will, wish*

The *will* is that faculty of the soul which immediately impels to action. the *wish* is but a gentle motion of the soul towards a thing. We can *will* nothing but what we can effect, we may *wish* for many things which lie above our reach. The *will* must be under the entire control of reason, or it will lead a person into mischief. *Wishes* ought to be under the direction of reason, or otherwise they may greatly disturb our happiness.

✓ 165 *Wisdom, prudence, knowledge*

Wisdom has been defined to be "the use of the best means for attaining the best ends." Hence *wisdom* implies the union of high mental

and moral excellence. *Prudence*, that is, *providence* or foresight, is of a more negative character; it consists either in avoiding danger than in taking decisive measures for the accomplishment of an object. *Knowledge*, a more comprehensive term signifies the simple apprehension of facts or relations. One may acquire *knowledge*, but cannot apply it to the practical purposes of life unless one has *wisdom*. The following lines from Cowper are worthy of being remembered.

Knowledge and wisdom far from being one
 Have oft times no connection. Knowledge dwells
 In heads replete with thoughts of other men
 Wisdom in minds attentive to their own
 Knowledge, a rude unprofitable mass,
 The mere materials with which wisdom builds,
 Till smoothed, and squared and fitted to its place,
 Does but encumber whom it seems to enrich,
 Knowledge is proud that he has learned so much,
 Wisdom is humble that he knows no more

166 *Wit, humour*

Wit, as distinguished from *humour*, is properly a spontaneous faculty and is as it were a natural gift. Liboured or forced wit is no wit. *Wit* seizes with an eagle eye that which escapes the notice of the deep thinker, and elicits truths which are in vain sought for with any severe effort. *Humour* is a species of wit which flows out of the *humour* of a person. *Wit* may consist of a single brilliant thought. *Humour* runs in a vein, it is not striking, but in equable and pleasing, flow of wit. *Humour* is likewise display itself in actions as well as words, whereby it is more strikingly distinguished from *wit*, which displays itself only in the happy expression of happy thoughts.

167 *Womanly, womanish*

Womanly, denotes those qualities which we admire, or treat with consideration or respect, in a *woman*, as gentleness, modesty, grace, *womanish*, those qualities which are despicable in a *man*, as being only suited to the weaker sex, as, timidity, softness.

168. *At length, at last*

Both the phrases denote that some end or result has been attained. *At length* implies that a long period was spent in so doing; as, "After a voyage of more than six months we *at length* arrived safe." *At last* implies that something has occurred (as interruptions, disappointments, &c.), which makes us lay stress on the fact of having reached the end, though these interruptions, &c. need not have occupied any length of time, thus, "In spite of every obstacle we have *at last* arrived."

II—ANTONYMS

714 *Antonyms* are words having opposite or contrary meanings. The opposite meaning may be expressed in three ways, each of which gives us a class of antonyms — 1 by different words, 2 by prefixes, 3 by prefixes or suffixes of opposite meaning.

1 *By different words*

Abhor	Like, love	Compliance	Refusal
Ability	Incompetence	Conclude -	Commence, begin
Abominable	Pleasing	Condemn	Approve
Above	Below	Confess	Deny
Absolute	Limited, relative	Confidence	Distrust, mistrust
Absurd	Reasonable	Conquer	Submit, yield
Accept	Refuse	Considerable	Trifling
Accidental	Intentional, essential	Construct	Demolish, destroy
		Contract	Expand, dilate, enlarge
Accurate	Erroneous		
Accuse	Exculpate, absolve	Cool	Excited, warm
Acknowledge	Deny, disown	Correspond	Vary, disagree
Acquiesce	Object	Courage	Timidity, cowardice
Acquire	Lose		
Acquit	Convict	Cowardice	Bravery
Acute	Obtuse, dull	Credit	Cash, discredit
Adminic	Despise, condemn	Civil	Merciful
Admit	Deny, expel	Danger	Safety, security
Adorn	Disfigure, deform	Dark	Bright, light, fair
Adversity	Prosperity	Dead	Alive
Affable	Rude, discourteous	Death	Bath
Affirm	Deny	Deliberate	Unintentional
Affluence	Want, poverty	Deny	Confess, assert, admit, acknowledge
Agree	Differ		ledge, affirm
Alive	Dead	Design	Accident
Ambiguous	Periphrastic, clear	Desultory	Systematic, methodical
Ample	Meagre, poor		
Assemble	Disperse	Detrimental	Beneficial
Assert	Deny, contradict	Die	Live
Attack	Defend, protect	Difficult	Easy
Attract	Repel	Diligent	Idle
Aware	Ignorant	Diminish	Increase
Barbarous	Civilized	Disclose	Conceal
Base	Noble, honourable	Disease	Health
Beggarly	Liberal	Distinguish	Confound
Begin	End, conclude, finish	Disturb	Soothe, quiet
Beginning	End	Docile	Stubborn
Benefit	Injury	Domestic	Foreign
Big	Small	Dull	Sharp, lively, bright
Bind	Loose		
Blame	Praise, approve	Fragile	Indifferent
Blunt	Sharp, keen, acute	Early	Late
Boastful	Modest	Gain	Spend
Bold	Timid	Case	Trouble, difficulty
Bright	Dull	Economical	Extravagant
Broad	Narrow	Elevation	Depression
Bury	Exhume	Empty	Full, fill
Care	Neglect	Endless	Finite
Charm	Disgust	Enjoy	Suffer, endure
Cheerful	Dejected, dull	Enrich	Impoverish
Clean	Dirty	Enthusiasm	Indifference, apathy
Clear	Muddy, dim.		
Common	Peculiar	Erect	Demolish

By different words—(contd.)

Eternal	Temporal, transi- ent	Guide	Mislead
Exaggerate	Understate	Handsome	Ugly, ill looking
Express, ex- pressed	Understood, im- plied	Happiness	Misery
Extend	Limit	Happy	Unhappy, misor- able
Extravagant	Economical, frugal	Hard	Soft, simple, easy
Facility	Difficulty	Harsh	Gentle, lenient
Fact	Fiction	Haste	Delay
Fade	Bloom, flourish	Hateful	Desirable, lovely
Faithful	Treachery	Hideous	Beautiful, grace- ful
Faithfulness	Treachery	High	Low
False	True	Honour	Shame
Falsehood	Truth	Hope	Despair
Falsity	Verity	Hopeful	Despondent
Famous	Inglorious, obscure	Humane	Cruel, inhuman
Fat	Lean	Humble	Haughty, proud
Fear	Courage	Implied	Expressed
Feeling	Apathy	Intentional	Accidental
Fertile	Baren, sterile	Joy	Sorrow, grief
Festive	Mourning	Junior	Senior
Fickle	Constant	Keen	Blunt, dull
Fierce	Gentle, mild	Kill	Revive, resuscitate
Fiercely	Cold, phlegmatic	Kind	Harsh, cruel
Figurative	Literal	Knowledge	Ignorance
Fill	Deplete, exhaust	Laborious	Fasy, light
Final	Initial	Labour	Inactivity, rest
Fine	Coarse	Lavish	Sparing, frugal,
Firm	Loose		niggardly
Flourish	Decay	Lenient	Rigorous, severe
Foolish	Sensible, wise	Liberal	Mean, narrow- minded, scanty
Formidable	Despicable, con- temptible, tri- vial	Liberty	Restraint, con- straint
Frank	Reserved	Loe	Truth
Fresh	Stale, faded	Likeness	Difference
Frugal	Profuse, extrava- gant, lavish	Little	Big, large, much
Fruitful	Barren, fruitless	Loose	Tight, compact, exact, strict
Gain	Loss, loss	Lovely	Hideous
Gay	Grave, dull	Like	Mai
General	Special	Manly	Womanish, effem- inate, childish, timid
Gentle	Rude, low born	Masculine	Feminine, ef- feminate
Genuine	Spurious, fictiti- ous	Magic	Copious, abun- dant
Giant	Dwarf	Melancholy	Cheerful, merry
Gigantic	Dwarfish, puny	Meccenary	Disinterested
Glory	Ignominy, dis- grace	Miserable	Happy, comfort- able
Gracious	Clunish, ungra- cious	Noise	Silence, stillness
Grand	Mean, petty, little		
Giant	Withhold, refuse		
Gratful	Disagreeable		

By different words—(contd.)

Obstinate	Yielding	Reveal	Conceal, hide
Oral	Written	Rich	Poor, barren
Order	Confusion	Ripe	Raw, crude, immature
Particular	General	Rough	Smooth, calm, courteous
Peace	War, discord, strife	Rude	Civil, calm, polished
Perfect	Faulty, defective	Sacred	Polluted, profane
Permanent	Temporary	Savage	Lame, civilized, merciful
Perpetual	Transient, temporary	Secret	Open, public, notorious
Plain	Ambiguous, abstruse	Serious	Gay, trifling, trivial
Pleasant	Dull	Sharp	Dull, mild, gentle
Precious	Worthless	Simple	Complex, compound, elaborate
Presence	Absence	Slender	Stout, ample
Presumption	Modesty	Sly	Open, frank, artless
Pride	Humility	Smooth	Rugged, rough
Profit	Loss	Soft	Hard
Profuse	Scanty, sparing	Strange	Familiar, common
Prohibit	Permit, sanction	Strict	Lax
Proud	Humble, lowly	Strong	Weak, mild
Punish	Reward	Superficial	Deep, profound
Pure	Mixed	Temporary	Permanent
Quick	Slow, dull	Thick	Thin, fine
Real	Fictitious	Timid	Bold, confident
Rebuke	Commend, prove	Trivial	Important, weighty
Receive	Reject, give	Uniform	Variable
Recognise	Ignore	Vehement	Feeble, cold, mild
Recover	Lose	Verbal	Written
Reduce	Increase	Vertical	Horizontal
Reject	Accept	Vulgar	Refined
Relief	Oppression, trouble	Virtue	Vice, immorality
Reluctance	Willingness, eagerness	Weak	Strong, powerful, forcible
Remember	Forget	Wild	Tame, domesticated
Renown	Disrepute, infamy, disgrace	Wisdom	Folly
Repulsive	Attractive	Youthful	Aged
Resemblance	Difference, unlikeness	Zeal	Apathy, indifference
Resolute	Weak, irresolute, wavering		
Retire	Advance, approach		

2 By prefixes

<i>Prefix</i>	<i>Word</i>	<i>Antonym</i>
<i>a</i>	Catalectic	Acatalectic
<i>anti</i>	Christian	Antichristian
<i>contra</i>	Position	Contraposition
<i>counter</i>	March	Countermarch

By prefixes—(contd)

dis	— Believe	— Disbelieve
for	— Bid	— Forbid
gain	— Say	— Gainsay
im	— Pure	— Impure
mis	— Trust	— Mistrust
n	— Ever	— Never
non	— Conductor	— Non conductor
un	— Tie	— Untie

3 *By prefixes or suffixes of opposite meaning*

Antenuptial	— Postnuptial	Ingress	— Egress
Benevolence	— Malevolence	Invest	— Divest
Cheerful	— Cheerless	Prefix	— Suffix
Encourage	— Discourage	Sensible	— Senseless
Exterior	— Interior	Sympathy	— Antipathy

Note—1 One class of antonyms consists of *correlative* words. The following are examples:

Ancestors	descendants	Lawyer	client
Bridegroom	bride	Leader	follower
Captain	crew	Lord	vassal
Cause	effect	Master	servant
Creator	creator	Parent	child
Creditor	debtor	Physician	patient
Dry	wet	Principal	assistant, agent
Host	guest	Teacher	pupil
Husband	wife	Town	countryside
King	subject	Uncle or aunt	nephew or niece
Landlord	tenant		

2 We have also sets of three and four correlatives each

Animal	Vegetable	Mineral	Spring	Summer	Autumn	Winter
Length	Breadth	Height (Depth, Thickness)	East	West	North	South
Good	Bad	Indifferent	Morning	Noon	Evening	Night
Eagerness	Willingness	Reluctance	Infancy	Youth	Manhood	Age
Poverty	Competence	Affluence				
Beginning	Middle	End				
Initial	Medial	Final				

III—HOMONYMS

715 Homonyms are words spelt and pronounced alike, but differing in meaning and application —

Angle —1	A corner, the inclination of two lines to each other	Forge —1	To beat with the hammer into a particular shape or form, to make a form
2	To fish with a hook and line	2	To fabricate or counterfeit a writing in imitation of the original, as to forge a signature
Bill —1	The beak of a bird	Litter —1	A portable bed or couch; a palanquin
2	A kind of axe with a hooked point	2	To scatter things carelessly about
3	A written paper of any kind, as an account of money	3	A brood of young, as the litter of a pig
Coin —1	Seeds or grains which grow in ears, not in pods, grain unripe	Pitch —1	To fix, as to pitch the tents
2	An excrescence on the foot of a cornucopious or horny substance	2	To throw headlong, to throw or cast forward
Deal —1	To divide, share or parcel out, as to deal cards	3	Elevation, as the pitch of the voice
2	A division, share or quantity, as a great deal, that is, a great share or portion	Strain —1	To squeeze or press, to press too much or violently, to force or constrain
3	Fir or pine plank	2	A song or note, a style or manner of speaking
4	To trade or traffic		

NB—For a longer list of Homonyms, see my *Lower Secondary Manual of English*.

IV—PARONYMS

716 Paronyms are words similar in sound, but differing in spelling and meaning

<i>Aloud</i> , with a loud voice	<i>Discreet</i> , prudent, cautious
<i>Allowed</i> (allow'd), did allow	<i>Discrete</i> , not concrete, distinct
<i>Cast</i> , to throw	<i>Root</i> , of a plant
<i>Caste</i> , a tribe, a class	<i>Route</i> , road or way, direction

NB—For a longer list of Paronyms, see my *Lower Secondary Manual of English*

V—CONJUGATE FORMS

717 By Conjugate forms we mean the different forms which the same word takes in different parts of speech. Thus *intend*, *intention*, *intentional*, *intentionally*, are conjugate forms,

all having the same origin, but each being of a different part of speech from the others. Such forms are called *conjugate*, because they are joined together or connected by being derived from the same parent word, like members of the same family (Lat. *con*, together, *jugum*, a yoke).

718 Conjugate Nouns and Adjectives—

Alms	—	Alms	Line	—	Linear
Angel	—	Angelic	Mischief	—	Mischievous
Anomaly	—	Anomalous	Nation	—	National
Art	—	Artificial, artful	Nature	—	Natural
Ass	—	Assinine	Nerve	—	Nervous
Any	—	Any, enial	Occasion	—	Occasional
Blood	—	Bloody	Passion	—	Passionate
Burden	—	Burdensome	Pity	—	Pitiful, piteous, piteously
Body	—	Bodily	Poetry	—	Poetical
Brother	—	Brotherly	Policy	—	Politie
Circuit	—	Circuitous	Poison	—	Poisonous
Clerk	—	Clerical	People	—	Popular, populous
Condition	—	Conditional	Palace	—	Palatial
Conscience	—	Conscientious	Remedy	—	Remedial
Contempt	—	Contemptuous, contemptible	Revolution	—	Revolutionary
Duty	—	Dutiful	Rule	—	Regular
Duty	—	Dutious, dutiful	Rogue	—	Roguish
Error	—	Errorous	Ry	—	Radiant
Fiction	—	Fictitious	Scruple	—	Scrupulous
Feast	—	Festive	School	—	Scholastic
Flower	—	Flowery	Sheep	—	Sheepish
Fragment	—	Fragmentary	Storm	—	Stormy
Fine	—	Fine	Service	—	Serviceable
Grace	—	Grateful, gracious	Sport	—	Sportive
Giant	—	Gigantic	System	—	Systematic
Hope	—	Hopeful	Table	—	Tabular
Idiot	—	Idiotic	Theory	—	Theoretical
Impulse	—	Impulsive	Tempest	—	Tempestuous
Joke	—	Jocular, jocose	Water	—	Watery
Joy	—	Joyful	Winter	—	Wintry
King	—	Kingly	Week	—	Weekly
Lead	—	Leaden	Year	—	Yearly
Legend	—	Legendary	Zeal	—	Zealous

Note—Sometimes we have a noun from one root, and the adjective corresponding to it in meaning, from another root in the same language or from a different language altogether. These cannot, of course, be called *conjugate*, but it may be useful to give the student the following examples

Beginning	—	Initial	Church	—	Ecclesiastical
Blood	—	Sanguinary	Corpse	—	Corpse
Body	—	Corporal, corporeal	Country	—	Rural
Brother	—	Fraternal	Cow, ox	—	Bovine
Burden	—	Onerous	Death	—	Mortal
Cat	—	Feline	Degree	—	Gradual
Child	—	Filial	Dog	—	Canine
			Ear	—	Auditory

End	—	Final	Month	—	Oral
Eye	—	Ocular	Night	—	Nocturnal
Fire	—	Igneous	Nose	—	Nasal
Flesh	—	Carnal	Place	—	Local
Flock	—	Gregarious	Ring	—	Annular
God	—	Divine	Root	—	Radical
Hand	—	Manual	Sea	—	Marine, maritime
Head	—	Capital	Shepherd	—	Pastoral
Heaven	—	Celestial	Side	—	Lateral
Hire	—	Mercedary	Sight	—	Ocular
Hope	—	Sanguine	Spring (season)	—	Vernal
House	—	Domestic	Star	—	Stellar
King	—	Regal, royal	Sugar	—	Saccharine
Light	—	Luminous	Sun	—	Solar
Love	—	Amatory	Tooth	—	Dental
Money	—	Pecuniary	War	—	Martial
Moon	—	Lunar	Water	—	Aqueous
Mother	—	Maternal	Woman	—	Effeminate

719. Conjugate Adjectives and Nouns—

Accurate	—	Accuracy	Long	—	Length
Benign	—	Benignity	Likely	—	Likelihood
Broad	—	Breadth	Merry	—	Mirth
Brief	—	Brevity	Poor	—	Poverty
Credulous	—	Credulity	Slow	—	Slowness, sloth
Dark	—	Darkness	Vain	—	Vanity
Deep	—	Depth	Warm	—	Warmth
Double	—	Duplicity	Wide	—	Width
Empire	—	Imperial	White	—	Whiteness
Fertile	—	Fertility	Wise	—	Wisdom
✓ High	—	Height	✓ Young	—	Youth

720. Conjugate Verbs and Nouns—

Allow	—	Allowance	Fly	—	Flight
Assemble	—	Assembly	Forfeit	—	Forfeiture
Abound	—	Abundance	Grow	—	Growth
Abide	—	Abode	Impel	—	Impulse
Break	—	Break	Know	—	Knowledge
Compel	—	Compulsion	Maintain	—	Maintenance
Convey	—	Conveyance	Mock	—	Mockery
Choose	—	Choice	Obeys	—	Obedience
Commit	—	Commission	Omit	—	Omission
Confer	—	Conference	Remit	—	Remittance, remission
Conceive	—	Conception, concept	Reside	—	Residence
Deserve	—	Desert	Relieve	—	Relief
Deceive	—	Deception, deceit	Steal	—	Sterility
Deny	—	Denial	Shake	—	Shock
Decide	—	Decision	Wave	—	Web
Expel	—	Expulsion			

721. Conjugate Nouns and Verbs—

bosom	—	Embosom	Hand	—	Handle
Cham	—	Eucham	Nest	—	Nestle
Circle	—	Encircle	Power	—	Empower
Fruit	—	Fructify	Peace	—	Pacify
Friend	—	Befriend	Speech	—	Speak
Food	—	Fed	Snare	—	Ensnare
Glass	—	Glaze	Spark	—	Sparkle
Gesture	—	Gesticulate	Sweet	—	Sweeten
Grace	—	Ingratiate	Vigour	—	Invigorate
Half	—	Halve			

722 Conjugate Verbs and Adjectives—

Console	—	Consolatory.	Invent	—	Inventive
Covet	—	Covetous	Require	—	Requisite
Decide	—	Decisive	Regulate	—	Regular
Deride	—	Derisive	Scruple	—	Scrupulous
Fill	—	Full	Venture	—	Venturesome

723 Conjugate Adjectives and Verbs—

Alien	—	Alienate	Natural	—	Naturalize
Black	—	Blacken	Pure	—	Purify
Deaf	—	Deafen	Poor	—	Impoverish
Deep	—	Deepen	Quick	—	Quicken.
Dear	—	Endear	Simple	—	Simplify
Diverse	—	Diversify	Solemn	—	Solemnize.
Fertile	—	Fertilize	Wide	—	Widen
Hard	—	Harden			



CHAPTER XI

EXPRESSIONS LIABLE TO BE CONFOUNDED.

724 Adapt, adopt

Adapt, fit, suit 'We must adapt our manner of living to our circumstances'

Adopt, choose or select 'You must decide which course to adopt'

725 Affect, effect

Affect, act upon, pretend aim at 'The change has seriously affected my income'

Effect, bring to pass, to accomplish 'He effected much good with his small means.'

726 Agree to, agree with.

Agree to, yield assent to 'I agree to your proposal'

Agree with, be of the same opinion as, suit 'A verb must agree with its nominative,' 'he agrees with me in thinking so'

727 Alternate, alternative

Alternate=being by turns, every other 'He comes on alternate days' means 'he comes one day, does not come the next day, comes again the third day is absent on the fourth, and so on.'

Alternative=each of two courses between which there is a choice, so that *either, but not both*, may be adopted 'You must either stand on the bench or leave the school' Here the two alternatives are 1 standing on the bench, and 2 leaving the school If you stand on the bench, you need not leave the school, if you leave the school, you need not stand on the bench

Note—When there is only one course open, we say 'There is no alternative'

728 Antique, antic

Antique, ancient 'antique coins, medals, &c' 'an antique gem'

Antic, odd, fanciful 'antic gestures'

729 Apposite, opposite.

Apposite, proper, suitable 'His remark was very apposite'

Opposite, contrary in position, adverse 'They have taken opposite sides in the dispute'

730 Attend to, attend on (upon)

Attend to, pay heed or regard to, look after 'Attend to your own business'

Attend on, be in waiting on 'He had only one servant to attend on him'

731 Augur, auger

Augur a soothsayer or diviner, to predict by signs, to forebode

Auger, a boring instrument.

732 Barbarism, barbarity

Barbarism=an incorrect form of speech, savage life.

Barbarity=savageness, cruelty.

733 Beneficial, beneficent.

Beneficial—applied to things, as, "beneficial law"

Beneficent=conferring benefits—applied to persons, 'as "a beneficent monarch"'

734. Birth, berth

Birth, a coming into life

Berth, a sailor's sleeping place

735 Born, borne

Born, brought forth 'He was born on the 1st April.'

Borne, carried, supported 'He was borne to the grave'

736 Bridal, bridle.

Bridal=marriage

Bridle=an instrument for governing and restraining a horse

737 By and by, by the by—The former means presently, pretty soon, the latter is used to introduce into a discourse a digression or incidental observation of remark, not directly connected with it, or arising out of it

738. Canvas, canvass.

Canvas=a kind of coarse cloth used for sails of ships.

Canvass=a seeking or soliciting to obtain something, as, votes, or subscribers to a book.

739 Casual, causal

Casual=accidental or occasional, as, '*casual leave*'

Causal=relating to or denoting cause, as, '*causal verb*'

740 Cattle, chattel

Cattle=domestic quadrupeds.

Chattel=from the same root as cattle, means *goods, property*

Property originally consisted in cattle

Of *peculiar* (one's own), from *pecus*, cattle

741 Cheque, check

Cheque, an order 'He gave me a cheque on the Bank of Madras for the amount'

Check, to curb or restrain 'He checked his horse's speed'

742 Chon, quene (both pronounced *hune*)

Chon=a body of singers.

Quene=twenty-four sheets of paper

743 Chord, cord

Chord, string of a musical instrument, concord, a line in geometry uniting the extremities of the arc of a circle

Cord, a line

744 Collar, choler

Collar, the neck, something worn about the neck

Choler, bile, anger

745. Collision, collusion

Collision, a striking together

Collusion, a secret agreement for a deceitful or fraudulent purpose

746 Compare with, compare to.

Compare with—to show difference 'He compared my handwriting with my brother's, and preferred mine'

Compare to—to show resemblance 'Anger may be compared to a fire'

747 Complement, compliment.

Complement=that which fills up, or supplies a deficiency, as the complement of an angle

Compliment=delicate flattery, a manifestation of regard or admiration, as, 'to send one's compliments to a friend'

748. Condemn, contemn

Condemn, to pronounce to be wrong

Contemn, to despise, to hate

749. **Confident, confidant.**

Confident=having confidence, *secmie*, as, 'I am confident of success'

Confidant=one who is trusted with a secret, *as*, 'my confidant betrayed my secret'

750. **Conscious, conscientious**

Conscious=aware as 'I am not conscious of any difference between the two'

Conscientious=acting according to conscience, *i.e.*, the faculty which tells us what is right and what is wrong, as, 'He is a conscientious judge, and will decide for the party that, in his opinion is in the right.'

751. **Contemptuous, contemptible—**

Contemptuous is applied to that which *indicates contempt*, as 'a contemptuous look,' 'contemptuous treatment.'

Contemptible is applied to that which is the *object of contempt*, as, 'a contemptible fellow'

A *contemptuous* remark is one that *expresses contempt*, a *contemptible* remark is one that *deserves to be treated with contempt*

752. **Corpse, corps—**

Corpse=the dead body of a human being

Corps=(pron *core*)=a body of a men an organised part or division of an army, *as*, 'the police corps'

753. **Council, counsel.**

Council=an assembly of men called together for consultation or advice as, 'The Council of the Governor General'

Counsel=advice, also a legal adviser (*rakil*)

754. **Dearth, dearness.**

Dearth=scarcity, want as, "Dearth of water"

Dearness=high price, as, "dearness of good rice"

755. **Deference, difference**

Deference, respect, submission

Difference, disagreement

{ 'With all deference to your opinion, I must say that there is a vast difference between the two cases'

756. **Depository, depositary**

Depository, a store or place in which things are deposited

Depositary, one with whom something is deposited

757 Deprecate, depreciate

Deprecate, to pray deliverance from

Depreciate, to decline in value, to undervalue

758 Desert, dessert—

Desert=a desolate uninhabited waste 'the Great Desert'

Dessert=fruit, sweetmeats, &c, served at the close of a meal

} 759 Destiny, destination

Destiny=fate, as, "Who can stand against *destiny*?"

Destination=goal, as, "Madras is the *destination* of my journey"

} 760 Disappointed of, disappointed in

We are disappointed of a thing which we expect when we fail to get it, we are disappointed in it when we get it, but it does not come up to our expectations, or is different from what we expected

} 761 Disease, decease

Disease, a malady 'He is suffering from a painful disease'

Decease, death 'His sudden decease put an end to all his projects'

} 762. Divers, diverse

Divers, several 'He urged divers reasons for his conduct'

Diverse, different 'They are of quite diverse character'

763 Draft, draught

Draft, order for money, a sketch 'a draft on the Madras Bank,' 'the draft of the letter'

Draught, act of drawing, quantity drank at once 'I had a good draught of water'

764 Diam, drachm

Diam, one sixteenth of an ounce avoirdupois

Drachm, the eighth part of an ounce, apothecaries' weight, a coin

// 765 Earnestly, in earnest—

Earnestly=with warmth or eagerness

In earnest=not in jest 'I am *in earnest* when I say I will punish you' means 'I am not joking but really intend to carry out my threat'

766 Efface, deface

Efface, to blot out 'They could not efface the bloodstains from the boarded floor'

Deface, to disfigure 'The postage stamp was a defaced one.'

767. Eligible, legible

Eligible, fit to be chosen 'You are not eligible for the situation.'

Legible, that can be read 'He writes a very legible hand'

768. Emerge, immerge

Emerge, to rise or come out of 'It was sunset before we emerged from the wood'

Immerge, to plunge into 'He immersed his hand into the boiling water'

769. Emigrant, immigrant—

Emigrant=one who leaves one country and goes to live in another

Immigrant=one who goes into one country from another in order to live there.

For example, if a man leaves England, and goes and settles down in America, he would be spoken of in England as an *emigrant*, and in America, as an *immigrant*.

770. Eminent, imminent

Eminent, distinguished 'an eminent scholar'

Imminent, impending 'the danger was imminent.'

771. Eruption, irruption—

Eruption=a breaking or bursting out; as, 'the last eruption of *Ætna*'

Irruption=a bursting into, as, 'the irruption of the northern nations into France and Italy'

772. Fatal, fateful

Fatal, deadly, destructive, 'a fatal wound'

Fateful, producing fatal events 'The expedition turned out a fateful one.'

773. Flour, flower

Flour, from meal

Flower, a blossom

774. Funeral, funereal

Funeral, a burial, used at the interment of the dead.

Funereal, suiting a funeral 'funereal gloom.'

775. Gentle, genteel—

Gentle=1 well-born, of good family, 2 not rude or rough

Genteel=well-bred, of refined manners, elegant in appearance or dress

Ex — 'a *gentle* manner,' 'a *gentle* voice,' '*gentle* as a lamb,'
'*genteel* appearance,' 'She has a *genteel* person.'

1 776 Ghostly, ghastly—

Ghostly=spiritual, as, 'a *ghostly* adviser' (i.e., a priest)

Ghastly=pale, shocking, dreadful, as, 'a *ghastly* face,' 'a *ghastly* spectacle'

777 Glare, glau

Glare, a bright dazzling light, to dazzle the sight.

Glan, the white of an egg

1 778 Goal, gaol

Goal, destination 'He has reached the *goal* of his ambition'

Gaol, a jail 'The prisoner was sent back to the *gaol*'

779 Gracious, graceful—

Gracious=merciful, kind to the ill-deserving—refers to the nature or character of a person 'God is *gracious*'

Graceful=displaying beauty in form or action, agreeable in appearance—refers to external manner or appearance, 'a *graceful* walk,' 'a *graceful* air'

1 780 Hard, hardly—

He works *hard*=he works very diligently.

He *hardly* works=he does scarcely any work, he does no work almost

781. Hoarde, hoide.

Hoard, to collect, a treasure 'He has *hoarded* a large sum of money'

Hord, a gang 'a *horde* of pirates,' 'Turkish *hordes*'

1 782 Human, humane—

Human=having the qualities or attributes of man

Humane=merciful, benevolent

1 783 Imperious, imperial

Imperious, commanding, haughty, arrogant '*imperious* language'

Imperial, belonging to an empire or an emperor '*imperial* power'

784 Indict, indite

Indict, to present for judicial trial '*indicted* for murder'

Indite, to compose in writing, to dictate '*indict* a letter'

785 Ingenious, ingenuous—

Ingenious=skilful to invent or contrive*Ingenuous*=open, frank, free from reserve

786 Key, quay

Key, an instrument to fasten and open locks, an index*Quay*, a wharf for loading and unloading vessels

787 Late, lately—

He arrived late—he arrived *after the time fixed for him to come**He arrived lately*—he arrived *a little before the time of which we are speaking**Note*—*Late* refers to the time fixed for something to be done—e.g., if school begins at ten o'clock, a boy who comes after that time is said to come late*Lately* refers to the time at or about which we are speaking—so that if any thing happened sometime before the time at which we are speaking, we say that it happened lately

788. Loath, loathe—

Loath (adj.)=unwilling, as,

I am would the cat fish eat

But she is loath to wet her feet

Loathe (verb)=to hate, to feel disgust at, as, 'Loathing the honeyed cakes, I longed for bread'

789 Look over, overlook—

The first means *to examine*, as, 'He looked over my paper', the second means *to fail to notice*, as, 'He overlooked my paper'

790 Luxuriant, luxurious

Luxuriant, exuberant in growth 'luxuriant growth'*Luxurious*, voluptuous 'luxurious habits'

791. Metal, mettle

Metal, as gold, silver, &c*Mettle*, spirit, courage 'a man of mettle,' a horse's mettle'

792. Minor, miner—

Minor=one who is under age, i.e., who has not yet arrived at the power of managing his own estate*Miner*=one who works in a mine

793. Naughty, knotty

Naughty, mischievous or wicked 'a naughty boy'*Knotty*, having knots, difficult. 'knotty trunk of a tree,' 'a knotty question.'

794 Notable, notorious

Notable = distinguished for something good "a *notable* feature"

Notorious = having an evil reputation "a *notorious* thief."

795 Observation, observance.

Observation, remark, notice 'His *observation* is not to the point'

Observance, attention 'strict *observance* of formalities'

796. Official, officious

Official = belonging to some office, "an *official* act"

Officious = meddling, "an *officious* character"

797 Other than, otherwise than.

Other than, besides 'He possessed no *other* clothes than those he had on him at the time'

Otherwise than, in any other way than 'He could not pay the debt *otherwise* than by selling his house'

798 Popular, populous

Popular, pleasing to the people, prevailing, plain 'He is a very *popular* writer,' 'a *popular* custom'

Populous, full of people 'a *populous* town'

799 Practice, practise

Practice, customary use, habit, performance 'He has a large *practice*,' '*Practice* makes perfect'

Practise, to do frequently or habitually 'He is *practising* gymnastics'

800 President, precedent

President, one that presides over an assembly, &c

Precedent, something done or said before, an example or rule for future times 'He quoted several *precedents* for the course he adopted'

801 Principal, principle

Principal, chief, a chief or head, money placed out at interest

Principle, a maxim, a fundamental truth, a rule of action.

802 Propose, purpose—

Purpose simply expresses a determination or intention to *propose* anything is to offer it for the consideration and approval or acceptance of others 'I *purpose* leaving to-morrow,' 'It is *proposed* to start a circulating library if sufficient support is assured'

803. Relic, relict—

Relic is any part which remains of a thing or person that has ceased to exist, *relict* means a woman who has lost her husband, a widow

804 Remind, remember—

To *remind* is to cause to remember, as, 'I asked him to remind me of it if I should happen not to remember it.'

Note—'Remember me to my friend' This is a colloquial use of the word, and means 'Speak of me to my friend, so that he may remember me'

805 Reverend, reverent—

Reverend=worthy of reverence, i.e., fear mingled with respect and esteem

Reverent=expressing reverence

'A *reverend* sire among them came', '*reverent* words of behaviour.'

806 Run at, run against—

Run at a thing means simply 'to run in the direction of it without actually coming in contact with it'

Run against a thing means 'to come into violent contact with it'

807. Sailor, sailer

Sailor=a seaman, as, '*sailors* and soldiers'

Sailer=a ship—used with qualifying words expressing manner of sailing, as, 'that ship is a fast *sailer*'

808 Sow, sew

Sow, to scatter seed 'sow a field with grain'

Sew, to work with a needle 'to sew clothes'

809 Spirituous, spiritual

Spirituos, consisting of spirit, ardent '*spirituous liquors*'

Spiritual, incorporeal, pertaining to divine things '*things temporal and things spiritual*'

810 Stationery, stationary—

Stationery=paper, pens, &c., required for writing.

Stationary=not moving, as, 'a *stationary* engine'

811 Symbol, cymbal

Symbol, a type, a sign 'The Cross is the symbol of Christianity'

Cymbal, a musical instrument '*tinkling cymbals*.'

812 Tasteless, distasteful—

Tasteless=having no taste, insipid, as, 'a *tasteless* fruit'

Distasteful=having a disagreeable taste, figuratively, displeasing to the feelings, 'a *distasteful* task.'

/ 813 Tenor, tenure

Tenor, continued course purport 'the *tenor* of a speech, agreement, &c'

Tenure, condition of holding land 'feudal *tenures*.'

/ 814 Think little, little think

Think little, have a low opinion, think as of no importance 'I *think little* of his abilities,' 'he *thinks little* of giving away a hundred rupees'

Little think, have no idea 'He *little thinks* he will have to make good the loss, if the attempt fails'

/ 815. Ton, tun

Ton, weight of 2,240 pounds avoirdupois 'a *ton* of iron'

Tun, a large cask 'a *tun* of wine'

816 Union, unison

Union, act of uniting, concord 'Union is strength.'

Unison, agreement of sounds 'Their voices were in *unison* with the music.'

817. Variance variation

Variance, disagreement 'They are now at *variance*'

Variation, a change, deviation, difference 'There has been no *variation* in the price of cotton for some time'

' 818 Verbal, verbose

Verbal, uttered by the mouth, oral 'a *verbal* promise'

Verbose, abounding in words, prolix 'a *verbose* writer'

/ 819 Woody, wooden—

Woody=full of trees—'a *woody* region'

Wooden=made of wood It denotes material 'a *wooden* box'

/ 820 He is well, he is well off—

The first means 'He is in good health', the second=he is in prosperous circumstances'

821. Poor as he was, as he was poor—

The first=*though* he was poor, the second=*because* he was poor

822 Take heart, take to heart

Take heart=gain courage or confidence, be encouraged

Take to heart=feel sensibly, to be deeply affected by

823 Eat a fruit, eat of a fruit—

The first means to eat the whole of the fruit, the second, to eat a part only

824. Go to school, go to the school—

The first means 'to be learning in a school,' or 'to go to a school for the purpose of learning', the second simply means 'to go to the school-house or building, perhaps to see it, or to see any one in it'

825. I dare say, I dare to say—

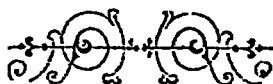
I dare say=I suppose, I believe

I dare to say=I am bold enough to assert, I can confidently assert

826 On purpose, for the purpose

On purpose, intentionally 'I stayed away on purpose from the meeting'

For the purpose, for some purpose or object for which a thing is required 'I bought the horse for riding, but I find him too troublesome for the purpose'



CHAPTER XII.

GRAMMATICAL DISTINCTIONS

827 Above, over, upon, beyond

When an object is above another, it exceeds it in height, when it is over another, it extends along its superior surface, when it is upon another, it comes in contact with its superior surface, when it is beyond another, it lies at a greater distance. Trees frequently grow *above* a wall, and sometimes the branches hang *over* the wall, or rest *upon* it, but they seldom stretch much *beyond* it.

In the figurative sense the first is mostly employed to convey the idea of superiority, the second of authority, the third of immediate influence, and the fourth of extent. Every one should be *above* falsehood, but particularly those who are set *over* others, who may have an influence *on* their minds *beyond* all calculation.

828 Ago, before—

Ago refers to past time reckoned from the present, if I say 'three months *ago*' in December, I mean 'In September,' which is three months when we count backwards from December. '*Ago*' follows a phrase denoting a *period* of time. '*Before*' may refer to past or future time, and governs a word, phrase, or clause denoting a *point* of time, e.g., 'He came here *before* last Friday', 'He will come *before* the first of next month', 'He arrived *before* me, *before* I arrived', 'I will be there *before* he starts'. *Before* cannot govern an expression denoting a *period* of time. 'I joined the class *before* a year' should be a *year ago*. Also, *before* must have something to govern. 'I joined the class six months *before*' is wrong, but we may say 'I joined the class six months *before* him, *before* the examination, *before* he left it'.

829 All, every, each

All is collective, *every* single or individual, *each* distributive. *All* and *every* are universal in their signification, *each* restrictive. The former are used in speaking of great numbers, the latter is applicable to small numbers. *All* men are not

born with the same talent, either in degree or kind, but *every* man has a talent peculiar to himself a parent divides his property among his children, and gives to *each* his due share

830. Alone, only—

Alone stands after the noun or pronoun to which it is attached 'John (he) *alone*' *Only* commonly stands after its noun or pronoun, as, 'man *only*', except when the noun has an article or possessive pronoun with it, as, 'the *only* way,' 'an (his) *only* son'

Only imports that there is no other of the same kind, *alone* imports being accompanied by no other. An *only* child is one who has neither brother nor sister, a child *alone* is one who is left by itself 'Virtue *only* makes us happy' means nothing else can do it 'Virtue *alone* makes us happy' means that virtue by itself, or unaccompanied with any other advantages, is sufficient to do it

831 Amid (amidst), among (amongst)—

Among originally meant *one out of many*, and *amidst*, *in the midst of* So, *among* and *amongst* always imply *number*, *amid* and *amidst*, *quantity* 'among those people,' 'amidst storm and rain' *Amid* and *amidst* also show that the thing specified is of a different class from those around it, while *among* and *amongst* are oftener applied to objects surrounded by those of the same class 'You are *among* friends, while he is *amidst* his enemies'

832 At the top, on the top—

'There is a tree *at the top* of the hill' means that *it is somewhere near the top*.

'There is a tree *on the top* of the hill' means that the tree is *on the very summit*

833. Beside, besides

These words, whether used as prepositions or adverbs, have been considered strictly synonymous and have been freely interchanged by best writers There is, however, a tendency, in present usage, to make the following distinction between them 1 That *beside* be used only and always as a preposition, with the original meaning "by the side of", as, to sit *beside* a fountain, or with the closely allied meaning "aside from" or "out of", as, this is *beside* our present purpose, "Paul, thou art *beside* thyself", the adverbial sense being wholly transferred to the cognate word 2 That *besides*, as a preposition, take the remaining sense "in addition to", as, *besides* all this, *besides* the considerations here offered. 'There was a

famine in the land *besides* the first famine' Gen XXVII And that it also take the adverbial sense of "moreover," "beyond," &c, which had been divided between the words, as, '*Besides*, there are other considerations which belong to this case'

834 Besides, except

Besides expresses the idea of addition *Except* expresses that of exclusion 'There were many there *besides* ourselves', 'No one *except* ourselves will be admitted'

835 Between, among—

Between is used of two persons or things, *among* of more than two 'the difference *between* the two numbers,' 'the money was distributed *among* the poor of the village'

836 By, before

'By Monday' means on any day *before* Monday, or on Monday 'Before Monday' means on Sunday at the latest

837 Can, may

Can denotes possibility, *may* liberty and probability he who has sound limbs *can* walk, but he *may* not walk in places which are prohibited

838 Can but, cannot but—

'I *can but* try' = I can only try (All that I can do is to try) I cannot be certain of success) *But* is here an adverb

'I *cannot but* try' = I cannot do anything except trying, i.e., trying is the only course open to me, I must try *But* is here a preposition governing the infinitive *try*

839 Elder, eldest, older, eldest.

Older and *eldest* refer merely to age or duration of existence, *elder* and *eldest* imply priority of right arising from seniority in years, and can only be applied to members of the same family or corporate group 'John is the *eldest* boy in the class,' 'John is *older* than any other boy in the class', 'Robert is my *eldest* son,' 'You must obey your *elder* brother'

840 Few, a few—

Few means almost none, hardly any, *a few* means a very small number

841 Fewer, less—

Fewer refers to number, *less* to quantity 'The distance was *less* than I expected', 'There are *fewer* mistakes in this letter than in the other'

842 In, into—

In simply denotes presence or existence within limits of time place or circumstances, *into* expresses entrance, penetration introduction, &c 'He was *in* his house,' 'I went *into* his house.'

843 In an hour, within an hour—

In an hour = after the lapse of an hour

Within an hour = before the expiry of an hour

844 In the same time, at the same time—

'He and I reached Madras *in the same time*' His journey to Madras occupied the same *length* of time as mine, say 30 hours

'He and I reached Madras *at the same time*' The *point* of time at which I reached Madras was the same as that at which he reached, say 5 o'clock

845. Lie, lay—

To lie is properly to cause to *lie* a thing *lies* on the table, some one *lays* it on the table he *lies* with his father, they *laud* him with his father.

846 Little, a little—

A little = a certain amount as opposed to none.

Little = a small amount as opposed to a great deal

'I spent *a little* time with him' means that I did not go away at once

'I spent *little* time with him' means that I did not stay long

847. Nearly, almost—

Nearly denotes quantity of time or space '*nearly* an hour,' '*nearly* ten miles' *Almost* denotes degree '*almost* black.'

848. No one, not one—

Not one is more emphatic than *no one* It means *not even one*, and may besides be applied to persons as well as things, while *no one* means *no person* simply

849 Scarcely, hardly—

Scarcely expresses quantity, *hardly* degree '*scarcely* ten days,' '*hardly* dry'

850 Under, below, beneath—

We are covered or sheltered by that which we stand *under*; we excel or rise above that which is *below* us, we look down on that which is *beneath* us we live *under* the protection of Government, the sun disappears when it is *below* the horizon, we are apt to tread upon that which is altogether *beneath* us.

851 With, by—

With expresses a closer and more immediate connection, *by*, a more remote one. *With* sometimes denotes the instrument, *by*, the cause as, 'He was killed *with* a stone *by* David' *By* sometimes implies the *mode*, as, 'We travelled *by* railroad'

✓ 852 A picture of the Queen, a picture of the Queen's

'A picture of the Queen' is a portrait or likeness of the Queen 'a picture of the Queen's' is a picture belonging to the Queen See sec 517



CHAPTER XIII

APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS.

WITH ILLUSTRATIVE PHRASES AND SENTENCES

853 Prepositions following Words — There are many Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs, and Participles in English which take particular and appropriate prepositions after them. In a few instances, more than one preposition may be admissible; thus we can speak of a river as *abounding in* fish, or *abounding with* fish, or a person may be said to be *careless of*, or *careless about*, the consequences of his actions. As a general rule, however, one and only preposition can follow a particular word used in a particular sense, and it is wrong to say "I am *ashamed for* your conduct" instead of "I am *ashamed of* your conduct", or "in *respect for* these matters" instead of "in *respect of* these matters," though "I have a great *respect for* your opinion" is quite correct.

The use of inappropriate prepositions is a fertile source of error with native students. The following list is therefore given to enable them to learn the use of appropriate prepositions with words —

- Abandon *to* 'His friends abandoned him *to* his fate.'
- Abhorrence *of* 'He has a great abhorrence *of* being flattered.'
- Abide *at* (a place) 'We shall abide *at* our native place all the rest of our days.'
- Abide *by* 'We shall abide *by* your decision.'
- Abide *in* (a house) 'They were abiding *in* a small hut when I found them.'
- Abide *with* (a person) 'Let the damsel abide *with* us a few days.'
- Abound *in* 'The book abounds *in* useful advice.'
- Abound *with* 'The essay abounds *with* blunders.'
- Abridge *from* 'That book is abridged *from* Alison's *History of Europe*.'
- Abscond *from* 'He absconded *from* his creditors.'
- Absolve *from* 'The priest absolved him *from* his sins,' 'I absolve you *from* your promise.'
- Absorbed *in* 'He was absorbed *in* study.'
- Absent *from* 'I found him absent *from* his place.'
- Abstain *from* 'He abstained *from* food for two days.'
- Abstract *from* 'He opened my box, and abstracted ten pieces *from* it.'
- Accede *to* 'He acceded *to* my terms.'

- Acceptable to 'The present was very acceptable to him just then'
 Access to 'It is hard to get access to him'
 Accessible to 'He is not accessible to advice or remonstrance'
 Accommodate to 'We must accommodate ourselves to our circumstances'
 Accommodate with 'I accommodated my friend with lodgings (with a loan)'
 Accompanied by 'He was accompanied by all his friends'
 Accompanied with 'The proposal was accompanied with very disagreeable conditions'
 Accomplished in 'She is accomplished in music'
 Accord with 'His conduct does not accord with his professions'
 Accordance with 'In accordance with the rules'
 According to 'He did according to his promise'
 Accountable to 'We are accountable to God for the use we make of our talents'
 Accurate in 'He was not accurate in the statements he made'
 Accused by (a person) 'He was accused of theft by his own brother'
 Accused of (a crime) 'He was accused of theft by his own brother'
 Accustomed to 'I am not accustomed to this kind of language'
 Acquaint with 'Have you acquainted him with the circumstance?'
 Acquainted with 'I have been acquainted with him since January'
 Acquiesce in 'The judge acquiesced in the verdict of the jury, and acquitted the prisoner'
 Acquit of 'He was acquitted of the charge brought against him'
 Active in 'He is very active in doing good to his fellow men'
 Adapted for 'This hall is not adapted for lecturing to large audiences'
 Adapted to 'The means employed were not adapted to the end in view'
 Add to 'This speech of his only added fuel to the fire'
 Addicted to 'The Chinese are generally addicted to opium smoking'
 Address to 'I have addressed a memorial to Government on the subject'
 Adequate to 'The supply was not adequate to the demand'
 Adhere to 'He adhered to his party as long as he could', 'Wax adheres to the finger'
 Adjacent to 'The garden is adjacent to the high road'
 Adjourn to 'The judge has adjourned the case to Monday'
 Adjunct to 'This phrase is an adjunct to the subject'
 Adjust to 'to adjust a garment to the body', 'to adjust a watch to Madri's time'
 Admissible to 'She is admissible for nothing but her beauty of face'
 Admission to (= access) 'I got admission to the performance'
 Admission into (= entrance) 'He got admission into the fifth class'
 Admit of 'The matter admits of no delay', 'The passage admits of three interpretations'
 Admitted to 'He was admitted to Holy Orders last Sunday'
 Adorned with 'The room was adorned with beautiful pictures'
 Adulterate with 'Coffee is often adulterated in England with chicory'
 Advance against 'He advanced boldly against the foe'
 Advance to 'He was advanced to the highest posts in the service'
 Advance towards 'We saw the enemy advancing towards us'
 Advantage of 'We must not take advantage of people's generosity'
 Advantage over 'He has a great advantage over me in respect of age'
 Advantageous to 'The brigand turned out very advantageous to him'
 Adverse to 'His conduct is quite adverse to my interests'
 Avert to 'He averted to this circumstance in the course of his speech'
 Affected by 'My income has been seriously affected by the new arrangement'

- Affection *to* 'His affection for me is well known'
 Affectionate *to* 'Be affectionate to your brothers and sisters'
 Affirmed *to* 'His daughter is affirmed to my son'
 Affixed *to* 'He affixed his signature to the document after much musing'
 Afflicted *with* 'He is afflicted with a very painful disease'
 Afraid *of* 'I am not afraid of the consequences of what I am doing, as I know I am acting right'
 Agent *for* 'He is the agent here for Messrs. Thompson & Co.'
 Aghast *at* 'He stood aghast at the sight'
 Agitated *by* 'This little lake is often agitated by storms'
 Agree *among*, upon (on) 'They could not agree among themselves upon (on) the subject'
 Agree *to* 'He agreed to my proposal'
 Agree *with* 'I agree with you in thinking him in the wrong'
 Agreeable *to* 'His duty was by no means agreeable to him'
 Agreement *between* 'There is no agreement between us that we should not oppose each other in this business'
 Aim *at* 'He aimed at nothing less than the crown'
 Akin *to* 'Pity is akin to love'
 Alarmed *at* 'Do not be alarmed at the sound—it is only the signal gun firing'
 Alienate *from* 'This act of ingratitude completely alienated me from him'
 Alight *on* (the ground a thing) 'The parachutist alighted on the roof of a hotel'
 Alight *at* (a place) 'He alighted from his horse at my gate'
 Alight *from* (a horse or carriage) 'He alighted from his horse at my gate'
 Alive *to* 'The Government is not alive to the danger it runs by defying public opinion'
 Allege *against* 'I have nothing to allege against his character'
 Allegiance *to* 'Every one owes allegiance to the government under which he lives'
 Alliance *with* 'The Mahatt is forming an alliance with the Nazim'
 Allot *to* 'Every man must be content with what has been allotted to him'
 Allude *to* 'Shakespeare alludes to this proverb in the *Tempest*.'
 Allured *by* 'He was not allured by their fair promises to join in their undertaking'
 Alteration *in* 'There has been no alteration in the rate of exchange for some days'
 Altercation *between* 'I was witness to a severe altercation between his employer and himself'
 Alternate *with* 'Rage and grief alternated with each other in his breast'
 Amalgamate *with* 'The Mission High School is about to be amalgamated with the Hindu College'
 Amazed *at* 'I was amazed at his impudence'
 Ambitious *of* 'I am not ambitious of such a distinction'
 Amount *to* 'Their number now amounted to over 10,000'
 Amused *at* 'I was greatly amused at his ignorance'
 Amuse *with* 'The children amused themselves with throwing stones at the frogs'
 Analogy *to* 'His case bears no analogy to mine'
 Analogy *with* 'A plant has some analogy with an animal'
 Analogy *between* 'There is great analogy between plants and animals'
 Angry *at* 'I was very angry at his behaviour'
 Angry *for* } 'I am very angry with you for disobeying me'
 Angry *with* }

- Inmate with 'My words inmate him with fresh hope'
- Animosity against 'He has long entertained a deep animosity against me'
- Animosity between 'There should never be animosity between relatives'
- Annex to 'Upper Burmah was annexed to the British dominions after the first Burmese war'
- Annoyed at (a circumstance) } 'He was greatly annoyed with me (at
Annoyed with (a person) } my absence)'
- Anoint with 'The natives of the island anoint their bodies with coconut oil'
- Answer to } 'He was called upon to answer to this charge (for his con
Answer for } duct) 'You must answer to me for the money'
- Answerable to } I will not hold myself answerable to you for his
Answerable for } conduct'
- Antidote to 'No antidote to cobra poison has yet been discovered by Europeans'
- Antidote against 'He takes this as an antidote against poison'
- Antipathy against 'We should avoid unreasonable antipathies against others'
- Antipathy to 'She has a great antipathy to the smell of the jessamine'
- Anxious about 'I am very anxious about the state of my health'
- Anxious for 'I have been long anxious for a change'
- Apart from 'Apart from the disgrace of being imprisoned, prison life is very monotonous and toilsome'
- Apology to 'He made a very humble apology to the teacher of his impudent behaviour'
- Appalled at 'He was appalled at the consequences of his own act'
- Apparent to 'This fact must be apparent to every thinking man'
- Appeal to against 'They appealed to the judge against the decision of the magistrate'
- Appended to 'A glossary has been appended to the book'
- Appertain to 'Things appertaining to this world should have little value in our eyes'
- Appetite for 'He has lost all appetite for food'
- Applicable to 'The rule is hardly applicable to the present case'
- Apply for } 'He has applied to the Collector for a place in his office'
Apply to }
- Appoint to 'He was appointed to the vacant post'
- Apprehensive of 'You have no reason to be apprehensive of the result'
- Apprise of 'I have duly apprised him of the change in my plans regard
 ing him'
- Approaches to 'The approaches to the house were carefully guarded'
- Appropriate to 'The speech was very appropriate to the occasion'
- Approve of 'I approve of your conduct whatever others may think of it'
- Aptitude for 'He has no aptitude for mathematics'
- Aim against 'We should aim ourselves in time against danger'
- Aim with 'He armed himself with a sword and a rifle'
- Arrive at (a place) } 'He arrived at his friend's house in
Arrive in (carriage, ship, &c) } hallock carriage'
- Ascribe to 'This play has been wrongly ascribed to Shakespeare'
- Ashamed of 'I hope you are ashamed of your foolish behaviour'
- Ask for 'Ask for whatever you require'
- Ask of 'I asked a favour of him'
- Aspire to 'He aspired to the chancellorship'
- Assent to 'I cannot assent to so silly a proposal'
- Assiduous in 'We should be assiduous in pursuing our studies'

- Assign to 'to assign dates to events'
 Assist with 'He has often assisted me with money and advice'
 Associate with 'It is dangerous to associate with persons of loose character'
 Assure of 'I assured him of his safety'
 Astonished at 'I am astonished at his ignorance'
 Atone to } 'He tried to atone to me for the injury he had done, by
 Atone for } offering me a sum of money'
 Attach to 'A large salary is attached to this appointment', 'He is greatly attached to his sister'
 Attain to 'It took him years to attain to his present position'
 Attend to 'I did not attend to what he said'
 Attend upon 'He had no servant to attend upon (on) him'
 Attendance on, upon 'He had ten servants in attendance on him' I had to dance attendance on the Collector for a fortnight
 Attentive to 'I hope you will be more attentive to your studies in future'
 Attracted to 'I was first attracted to the place by the sound of the water fall'
 Attribute to 'He attributes his failure to want of co operation on the part of his friends'
 Available for 'This ticket is available only for a single journey'
 Avail (oneself) of 'They did not avail themselves of the opportunity'
 Avenge on 'They avenged his death on the murderer'
 Averse to 'He is averse to anything like hard work'
 Aversion to 'He has a great aversion to hearing himself praised'
 Avert from 'The danger was averted from the country'
 Awake to 'They were fully awake to the danger they incurred'
 Awarded to } Three prizes were awarded to him for proficiency in as
 Awarded to } many subjects'
 Aware of 'I am not aware of having done anything to merit his displeasure'
 Banish from 'to banish a person from a country'
 Bare of 'The tree was quite bare of leaves'
 Barter for 'He bartered his honour for money'
 Barter with 'The sailors began to barter with the islanders for provisions'
 Bark at 'Do not be frightened by every dog that barks at you'
 Base upon 'The charge was based upon insufficient grounds'
 Bawl at 'Don't keep bawling at me like that speak lower'
 Bear with 'You must bear with my weakness'
 Bear upon 'The guns bore upon the centre of the enemy's line'
 Beat off 'They succeeded in beating off the enemy'
 Beat against 'The waves beat against the shore'
 Beckon to 'I beckoned to him to come, but he was too far to see it'
 Bedewed with 'Her cheeks were bedewed with tears'
 Beg for 'He had to beg for bread'
 Beg of 'He begged a favour of me'
 Beguile into } 'We must not be beguiled into mischief by plausible
 Beguiled by } representations'
 Believe in 'I do not believe in a God with hands and legs'
 Belong to 'The book does not belong to me'
 Beneficial to 'Mineral waters are beneficial to health'
 Bent on, upon 'He seems to be bent on doing mischief'
 Benumbed with 'His hands and feet were benumbed with cold'
 Bequeath to 'He bequeathed all his property to charitable institutions'
 Bereft of 'He seemed to be bereft of reason'
 Besieged by 'The city was besieged by the king'

- ✓ Besmeared *with* 'They besmeared him with tar'
- ✓ Bestow *on, upon* 'Empire is on us bestowed', 'He bestowed valuable presents on his visitors'
- Betray *into* 'He was betrayed into doing the deed'
- Betray *to* 'He betrayed me to my enemy'
- Beware *of* 'Beware of thieves'
- Bind *about* 'Bind them about thy neck'
- Bind *around* 'He bound the wreath around his brow'
- Bind *to* 'He bound himself to a watchmaker to learn the trade'
- ✓ Blame *for* 'We can hardly blame him for his conduct'
- Blended *with* 'The praise bestowed on him was slightly blended with censure'
- Blessed *with* 'The marriage was not blessed with any issue'
- Blind *to* 'He is blind to his own interests'
- Blush *at* 'He blushed deeply at the rebuke'
- Blush *for* 'He blushed for very shame'
- ✓ Boast *of* 'We should not boast of our own good actions'
- Border *upon, on* 'His conduct bordered on imperiuness'
- Borrow *from* 'He borrowed the amount from a Jew'
- Bound *by* 'I am bound to him by strong ties of gratitude', 'I am not bound by a promise which was forced from me'
- Bounded *on, by* 'The country is bounded on three sides by the sea'
- Brag *of* 'He is continually bragging of his high birth'
- Burdened *with* 'He was burdened with a heavy debt'
- Buried *in* 'He seemed buried in profound thought'
- Burn *with* 'I burn with indignation at his ingratitude'
- ✓ Burst *with* 'His heart was ready to burst with grief'
- Calculate *upon* 'He calculates upon making a large profit by the transaction'
- Call *at* 'I called at the office to see him'
- Call *for* 'This statement calls for a few remarks', 'I intend to call for an explanation of this difference in the account'
- Call *on, or upon* 'When do you intend to call on Mr. Brown?', 'I have called on him for an explanation'
- Capable *of* 'He is not capable of such an act of ingratitude'
- Carecity *for* 'He has a great carecity for restoring facts and dates'
- Care *for* 'I do not care for what he says'
- Care *of* 'The care of the property now devolves on me'
- Careful *in* 'Be careful in money matters'
- Careful *of* 'He is very careful of his money'
- Carry *off* 'He carried off every prize that was open to him'
- Carry *on* 'He is carrying on a trade in silks'
- Carry *out* 'He could not carry out his design'
- Carry *through* 'It was only his perseverance that carried him through'
- Cast *up* 'to cast up an account'
- Catch *at* 'A downing man will catch at a straw'
- ✓ Caution *against* 'I have cautioned him against the wiles of his pretended friend'
- Cautious *of* 'Be very cautious of what you say in the hearing of children'
- Celebrated *for* 'Agra is celebrated for the Taj Mahal'
- Certain *of* 'He was certain of success'
- Change *for* 'He changed his cap for a hat', 'There has been a change for the better'
- Change *from* 'The colour has changed from black to brown'
- Characterized *by* 'His speech was characterised by great clearness and force'

- Characteristic of 'His speech was quite characteristic of him'
- Charge to 'You may charge the expense to my account'
- Charge with 'to charge a person with an offence'
- Charitable to 'We should be charitable to the poor'
- Charmed with 'I was quite charmed with his manner'
- Cheat of 'He cheated me of a large amount of money'
- ✓ Clash against 'Their swords clashed against their armour'
- Clash with 'His supposition clashes with known facts' 'He allows no one's interests to clash with his own'
- Clasp to 'He clasped his child to his bosom'
- Cleanse from 'We should cleanse our hearts from all impurity'
- Clear from 'to clear land from trees', 'to clear goods from the custom house'
- Clear of 'The road has been cleared of all obstructions'
- Cleave to 'I shall cleave to you as to a brother'
- Cling to 'The ivy clings to the elm'
- Close (adj.) to 'His house is quite close to mine'
- Close (verb) with 'I closed it once with the offer'
- Clothed in 'She was clothed in silk'
- Clothed with 'to clothe one with authority or power'
- ✓ Coincide with 'His views do not coincide with mine'
- Coincidence between 'The coincidence between the two statements can not be accidental'
- Combat between 'We saw a combat between a lion and a tiger'
- Comment on 'I decline to comment on (to make any comment on) his behaviour'
- Common to 'This quality is common to all animals of the species'
- Communication between 'There is no direct communication between the two places either by land or water'
- ✓ Comprise to (to show resemblance) 'Anger may be compared to fire'
- ✓ Compare with (to show difference) 'to compare one fraction with another'
- Commit to 'The prisoner was committed to the Sessions'
- Compatible with 'That fact is not compatible with his innocence'
- Compensate for 'He compensated me for the trouble I took on his behalf'
- Compete with } 'I intend to compete with him for the prize'
- Compete for }
- Competent for 'He is not by any means competent for the post'
- Complain of 'He complains most bitterly of your conduct'
- Complain to }
- Complain against } 'to complain against a person to the magistrate'
- Compliance with 'I shall do so in compliance with your request'
- ✓ Comply with 'I hope you will comply with this request'
- Composed of 'Water is composed of oxygen and hydrogen'
- Comprehended in 'I now realize all that is comprehended in that small word home'
- Comprised in 'A great deal of matter is comprised in those two sentences'
- Conceal from 'I have not concealed the fact from you'
- Conceded to 'He conceded this point to his adversary'
- Concerned about 'I am very much concerned about his progress'
- Concerned for 'He was concerned for the safety of his friend'
- Concerned in 'All who were concerned in the affair were punished'
- Conclude from 'I do not know what to conclude from these facts'
- ✓ Concur with in 'I concur with him in the view he has taken of this question'

- Condemned to, for 'He was condemned to imprisonment for life'
 ✓ Condole with 'We should condole with our friends in their bereavements'
 Conducive to 'Highly seasoned food is not conducive to health'
 Confer on, upon 'You will confer a favour on (upon) me'
 Confer with 'I must confer with him about the matter'
 Confess to 'He confesses to some share in the crime'
 Confide in 'I wish I had some friend to confide in'
 Confide to 'I cannot confide so important a secret to a comparative stranger'
 Confidence in 'I can have (put) no confidence in a man who has once deceived me'
 Confined to 'He was confined to bed by illness'
 Confirmed in 'This event has confirmed him in his opinion'
 Conflict with 'They had a severe conflict with the enemy'
 Conformable to 'His opinion is not conformable to Scripture'
 Conformity between 'There is a conformity between physical and mental states'
 Conformity to 'He gave up the attempt in conformity to the advice of his friends'
 Conformity with 'He did this in conformity with ancient custom'
 Confound with 'We must not confound one word with another'
 Confront with 'They confronted him with his accusers'
 Confused with 'He felt quite confused with the sound'
 Congenial to 'That work is quite congenial to his tastes'
 ✓ Congratulate on, upon 'I congratulated him on (upon) his success'
 Conjoined with 'This blow, conjoined with his former losses, completely prostrated him'
 Connect to 'We connect one word to another to form a compound'
 Connect with 'to connect natural events with moral causes'
 ✓ Convinced 'The Government convinced at the violation of the rule'
 Conscious of 'He was not conscious of what was passing around him'
 Consecrate to 'In Christ's countries Sunday is consecrated to rest'
 Consent to 'I cannot consent to the arrangement'
 Consequent upon 'The changes consequent upon his resignation will be numerous'
 Consign to 'He was consigned to the custody of the judge'
 Consist of (=to be composed of) 'The body consists of bones, flesh, &c.'
 Consist in (=to be comprised in) 'Obedience consists in implicitly doing as we are told'
 Consistent with 'Such a liberal act is not consistent with his known miserliness'
 Console for 'It is impossible to console him for the loss of his son'
 ✓ Conspicuous for 'He was conspicuous for bravery'
 ✓ Conspire against 'They conspired against the Government'
 ✓ Contact with 'We should avoid contact with evil persons'
 ✓ Contemporary with 'Henry VIII was contemporary with the greatest monarchs of Europe'
 Contend with } 'They were contending with one another for the
 Contend for } prize'
 Contend against 'to contend against difficulties'
 Contented with 'We should be contented with what we have'
 Contiguous to 'In a street each house is generally contiguous to the next'
 Contrary to 'What he did was contrary to my express orders'
 Contrast between 'What a contrast there is between the two brothers'

- Contrast *with* 'He contrasted my conduct with his own'
 Contribute *to* 'He contributed largely to the Famine Fund'
 ✓ Contribute *towards* 'to contribute towards a person - support'
 Control *over* 'I have no control over his movements'
 Convenient *to* 'I hope the time appointed for the meeting will be convenient to you'
 Convenient *for* 'I am afraid it will not be convenient for me to attend the meeting'
 Converge *to* 'All these roads converge to the same point'
 Conversant *with* 'He is not conversant with German literature'
 Convert *to* 'to convert a person to Christianity'
 Convict *of* 'to convict a person of an offence'
 Convince *of* 'It is impossible to convince a fool of his folly'
 Convulsed *with* 'The whole audience were convulsed with laughter'
 Co-operate *with* 'I hope you will co-operate with me in this charitable work'
 Copc *with* 'He was unable to cope with the disadvantages of his position'
 Copy *from* 'His answer has been copied from his neighbour's'
 Correspond *with* 'Do you still correspond with him?'
 Correspondence *with* 'I have opened a correspondence with him'
 Coupled *with* 'The permission was coupled with a very disagreeable condition'
 Covered *with* 'He was covered with dust'
 Coveted *by* 'This is a distinction greatly coveted by soldiers'
 Cram *with* 'There is no use of cramming a boy's head with all kinds of knowledge'
 Craving *to* 'He cannot overcome his craving for opium'
 Crowded *with* 'The hall was crowded with visitors'
 Crowned *with* 'His efforts were crowned with success'
 Cry *for* 'The blood of the murdered cries for vengeance on the murderer'
 Cure *of* 'A new medicine is advertised for the cure of cholera'
 Dash *against* 'The bird dashed itself against the wall and dropped down dead'
 Dash *at* 'He dashed his shot at my head'
 Date *from* 'This custom dates from the reign of Henry II'
 Daub *with* 'They daubed the walls with mud'
 Daunted *at* 'He was daunted at the sight of so many perils'
 Daunted *by* 'He was not to be daunted by threats'
 Dazzle *with* 'His eyes were dazzled with the splendour of the apartment'
 Dead *to* 'He is dead to the world', 'He is dead to all sense of honour'
 Deaf *to* 'He is deaf to all advice'
 Deal *by* 'You have not dealt fairly by me in that affair'
 Deal *in* 'They deal in fire arms and ammunition'
 Deal *with* 'Deal fairly with every one'
 Dear *to* 'His welfare is dear to me'
 Debased *by* 'His principles have been debased by his bad associations'
 Decide *on, upon* 'I have not yet decided on (upon) the measures I intend to adopt'
 Decked *with* 'She was decked with jewels of immense value'
 Decorated *with* 'The room was decorated with leaves and flowers'
 Dedicate *to* 'This temple is dedicated to Ganesa'
 Deducible *from* 'This fact is deducible from that which has been already proved'
 Deduct *from* 'Ten rupees is to be deducted monthly from his pay'

- Defend *against* 'to defend a place against an enemy'
 Defend *from* 'to defend a person from danger'
 Defer *to* 'Let us defer the matter to a more convenient time'
 Deficient *in* 'He is very deficient in common sense'
 Deformed *in* 'deformed in person (in the legs, in his limbs, &c.)'
 Defrauded *of* 'He has been defrauded of his rightful share of the property'
 Degraded *from* 'The boy was degraded from his class', 'He was degraded from his high position'
 Deliberate *upon* 'They have met to deliberate upon the proposal'
 Delighted *with* 'He was delighted with all he saw'
 Deliver *from* 'Deliver me, O Lord, from mine enemies'
 Deluged *with* 'The place was deluged with water on account of the heavy rain'
 Deny *to* 'He denied to my being granted leave'
 Depart *from* 'They departed from the place the next morning'
 Depend *on, upon* 'My going depends on (upon) the weather'
 Dependent *on, upon* 'He is dependent on (upon) his uncle for support'
 Deprive *of* 'He has been unjustly deprived of his appointment'
 Derive *from* 'This word is derived from Greek'
 Derogatory *to* 'It is derogatory to your dignity to associate with a man of a such a character'
 Descant *on, upon* 'The speaker descanted upon the many virtues of the deceased'
 Descendant *of* } 'Arabs are supposed to be descendants of (to be
 Descended *from* } descended from) Ishmael, the son of Abraham'
 Desert *from* 'He deserted from the regiment on the march to Kandahar'
 Deserving *of* 'I hope to show by my conduct that I am deserving of your kindness'
 Design *for* 'This book is designed for Matriculation Students'
 Desirous *of* 'He is not desirous of any change at present'
 Desist *from* 'I advise you to desist from your attempt as you cannot possibly succeed'
 Despair *of* 'Even though you fail once, you should not despair of success'
 Despoil *of* 'He was despoiled of all he possessed'
 Destine *for* 'God has destined him for a far higher position than he now holds'
 Destine *to* 'destined to eternal suffering'
 Destitute *of* 'This man is quite destitute of common sense'
 Destructive *of* 'Such a course would be destructive of all discipline'
 Detach *from* 'They tried hard to detach him from his party'
 Deter *from* 'No threats will deter me from the attempt'
 Determine *on, upon* 'He seems to be determined on opposing me in every way'
 Detract *from* 'This fault detracts greatly from the value of the book'
 Deviate *from* 'Never deviate from the path of duty'
 Devoid *of* 'devoid of sense and motion'
 Devolve *on, upon* 'In the event of his death, these duties will devolve on (upon) me'
 Devote *to* 'He devotes half the day to study'
 Devoted *to* 'The servant was devoted to his master'
 Dexterous *at* 'He is dexterous at sleight of hand tricks'
 Dexterous *in* 'I cannot expect to become dexterous in this work in less than a year'

- Dictate to 'Few people like to be dictated to', 'Who are you to dictate to me in this matter?'
- Die by } He died of consumption (by the sword)
Die of }
- Differ from 'How does a rhombus differ from a square?'
- Differ in 'The two brothers differ greatly in disposition.'
- Differ with 'You must allow me to differ with you on that point.'
- Difference between 'What is the difference between a chestnut horse and a horse chestnut?'
- Different from 'His religious opinions are different from mine.'
- Difficulty in 'There is some difficulty in perceiving his meaning.'
- Diligent of 'He is very diligent of success.'
- Digress from 'The speaker digressing from his subject, the chairman called him to order.'
- Dilate upon 'He is fond of dilating on his friend's merits.'
- Dilatory in 'We should not be dilatory in performing our duties.'
- Diligent in 'He is very diligent in doing mischief.'
- Diluted with 'sulphuric acid diluted with water.'
- Diminution of 'The school has sustained great diminution of numbers.'
- Dine on 'It is not pleasant to dine daily on the same kind of food.'
- Disagree with 'I disagree with you on that subject.'
- Disagreeable to 'The task was disagreeable to him.'
- Disappointed at 'He was disappointed of the gain he expected.'
- Disappointed in 'I was disappointed in him, for I thought him honest, and he has proved a rogue.'
- Disapprove of 'I entirely disapprove of your conduct.'
- Disastrous to 'The fall in exchange has been disastrous to the success of his speculation.'
- Disburden of 'Disburden your conscience of what seems to oppress it so much.'
- Discharge from 'He has been discharged from my service.'
- Disconsolate at 'He is disconsolate at the loss of his brother.'
- Discontented at 'We should not be discontented at trifling inconveniences.'
- Discontented with 'He is utterly discontented with his salary.'
- Discriminate between 'We should discriminate carefully between what is right and what is simply expedient.'
- Disengage from 'I shall call again when you are disengaged from duty.'
- Disgusted at 'I was disgusted at his soporifics.'
- Disgusted with 'He is disgusted with the world.'
- Dislike to 'I have taken a great dislike to him since he betrayed his selfishness.'
- Disloyal to 'We should never be disloyal to our country.'
- Dismayed at 'I was dismayed at the reversion brought against me.'
- Dismissed from 'He was dismissed from his appointment for dishonesty.'
- Disobedient to 'A child who is disobedient to his parents is not likely to be respectful to his superiors.'
- Dispense with 'I have dispensed with his services.'
- Displeased with 'I hope you are not displeased with me.'
- Dispose of 'They disposed of the property by auction sale.'
- Disposed towards 'I must ascertain how he is disposed towards me before applying for the appointment.'
- Dispute with, on 'He disputed with the priest on theological points.'
- Disqualify for 'This fact disqualifies him for the appointment.'
- Disqualify from 'He has been disqualified from serving Government in any capacity.'

- Dissatisfied with 'Why should you be dissatisfied with me when I am trying to do my best?'
- Dissent from 'The Chief Justice dissented from the other judges.'
- Dissimilar to 'The two things are utterly dissimilar to each other.'
- Dissuade from 'All my advice could not dissuade him from the foolish attempt.'
- Distant from 'Nothing is more distant from my intentions than what you imagine.'
- Distasteful to 'The work was distasteful to him.'
- Distinct from 'The function of the jury is distinct from that of the judge.'
- Distinguish between, from 'Distinguish between the principle and the gerund', 'I could not distinguish friend from foe in the press.'
- Distracted with 'He seemed distracted with grief.'
- Distressed at 'I was greatly distressed at his loss.'
- Distustful of 'He is distrustful of his own children.'
- Disturbed by 'His sleep was disturbed by unpleasant dreams.'
- Dive into 'I dived deep into the mysteries of the art.'
- Diverge from 'His road diverged from mine at that point.'
- Divert from 'to divert a river from its natural course.'
- Divested of 'The magistrate was divested of all power.'
- Divide between among 'Divide this money between your two sons (among your children).'
- Dote (dote) on upon 'He dotes (dotes) upon his little grandson.'
- Domineer over 'We dislike people who try to domineer over us.'
- Doubtful of 'I am very doubtful of the accuracy of his statements.'
- Dream of 'He dare not dream of opposing me in this thing.'
- Drenched with 'He rode into the camp, drenched with gore.'
- Due to 'My success was due in great measure to his aid.'
- Dull of 'He is very dull of comprehension.'
- Dwell among 'He was dwelling among strangers.'
- Dwell at 'He dwelt at that place for three years.'
- Dwell in 'The ancient Britons lived in caves.'
- Dwell upon 'He dwelt upon the subject with considerable wisdom.'
- Eager for 'He is too eager for gain.'
- Eager in 'He is very eager in the pursuit of knowledge.'
- Earnest in 'He was very earnest in his purpose.'
- Eased of 'He was soon eased of his wealth by flatterers and rogues.'
- Lazy about 'You may make yourself quite easy about your health.'
- Fray of 'The matter was by no means easy of accomplishment.'
- Effective for 'This remedy is most effective for dysentery.'
- Eject from 'They have ejected me from my own house.'
- Elated at 'He was greatly elated at his success.'
- Elated with 'He was elated with joy.'
- Eligible for 'He is not eligible for the appointment as he has passed no examination.'
- Emanate from 'I know whom this report has emanated from.'
- Embark for 'He embarked for London yesterday week.'
- Embark in 'I have embarked in a very risky enterprise.'
- Embarrassed in 'He was greatly embarrassed in his manner (in circumstances).'
- Embellished with 'The hall was embellished with pictures.'
- Embitter against 'This circumstance has embittered him against me.'
- Emboldened by 'We were emboldened by this success to try another chance in the lottery.'
- Emerge from 'At last we emerged from the wood.'

- Eminent for 'a man eminent for virtue and piety'
 Employ in 'He employs all his time in making money'
 Employ upon 'He employs all his energies upon the undertaking'
 Empty of 'The room was soon empty of people'
 Enamoured of 'He is enamoured of books'
 Enamoured with 'He is enamoured with every pretty woman he meets'
 Enchanted with 'I was greatly enchanted with his conversation'
 Enclosed with 'The place was enclosed with a strong fence'
 Encompassed in 'He was encompassed by dangers on all sides'
 Encouraged by 'I felt much encouraged by his kind manner'
 Encroach on, upon 'The son has been encroaching on the land', 'You are encroaching upon my privileges'
 Encumbered with 'The ground was encumbered with heaps of stones'
 Endowed to 'His devotion endeared him to the king'
 Endow with 'God has endowed man with reason'
 Endued with 'men endued with worthy qualities'
 Enemy to 'He is an enemy to all change'
 Enfeebled by 'The poor man was greatly enfeebled by his illness'
 Engaged in, with, for 'He was engaged in trade (with his manager, for three hours)'
 Engrave on 'The inscription was engraved on a brass plate'
 Engrossed by 'His attention was completely engrossed by his money-making schemes'
 Enjoin on upon 'They enjoined the strictest secrecy on me'
 Enlarge upon 'He enlarged upon that subject'
 Enlist in 'I tried to enlist his sympathies in this cause'
 Enlivened by 'The company were enlivened by his jokes'
 Enraged at 'He was enraged at my presumption'
 Enraptured with 'He was enraptured with joy at the sight'
 Ensnared by 'I will not be ensnared by your wiles'
 Entail on, upon 'His stupidity has entailed much loss on me'
 Entangled in 'He soon became entangled in serious difficulties'
 Enter on, upon 'He has entered on (upon) a new course of life'
 Enter into 'They entered into an agreement'
 Entitle to 'His age entitles him to respect'
 Entrance into 'The only entrance into the house was closed'
 Enveloped in 'The ship was enveloped in a fog'
 Envious of 'We should not be envious of the prosperity of others'
 Equal to 'This amount is not equal to that', 'He is not equal to the task, (i.e., able to do it)'
 Equal with 'He suffered equally with the rest'
 Equidistant from 'This place is equidistant from Madras and Bombay'
 Equivalent for 'Give me an equivalent for this word'
 Equivalent to 'A dollar is equivalent to 1 2d and equal to 100 cents'
 Eri in 'He cried in his calculations'
 Escape from 'Ten prisoners escaped from the jail'
 Espouse to 'His daughter was espoused to a wealthy young man'
 Essential to 'Cleanliness is essential to a good style'
 Estimated for 'He is justly esteemed for his many virtues'
 Estimated at 'His income may be roughly estimated at £500 a year'
 Exact (verb) from 'Heavy fines were exacted from the villagers'
 Exact (adj) in 'He is not exact in payment'
 Excel in 'He excels all his fellows in cunning'
 Exception to 'This case is no exception to the rule'
 Exclude from 'He was excluded from the society of his friends'
 Exclusive of 'This price is exclusive of postage'

- Excuse (noun) *for* 'There is no excuse for his conduct'
 Excuse (verb) *for* 'Please excuse me for mentioning this to you'
 Excuse (verb) *from* 'He was excused from attending'
 Exempt *from* 'He has been exempted from taxation'
 Exhausted *with* 'exhausted with labour'
 Expect *from* 'What can you expect from a pig but a grunt?'
 Expel *from* 'The teacher expelled the boy from the class'
 Expert *in* 'He is expert in deceiving others'
 Expert *at* 'He is expert at discerning truth from falsehood'
 Expose *to* 'to expose a thing to the sun'
 Expostulate *with* *on* 'It is useless to expostulate with him on the injustice of his act'
 Expressive *of* 'His countenance was expressive of burning indignation'
 Expulsion *from* 'His offence was punished by expulsion from school'
 Extort *from* 'The confession was extorted from him'
 Extract *from* 'This paragraph is extracted from the Madras Mail'
 Extricate *from* 'I extricated him from his difficulty'
 Exult *in* 'Do not exult in mischief'
 Exult *over* 'We should not exult over a fallen foe'
 Fade *from* 'The incident had quite faded from his memory'
 Fail *in* 'He failed in his endeavours to convince me'
 Faint *with* 'He was quite faint with hunger'
 Faithless *to* 'He has proved faithless to the cause he embraced'
 Fall *among* 'He fell among thieves'
 Fall *from* 'fallen from his high estate'
 Fall *upon* 'His enemies fell upon him suddenly'
 Fall *under* 'These substances fall under another head altogether'
 Familiar *to* 'His face seems quite familiar to me'
 Familiar *with* 'He is perfectly familiar with Hindu mythology'
 Famous *for* 'This town is famous for its mineral springs'
 Fascinated *by* 'I was fascinated by his wit'
 Fascinated *with* 'He seems to be quite fascinated with her'
 Fatal *to* 'This is fatal to the success of your enterprise'
 Fatigued *with* 'I am fatigued with walking so far'
 Favourable *to* 'What he does is not favourable to my interests'
 Favoured *with* 'I have not been favoured with a reply to my letter'
 Fawn *on, upon* 'Favourites who fawn on you in prosperity will forsake you when troubles come'
 Feed *on, upon* 'The squirrel feeds on (upon) fruits'
 Feed *with* 'They fed him with broth'
 Fertile *in* 'His mind is fertile in plots and devices'
 Fight *against* 'We should not fight against our own country'
 Fight *for* 'He fought for his country'
 Fight *with* 'I am not strong enough to fight with you'
 Fill *with* 'He filled the vessel with water'
 Fire *at* 'I fired at the bird, but missed it'
 Fire *at* 'I fired at the sound, my genius spreads her wing'
 Fire *on* 'The police fired on the mob'
 Fired *with* 'He was fired with ambition'
 Fit *for* 'The building is not fit for a school house'
 Fix *on, upon* 'I have fixed on him as the best person for the business'
 Flee *from* 'He fled from the city in disguise', 'They fled from their enemies'
 Flee *to* 'They fled to the neighbouring city'
 Flinch *from* 'I will not flinch from the task painful as it is'

It *floats on, upon* 'Straws float upon the surface', 'Iron floats on mercury'
 I *flushed with* 'The soldiers were flushed with success', 'flushed with
 wine, with anger'

I *fly from* 'to fly from an enemy'

I *foam at* } He was foaming at the mouth with passion

I *foam with* }
 I *followed by* 'A storm must be followed by a calm'

I *fond of* 'He is very fond of children'

I *fondness for* 'His fondness for drink will be the cause of his ruin'

I *foreign to* 'That matter is quite foreign to the present subject'

I *forgetful of* 'We should not be forgetful of kindness received'

I *fortify with* 'They fortified the village with stockades'

I *founded on, upon* 'The complaint was not founded on facts'

I *fraught with* 'The undertaking is fraught with great danger'

I *free from* 'I am now free from my troubles'

I *frighted with* 'The ship was frightened with a valuable cargo'

I *friendly to* 'He is not friendly to my views'

I *frighten with* 'He tried to frighten us with his threats'

I *frown at* 'He frowns at me whenever we meet'

I *frown on* 'Fortune is just now frowning on me'

I *fruitful in* 'This measure was fruitful in results'

I *fugitive from* 'a fugitive from justice (from one's country)'

I *full of* 'That book is full of mistakes.'

I *furnish with* 'They furnished me with the required books'

I *gape at* 'He stood gaping at us in astonishment'

I *gaze at* 'He was fond of gazing at the stars'

I *gaze on, upon* 'I stood gazing on the sad scene'

I *gifted with* 'I am not gifted with fluency of speech'

I *glad at* 'He was very glad at my having passed'

I *glad of* 'I shall be glad of your help in this business'

I *glance at* 'I have just glanced at the letter I will read it over when I
 get home'

I *glance over* 'I was glancing over a book when he entered'

I *glitter with* 'His head dress glittered with diamonds'

I *glory in* 'He glories in the mischief he has done'

I *glow with* 'Their hearts glowed with patriotism'

I *good for* 'I do not know what it is good for'

I *gorge with* 'He gorged himself with the victuals placed before him'

I *grapple with* 'He grappled with his assailant'

I *grasp at* 'Alexander grasped at universal empire'

I *grateful to* }
 I *grateful for* } 'I am grateful to you for all your kindness to me'

I *grope for* 'He was groping for the door in the dark'

I *growl at* 'The tiger growled at his keeper'

I *gumble at* 'He is always gumbeling at what he calls his hard lot'

I *guarantee for* 'What guarantee can you give for your future good be-
 haviour?'

I *guard against* 'We must guard against being deceived by rogues'

I *guard from* 'God will guard us from all danger'

I *guilty of* 'He was found guilty of theft'

I *habituate to* 'He has habituated himself to hard work'

I *haggle about* } 'I have no time to haggle with you about the price just
 I *haggle with* } now'

I *happen at* } 'This accident happened to me at the house of one of my
 I *happen to* } friends'

I *hear of by from* 'I heard of his success (by post, from his brother),

- Heedless of 'He spoke out his mind regardless of consequences'
 Held at } 'A meeting was held by the members at the usual place'
 Held by }
 Held in 'He was held in great repute'
 Hide from 'Alfred hid himself from his enemies in a peasant's cottage'
 Hinder from 'What hindered you from going?'
 Hinge upon 'The whole matter hinges on this point'
 Hint at 'He hinted at the probability of a reconciliation between the two friends'
 Honour with 'They honoured him with a grand reception'
 Hope for 'I hope for better times'
 Hopeful of 'I am not very hopeful of success in this business'
 Hospitable to 'We should be hospitable to strangers'
 Hostile to 'I find him quite hostile to the project'
 Hover over 'A mist hovered over the spot'
 Hover about 'The enemy were hovering about the place'
 Hurl at 'He hurled a stone at my head'
 Hurtful to 'Stimulants are hurtful to the constitution'
 Ignorant of 'He is ignorant of the simplest truths of geometry'
 Illustrate by 'The book is illustrated by maps and plans'
 Imbibe from 'He has imbibed these doctrines from his teacher'
 Immersed in 'His whole body was immersed in the water', 'He was immersed in deep thought'
 Impaired by 'His sight has been impaired by hard reading'
 Impart to 'I cannot impart the secret to you just now'
 Impatient of 'I have never seen him more impatient of control'
 Implant in 'God has implanted a sense of right and wrong in all of us'
 Implicate in 'He was implicated in an attempt to defraud the bank'
 Impose upon 'We should not impose upon a person's good nature', 'I was imposed upon by his good looks'
 Impregnated with 'The soil is impregnated with sulphur'
 Impress on, upon 'I have impressed on (upon) him the necessity of doing so'
 Impress with 'He is impressed with the necessity of it'
 Impute to 'The worst motives were imputed to him'
 Inaccessible to 'The place is inaccessible to human beings', 'He is generally inaccessible to strangers'
 Inadequate to 'His salary was inadequate to his expenditure'
 Inapplicable to 'That remark is quite inapplicable to me'
 Incapable of 'That incapable of such conduct as you attribute to me'
 Incapacity for 'His incapacity for physical exertion renders him unfit for the post'
 Incensed against } 'He was greatly incensed against me (at my conduct)'
 Incensed at }
 Incentive to 'The prize was given as an incentive to further improvement'
 Incident to 'I will pay all expenses incidental to the accomplishment of the plan'
 Incite to 'He tried to incite the people to a revolt'
 Inclined to 'He is naturally inclined to stoutness'
 Include in 'This expense was not included in the original estimate'
 Incompatible with 'This fact is utterly incompatible with the supposition of his guilt'
 Inconsistent with 'His acts are inconsistent with his words'
 Inconsolable for 'He is inconsolable for the loss of his child'
 Inconvenient to 'I hope my visit will not be inconvenient to you'

- Incrust with* 'The copper vessel was incrust^d with salt'
Incumbent on, upon 'It is incumbent on (upon) you to provide for your children'
Indebted to 'I am greatly indebted to you for this suggestion'
Indefatigable in 'We should be indefatigable in doing good'
Independent of 'He is not yet independent of his father's support'
Indifferent to 'He is utterly indifferent to my welfare'
Indignant at 'He was indignant at the unjust treatment he had received'
Indispensable to 'A large capital is indispensable to the business'
Indulge with 'He indulged himself with a glass of wine'
Indulge in 'He indulges in drink'
Indulgent to 'He is too indulgent to his children'
Infect with 'intected with the plague'
Infer from 'They inferred from his silence that he was guilty'
Interior to 'His style is in interior to De Quincey's'
Infest with 'The place is infested with rats'
Inflamed with 'inflamed with wine (with anger)'
Inflate with 'The balloon was inflated with hydrogen gas'
Inflict on 'I will inflict severe punishment on you'
Influence over 'The Queen exercised no influence over Parliament'
Influence with 'I have some influence with him, and therefore hope to persuade him to grant your request'
Influence on 'The influence of the moon on madness is undoubted'
Inform of 'I have already informed you of my intentions'
Infuriated with 'He was infuriated with jealousy'
Infuse into 'He infused his own enthusiasm into the minds of his associates'
Inherent in 'This quality is inherent in human nature'
Inimical to 'His intentions are quite inimical to my interests'
Initiate into 'He was initiated into all the mysteries of the profession'
Injurious to 'This practice is most injurious to health'
Innocent of 'He was quite innocent of the offence with which he was charged'
Inoculate with 'to inoculate with the cow pox'
Inquire for 'Inquire at the Post Office for the missing letter'
Inquire into 'The Collector is inquiring into the truth of the complaint'
Inquire of 'Inquire of his servants when he is expected back'
Inscrutable to 'He is inscrutable to danger (i.e., cannot feel it)'
Inseparable from 'The history of civil language is inseparable from that of the people by whom it is spoken'
Insert in 'A new condition was inserted in the agreement'
Insinuate into 'He is trying to insinuate himself in his employer's good graces'
Insist on, upon 'I insist on your going at once'
Insolent to 'He was very insolent to his superior'
Inspire with 'This partial success inspired us with fresh hope'
Instil into 'I have been trying to instil a few good principles into his mind'
Instruct in 'He instructs me duly in mathematics'
Instrumental in 'He has been mainly instrumental in obtaining me the appointment'
Insubordinate to 'He was very insubordinate to his superior officer'
Insufficient for 'His income is quite insufficient for the maintenance of his large family.'
Insusceptible of 'He was utterly insusceptible of the tender passion'
Intelligible to 'I hope I have made the passage intelligible to you.'

Intent on, upon 'He seems intent on my ruin or disgrace'

Intercourse between 'There has not been much intercourse of late between the two families'

Intercourse with 'Intercourse with wicked persons must necessarily deprave our character'

Interested in 'He is greatly interested in my well being'

Interfere with 'So long as I do not interfere with you, you should let me do as I please'

Intermarry with 'Brahmins do not intermarry with persons of other castes'

Interpose between 'to interpose a body between the sun and the earth'

Intersperse among 'to intersperse shrubs among trees'

Intervene between 'He allows little time to intervene between the formation of his plans and their execution'

Interweave with 'cloth interwoven with gold threads', 'words interwoven with sighs'

Intimate with 'He talks as if he were intimate with the Collector and other officials'

Intimidate by 'He could not be intimidated by threats'

Intoxicate with 'He was intoxicated with wine (with opium, with joy)'

Intigue with 'He was detected in an intigue with the banker's son to rob the bank'

Introduce into 'Several changes are to be introduced into the administration'

Introduce to 'I have asked him to introduce me to the Collector'

Introduce upon 'I beg to be excused for introducing upon your leisure'

Introduce into ' (into your presence)'

Inundate with 'The whole place was inundated with water'

Inured to 'He is inured to every kind of hardship'

Invoigh against 'He invoighed against the Government in his speech'

Inveigle into 'I had I have been inveigled into a snare by his fine talk'

Invest with 'He has been invested with the powers of a magistrate of the first class'

Invest in 'He has invested his money in Bank of Madras shares'

Invisible to 'Many stars are invisible to the naked eye'

Invite to 'I have not been invited to the wedding'

Involve in 'He is involved in serious difficulties'

Irrelevant to 'That matter is irrelevant to the present subject, and there is no use of speaking of it'

Irespective of 'He administers justice irrespective of caste, creed, or colour'

Irritated against 'He seems to be greatly irritated against me (at my irritated at refusal)'

Triumph into 'The triumph of the Goths into Spain'

Jealous of 'He seems to be very jealous of his subordinates.'

Jeet at 'He jeets at scums who never felt a wound'

Jeet with 'We should not jeet with sacred things'

Join with 'Will you join with me in this undertaking?'

Join to 'Join the point A to the point B'

Judge of 'We should not judge harshly of what others do'

Kick at 'He kicked at the door and made it fly open'

Kick against 'It is hard to kick against the pricks'

Knock at 'I shall knock at your door early to-morrow morning'

Known by 'A tree is known by its fruit'

Known for 'He is well known for his benevolence'

Lack of 'There was no lack of applicants for the place'

- Laden with 'A ship laden with rice'
 Lame of 'He is lame of his right leg'
 Laugh at for 'They laughed at him for his folly'
 Lavish of 'Do not be too lavish of your money (of your praise)'
 Lay in 'The teacher is very lay in discipline'
 Learn against 'It is unsafe to learn against that old wall'
 Lean on 'I was so weak that I had to lean on him in walking to the hospital'
 Lean to 'The judge seemed to lean to the plaintiff's side'
 Leaning towards 'He has a slight leaning towards Christianity'
 Leisure for 'I have had no leisure for correspondence for some time'
 Level at 'He levelled his gun at his antagonist'
 Level with 'The house was levelled with the ground'
 Level to 'He cannot level his teaching to the capacity of little boys'
 Liable for 'I shall hold you liable for any loss that I may sustain by embarking in this enterprise'
 Liable to 'Any one violating this rule will be liable to a month's imprisonment'
 Liberate from 'The accused man has been liberated from custody'
 Light on, upon 'Here I lighted on an old acquaintance'
 Liken to 'What shall I liken your conduct to?'
 Limited in 'He is very limited in his means just now'
 Limited to 'His practice is limited to petty cases'
 Limited by 'His liberality is only limited by his means'
 Listen for 'I was anxiously listening for the sound of your voice'
 Listen to 'I cannot listen to your proposal till you make it more reasonable'
 Live at 'He lives at Egmore'
 Live by 'I have to live by the labour of my own hands'
 Live in 'He is living in a very small house (in the country, in Calcutta)'
 Live on 'He lives entirely on vegetable food'
 Live with 'It is hard to live with a quarrelsome wife'
 Loaded with. They loaded the ass with the baggage, 'They loaded him with curses'
 Long after 'I have longed after thy precepts O Lord'
 Long for 'The hungry man longs for food'
 Look on 'Look on this picture, and on that'
 Look for 'I look for the lost key'
 Look after 'The shepherd looks after his sheep'
 Look at 'I look at my eye for a moment and see what ails it'
 Lord of 'Lord of himself, that heritage of woe'
 Made of 'The ring is made of gold'
 Mark with 'You will find all the books marked with my initials'
 Martyr for } 'He died a martyr for Christianity (to opium)'
 Martyr to }
 Marvel at 'I cannot but marvel at the extent of his knowledge'
 Material to 'Your aid is material to the success of the undertaking'
 Meddle with } 'You should not meddle with other people's affairs (in this matter)'
 Meddle in }
 Meditate upon 'We should duly spend some time in meditating upon the goodness of God'
 Meet with 'I did not expect to meet with any opposition from you'
 Memorable for 'The year 1877 is memorable for a severe famine'
 Menace with 'He was menaced with the loss of his appointment'
 Merciful to 'The righteous man is merciful to his beast'
 Mindful of 'Be mindful of the terms of our agreement'

- Mingle in 'He rarely mingles in society'
 Mistrustful of 'He is very mistrustful of my new partner'
 Mitigation of 'He pleaded ignorance in mitigation of his offence.'
 Mix among 'He mixed freely among the common people'
 Mix with 'to mix water with wine'
 Moved at 'He seemed greatly moved at the news'
 Moved by 'He can be moved neither by entreaties nor by threats'
 Moved with 'He was evidently moved with a feeling of pity'
 Murmur against } 'We must not murmur against God (at our lot)'
 Murmur at
 Natural to 'It seems natural to him to tell lies'
 Necessary for 'There is no necessity for our interference in this business'
 Need of 'There is great need of caution in dealing with him'
 Needful for 'Your co-operation is needful for my success'
 Neglectful of 'He has been very neglectful of my interests'
 Negligent in 'I am not at all negligent in doing my duty'
 Nod to 'He nodded to me as he passed me in the crowd'
 Notable for 'This year is notable for a terrible cyclone in Mauritius'
 Notorious for 'This village is notorious for thieves'
 Nourish with 'They had to nourish him with milk and ice'
 Obedient to 'Be obedient to those in authority over you'
 Object to 'If you object to my going, you must give me your reasons'
 Obligatory on 'I consider it obligatory on my part to help him in his trouble'
 Obligated to, for 'I am much obliged to you for your kind offer'
 Oblivious of 'He seemed oblivious of what was passing around him'
 Obnoxious to 'My presence is obnoxious to him'
 Observance of 'The strict observance of the Sabbath'
 Obstacle to 'There is not a single obstacle to his going on as he has begun'
 Obstinate in 'He is obstinate in his determination'
 Obtrude on, upon 'I do not wish to obtrude myself (my presence, my advice) on you'
 Occupied by 'The house is occupied by Mohammedans'
 Occupied with 'I am just now occupied with translating some books'
 Occupied in 'All my leisure time has been occupied in doing this work'
 Occur to 'It did not occur to me to ask him this question'
 Odious to 'His very presence is odious to me'
 Offend against 'to offend against a rule (against a custom)'
 Officiate for 'He is officiating for the Collector just now'
 Offensive to 'The smell was very offensive to the nose'
 Offer to 'They offered the appointment to his son'
 Operate against 'This will operate against my interests'
 Operate on, upon 'The medicine has just begun to operate on him'
 Opposed to 'He is utterly opposed to any change in the system'
 Opposite to 'My house is just opposite to his'
 Oppressed by } 'He was greatly oppressed by his enemies (with
 Oppressed with } grief'
 Originate in 'The fight originated in a foolish quarrel'
 Originate with 'The quarrel originated with the discovery of his having told a lie against the other'
 Overjoyed at 'He was overjoyed at my success'
 Overpowered with 'He was overpowered with grief'
 Overwhelmed with 'He is overwhelmed with troubles'
 Pant for, after 'The hart pants for (after) cooling streams'
 Parallel to 'AB is parallel to CD'

- Part *with* 'I will not part with this book for its weight in gold'
- Partake of 'They partook of some refreshments which were placed before them'
- Partiality *for* 'a partiality for poetry'
- Partiality *to* 'He shows great partiality to subordinates of his own caste'
- Particular *in* 'He is very particular in his dress'
- Particular *on* 'He is not particular on this point'
- Patient *in* 'patient in bearing misfortune'
- Patient *under* 'patient under injustice or tyranny'
- Pave *with* 'The floor is paved with granite'
- Peculiar *to* 'That custom is peculiar to the Chinese'
- Peep *at, into* 'I had a peep at the new principal' 'a peep into the future'
- Penetrate *into* 'The traveller penetrated in the depths of the forest'
- Perceptible *to* 'The difference is not quite perceptible to an unpractised eye'
- Perfect *in* 'The statue is perfect in every detail'
- Perish *by* 'Perish by the sword (by famine, by pestilence)'
- Perish *with* 'They were perishing with hunger'
- Perplexed *at* 'I was quite perplexed at this new turn of affairs'
- Persvere *in* 'Pisevere in your present course and you are sure to succeed'
- Persist *in* 'He persists in annoying his master'
- Pertain *to* 'That duty pertains to me not to you'
- Pestered *with* 'The Collector was pestered with anonymous letters about the appointment he had made'
- Petrified *with* 'He seemed petrified with horror'
- Pierce *through* 'The sun's rays could hardly pierce through the clouds of smoke'
- Pierce *with* 'He fell pierced with a hundred wounds'
- Pine *for* 'He is pining for his children who are at a boarding school'
- Piqued *at* 'He was piqued at my interference in the matter'
- Pitch *upon* 'I cannot pitch upon a better person than yourself for this duty'
- Plant *with* 'He planted the ground with cocoanut trees'
- Play *at* 'The boys were playing at ducks and drakes'
- Play *on* 'The engines played on the burning house'
- Play *with* 'He kept playing with his watch guard while he was speaking'
- Plunge *into* 'to plunge the hand into boiling water'
- Ponder *over* 'I must ponder over this before I decide'
- Popular *with* 'He was by no means popular with the natives'
- Possessed *of* 'He is possessed of strong common sense'
- Possessed *with* 'He seemed possessed with an evil spirit'
- Power *over* 'I have no power over him that I should control his actions'
- Praise *for* 'They praised him for his disinterestedness'
- Pray *for* 'They prayed for his success'
- Pray *to* 'He prayed to God to help him in his trouble'
- Preceded *by* 'The lecture was preceded by an introductory speech from the Chairman'
- Precious *to* 'My time is very precious to me just now'
- Precipitate *in* 'Be not precipitate in what you do'
- Precipitate *into* 'They precipitated the unfortunate man into the well'
- Preclude *from* 'My engagements will preclude me from being present at the meeting'
- Precminent *for* 'He was preminent for his piety and goodness.'

- Prefer to 'I prefer death to dishonour'
 Preferable to 'Death is preferable to dishonour'
 Preference to 'I take this book in preference to the other'
 Prefix to 'He is not authorised to prefix that title to his name'
 Pregnant with 'His words were pregnant with meaning'
 Prejudice against 'He has a great prejudice against Brahmans'
 Prejudicial to 'This circumstance will prove prejudicial to his case'
 Preliminary to 'This lecture was preliminary to a systematic course of lectures on the same subject'
 Prepare against 'We should prepare against dangers in time'
 Prepare for 'I am preparing for a trip to Bangalore'
 Preserve from 'May God preserve you from all harm'
 Preside over 'The Governor presides over the Council'
 Preside at 'He was asked to preside at the meeting'
 Press upon 'I was trying to press this fact upon his attention'
 Pretend to 'I do not pretend to any knowledge of astronomy'
 Pretect for 'This is only a pretext for depriving me of my appointment'
 Presume on 'You must not presume on his good nature'
 Prevail against 'He could not prevail against such odds'
 Prevail on, upon 'I have prevailed on him to come to the meeting'
 Prevail over 'Justice must prevail in the end over injustice'
 Prevail among 'The custom prevails among the Rajputs'
 Prevent from 'He prevented me from going'
 Previous to 'We have no record of any event in Indian history previous to the invasion of Darius'
 Prey on, upon 'Grief at his friend's death has been preying on (upon) his mind'
 Proceed with 'Unforeseen events prevent my proceeding with this course of lectures'
 Productive of 'The measure has been productive of much evil to the country'
 Proficient in 'He is a proficient in the art of deceiving'
 Profit by 'He has not profited by his previous experience'
 Profitable to 'The undertaking will not be very profitable to me'
 Progress in 'Let me see whether you have made any progress in this subject'
 Project from 'A beam was projecting from the roof'
 Prompt in 'Be prompt in your decision in this matter'
 Prompted by 'He was prompted by the most honourable motives in acting as he did'
 Proof of 'There is no proof of his having done so'
 Proper for 'It was not proper for you to make such a remark in your superior's presence'
 Propitious to 'The season has not been very propitious to planters'
 Protect from } 'I will protect you from every danger and against every
 Protect against } enemy'
 Protest against 'He protested against the injustice of the decision'
 Proud of 'I am proud of my pupil'
 Provide against 'I have fully provided against such a danger'
 Provide for 'I will provide for the child's education'
 Provided with 'Rome was well provided with corn'
 Provoke to 'Why do you try to provoke me to a quarrel?'
 Provoke at 'He was greatly provoked at my question'
 Proximity to 'He remained in close proximity to the prisoner during the trial'
 Pay into 'You have no business to pay into my affairs'

- Puffed up with 'He was puffed up with vanity on account of the distinction conferred on him'
- Punish by } 'He was punished for his fault by being dismissed from
Punish for } his situation'
- Punish with 'Such a crime should be punished at the least with transportation'
- Pursuance of } 'I have come here in pursuance of (pursuant to) the
Pursuant to } instructions given me by you'
- Put up with 'I cannot put up with your insolence any longer'
- Puzzled at 'He was completely puzzled at my question'
- Qualified for 'He is not qualified for employment in the judicial department'
- Quarrel between 'There has been a quarrel between the two friends'
- Quarrel with 'He has had a quarrel with his friend'
- Questioned on, upon 'He does not like being questioned on the subject'
- Quote from 'These lines are quoted from Milton'
- Rail against 'We should not rail against the powers that be'
- Rail at 'He railed at me like a Billingsgate fishwife'
- Ready for 'The house is not ready for your occupancy'
- Recede from 'The shore slowly receded from their view'
- Reckless of 'He was utterly reckless of his own safety'
- Reckon on, upon 'It is unsafe to reckon on his aid'
- Reclaim from 'She has been reclaimed from her vices'
- Recline against 'to recline against a post—a wall'
- Recline on 'to recline on a sofa'
- Recoil from 'He recoiled with horror from the sight'
- Recoil upon 'The blow has recoiled on his own head'
- Reconcile to 'He has not yet been reconciled to his friend'
- Reconcile with 'We cannot reconcile this circumstance with his assumed guilt'
- Recover from 'He has just recovered from his illness'
- Recur to 'There is no use of recurring continually to that subject'
- Redeem from 'I am trying to redeem him from his vicious habits'
- Redolent of 'gales redolent of joy and youth'
- Reduce to 'He was reduced to poverty by his extravagance'
- Reduce under 'The country was soon reduced under the Roman yoke'
- Reference to 'I have made a reference to the Collector on the subject'
- Refer to 'I would refer you to Webster's Dictionary for the information you seek'
- Reflect on, upon 'Reflect in the night on what you have done during the day'
- Refrain from 'I could not refrain from expressing my displeasure'
- Refresh with 'Like a giant refreshed with wine'
- Regard for 'Have you no regard for your own interests?', 'Who can have any regard for a man?'
- Regardful of 'I have been regardful of your interests throughout the affair'
- Regardless of 'You should not be so regardless of your own safety'
- Rejoice at 'We should not rejoice at another's misfortune'
- Relapse into 'He has relapsed into his former melancholy mood'
- Relation between 'There can be no relation between truth and falsehood, except that of opposition.'
- Relation to 'He spoke for an hour in relation to his own affairs'
- Release from 'He was released from confinement'
- Relevant to 'The fact is very relevant to the point in dispute'
- Reliance on 'I can place no reliance on his promises'

- Relieve from 'He relieved me from debt'
 Relish for 'He has no relish for novel reading'
 Rely on, upon 'I rely on your recommendation for getting the appointment'
 Remarkable for 'The place is remarkable for its wild scenery'
 Remedy for 'He has discovered a remedy for the disease'
 Remind of 'I reminded him of the promise he had made'
 Remit to 'Large sums of money are remitted weekly from India to England'
 ✓ Remonstrate with 'I remonstrated with my friend about his conduct'
 Remorse for 'He died from the effects of remorse for his wicked act'
 Remote from 'Remote from towns he ran his godly race'
 Remove from } 'The school is to be removed from the present building
 Remove to } to a more commodious one on the beach'
 Repent of 'He repents of the offence he has committed'
 Repine at 'What is the use of repining at our lot?'
 Replenish with 'He had to replenish his purse several times with borrowed money'
 Replete with 'The narrative is replete with interest'
 Reply to 'I have asked him to reply at once to my letter'
 Reproach with 'I reproached him with his ungrateful conduct'
 ✓ Repugnance to 'He has a great repugnance to foreigners'
 Requisite for 'A good deal of money will be requisite for carrying out the plan'
 Rescue from 'to rescue a person from drowning'
 Resemblance to 'He bears no resemblance to his father'
 Resemblance between 'There is no resemblance between the father and the son'
 Resign to 'I resigned myself to my fate'
 Resolve on, upon 'Government have resolved on repealing the Act'
 Resort to 'Poverty does not justify our resorting to dishonesty'
 Resound with 'The town resounded with shouts of joy'
 Respect for 'He has no respect for old age'
 Respite from 'a short respite from work'
 Resplendent with 'The room was resplendent with lights'
 Respond to 'I have much pleasure in responding to the invitation given me by this meeting to take the chair'
 Responsible for } 'I cannot hold myself responsible to you for his
 Responsible to } conduct'
 Rest on, upon 'The story rests on a foundation of fact'
 Restore to 'He was restored to all his titles and dignities'
 Restrain from 'He must be restrained from doing further mischief'
 Restricted to 'I have restricted him to the expenditure of a rupee a day'
 Restricted within 'His powers are restricted within very narrow limits'
 Result from 'Much hardship will result from this measure'
 Retentive of 'My memory is not very retentive of dates'
 Retire from 'He intends retiring from the service next year'
 Retire into 'He retired into his private room'
 Retreat from 'They retreated in confusion from the enemy'
 Revert to 'I will revert to this circumstance at the close of the lecture'
 Revolt from 'The nobles revolted from their allegiance'
 Revolve on 'The truth revolves round its axis once in twenty four hours'
 Rid of 'I am glad I am rid of him at last'
 Rob of 'They robbed him of all the money he had'
 Rouse from 'I roused him from sleep'

- Rule over 'The Queen of England rules over many countries'
 Run into 'Do not needlessly run into danger'
 Run to 'He ran to the door as soon as he heard my knock'
 Rush against 'They rushed against the enemy's line'
 Rush upon 'The robbers rushed upon the guards and overpowered them'
 Rush into 'He rushed into the midst of the crowd'
 Sacred to 'The temple is sacred to God'
 Safe from 'I will see you safe from danger'
 Sail for 'The steamer sails direct for London'
 sanguine in 'He was very sanguine in his expectations of help'
 sanguine of 'He is quite sanguine of success'
 Satisfactory to 'Your conduct is not satisfactory to me'
 Satisfied with 'He is quite satisfied with what he has got'
 Save from 'Save me from my friends I can defend myself against my enemies'
 Scoff at 'Do not scoff at religious things'
 Scope for 'The appointment affords no scope for his great abilities'
 Scowl at 'He scowled at me with rage'
 Scramble for 'The audience were scrambling for seats'
 Screen from 'The house is screened from view by the trees'
 Search for 'Search for the book that you have mislaid'
 Secede from 'He has seceded from the faith of his ancestors'
 Seclude from 'He secluded himself from all company'
 Second to 'He is second to none in ability'
 Secure from 'He thought himself secure from observation'
 Seduce from 'He cannot be seduced from the path of virtue'
 Seized upon 'His creditors seized upon all the money he had in the bank'
 Seized with 'He was seized with a fit of apoplexy'
 Select from 'passages selected from the English poets'
 Send for 'Send for me whenever you want my help'
 Send to 'I have sent to him to know what he has to say about it'
 Sensible of 'I am quite sensible of the value of your opinion'
 Sensitive to 'He is very sensitive to criticism'
 Separate from 'Who shall separate me from you?'
 Serviceable to 'This knowledge proved very serviceable to him in after life'
 Set on 'The sun set on a bloody field'
 Shake with 'He literally shook with fear'
 Share of 'I must have my share of the profits'
 Share with 'Will you share your dinner with me?'
 Shelter from 'The garden is well sheltered from the wind'
 Shield from 'May God shield thee from all harm'
 Shine upon 'The sun shone upon a desolate scene'
 Shiver with 'They were shivering with the cold'
 Shot at 'He shot at a bird on the wing'
 Short of 'They are very short of funds just now'
 Shrink from 'He shrank from the disagreeable task'
 Shroud in 'The affair is still shrouded in mystery'
 Shudder at 'I shuddered at his ghastly appearance'
 Sick of 'I am sick of giving him advice'
 Side with 'He sided with my enemy in the dispute'
 Sigh for 'He is continually sighing for the comforts of home'
 Similar to 'This construction is similar to that'
 Sincere in 'He does not seem sincere in his promises of amendment'

- Sink into 'He soon sank into utter destitution'
 Sink beneath 'The wreck soon sank beneath the wave'
 Sink under 'I am afraid I shall sink under this new affliction'
 Sit on, upon, in 'He sat on a sofa', 'He was sat upon by his superior', 'Sit in the seat of the scornful'
 Situated on 'Calcutta is situated on the Hooghly'
 Skilful in 'He is not skilful in his profession'
 Skilful at 'He is very skilful at figures'
 ✓ Slave to 'No man should be a slave to his passions'
 Smile at 'I could not help smiling at his simplicity'
 Smile on, upon 'Fortune smiled on him in all his undertakings'
 Snatch at 'He snatched at the rope thrown out to him'
 Snatch from 'The good are early snatched away from us'
 Sneer at 'He sneered at what he thought my foolishness'
 Soiled with 'His coat was soiled with grease'
 Solicitous of 'I am very solicitous of having your good opinion'
 Sorry for 'I hope you are sorry for your rude behaviour'
 Spring of 'He is very spring of his purse'
 Sparkle with 'The crown sparkled with jewels'
 Specific for 'A specific for dysentery'
 Sport with 'He sports with his own life'
 Spotted with 'The colour was red spotted with yellow'
 Spread with 'The floor was spread with carpets'
 Stain with 'His life was stained with many crimes'
 Stamped upon 'He has roguery stamped on his face'
 Stamped with 'The book is stamped with my seal'
 Stare at 'Do not stare at me in that idiotic way'
 Start for 'He has started for home'
 Start from 'He started from his chair when I entered'
 Start at 'He started at my sudden appearance'
 ✓ Startled from, by 'I was startled from sleep by a loud sound'
 Stick to 'Stick to the business you have on hand'
 Stifle with 'They were nearly stifled with the smoke'
 ✓ Stir up 'He is trying to stir up the quarrel again'
 Strew with 'The floor was strewn with rushes'
 Strip of 'The robbers stripped him of even his clothes'
 ✓ Stripped to 'He was stripped to his shirt'
 ✓ Strive against 'I am not powerful enough to strive against you'
 Strive for 'They are both striving for the prize'
 Strive with 'They are striving with one another who shall be first'
 Struck with 'He was struck with astonishment at what he saw'
 Struggle against 'He could struggle no longer against such odds'
 Struggle with } I have been struggling with him for this very thing'
 Struggle for }
 Studded with 'The scabbard was studded with gems'
 Studious of 'He is not studious of his own ease'
 Stuff with 'The bed was stuffed with straw'
 Stumble upon 'I stumbled accidentally on this fact'
 Submerge under 'The island was almost submerged under the sea'
 Submit to 'I will not submit to your authority'
 Subordinate to 'This officer is subordinate to the Collector'
 Subscribe to 'He subscribed a large sum to the Famine Fund.'
 Subsequent to 'A period long subsequent to the foundation of Rome'
 Subservient to 'Their ambition was entirely subservient to their desire of making converts'
 Subsist upon 'It is possible to subsist entirely on milk.'

- Substitute for 'This stuff is a very good substitute for leather in binding.'
 Subtract from 'Subtract ten from twenty five.'
 Subversive of 'Such acts, if permitted, would be subversive of all authority.'
 Succeed in 'He succeeded at last in convincing me of the fact.'
 Succeed to 'He has succeeded to his uncle's property.'
 Succumb to 'He succumbed to the fever yesterday.'
 Suffer for 'I do not see why I should suffer for his negligence.'
 Sufficient for 'Sufficient for the day is the evil thereof.'
 Suffocate with 'He was nearly suffocated with the smoke and dust.'
 Suffused with 'Her face was suffused with blushes.'
 Suggest to 'I suggest this to you as the probable cause.'
 Suit to 'Suit the action to the word the word to the action.'
 Suit with 'He is well suited with this place.'
 Suitable for 'The clock was not suitable for presentation.'
 Suitable to 'Language suitable to the subject.'
 Supplement to 'He is writing a supplement to the book.'
 Supplicate for 'He supplicated the judge in vain for mercy.'
 Supply with 'to supply the poor with bread.'
 Supplied by 'The tank is supplied by four sluices.'
 Supported by 'The roof was supported by granite columns.'
 Supremacy over 'The Pope enjoys no supremacy over the Church of England.'
 Sure of 'Do not be too sure of his helping you.'
 Surety for 'It is always unsafe to become surety for another.'
 Surfeited with 'They surfeited him with rich food.'
 Surprised at 'I am agreeably surprised at the change.'
 Surrender to 'The General was obliged to surrender to the enemy.'
 Surrounded by 'He was surrounded by dangers.'
 Surrounded with 'The castle was surrounded with a moat.'
 Susceptible of 'He is not susceptible of any refined feeling.'
 Suspended to 'The lamp was suspended to a hook in the ceiling.'
 Suspicious of 'I am rather suspicious of his motive in inviting me.'
 Swarm with 'The town swarms with beggars.'
 Sway over 'Queen Victoria holds sway over an empire on which the sun never sets.'
 Swear at 'He swore at me like a trooper because I was late.'
 Swerve from 'To swerve from the path of duty.'
 Sympathize with, in 'I sympathize heartily with you in your loss.'
 Sympathy for 'He showed much sympathy for me in my troubles.'
 Sympathy with 'I have no sympathy with such sentiments.'
 Synonymous with 'Fancy is not synonymous with imagination.'
 Tainted with 'His motives were tainted with gross selfishness.'
 Talk about 'Let us talk about the plan before the meeting begins.'
 Talk of 'You do not know what you are talking of.'
 Tally with 'These accounts do not tally with one another.'
 Tamper with 'The police had been tampering with the witnesses.'
 Taste of 'I have recently had a taste of his severity.'
 Taste for 'He has no taste for mathematics.'
 Tax with 'I taxed him with his ungrateful behaviour.'
 Teem with 'The tank teems with fish.'
 Temperate in 'He was very temperate in his observations.'
 Tempt with 'They tempted the officer with a heavy bribe.'
 Tenacious of 'Cats are wonderfully tenacious of life.'
 Tend to 'Our petitions, if granted might tend to our destruction.'
 Thankful for 'We often have to be thankful for small mercies,

- Think of 'I cannot think of a proper person for the post just now'
 Think on 'Think on this plan and let me know your opinion to-morrow.'
 Thrust after 'to thrust after knowledge'
 Thrust for 'The people thrust their feet for water'
 Threaten with 'They threatened him with severe punishment'
 Throw at 'He threw a stone at the dog'
 Throw on 'He is trying to throw the blame on me'
 Tinged with 'blue slightly tinged with red'
 Tired of 'I am tired of writing letters without getting a reply'
 Tired with 'He was quite tired with the wall'
 Tormented by 'The horse was tormented by flies'
 Tormented with 'He tormented me with petty annoyances'
 Torn by 'The country was torn by civil dissensions'
 Touch at 'This steamer does not touch at Vizagapatam'
 Trade with 'The British trade with every nation in the world'
 Trained to 'He has been well trained to the use of the sword'
 Trample upon 'Michael trampling on the serpent'
 Transfer to 'He has been transferred to the Malabar Coast'
 Transmit to 'This story has been transmitted from generation to generation'
 Transported to 'transported to the Andamans'
 Transported with 'transported with rage (—with joy)'
 Tied upon 'He tied on my toes in coming out of the room'
 Treat of 'This book treats of a number of subjects'
 Treatise on 'a treatise on astronomy'
 Trespass on 'I will not trespass long on your time'
 Trifle with 'He is only trifling with my feelings'
 Triumph over 'Good must eventually triumph over evil'
 Troubled with 'He is troubled with a pain in his side'
 True to 'He was true to his charge'
 Trust in 'Trust in the Lord and do good'
 Tyrannize over 'The headmaster was trying to tyrannize over his assistants'
 Unaccustomed to 'He is unaccustomed to public speaking'
 Unacquainted with 'I am not altogether unacquainted with the facts of the case'
 Unaware of 'I was quite unaware of this till you told me'
 Unbecoming to 'The dress was by no means unbecoming to her'
 Unconouth in 'He is very unconouth in his manners'
 Understanding among 'There is an understanding among the members to refrain from opposing one another in this matter'
 Understanding between 'There seems to have been a secret understanding between the plaintiff and the defendant'
 Uneasy about 'He is very uneasy about his child's health'
 Unequal to 'He proved unequal to the task'
 Unfit for 'The vegetables were unfit for human consumption'
 Unheard of 'Such a thing has been unheard of in our days'
 Urge on, upon 'I urged on him the desirability of taking this step'
 Useful for } 'I find the book very useful to me for purposes of reference'
 Useful to }
 Van of 'He was very vain of his skill in playing on the piano'
 Value at 'The house has been valued at 5,000 Rs.'
 Vanish from 'The spectre vanished from our view before we had realised its presence'
 Variance with 'He is continually at variance with his brothers'
 Vested in 'No such power has been vested in the magistrate by the Government'

- Vexed at 'He was greatly vexed at my interference'
 Victim to 'He fell a victim to the treachery of his pretended friend.'
 Vice with 'They vied with one another who should pay me the most attention'
 Violation of 'This is done in direct violation of the rule on the subject.'
 Void of 'His arguments were utterly void of reason'
 Vote for 'The majority voted for the measure'
 Wait for 'I am waiting for his arrival to make my own preparations to start'
 Wait at 'Wait for me at the station'
 Wait on, upon 'A deputat on of the Commissioners waited on the Governor'
 Want of 'His action betrays utter want of discretion'
 Warn against 'I have already warned you against his designs'
 Warn of 'I warned him of the risk he was running'
 Weary in 'Be not weary in well-doing'
 Weary of 'He was weary of study'
 Wedded to 'He is wedded to his prejudices'
 Weep at 'They wept at the news'
 Weep for 'He wept for the departed glory of his house'
 Wink at 'I can no longer wink at your coming late to office'
 Wish for 'I could not have wished for a better appointment'
 Withdraw from 'He withdrew suddenly from the company'
 Withhold from 'The information has been withheld from me'
 Witness of 'I was a witness of the transaction'
 Witness to 'One of the witnesses to the agreement is dead'
 Wonder at 'I wonder at his presumption'
 Work at 'He is working hard at a translation of Juvenal'
 Work for 'We must all work for our daily bread'
 Worry with 'I cannot be worried with your private affairs now'
 Worthy of 'The labourer is worthy of his hire'
 Wrestle with 'He wrestled with his antagonist and threw him'
 Wring from 'The confession was wrung from him by threats'
 Yield to 'He yielded in the end to my entreaties'
 Zeal for 'His zeal for freedom was the cause of his ruin'
 Zealous in 'zealous in a cause'

Note 1—The same preposition should not be used with two words unless it is appropriate to each of them. Thus it is wrong to say 'It is different and inferior to the other,' because *different* and *inferior* require different prepositions. We should say 'It is different from, and inferior to, the other', or better 'It is different from the other, and inferior to it'

Note 2—When two phrases involving different prepositions are combined as acting on one object, it is better to complete the construction with the first, and repeat it, if we cannot slightly vary it, with the second, than to leave the first preposition in suspense. 'I am well acquainted with, and very fond of, John' would be much better expressed thus 'I am well acquainted with John, and am very fond of him'

Note 3—Some words require to be preceded by particular prepositions, as, "by reason of" "on account of," "for, fear of," "in respect to," "in regard to" "in respect of," &c



CHAPTER XIV

✓ ERRORS CORRECTED.

WITH REASONS FOR THE CORRECTIONS

854 'Natives generally have black hairs.'—Here *material*, not *number*, is meant and we should therefore use the singular instead of *hairs*. If we were speaking of *so many separate hairs*, we might use the plural, not when we speak of *hair in the mass*. 'The very *hairs* of your head are all numbered'—Bible, MATTHEW, X, 30

855 'The famine does not affect whole Bengal'—*Whole* is used without *the* only in the plural '*whole districts*,' '*whole nations*'. '*The whole*' is used with the singular of common nouns '*the whole district*', '*the whole of*' with proper nouns, and with common nouns when joined with articles, and demonstrative and distributive adjectives '*the whole of the (n) district*'. Say therefore '*the whole of Bengal*.'

856 'All males are of the masculine gender'—*Masculine* and *feminine gender* are terms applicable only to *words*, not to the *objects* denoted by them. *Males* means *objects* of the male sex, and *males* cannot therefore be said to be of any *gender*. The word *boy* is of the masculine gender, but a *boy* is of the *male sex*, not of the *masculine gender*. The sentence should be '*All names of males are of the masculine gender*'.

857 'Not only I was sick but also I was very much fatigued'—'*Not only I was*,' should be '*not only was I*,' as after *not only*, *neither*, &c., the nominative follows the verb. *Also* is redundant because implied in *not only but*. The sentence should be written '*Not only was I sick, but I was very much fatigued*'.

858 'Charles had established himself so firmly in the confidence of his people as encouraged him to make bold encroachments on the ancient constitution'—The *as* that follows *so* is not a *relative* except when *so* modifies an adjective. If instead of *so firmly*, we had *with such firmness* the sentence would be grammatically correct.

When *so* is used with an adverb, we should have either an intuitive phrase, or an adverbial clause of consequence 'so firmly as to encourage,' or 'so firmly that it encouraged.'

. 859. 'He supported the one with the same zeal that he attacked the other'—*That* cannot be parsed. Insert *with* after *other*, and the sentence will then be correct. 'He supported the one with the same zeal that he attacked the other *with*' here *that* is governed by the preposition *with*. 'He supported _____ zeal with which he attacked the other' would be better.

860. 'He would not be persuaded but what I was greatly at fault'—If in this sentence, *what* is to be parsed at all, it must be taken as a relative pronoun. If we supply the antecedent the sentence becomes 'He would not be persuaded but that *what* I was greatly at fault,' which is simply nonsense. The fact is, *what* is simply used erroneously for *that*, which has been mistaken for a relative pronoun, being really a conjunction. *Persuaded* is also wrongly used for *convinced*. (We are *persuaded* to do something, we are *convinced* of a fact or truth.) The sentence should be written 'He would not be convinced but that I was greatly at fault.'

Here 'but that I was' = '(of any thing) except that I was,' i.e., that I was not, and the construction is clear.

861. 'I have no doubt but that he will pass'—'But that he will pass' means 'that he will *not* pass', and not to have any doubt about a thing is to be sure of it, so that the sentence means "I am sure that he will not pass", but obviously the meaning intended is 'I am sure that he will pass.' Omit *but*.

862. 'He was grieved at me resigning my appointment.'—If we ask the question 'What was he grieved at?' the answer would be *my* resigning' and not 'me' or 'me resigning'. Therefore the former should appear in the sentence as governed by *at*, and we should say 'He was grieved at my resigning my appointment.'

863. 'Owing to losses, misfortunes, and others'—Except in the sense of 'other persons,' *others* can only be used when there is some noun expressed before, for which *others* is substituted, as 'owing to these circumstances and *others* of a like nature,' where *others* stands for *other circumstances*. When it stands without such a noun, it always means *other persons*, as 'John, James, and *others*.'

864. 'The army were defeated and fled'—*Defeat* is a thing that happens to an army as a whole, and not to each soldier in it, we should therefore say '*was* defeated.'

There is another error. If we say 'The army was defeated and fled,' *was* would naturally be taken with both the participles *defeated* and *fled*, i.e., it would be the same as saying 'The army *was* defeated and *was* fled,' which is obviously wrong, *flee* being an intransitive verb. We should therefore say either 'The army was defeated, and put to flight' or, 'The army, being defeated, fled.'

365 'Art thou the boy that hast committed this offence?'—The antecedent of *that* is *boy* and not *thou*, for evidently the question is not 'Art thou, that hast committed this offence, the boy?' but 'Art thou *the boy that has committed this offence*, i.e., 'Art thou the committer of this offence?' and the sentence should accordingly be corrected into 'Art thou the boy that has committed this offence?'

Note.—In such sentences as 'It is I, your friend who bid you go,' and 'It is I, your master, who bids you go' the verb, as usual, agrees with its proper subject. The first, 'It is [I, your friend], who bid you go' is an answer to the question, 'Who bids me go?' The second 'It is [I, your master, who bids you go]', is an answer to the question 'Who is it?' In the first, 'your friend' is in apposition to *I*, in the second, 'your master who bids you go' is in apposition to *I*.

366 'The mathematics are acquired with difficulty'—This should be 'Mathematics are acquired, &c.' *Mathematics* is the name of a number of related sciences taken together, and should be considered as a proper name. *The* should therefore be omitted.

367 'Physics are one of the subjects for the examination'—*Physics* here means "physical science," and is singular. The verb should therefore be singular.

368. 'It is a best book'—The rule is to use the definite article before the superlative, as, 'It is the best book I have ever read.' If simply a high degree of a quality is to be expressed, we use *very*, as 'It is a very good book.'

Note.—Though we may not say 'a best book,' we may say 'a most interesting book,' meaning a book belonging to the most interesting class of books. The rule seems to be that we may use *a* before a superlative formed by the adverb *most*, so as to make it a superlative of eminence, but not before one formed by the suffix *est*, except when preceded by *my*, and qualifying a noun in the nominative case of address. 'a most happy man,' but not 'a happiest man,' 'my dearest mother,' but not "a dearest mother."

369 'John is as tall or taller than James.'—When expressed in full this would be 'John is *as tall* than James or taller than James,' which is evidently wrong. We should therefore say 'John is as tall as, or taller than, James,' or 'John is as tall as James, or taller.' The latter construction is preferable.

870. 'The diamond is more valuable than any other metal'—This would mean that the diamond is a metal. Omit *other*. See sec 650

871. 'No man was as wise as Solomon'—This would mean either that Solomon was not a man, or that he was not as wise as himself. Say "no other man." See sec 650

872. 'No other metal is heavier than platinum'—This would imply that platinum is heavier than itself. Omit *other*. See sec 650

873. 'Next New Year's day I shall be at school three years'—As it stands, the sentence would mean that on that day, I shall remain at school for three years, which is impossible, because *on that day* I cannot possibly remain there longer than for 24 hours. What I really mean is that next New Year's day, I shall complete my third year in school. As this denotes the *future completion* of an action, the correct tense is the *future perfect*, and we should say 'Next New Year's day I shall have been three years at school'

874. 'Hindus use to burn their dead.'—The verb *use* denoting customary action is not now employed in the present tense. We may say 'Hindus used formerly to do so,' but not 'Hindus use to do so now.' The sentence above should therefore be 'It is the custom of Hindus to burn their dead'

875. 'When will we have the pleasure of seeing you again?'—*Will* is wrongly used for *shall*. Feeling pleasure is not dependent on our *will*, for we cannot bring on the feeling when we like. The sentence should therefore be 'When shall we have the pleasure of seeing you again?' See sec 233

876. 'Except you get permission, you cannot pass'—The use of *except* to govern a clause is now obsolete, and where it was so used, the conjunction *unless* is now used. The sentence should therefore be 'Unless you get permission, you cannot pass'

877. 'I will not go until a year in the least'—

Until a year.—*Until* denotes *point* of time, and cannot govern '*a year*,' which denotes a *period* of time. Say '*for a year*'

In the least.—*At* is the proper preposition. Say *at least*. The definite article is generally understood in phrases like *at least*, *at most*, *at last*. 'I will not go for a year at least.'

878. 'I informed this to him'—*Inform* takes as object the word or phrase denoting the person to whom the information is

given, and the word or phrase denoting the information given is introduced by *of*. We should therefore say 'I informed him of this'

879 'Entering, the sudden blaze dazzled me half-blind'—The subject that the participle would naturally be taken to refer to is *blaze*. This is obviously absurd, as it was not the light that entered, but the person denoted by *me*. Say therefore 'on entering,' or 'as I entered'

880 'You must give up your papers within one o'clock'—Say 'You must give up your papers by one o'clock'. *Within* should be used only with an expression denoting a *period* of time, as 'within three hours,' not with one denoting a *point* of time

881 'I knew this long before'—'*Long before*' should not be used without mentioning or alluding to the point of time or some circumstance before which the action it modifies occurred. For example, 'You only learnt it yesterday, but I knew it long before' (*yesterday* being understood). '*I knew this long before*' should therefore be 'I knew this long ago'

882 'I will write you to-morrow'—Say 'I will write to you to-morrow'. The English usage is that when there is *only one* object, that should be the *direct object*, as "I wrote two letters," "I asked a question". There can be no indirect object unless there is also a direct object. "I wrote him a letter," "I gave him a present"

883 'By the exercising our faculties they are improved'—The use of the article before *exercising* takes away entirely from it the character of a verb, which it has as a gerund or a participle, and makes it a verbal noun. As such it cannot take an object. We should therefore say 'By exercising our faculties, they are improved,' or 'Our faculties are improved by being exercised (or, by exercise)'

884 'They live at Madras'—Should be 'They live in Madras'

Note 1—*In*, not *at*, is used with the name of the principal city of a country. *at* or *in* with those of other less important towns.

Note 2—*At* differs from *in* as *external situation* differs from *internal situation*, as, 'at the fountain,' but 'in the town'. So (1) 'I stopped at Calcutta,' and (2) 'I stopped in Calcutta' have not the same meaning, (1) means 'On arriving on the borders of Calcutta, I stopped'. Similarly, 'This train stops at Calcutta' (2) means 'I took up my abode inside Calcutta'. So we speak of a battle being fought at (i.e., near) Waterloo, but of a house being situated in London. In some cases, however, both are applicable: 'at or in school or church', but we must say 'at home'.

885. 'It is two days that I went away'—This is a misuse of *that* for *since*. We should say 'It is two days since I went away,' or 'I have been away for two days'

886. 'You are very kind, and for which I thank you'—No co ordinate conjunction should be used before a relative (i.e., a relative pronoun or a relative adverb) unless there is a relative in the preceding clause to which the conjunction connects the one that follows it as, 'You are very kind, which I hardly deserve, and for which I thank you'

In the given sentence, *and* must therefore be omitted

887. 'Scarcely had the rain ceased, than the sun shone'—Here there is no comparative, and consequently we cannot have *than*. We should say 'Scarcely had the rain ceased *when* the sun shone'

888. 'Gray is a superior poet than Parnell'—*Superior*, though a comparative in Latin, is not such in English, and cannot therefore take *than* after it. We should say 'superior to,' and the sentence should be 'Gray is a superior poet to Parnell'

N.B.—The same rule applies to *inferior*, *prior*, *anterior*, &c

889. 'The pleasures of the understanding are more preferable than those of the senses'—*Preferable* to means *better than*. *Preferable* therefore has a comparative signification, and *more preferable* should be considered as a double comparative, which we are not allowed to use. We should therefore say 'The pleasures of the understanding are preferable to those of the senses'

890. 'No sooner the rain ceased than the sun shone'—Here we have *two* past actions, the rain ceasing, and the sun shining, the first prior to the second. The first would therefore be properly expressed by the past perfect tense of the verb, and we should say 'No sooner had the rain ceased than the sun shone.'

891. 'I have lent him a book last week which he did not return as yet'—This sentence exemplifies the misuse of two tenses—the present perfect, and the past indefinite. *The present perfect tense* cannot, from its signification, be modified by an adjunct denoting point of time. In the above sentence, *last week* means some point of time in the past week and the present perfect tense should be changed into the past tense

As yet means 'from that time to this,' and expresses a period of time and the proper tense to be used with it is the present perfect. Besides, the state of the book being unreturned continues to the present time, and should be expressed by the present perfect tense

The sentence should therefore be written 'I lent him a book last week which he has not returned as yet'

892. 'He has not had the report before him when he wrote that article'—Here we have the *present* perfect tense in the first sentence, and the *past* indefinite in the second, which is a violation of the rule of the Sequence of Tenses. Change *has not had* into *had not*

893. 'When we entered, we had found that the judges had all taken their seats, each in their usual place'

There are two errors in this —

1. 'We *had* found,' would mean that the fact was discovered before entering, for the pluperfect tense denotes the earlier of two past actions. The context and the use of *when* show this is not meant, and the past indefinite tense must therefore be used

2. 'Each in *their* usual place,' should be 'each in *his* usual place,' for distributives must be treated as singular, and there is no necessity whatever here for departing from the rule. See sec. 341

Of course when only one gender is meant, as in the sentence we have just corrected the masculine or feminine singular must be used according as the gender expressed is masculine or feminine. As 'England expects every man to do *his* duty', 'It is natural that every mother should suckle *her* own child.'

894. 'He told that I am going home'—We have here a violation of the rule of the Sequence of Tenses, and a confusion of the direct and indirect forms. We should say either,

Direct—He told me, 'I am going home', or,

Indirect—He told me that he was going home

Me must be inserted after *told*, which, as an introducing verb must have a personal object

895. 'The expression sounds harshly'—Here what we mean to express is the *quality of the sound*, not the *manner of the sounding*. We should therefore use *harsh*

Note—In order to determine whether an adjective or an adverb should be used in such cases, we should consider whether the *quality* of the thing denoted by the noun or pronoun, or the *manner* of the action denoted by the verb, is meant to be expressed. The following examples will illustrate this point —

The river appears *clear* = It seems that the river (i.e., its water) is *clear*

The river appears *clearly* = I can see the river *clearly*, i.e., distinctly

✓ He feels *warm*, he feels *warmly* the insult offered to him

He always appears (to be) *neat*, he dresses *neatly*

He lives *free* from care, he lives *freely* at his brother's expense

He has grown *great* by his wisdom, he has grown *greatly* in repute

896. 'Since two months I went to school daily.'—*Since* refers to a *point*, not a *period*, of time, and cannot therefore govern 'two months'; and the past indefinite tense cannot be used for an action extending to the present time. The sentence should therefore be written 'For two months I have been going to school daily'

897. 'It is a long time since I have been studying English.'—*Since* denotes a *point* of time, and the present perfect tense '*have been studying*,' *duration* of time the two cannot, therefore, be used together. The sentence should be 'I have been studying English for a long time'

898. 'It is after a long time that you have come to see us'—This is a common mistake for 'It is a long time since you came to see us,' or 'You have not been to see us for a long time' Similarly 'It is more than two years that I am doing this,' 'I have been doing this for more than two years'

899. 'I am sick from yesterday.'—*Sick* should be *ill*, the present indefinite tense should be changed into the present perfect, because the illness continues to the time of speaking, and *from* should be *since*

Since should be used in reckoning from past time to the present, *unless the point where the action ends is also specified*, in which case we may have *from*. Thus we may say 'I was ill from yesterday till this morning' The given sentence should therefore be 'I have been ill since yesterday'

900. He has been either educated at home or at a private school.—Here, 'either-or' is intended to oppose alternatively, the phrases 'at home' and 'at a private school.' The sentence should be written 'He has been educated either at home or at a private school'

901. 'After he had visited Calcutta he has returned to Benares'—Here we have two past actions, one taking place before the other, and according to the rule for the use of the past perfect tense, that tense must be used for the first of these, the other being simply expressed by the past indefinite and the sentence must be 'After he had visited Calcutta, he returned to Benares'

902. 'He is the boy whom I told you failed in the examination'—*Whom* is here supposed to be governed by *told* and hence the error. The fact is that '*I told you*' is a parenthetical clause, and the relative is the nominative to *failed* (We may suppose the relative *as* to be understood before *I* as the object of *told*) The relative should therefore be *who*

'This is the boy who (I told you) failed in the examination.'

'This is the boy who, as I told you, failed in the examination'

903. 'Who do you think *me* to be?'—The real construction of this sentence is 'Do you think me to be *who*?' just as we say 'Do you think me to be *a fool*?' and as *fool* in this is in apposition with *me*, and therefore in the objective case, *who* should be in the same case, and should therefore be *whom*

904. 'Let you and I the battle try'—*Let* is a transitive verb and governs *you* and *I*, which should both be therefore in the objective case. The sentence should be 'Let you and me the battle try'

905. 'He is not the person whom I thought that he was'—*Whom* is in apposition with *he*, 'I thought' being parenthetical, and should therefore be in the same case as *he*—*is*, the nominative. 'He is not the person who I thought he was'

906. 'You are a much greater loser than me'—*Than* is a conjunction and cannot govern in objective case. *Me* should therefore be *I* which would be nominative to *am* understood

Usage however seems to allow the construction. See BAIN'S *Higher English Grammar*, as well as the following from the Queen's English —

"The fact, is, that there are two ways of constructing a clause with a comparative and 'than'. You may say either 'than I' or 'than me'. If you say the former, you use what is called an elliptical expression, i.e., an expression in which something is left out—and that something is the verb 'am'. 'He is wiser than I,' being filled out, would be 'He is wiser than I am'. 'He is wiser than me,' is the direct and complete construction. The difference between the two usages seems to be this—and it is curiously confirmative of what has been sometimes observed that men in ordinary converse shrink, in certain cases, from the use of the bare nominative of the personal pronoun. Where solemnity is required, the construction in the nominative is used. Our Lord's words will occur to us (*John*, xiv, 28), 'My father is greater than I'. But in ordinary conversation this construction is generally avoided as sounding too weighty and formal. In colloquial talk we commonly say either, 'He is older than me,' or perhaps more frequently, 'He is older than I am,' and so with the other personal pronouns *he*, *she*, *we*, and *they*."

907. 'She is as tall or taller than her brother'—This expressed in full will be 'She is as tall *than* her brother, or *taller than* her brother'—which is obviously wrong, as *than* is never used except with a comparative. We should there-

fore express the proper correlative with each adjective, and say 'She is as tall as, or taller than, her brother' The form 'She is as tall as her brother, or taller' is, however, preferable.

908 'Everywhere nothing but want and misery are to be seen'—*Nothing*, the nominative of *are*, is in the singular number, and *are* should therefore be *is* The error is due to there being two singular nouns connected by *and* just before the verb These, however, are on the objective case, being governed by the preposition *but*

909 The rapidity of his movements were beyond example.

Rapidity, the nominative, is singular, while the verb *were* is plural It should be *was* The intervening noun *movements*, which is plural, has led to the error, but *movements* is in the objective case, governed by the preposition *of*

910. 'The committee who was appointed last session, report in favour of the bill.'—The committee is appointed as a body, and they report on a matter as a body, i.e., in their collective capacity, and not in their individual capacities *committee*, in this sentence, should therefore be construed as singular And when a collective noun denotes a body, it should have a singular verb, and the relative used with it must be *which*, not *who* The sentence should therefore be written 'The committee, which was appointed last session, reports in favour of the bill.'

911 'Twice three are six', 'Two and three are five'—'Twice three' means the *product* of three multiplied by two and 'two and three' means the *sum* of two and three. The subject is therefore singular in both sentences, and *are* should be *is*

912. 'His statements were as follows'—*As* is a relative here, being equivalent to *which* 'His statements were (those) which follow,' and *follow* should accordingly be in the plural number.

If *statement* were used, we should say 'His statement *was* as follows' '*As follows*' is also correctly used in such constructions as 'He spoke as follows,' which is elliptical for either 'He spoke as it follows,' it being impersonal, or, 'He spoke in such manner as follows'

913 'How to do this?'—This is often ungrammatically used by itself, the governing sentence 'Tell me,' or 'I do not know' being left out. *To do* has no word to depend on, and the sentence is therefore obviously wrong.

914. 'A failed candidate'—This ugly expression is formed under the mistaken idea that *to fail* is a transitive verb, meaning *to pluck in an examination*, and not, as it is, an intransitive verb, meaning *to be unsuccessful*. When lists of candidates are headed 'Failed,' 'Passed,' these are simply shortened forms of 'Those that have failed,' 'Those that have passed.'

Similarly (such expressions as 'the property of a gentleman left the country' or, 'proceeded home') &c, so often seen in advertisements, are quite incorrect.

915 'I do not know to read?'—This is a very common blunder. English idiom requires that when *know* governs an infinitive phrase, 'the latter should be preceded by *how*'. We should say 'I do not know how to read.'

916 'She is such a great talker that few like her company?'—Say *so great a talker*. *Such* is properly applied to *species or nature*, so to *degree*. 'such a nation as this,' 'to whom we gave no such commandment,' 'a nation so great,' 'so proud a man,' 'not such a proud man.'

This is the rule grammarians lay down. The best English writers, however, use *such* and *so* indiscriminately. 'Such an awful repulse'—MILTON. 'Such an exact record'—COWPER.

917 They returned back again to the same city from whence they came forth.—In this sentence, the words *back*, *again*, *same*, *from*, *forth* are redundant and should be omitted.

COMMON ERRORS WITH CORRECTIONS.

(NB—The corrections are given in *italics*.)

918 Errors arising from the omission or misuse of the articles

I came in carriage—*a carriage*

Bridge is building over Jumna—*a bridge, the Jumna*

I am reading a poetry—Omit *a*, or say 'a poem,' or 'a piece of poetry' instead of 'a poetry'

I am seeking an employment—Omit *an*

I have an urgent business—Omit *an*, or say 'a piece of urgent business'

He is the student of Hindu College—*a student, the Hindu College*.
The gold is heavier metal than the iron—*Gold is heavier metal than iron*

✓ Ganges flows into Bay of Bengal—*the Ganges, the Bay, &c*

Why do you attempt a such long journey?—*such a long (so long a) journey*

• Why do you not follow a so good example?—*so good an example*

This is not a good sugar—Omit 'a'
 English defeated Maharras—the English, the Maharras
 Bee is industrious creature—the bee, an industrious
 The pride is a bad feeling—Omit the (But 'the pride of this
 man is great' is correct. The rule is to omit the before
 abstract nouns, when they denote qualities or actions
 generally)

919 Errors arising from the wrong position of words:

Akbar ruled wisely his kingdom—*He ruled his kingdom wisely*
 These all mangoes are ripe—put 'all' before 'these' or after 'are'
 You both hands are dirty—*both your hands*
 The king's some soldiers—*some of the king's soldiers*
 and he returned home—*he and I*

A B—In speaking of yourself and another or others, always put your self last

✓ I three and quarter Rupees, ten and a half feet—*three Rupees and a quarter, ten feet and a half*
 There is no thing such as chance—*no such thing as*

920. Errors arising from wrong modes of asking questions:

When the battle of Paniput was fought?—*When was the battle of Paniput fought?*
 To whom you will give the letter?—*Will you give (or, whom will you give the letter to?)*
 What books you read?—*What books do you read?*
 What the master said to you?—*What did the master say to you?*
 The prince was ill or not?—*Was the prince ill?*
 You came to see me, is it not?—*Did you not?*
 How high the wall was?—*was the wall?*
 Please tell me where is he?—*where he is*
 I asked him what o'clock was it?—*what o'clock it was*

921. Errors arising from the violation of grammatical rules:

My little sister cannot find its toy—*he, toy*
 Ambition is one of those passions that is never satisfied—*are never satisfied*

✓ *To whom shall I give this books—the e book*
 Incomes on every sides—*every side*
 Here is the cup, please fill—*fill it*

A B—Errors of this class are very common, but can be easily corrected by reference to grammatical rules in any text-book, say *MASON* or *BAIN*.

922 Errors arising from the misuse of the possessive case.

Ceylon's governor—the Governor of Ceylon
 The garden's wall—the wall of the garden
 The letter's envelope—the envelope of the letter.
 I called it yours yesterday—at your house

A B—But it is correct to say 'I went to Thompson and Co's, (to the book seller's) yesterday' The rule is that the possessive case of the name

or designation of a person may be used by itself to denote his place, but this rule does not extend to the possessives of pronouns

923 Errors arising from the misuse of adjectives and adverbs of comparison—'much,' 'very,' 'too,' &c ,

Poona is *near* Bombay *than* Calcutta—*near*

This boy is *clever* as my cousin—as *clever* as

This house is *cheaper* to the other—*cheaper* than

The question is *much* difficult—is *very* difficult (or, is one of *much* difficulty)

(But it is correct to say 'much heavier,' 'much more difficult')

Much may qualify a comparative, but not a positive

Give me a little flowers—a *few* flowers

Many poetries—*much* poetry (*many* poems)

The climate of Travancore is *superior* than that of Malabar—*superior* to

✓ He made *much* mistake—*many* mistake

Honey is *too* sweet—*very* sweet

✓ The box is *too much* large—*much too* large

924 Errors arising from the use of wrong tenses of verbs.

Baber has founded the Mogal Empire—*Baber founded*, &c, (because the act of *founding* is a single and not a continuing act But it would be correct to say 'The Mogal Empire has passed away,' because the state of things brought about by the action of passing on continues to the present time For the same reason it is correct to say 'Suttee has been abolished,' 'The Pyramids have stood for ages')

Henry VIII has been married six times—*Henry VIII was married*, &c, (because he is not living now)

It has arrived an hour ago—*he arrived*, &c

He was formerly been a teacher—*he was*, &c

(The rule is that the *present perfect* cannot be qualified by an expression denoting time, *past and gone*)

The Suez Canal was open for several years—*has been open*

There had been rain last night—*was rain*

✓ I had come to see you yesterday—*came* (for, in these two sentences we have not *two past actions*, one prior to the other)

925. Errors arising from disregard of the sequence of Tenses

I thought he is my friend—*was*

He swore that it is false—*was*

✓ He said that the earth was not round—*is*

He intended to have come—*to come*

926. Errors arising from 1 the omission, or 2 unnecessary insertion, or 3 misuse of prepositions:

1 I wish to mention you a circumstance—to you

He would not listen me—to me

He attends his duties—to his duties

You should pray God every day—to God,

- The judge disposed the case—*of the case*
 He complied my request—*with my request*
 He prohibited me to speak—*from speaking*
2. I have something to ask of you—He has reached to manhood—
 He married to his cousin—The Germans invaded into
 France—He resisted against lawful authority—Omit the
preposition
3. Be careful to guard from danger—*against*
 He deprived me from my gain—*of*
 He lives at London—*in*
 He is pleased by his prize—*with*
 I went on the railway station—*to*
 The bullock strayed in my field—*into*
 He has gone into England—*to*

✓ Mysore is *to* the south of India—*in* (‘To the south’ would mean that
 Mysore is not in India. It would be right to say Ceylon is to the south of
 India’ because Ceylon is outside India.)

✓ He wrote this by a steel pen—*with* (By denotes agent or doer, *with*
 instrument or means.)

927. Errors arising from the use of the Passive for the Active Voice

This passage is referred to the story of the old man and the ass—
refer-

Much trouble was ensued from the accident—*ensued*

Was escaped—*(had) escaped*

His fame was resounded on every side—*ounded*

928. Errors arising from wrong use of expressions of time—‘since,’ ‘ago,’ ‘before,’ &c :

I have been ill since five days—*for* (The rule is that *since* should
 never be followed by an expression denoting a period of time. It may,
 however, be preceded by such an expression when the verb in the sentence
 is in the past tense ‘there was a fire a fortnight since’)

He joined the College before two months—*two months ago*

It is very cold in England at the time of winter—*in winter*

There was thunder this day morning—Omit ‘day’

Yesterday night—*last night*

929. Errors in the use of ‘other,’ ‘others,’—‘another,’ ‘not any,’—‘no’

I have only two pens—one is here, and another is at home—*the other*

Solomon was wiser than all men—*all other men* (For if Solomon was
 a man, and we say he was wiser than *all men* which expression includes
 Solomon, it would mean that Solomon was wiser than himself, which is
 absurd. For the same reason we should say *not* ‘The torrid zone is hotter
 than all the zones’ but ‘all the other zones’)

There was not any one in the house—*no one* (But it is right to say
 he would not eat any food’ It must be noted however, that here *not*
 goes with the verb, while in the former it goes with *any*)

930. Errors arising from the wrong use of ‘say,’ ‘tell,’ ‘speak,’ ‘see,’ ‘find’ &c

He told that the moon had risen—*said*

He tells that the tide has ebbed—*says*

CHAPTER XV

AMBIGUITY AND HOW TO AVOID IT.

932. An expression is said to be *ambiguous*, when it can be interpreted in two or more ways, and there is nothing to determine which of these interpretations is the correct one, or the one intended 'Ambiguity is one of the causes of obscurity, and should, therefore be carefully avoided' We shall give examples of the principal kinds of ambiguity

933 1. Ambiguity of personal and demonstrative pronouns

'The pedant assured his patron that although he could not divest the boy of the knowledge he had already imbibed, unless he would empower him to disable his fingers, he would endeavour to prevent his future improvement'—RODERIC RANDOM

This sentence might be written without ambiguity thus

'The pedant of knowledge, already imbibed, unless *he* were empowered to disable the little stickster's fingers to prevent his pupil's future improvement' The pronoun now refers exclusively to the pedant

The ambiguity arising from *he* in a reported speech is illustrated by the following —

'He told the coachman that *he* would be the death of *him* if *he* did not take care what *he* was about and mind what *he* said'

Here the intention of the writer was that *he* in '*he* would be the death' should refer to the coachman, who would kill his employer by rash driving, but the employer might very easily be meant

'If the lad leaves his father, he will die,' is a similar example

It is a frequent source of ambiguity —

"It (the Norman conquest) did not abolish the English language, but it brought in a new language by its side, which for a while supplanted it as the language of polite intercourse, and which did not yield to the reviving elder speech till it had infected it by the largest infusion that the vocabulary of one European tongue ever received from another"

Here, the last two *it*'s may be taken as standing for the

English or the Norman-French (the language brought in by the Norman Conquest)

934 II Ambiguity of relative pronouns.

The *relative pronoun* causes ambiguity when its antecedent is not clearly indicated.

'Our house is near the school which is a great nuisance,' may mean —

- 1 The school is a great nuisance,
- 2 Being near the school is a great nuisance,
- 3 Not being near the school is a great nuisance,

according to the antecedent of which is 1 the school, 2 the fact of being near, 3 the fact of not being near

In regard to I and II, the only rule that can be given for avoiding the ambiguity is *never to use a pronoun without making it perfectly clear from the context what it stands for*

935 III Ambiguity caused by the use of 'not'

Not causes ambiguity when it is left uncertain what part of the sentence is modified by it (See example 7, sec 940)

In the example 'I do not intend to help you because you are my enemy,' it is hardly clear whether the meaning is 'I do not intend to help you, and my reason for not doing so is that you are my enemy', or 'I intend to help you, not because you are my enemy, but for some other reason'

936 IV. Ambiguity caused by the use of 'any.'

When '*any*' is used in a sentence in which a negative is carelessly placed so as to leave it doubtful whether it modifies '*any*' or some other word, the result is an ambiguity. For example 'I am not bound to receive any messenger you may send,' may mean —

- 1 'I am not bound to receive a single one of your messengers
or
- 2 'I am not bound to receive every one of the messengers you may send, whatever may be his character'

To express the first meaning, say 'I am bound to receive *none* of your messengers', and to express the second say, 'I am not bound to receive *every* messenger you send'

937 V. Ambiguity caused by the words 'but,' 'that,' 'only'

But may mean *except, on the other hand, or not more than*

- 1 'As for the falsehood of your brother, I feel no doubt, but what you say is true' Here the punctuation shows the meaning of *but*, viz, *on the other hand*
- 2 'As for the falsehood of your brother I feel no doubt but

what you say is true' Here *but* means *but that*, and the sentence 'I am sure what you say regarding your brother's falsehood is true'

- o 'I expected twelve, *but* ten came' Here *but* may mean *on the other hand* (contrary to my expectation) or it may mean *not more than*

That may be used as a relative, or a demonstrative, or a conjunction. But when it is used as a conjunction, we must be careful to know on what the sentence introduced by it depends. Thus 'I am so surprised by this statement that I am going to leave, that I can make no reply,' may mean either —

- 1 'I am so surprised by this statement, *viz.*, that I am going to leave, *that* I can make no reply', or
- 2 'I am surprised by this statement to such a degree, that I am going to leave, that I can make no reply'

The rule about *only* is to place it immediately before the word it modifies, as

You *only* advise me = You advise me and do nothing more

Only you advise me = You advise me, but no one else does

You advise *only* me = You advise me but you do not advise any one else

938. VI Ambiguity caused by the use of 'as well as.'

'As well as' causes ambiguity when it is not clear whether it denotes *manners*, or is simply used as a conjunction equivalent to *and*. 'I love him as well as you' may mean—

1. I love him as well as you love him
2. I love him as well as I love you
3. I love him *and* you

939. VII Ambiguity arising from the placing of adverbs, or adverbial phrases

Adverbs should be so placed that there is no doubt what word or words they qualify. Hence we should never place an adverb between two words to either of which it may refer.

'He left the room *slowly* repeating his determination not to obey'

Here *slowly* may qualify either *left*, or *repeating*. To avoid ambiguity, put a comma after *slowly*, if the first is intended, after *room*, if the second

'Rome once more ruled over the prostrate nations *by the power of superstition*'

This may mean either of two things,—(1) that Rome had at a former time ruled over the nations "by the power of superstition," and now resumed that power, (2) that Rome had formerly ruled over the nations by some other power,—that of

conquest, or of imperial influence,—and now did so by a different power, that of superstition. The sentence, as it stands, most naturally bears the former construction. To convey the latter meaning, it should stand thus: “Rome, by the power of superstition, once more ruled over the prostrate nations”

940 VIII Ambiguity arising from the participles with nothing to show what nouns they qualify

Example 6, sec 940 illustrates this. The following is another example

‘I saw an old school-fellow yesterday when I was in London walking down Regent Street, carpet-bag in hand.’

941 IX. Ambiguity arising from the use of the infinitive with ‘to’

This occurs when there are a number of infinitives, and it is not clear whether one of them is *co-ordinate with*, or *dependent upon*, a previous infinitive (See sec 940, example 9).

In many of the above cases, punctuation will remove the ambiguity

942. X Ambiguity arising from the restrictive and co-ordinating uses of the relatives

This kind of ambiguity is best avoided by using ‘*who*’ and ‘*which*’ *co-ordinatively only* and ‘*that*’ *restrictively only whenever it is possible to do so*

943 Examples of ambiguity

1. *They dwelt in the love of God and man*

- (1) They dwelt, loved by God and man or,
- (2) They dwelt, loving God and man

2. *He loves you as much as John*

- (1) He loves you, as much as he loves John or,
- (2) He loves you, as much as John loves you

3. *I saw him quite well*

- (1) I saw him in sound health, i.e., he was in sound health when I saw him, or,
- (2) I saw him quite distinctly — (Here *well* is an adverb modifying *saw*, while in the first interpretation it is an adjective qualifying him)

4. *The student gained a prize which was of great use to him afterwards*

- (1) The student gained a prize and the prize was of great use to him afterwards (antecedent of *which*—*prize*), or,
- (2) The student gained a prize, and his gaining the prize was of great use to him afterwards (antecedent of *which*—the sentence, *the student* &c.).

5. *I like nothing but what you do.*

Do may be used in the sense of *perform*, or it may be used as what BAIN proposes to call the *pro-verb*, i.e., a verb standing for another verb. We have accordingly the two meanings —

- (1) I like nothing that is not done by you, i.e., I like only your actions,
- (2) I like nothing but what you like, or, I like only what you like

6. *I did not hear what you said, coming so suddenly into the room*

Coming may refer to *you* or to *I*, and we have the two meanings —

- (1) As I came so suddenly into the room, I did not hear what you said, or,
- (2) I did not hear what you said when you came so suddenly into the room

7. *The remedy for drunkenness is not to be ascetic*

- (1) Not being ascetic is the remedy for drunkenness, or,
- (2) Being ascetic is not the remedy for drunkenness (but something else is the remedy)

8. *I cannot believe anything you say*

- (1) I can believe nothing (that you say, i.e., I must disbelieve everything you say), or,
- (2) I cannot believe everything you say, (i.e., I can believe only certain things you say, but must disbelieve others).

9. *Do you intend to send your son to help me to work or to play.*

- (1) Do you intend to send your son in order that he may help me to work, or that he may help me to play?
- (2) Do you intend to send your son in order that he may help me to work, or in order that he may play?
- (3) Do you intend to send your son in order that he may help me to work, or do you intend to play?

10. *I told you before all about it*

- (1) I told you about it, before I told any one else,
- (2) I told you about it before any one else told you,
- (3) I told you about it in the presence of all, or,
- (4) I told you all (everything) about it previously

11. *I am told he has a certain income from property*

- (1) I am told he has some income from property, or
- (2) I am told he has an income from property, on which he may depend, i.e., which is not uncertain or precarious

12. *He told the banker he would kill him if he were not careful.*

- (1) He told the banker 'I will kill you, if you are not careful', or,
- (2) He told the banker 'You will kill me if I am not careful.'

- (3) He told the banker 'You will kill me if you are not more careful'

his 13 *I think you will find my spelling at all events as good as his*

(1) I think you will find my spelling as good as his, though it may not be as good as any other person's, or,

(2) I think you will find my spelling as good as his, though my writing, &c, may not be as good as his, or,

(3) I think you will find my spelling as good as his, even if it be not better

14. *Send me the horse from Madras*

(1) Send me, from Madras, the horse, or,

(2) Send me the horse which has come from Madras

15 *Did you see my agents at Bangalore ?—*

(1) Did you see my agents, when you were at Bangalore ?, or

(2) Did you see my Bangalore agents ?

16 *He is above deception*

(1) He cannot be deceived, or,

(2) He will not stoop to deceive others



CHAPTER XVI.

FIGURES OF SPEECH.

EXPLAINED AND ILLUSTRATED.

944 Figures of speech defined and classified.—
 Figures of Speech are deviations from the ordinary spelling, construction or meaning of words. There are thus three classes of figures: Figures of Orthography, Figures of Syntax and Figures of Rhetoric.

945. Rules for the use of metaphors and of figures generally.

- 1 The resemblance implied in a metaphor should be obvious, and not forced or far fetched, or taken from the more obscure branches of the arts and sciences.
- 2 Metaphors should be suited to the nature of the subject treated of. Some are allowable, nay beautiful, in poetry, which are inadmissible in *prose*, some may be graceful in orations, which would be very improper in historical or philosophical composition. Care should therefore be taken to employ only those metaphors which are neither too lively nor too elevated for our subject.
- 3 We should carefully avoid mixing *literal* and *figurative* language when speaking of the same object, as in "Bore was the father of Chemistry and brother of the Tail of (or) "
- 4 In describing the same object, we should avoid joining together different or mixed metaphors, as in
 ' I buddle in my struggling muse in vain.
 That longs to launch into a bolder strain "

Here the muse is first made a *horse*, then a *ship* and then a *singer*.

- 5 Metaphors should not be pursued too far, or, in other words, we should not strain a metaphor. When we dwell too long upon the resemblance on which the figure is founded, and carry it into all its minute circumstances, we fatigue the reader by this play of fancy, and render our discourse obscure.

946. 'Allegory — An allegory is a comparison between two remote subjects, continued through several sentences or paragraphs, for the purpose of teaching a moral, or giving instruction. The principal subject is described by another subject.

resembling it in its properties and circumstances. The principal subject is thus kept out of view, and we are left to collect the intention of the writer or speaker by the resemblance of the primary to the secondary object.

Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress* is a very good example of an allegory. In it, the spiritual life of a Christian is represented in detail by the story of a pilgrim, named Christian, leaving the city of Destruction (this wicked world), and going in search of the Celestial city (heaven), which he reaches after many struggles and difficulties (the trials a Christian has to undergo).

In the Bible we have a very good example of this figure in the 80th Psalm, where Israel is described under the similitude of a vine brought from Egypt, from which country they had come into Palestine.

'The Vision of Muz'a' (*Spectator*, No 196) is also a good example of allegory.

947 Alliteration is the repetition of the same letter at the beginning of two or more words near one another, as 'Apt alliteration's artful aid.' 'Round and round the rugged rock the ragged rascals ran.'

✓ 'The lordly lion leaves his lonely lair'
'How high his honour holds his haughty head'

948 Allusion is a figure by which some word or phrase in a sentence is made to recall some interesting fact, fable, custom, writing or saying, as "When you go into the Museum, be Aigis but not Bircus", "The school was a perfect Babel".

949 Anacoluthan (Greek, a not following up) is a confusion of two different constructions in the same sentence, or a break in the grammatical sequence or following.

P. But lend it (money) rather to thine enemy,
Who if he break, thou mayest with better face exact the penalty

—Merchant of Venice

950 Anaphora is the repetition of a word or words at the beginning or end of two or more successive clauses of a sentence, as,

"Woe you tops, ye Pines
With every plant in sign of worship woe"

951 Anastrophe is a figure whereby a word which should naturally go before another is put after it as 'I have travelled England *through*' for '*through* England'

952 Antanaclassis is a repetition of words, beginning a sentence, after a parenthesis, as "Shall that heart (which not only feels them, but which has all motions of life placed in them), *shall that heart*, &c"

953. Anticlimax or **Bathos** is the opposite of *climax* (which see), and *descends* from one circumstance to another, as

'And though Dalhousie, the great God of war
Lieutenant General to the Earl of Argyll'

Here in the first line Dalhousie is called a god, and in the next he is spoken of as an officer subordinate to another

954 Antistrophe is reiteration at the end of successive clauses or sentences, ' Wit is dangerous, eloquence is dangerous, a talent for observation is dangerous, everything is dangerous that has efficacy and vigour for its characteristics ' When the reiteration is at the beginning of successive clauses or sentences it is called **Epanaphora**, as at the conclusion of Burke's speech in the impeachment of Warren Hastings, where every sentence begins with the words ' I impeach him '

955 Antithesis (literally a placing *against* or *in opposition*) is a figure by which words or sentiments occurring in the same sentence are *opposed* or *contrasted*, as ' Want of intellect makes a village an *Eden*, a college a *sty* ' ' In the midst of life we are in *death* '

' Though deep yet clear, though gentle yet not dull,
' Strong without rage, without overflowing full '

956. Antonomasia is the use of the name of some office, dignity, profession, science, or trade, instead of the proper name of the person, as *his majesty* for a king, *his lordship* for a nobleman, *his excellency* for a governor, *the philosopher* of Megara for Euclid, or, conversely the use of a proper name instead of an appellative, as when a wise man is called a *Cato*, or an eminent orator a *Cicero*, the application being supported by a resemblance in character

957 Aphæresis is the omission of a letter or syllable at the *beginning* of a word, as ' *gnus* for ' *begins*, ' *twas* for ' *it was* '

958 Apocope is the omission of a letter or syllable at the *end* of a word, as *eve* for *evening*, *th'* for *the*

959. Aposiopesis is a figure in which the speaker breaks off suddenly, as if unwilling or unable to state what was in his mind, as, " I declare to you that his conduct—but we must not now lose time in words "

960 Apostrophe is a sudden turning off from the subject of the discourse to address some absent person or thing, as an orator invoking some hero of other times, as ' Death is swallowed up in victory. O Death where is thy sting? O Grave where is thy victory? '

961. Asyndeton is the omission of connectives, as ' I

came, I saw, I conquered' 'The wind passeth over it, it is gone'

962 Catachresis is an abuse of words, a figure by which one word is wrongly put for another, or by which a word is too far wrested from its true signification, a harsh or far-fetched metaphor, as, 'Her voice was but the *shadow* of a *sound*'

963 Chiasmus is an inversion of the order of words or phrases when repeated or subsequently referred to in a sentence, thus,

If ever to bless thy sons
My voice or hands deny,
These hands let useful skill forsake,
This voice in silence die — *Dwight*

964 Climax rises by regular steps from one circumstance to another, till the thoughts cannot be carried higher, as, "There is no enjoyment of property without government, no government without a magistrate, no magistrate without obedience, and no obedience where every one acts as he pleases"

"It is an *outrage* to bind a Roman citizen, to scourge him is an *atrocious crime*, to put him to death is almost a *parricide*, but to crucify him, what shall I call it?"

965 Diæresis is the separation of two adjacent vowels, by two dots placed over the latter of them, and showing that they are to be taken with two syllables, as, *coöperate*, *aërial*, *zoölogy*

966. Elision is the cutting off of a letter or syllable at the beginning, middle, or end of a word, and includes *Aphaeresis*, *Syncope*, and *Apocope*, which see.

967 Ellipsis is the omission of some word or words which the sense can supply in a sentence, but which are necessary to a full and perfect construction

EXAMPLE

Of the article—'The bow and (the) arrows are broken'

Noun—'I called at the bookseller's (*Shop*)'

Adjective—'Much rain and (*much*) snow'

Pronoun—'He watched and (*he*) wept, he felt and (*he*) prayed for all'

Verb—'To err is human, to forgive (*is*) divine'

Participle—'Loving darkness rather than (*loving*) light'

Adverb—'He reads (*well*) and writes well'

Preposition—'I spoke to John and (*to*) James'

Conjunction—'John, (*and*) James, and Harry'

968 Enallage is the use of one part of speech for

another, as, 'Drink *deep* or taste not the *Picrian* spring,' where *deep* (adj.) is used for *deeply* (adv)

¶ 969 Epanalepsis is a figure by which the same word or clause is repeated after intervening matter

970 Epanaphora. See *Antistrophe*.

971 Epanorthosis is a figure by which a speaker or writer recalls what he had said in order to substitute a stronger or more correct expression, as, 'most *brave*, *brave*, did I say? most *heroic* act', 'The *defeat* or rather the *route*'

972 Epenthesis is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle, (i.e., anywhere except at the beginning or end) of a word, as, *impreguable* (from *imprenable*), *father* (from *farer*)

973. Epigram (*l'epi*, upon, *gramma*, a writing) is a concise and pointed saying sometime sarcastic, and often in poetical form as, "A favourite has no friend."

* 974 Euphemism is the softening of a harsh or offensive expression, or the substitution of a delicate word or expression, for one which is harsh or indelicate, as, 'He is *no more*' for 'he is dead' 'You labour under a mistake' for 'you lie'

975. Exclamation or Ecphonesis employs words of ordinary language in the manner of interjections to express sudden feeling or emotion, as, 'What!', 'For shame!', 'How strange!'

976 Fable.—The *Fable* is a short allegory. It embodies a moral in a special case, which is represented as a *reality*, and narrated as a story, which suggests the moral at once

The story of the Old Man and the Bundle of Sticks contains a moral truth, the power of union, in a particular case, represented as a real or actual incident, and calculated to suggest a moral forcibly

977 Hendiadys is the expression of an idea by two nouns instead of a noun and a qualifying adjective, e.g., 'We drank in *goblets and in gold*' for 'We drank in *golden goblets*' ✓ It is confined to poetry

978 Hypallage is the interchange of the cases of words in a sentence, as, 'The *waysides* were heaped up with *dead*,' for 'The *dead* were heaped up on the *way sides*', 'The *gutters* ran with *blood*,' for 'The *blood* ran in the *gutters*'

979. Hyperbaton is the transposition of words; as,

'Silver and gold have I none', 'Broad is the way that leadeth to destruction'

980 **Hyperbole** (exaggeration) consists in representing things as much greater or much smaller than they really are, as, 'Rivers of blood and hills of slain', 'The waves rose mountains high'

981 **Interrogation or Erotesis** is a figure which in the speaker adopts the form of interrogation, not to express a doubt, but, in general, confidently to assert the reverse of what is asked, as, 'Hast thou an arm like God? or canst thou thunder with a voice like him?', 'He that planted the ear, shall he not hear? he that formed the eye, shall he not see?'

982 **Inversion** (Lat *in, verito, I turn*) places first what, according to custom, should be last— as,

Of man's first disobedience and the fruit
Of that forbidden tree
Sing, heavenly muse —(Milton)

Deep in the shady sadness of a vale
Far sunken from the healthy breath of morn
Far from the fiery noon and eve's one star,
Sat grey-hair'd Saturn —(Keats)

983 **Irony** expresses the contrary of what is meant, there being something in the tone or manner to show what is really meant, as when we tell a man 'What a clever fellow you are,' really meaning 'What a fool you are'

984 **Litotes** is a diminution or 'softening' of a statement, for the sake of avoiding censure, or of expressing more strongly what is intended, as, 'a citizen of no mean city,' i.e., of a very illustrious one 'No little trouble, i.e., a great deal of trouble, 'No inconsiderable loss,' i.e., a very considerable loss

985 **Meiosis** is a species of Hyperbole, and represents things as being much smaller than they really are, as, 'a handful of men', 'The matter lies in a nutshell'

986 **Metaphor**.—A metaphor is an implied simile or comparison. It is an expression applied from one object or attribute to another on account of some resemblance 'He is a lion in the chase,' i.e., he resembles the lion in respect of bravery. See next Chapter

987 **Metathesis** is a figure by which the letters or syllables of a word are transposed, as, *center* (centre), *spite* (spirit), *mager* (meagre). Cf. குருதை, மருதை, for குதிரை, மதிரை.

988. **Metonymy** is a figure in which a thing is denoted

by something which usually accompanies, or is related to it
The following are the chief kinds of metonymy —

- 1 Where the sign symbol or any significant adjunct of a thing is put for the thing itself as, the crown or the sceptre for *royalty*, the mitre for the *priest*, the sword for the *military profession*, the sill gown for the *profession of Queen's Council*, the cloth for the *clergy*, grey hair for *old persons*
- 2 Where the instrument is put for the agent, as 'Cromwell set up Parliament by the *stroke* of his pen and scattered them with the *breath* of his mouth'
- 3 Where the container is put for the thing contained, as, 'they smote the *city*' (i.e. its inhabitants) 'The *kettle* boils' (i.e. the water in it)
- 4 Where the effect is put for the cause, as, 'He sat under the *shade* of the trees' (i.e. the trees which cause shade)
- 5 Where an author is put for his work This is only a variety of *1, c g* I am reading *Milton*, 'c g, (his works)

989 Onomatopoeia is such an imitation by the sound of the words as may correspond to or suggest the sense Sound motion, and even sentiment, may be imitated by this figure

'When Ajax strives some rock's vast weight to throw
The line too labours, and the words move slow'

These lines cannot possibly be read *fast* the slowness of the reading suggests the slowness described in the lines Contrast the two following descriptions from Milton—the first of the opening of hell-gates, and the second of heaven-gates

"On a sudden open fly,
With impetuous recoil and juring sound,
Th' infernal doors, and on their hinges gate;
Harsh thunder"

Heaven opened wide
Her ever-during gates, harmonious sound
On golden hinges turning"

990 Oxymoron is a figure in which an epithet is added to a word of a quite contrary signification, as, '*cruel kindness*,' '*darkness visible*.'

991. Parable.—The *parable* is very often undistinguishable from the *fable* Where the two differ, the former is the representation of something *real in life or nature*, while the latter represents animals and even inanimate things as speaking and acting The story of the Fox and the Grapes is a *fable* There a fox is described as trying to get at a bunch of grapes He makes several attempts but fails. He then goes away, exclaiming, 'The grapes are sour' The moral intended to be taught is that people often condemn what they are not able to get The Gospels abound in parables See *Matthew*, XIII, for instance.

992 Paradox—A paradox is a statement apparently false or absurd but really true (cf. The Hydrostatic Paradox), as, 'There the richest was poor, and the poorest lived in abundance,' *i.e.*, the richest people were not content with what they had, and therefore felt as badly off as if they were poor, while the poorest people were content with what they had and felt as well off as if they were rich.

993. Paragoge is a figure by which a letter or syllable is added at the end of a word, as, *awaken* for *awake*

994. Patalepsis or Omission is a figure by which we pretend to omit what we are really desirous of enforcing "Your idleness, *not to mention your impertinence and dishonesty*, disqualifies you for the situation "I will not call him villain, because it would be unparliamentary I will not call him fool, because he happens to be Chancellor of the Exchequer." "

995 Ponomasia (Pun, Play upon Words) is a figure by which the same word is used in different senses, or words similar in sound are used as if they were the same word, so as to present an odd or ludicrous idea. If we met a person whose name is Sheppard, alone, and asked him "Where is your *flock*?" meaning his family, we should be punning on his name

996 Pathetic Fallacy—The Pathetic Fallacy is a figure by which inanimate objects in Nature are described as sympathising with the gladness or sorrow of persons. In the description of the march of the confederate armies to Waterloo in Byron's *Childe Harold*, Canto III, there is the following very fine example of this figure. The dew-drops falling from the leaves of the trees of the forest of Aidenes are there spoken of as tears shed by them for the unreturning brave!

And Ardennes waves above them her green leaves,
Dewy with Nature's ten drops, as they pass,
Grieving, if aught inanimate are grooves,
Over the unreturning brave,—alas!
Ere evening to be trodden like the grass,
Which now beneath them, but above shall grow
In its next verdure, when the fiery mass
Of living valour, rolling on the foe,
And burning with high hope, shall moulder cold and low.

997. Periphrasis is a figure by which we express an idea in a round-about way, *i.e.*, use a great many more words than are necessary to express it, as, if we should say "Whatever he says is in direct antagonism to the truth" meaning "He is a liar"

* From a speech of Grattan in the House of Commons

998. Personification See *Prosopopœia*

999. Pleonasm consists of additions not required to bring out the sense, i.e., *redundant* expressions, as, 'They returned back again to the same city from whence they came forth'

Here all the italicised words are superfluous and should be omitted

Redundancy is only allowable when it adds force and clearness to a sentence, as, 'I saw it with my own eyes'

Difference between Pleonasm and Tautology.—

While Tautology adds a superfluous word in the same grammatical place, Pleonasm repeats the meaning in another, as, 'I rejoiced at the glad sight'

1000 Polysyndeton is the frequent repetition of the connective, as, 'Sloth, and lust, and wantonness' 'We have ships, and money, and men, and stores'

1001. Prolepsis is a figure by which objections are anticipated or prevented as, if in explaining a proposal or scheme, we should say "But some one may ask 'where is the money to come from?' I will explain how we can find the means to carry out this scheme, &c."

1002 Prosopopœia (Personification) consists in attributing life and mind to inanimate things, as, 'the mountains sing together, the hills rejoice and clap hands,' 'The sun sank into the ocean in all his glory'

1003 Prothesis (Prosthesis) is the addition of one or more letters to the beginning of a word, as *smelt* (melt) *belored* (loved)

1004 Pun See *Paronomasia*

1005 Sarcasm a kind of irony, is a keen satirical expression, intended to insult and mortify a person. "'Did that lawyer acquire his enormous wealth by his practice?' 'Yes, by his practices.'"

1006 √ Simile — A simile or formal comparison expresses the resemblance in some particular between two objects of different kinds or species, the resemblance being generally expressed by *as* or *like*, as, 'He is as firm as a rock' See next Chapter

1007 Syllepsis is agreement formed according to the figurative sense of a word or the mental conception of the thing spoken of, and not according to the literal or common use of the term It is generally connected with some figure of Rhetoric as synecdoche or personification As, "While Evening draws

her curtain round " This is Gould Brown's definition of the figure. Hiley gives quite a different one

1008 **Synæresis** is the contraction of two vowels or of two syllables into one, as, *ae* in *Israel*, *aa* in *Aaron*. It is the opposite of *Diaeresis*

1009. **Syncope** is the omission of a letter or syllable or the blending together of two syllables in the middle of a word, as, *lov'd*, for *loved*, *serton*, for *sacristan*

1010 **Synecdoche** or **Comprehension**—The term *synecdoche* is applied to different kinds of figures, which it would be difficult to include in one definition

The different forms of *synecdoche* are —

- 1 Where the part is put for the whole, as, 'Fifty sail' (i.e., fifty ships), 'all hands are at work' (i.e., all persons), 'no useless coffin enclosed his breast' (i.e., his body)
- 2 Where the whole is put for the part, as, 'The smiling year,' for the spring, 'cursed be the day when a man child was born'
- 3 Where the material is put for the thing made of it, as, 'The glittering steel,' (for the sword), 'the canvas glows,' (for the picture)
- 4 When a feeling is put for the object that inspire it, as, 'A moonlight walk is my delight' (i.e., a thing that gives me delight), 'my love,' (the person I love)
- 5 Where the special is put for the general, as, 'Give us this day our daily bread,' (i.e., all the necessities of life), 'cut throat for murderers'
- 6 Where the general is put for the special, as, 'A vessel' for a ship, 'a creature' for a human being, 'Preach the gospel to every creature'
- 7 Where the individual is put for the class, as, 'Every man is not a Solomon,' (i.e., a wise man), 'He is a Christus,' (i.e., an immensely rich man)

N.B.—This kind of *synecdoche* is called *antonomasia*

- 8 Where the concrete is put for the abstract, as,
'A tyrant's power in rigour is exprest,
The father returns in the true prince's breast'
Father is here used for fatherly affection
- 9 Where the abstract is put for the concrete, as, 'Youth is thoughtless,' (i.e., young men are thoughtless)

1011 **Tautology** is the repetition of the same sense in different words, as, 'In the Attic Commonwealth it was the birth right and privilege of every citizen and poet to rail aloud and in public' The meaning is the same as, 'It was the privilege of every citizen to rail in public'

1012. **Tautophony** is the repetition of the same word in a different sense each time as, 'At one high *bound*, o'eileaped all *bound*.'

1013. **Tmesis** separates the parts of compound words by putting a word between them as, '*To God ward*' that is, 'toward God'

1014. **Transferred Epithet** is a figure in which an epithet is shifted from its proper subject to some allied subject or circumstance, as, 'Hence to his *idle* bed' (It is not the *bed* that is *idle*, but the person who lies on it) 'The little fields made green by husbandry of many *thrifty* years'

1015. **Vision** represents something that is past, future, absent or simply imagined, as actually present or passing before our eyes as, "One morning, while they were at breakfast, up *gallops* a *troop* of horse" "Soldiers' from yonder pyramids, forty generations of men *look* down upon you"

1016. **Zeugma** is a figure in grammar, by which an adjective or verb, which agrees with a nearer word, is referred by way of supplement, to one more remote, as, 'They *wear* a garment like the Scythians but, a language peculiar to themselves' Here we have "wear a language" for "speak a language."



CHAPTER XVII.

SIMILE, METAPHOR, AND PERSONIFICATION

1017 In order to describe an object that has not been seen we use the description of some object or objects that have been seen. Thus to describe a line to a person who had never seen one, we should say that it had something like a horse's mane, the claws of a cat, &c. We might say 'A lion is like a monstrous cat with a horse's mane'. This sentence expresses a likeness of things, or a *similarity*.

1018 **Simile** —In order to describe *some relation* that cannot be seen, e.g., the relation between the ship and the water as regards the action of the former upon the latter, to a landsman who had never seen the sea or a ship, we might say 'The ship acts upon the water as a plough turns up the land'. In other words, the *unknown relation* between the ship and the sea is *similar* to the *known relation* between the plough and the land. This sentence expresses a *similarity of relations*, and is called a *simile*.

It is frequently expressed thus, 'As the plough turns up the land, so the ship acts on the sea.'

Def —A simile is a sentence expressing a similarity of relations.

1019 **Compression of simile into metaphor** —When a simile has been long in use there is a tendency to consider the relations which are *similar* as *not merely similar* but as *identical*, i.e., as being one and the same relation. The *simile* asserts that the relation between the ship and the sea is *like* ploughing. The *compressed simile* goes further and asserts that the relation between the ship and the sea *is* ploughing. It is expressed thus 'The ship ploughs the sea.'

Thus the relation between the plough and the land is *transferred* to the ship and the sea. A simile thus compressed is called a *metaphor*, literally a *transference*.

Def—A metaphor is a transference of the relation between one set of objects to another for the purposes of brief explanation or ornament.

1020 Metaphor fully stated or implied—A metaphor may be either *fully stated*, as, 'The ship *ploughs* (is the plough of) the sea', or *implied*, as, 'The winds are the horses which draw the *plough of the sea*'. In the former case it is distinctly stated, in the latter it is implied, that *the plough of the sea* represents a ship.

1021 Metaphor Expanded—As every simile can be compressed into a metaphor, so, conversely, every metaphor, can be expanded into its simile. The following is the rule for expansion.

It has been said above that the simile is the similarity of two relations, and as for every relation, there must be two terms, every simile must, when fully expressed, have four terms like a proposition. In the third term of the simile, stands the subject (*ship* for instance) whose unknown predicated relation (*the action of the ship on the water*) is to be explained. In the first term, stands the corresponding subject whose predicated relation is known. In the second term is the known relation. The fourth term is the unknown predicated relation which requires explanation. Thus

	Known subject	Known predicate		Subject whose predicate is unknown	Unknown predicate
As	the plough	turns up the land	so	the ship	acts on the sea

Other examples of the expansion of metaphor into simile are given at the end of this chapter.

1022 Personal metaphor is personification implying comparison. Some personifications do not imply any comparison, as, 'frowning wrath,' while others do, as, 1. 'a frowning mountain,' 2. 'a prattling brook.' The first kind cannot be expanded into similes, the second can.

1. Just as a person's face looks dark when he frowns, so the mountain looks gloomy when it is overhanging.
2. Just as a child makes a ceaseless cheerful noise when it rattles, so the brook makes a cheerful noise when it flows.

1023 Confusions of similarity—There is really no metaphor in *a warm heart*, *a clear head*, and similar expressions. These false metaphors are found in all languages, and indicate a belief that certain mental or moral qualities are caused by, or are identical with, certain qualities of the bodily organs. Originally when a generous, loving man was said to be *warm-hearted*, it was believed that the *physical organ*, the heart, of such a person was *literally* warm, and that that was the cause of his generous and loving disposition. There is here therefore no transference of relations and consequently no metaphor.—*Abbott and Seeley (Adapted)*

1024 Metaphor and simile combined.—Sometimes we have a simile within a metaphor.

"I have ventured
Like little wanton boys, that swim on bladders,
 This many summers in a sea of glory"
—Shakespeare
 "Our hearts, though stout and brave,
 Still *like* muffled drums, are beating
 Funeral marches to the grave"
—Longfellow
 "Give me the line, that ploughs its stately course,
Like a proud swan, conquering the stream by force"

There can be no objection to such a combination, provided the expressed and the implied comparison are consistent as in the above examples.

1025 Mixed or Incongruous Metaphors.—Different metaphors ought never to be blended together in the same sentence. The use of mixed or incongruous metaphor is one of the grossest abuses of that figure. Some writers begin sentences with storms and tempests, and close them with fire and flames.

Addison in his "Letter from Italy" has

"I bridle in my struggling Muse with pain,
 That longs to launch into a nobler strain"

To bridle a goddess is no very delicate idea, but why must she be bridled? Because she longs to launch—an act which was never hindered by a bridle. And whither would she launch? Into a nobler strain. In the first line she is a *horse*, in the second a *boat*, and the care of the poet is to keep his horse or his boat from *singing*.

1026 EXAMPLES OF METAPHORS EXPANDED INTO SIMILES:

- 1 Metaphor—Integrity is the backbone of character
 Simile—As the backbone is essential to an erect form, so integrity is essential to character
- 2 Met—Infancy is the dawn of life
 Sim—As the dawn is the beginning of the day, so infancy is the beginning of life
- 3 Met—The deck was then field of battle

- Sim* —As one gains a victory on the battlefield, so they obtained fame on the deck
1. *Met* —The path to fame is rugged
Sim —As it is difficult to walk over rugged ground, so it is difficult to get fame
5. *Met* —Procrastination is the thief of time
Sim —As a thief takes away a thing without our knowledge, so procrastination (delay) takes away our time without our knowledge
6. *Met* —The rude marble of the soul is shaped into a beautiful statue by education
Sim —What sculpture is to a block of stone, so education is to the soul

1027. Two Degrees of Personification —Personification is a figure of various degrees, which constitute so many kinds of the figure

(1) The highest degree ascribes to the objects personified, human feelings and purposes, and distinction of gender, as in Milton, on Eve's taking the forbidden fruit —

"So saying, her rash hand, in evil hour,
 Forth reaching to the fruit, she pluck'd, she ate,
 Earth felt the wound, and Nature, from her seat,
 Sighing through all her works, gave signs of woe,
 That all was lost"

Personification is also used to account for results in the outer world, of which the causes are not visible. Hence the Winds and the Seasons are connected or identified with persons, e g, Zephyr, Flora, and other natural objects which seem to have a kind of life, are personified in the same way. Thus trees are personified as Dryads. It must be remembered however, that to the Greeks and Romans, these names represented not personified objects, but actual persons.

Besides the actual objects of Nature, it is not unusual to personify qualities, states, actions, and abstract ideas as *time*, *life*, *death*, *truth*, *love*, *virtue*, *evil*, *sin*, *hope*, *wisdom*, *genius*, *friendship*, *pleasure*, *vengeance*

(2) Another and inferior degree of personification consists in merely attributing some quality of living beings to things inanimate, as when we speak of the *thirsty* ground, a *dying* lamp, the *angry* sea, a *cruel* disaster, or the *smiling* year. Thomson, describing the influence of the sunbeams upon the snow in the valley, says —

"Perhaps the vale
 Relents awhile to the neglected ray"

Gray has

"Upon a rock whose haughty brow"

Nations and cities, e g, England, France, Rome, Jerusalem,

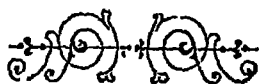
are also regarded as persons possessing individual characteristics.

The former kind of personification constitutes personification properly so called, and is always meant when we speak of personification, simply, the latter is half-way between metaphor and personification, and is therefore termed *Personal Metaphor*

1028. Personification Analysable, but not Expandible —The process of expansion into simile can be performed in the case of a personal metaphor, because there is implied a comparison. But the process cannot be performed in a personification where no comparison is implied. "A frowning mountain" can be expanded, because this is a metaphor implying a comparison between a mountain and a person, a gloom and a frown. But "frowning Wrath" cannot be expanded, because this is a personification implying no comparison. The same applies to "the joyful Dryads," and so on.

It is the essence of a Metaphor that it should be literally false, as in "a frowning mountain." It is the essence of a Personification that, though founded on imagination, it is conceived to be literally true, as in "pale Fear," "dark Dishonour." A painter would represent "Death" as "pale," and "Dishonour," as "dark," though he would not and could not, represent a "mountain" with a "frown," or a "ship" as a "plough."

Apparent Exception —The only case where a simile is involved, and an expansion is possible, is where there is an implied metaphor as well as a personification. Thus the phrase "Mars mows down his foes" is not literally true. No painter would represent Mars (though he would Time) with a scythe. It is therefore a metaphor, and, as such, capable of expansion, thus "As easily as a haymaker mows down the grass, so easily does Mars cut down his foes with his sword." But the phrase "Mars slays his foes" is, from a poet's or painter's point of view, *literally* true. It is therefore no metaphor, and cannot be expanded.



CHAPTER XVIII

EPITHETS,

ORNAMENTAL AND ESSENTIAL

1029 The term *epithet* is derived from the Greek *epithelos*, literally *placed to*, and denotes an adjective *placed to* a noun to describe some quality of, or circumstance connected with, the person or thing denoted by the noun.

There are two kinds of Epithets—Ornamental and Essential.

1030. Ornamental Epithets —These are simply added to give life and colour to a picture, that is, to make a description more vivid and beautiful. Take the following example

‘His dog attends him and now with many a frisk
Wide scampering snatches up the drifted snow
With *ivory* teeth’

Here *ivory* seems intended to bring out the contrast between the yellowish whiteness of the dog’s teeth, and the perfect whiteness of the snow

‘The swan with *arched* neck
Between her *white* wings mantling proudly, rows
Her state with *only* feet’

Here *white* adds nothing to the meaning, as is evident from the fact that its omission would not affect the meaning at all. It is used to make the description more vivid, and is an ornamental epithet

Of the same kind are ‘ *the tawny* lion,’ ‘ *his brinded* mane,’ ‘ *the swift* stag,’ ‘ *his branching* head.’

Such epithets would not be allowed in ordinary prose unless it were necessary to *call attention* to the tawny colour of the lion, or to the branching horns of the stag, as for instance, ‘the *tawny* lion was almost invisible as he couched on the dry and leafless sand, while the *branching* head of the stag stood out in clear relief against the sky’ *Tawny* here shows *why* the lion was invisible, *viz* , because his colour was nearly the same as that of the sand on which he couched, *branching* also shows the reason of the stag’s horns being visible. Hence these are

essential epithets; their omission would take away from the meaning

1031. **Essential Epithets** —The following are examples of *Essential Epithets*

'What shook the stage, and made the people stare'
Cato's *long* wig, *flowered* gown, and *requeired* chair
Exact Racine and Corneille's noble fire
Showed us that France had something to admire'

In these examples '*Cato's long wig*' really means 'the length of Cato's wig', and '*exact Racine*' is put for 'Racine's exactness', the epithets *long* and *exact* are parts of the subject, and are therefore *Essential Epithets*

1032 The best test to find out whether a given epithet is essential or ornamental is to omit it and see what effect the omission has on the meaning of the sentence. If the omission does not take away from the meaning, the epithet is *ornamental*. If it does, it is *essential*.



CHAPTER XIX. IDIOMS

EXPLAINED AND ILLUSTRATED.

1033. 'Idiom' is used in two different senses, viz

1. First sense —It denotes the general structure of a language in respect of its grammar and syntax, by which it is distinguished from another language or family of languages, and which gives it a special character of its own. For instance it is an idiom of the Latin language that we can conjugate a verb without expressing the pronoun that marks the person, while in English we cannot do so without the personal pronoun. Thus, we say in Latin, *sum, es, est*, but in English, *I am, thou art, he is*. The idiom of a language, in this sense, may be to a large extent, mastered by a careful study of its grammar.

2 Second sense Idiotisms —Secondly the word 'idiom' is employed to denote those uses or particular words or of combinations of particular words, which are contrary to the general syntax of the language, and which are commonly known as phrases or phraseological expressions. These may be distinguished from idioms proper by giving them, as Professor Marsh proposes, the name of *idiotisms*, and it is idiotisms that we are going to explain and illustrate.

Abide *Abide by*, act according to, acquiesce in. 'If you refer your dispute to me, you must agree to abide by my decision.'

Account *Account for*, 1 explain 'Idleness accounts for poverty' 2 answer for 'We must account for the use of our opportunities.'

Act *Act up to*, fulfil 'He has acted up to his promise.'

Add *Add fuel to the flame* make matters worse, make a person who is angry, more angry 'To try to explain the matter to him in his present temper will only add fuel to the flame.'

Add insult to injury, to insult one after doing him an injury. 'To offer assistance to a man whom you have deprived of his livelihood, is only adding insult to injury.'

After *After all*, 1 Though so much has been said or done about it 'I do not think much of this horse after all' 2 Finally or in the end 'So you went after all,' i.e., after saying so much about not going

Agree *Agree to*, yield assent to 'Do you agree to my proposal'

Agree with 1 suit, 2 be conformable to 'Brinjals do not agree with my constitution.' 'The picture does not agree with the original.'

Airs *Give oneself airs, put on airs*, be affected and haughty in manner 'He puts on airs to make people think him a man of great consequence'

Alert *On the alert*, prompt, ready, vigilant 'A sentinel must be always on the alert'

All *All in all*, all things to a person, everything desired
Thou shalt be all in all and I in thee,
Forever

To all appearance, apparently, as far as can be judged from external appearances 'To all appearance he was dead.'

It is all over (up) with him, he is ruined, dead, &c 'If he does not get money within a week, it is all over with him'

Answer *Answer for*, be responsible for 'The man must answer to his employer for the money intrusted to his care'

Answer to, correspond to 'Cupid answers to the Hindu Kāmadēva'

At *At any rate*, at all events, in any case, whether such be the case or not, whatever else may be the case 'He will pass, at any rate, that is my opinion', 'I have as good a chance as you, at all events'

At daggers drawn, in a state of deadly enmity 'They have been at daggers drawn, ever since they quarrelled at the races'

At issue, 1 in dispute 'Let us first clearly state the point at issue' 2 at variance 'We are at issue on this point'

At large, 1 free, unconfined 'a prisoner at large' 2 fully or in detail 'to discourse on a subject at large'

At loggerheads, at strife 'The two friends are now at loggerheads'

At once, immediately 'He replied at once to my letter'

At one's beck and call writing for one's orders, servilely ready to obey them 'I am not your servant, to be at your beck and call'

At one's hands, from one 'We have received much kindness at your hands'

At random, without care or consideration 'He is talking at random'

At sixes and sevens, in utter disorder and confusion 'His affairs are all at sixes and sevens.'

At variance, in a state of disagreement, or unfriendly terms 'They have been at variance ever since their father died'

Bargain *Into the bargain*, in addition 'He failed in his attempt and nearly lost his life into the bargain'

Make a bargain, buy or sell advantageously 'He swears he has made a bargain in buying that horse for a hundred rupees.'

Bear *Bear date*, be dated 'The letter bears date the 25th of January 1890'

Bear down, overthrow or crush by force 'They were borne down by the enemy's large force'

Bear down upon, approach with a fair wind. 'The fleet bore down upon the enemy'

Bear a hand, assist 'I can easily finish the work, if you are willing to bear a hand'

Bear in mind, remember 'I hope you will bear in mind the advice I have given you'

Bear out, support or confirm 'Your statement is not borne out by facts'

Bear up, support, keep from falling or sinking, (*into*) to be firm, not to sink 'His patience alone bore him up in his troubles', 'I must try to bear up against this misfortune.'

Bear with, 'endure, be indulgent to' 'I beg you will bear with me a little, and not take notice of what I said.'

Beat *Beat about the bush*, not come directly to the matter in hand 'Do not be beating about the bush but tell me at once what you have come for'

Beat down, destroy, crush lesson 'To beat down a wall 'To beat down opposition' 'To beat down the price of an article'

Beat off, repel or drive back 'The enemy were beaten off'

Beg *Beg the question*, assume as true the very thing to be proved 'He begged the question half a dozen times in the course of the argument'

Behaviour *On one's good behaviour*, in a state of trial 'He is on his good behaviour just now, and will therefore be careful what he does.'

Bent *Bent upon a thing*, determined to do it 'He is bent on my ruin'

Beside *Beside oneself*, out of one's wits or senses, 'He was beside himself with grief.'

Bid *Bid fair*, be likely 'He bids fair to become a good painter'

Birds *Birds of a feather*, persons of the same character
'Birds of a feather flock together.'

Birds of passage (*fig*), persons who stay only temporarily in a country or place 'Most of our civilians are only birds of passage, they go home as soon as they have earned their pension'

Black *In black and white*, in writing 'Your verbal promise will not do, I must have it in black and white'

Blow. *Blow great guns*, blow very hard and loud (said of the wind) 'The wind rose fast, and it soon began to blow great guns'

Blow hot and cold, favour a thing at one time and treat it coldly at another, or appear to both favour and oppose 'We cannot trust a man who blows hot and cold with the same breath.'

Blow one's own trumpet, praise oneself 'Do not trust a man who is continually blowing his own trumpet, for a boaster is cousin-german to a liar'

Blow out, extinguish 'Blow out all the lights'

Blow up, drive up into the air by an explosive 'They are blowing up some parts of the Fort at Madras with dynamite'

Blow upon, taint, blast 'I will not allow my reputation to be blown upon.'

Books *Be in a person's good (bad) books*, be in favour (out of favour) with him 'I was so much in his good (bad) books that he left me £1,000 (nothing) in his will'

✓ *Cook books*, to tamper with accounts 'The merchant had to cook his books before he went in to the Insolvent Court'

Blood *In cold blood*, not under the influence of excitement or provocation, deliberately 'He was murdered in cold blood after the fight was over'

Bottom *Be at the bottom of*, be the secret cause of 'He was at the bottom of the conspiracy'

Break. *Break down*, 1. come down by breaking 'The coach broke down midway' 2. fail in an undertakings 'He broke down in the middle of his speech.'

Break of day, dawn 'They set out at break of day'

Break forth, burst out 'He broke forth into shouts of gladness'

Break from, burst or issue suddenly from 'Exclamations of surprise broke from them'

Break the heart of, kill or crush with grief 'Luke's conduct nearly broke his father's heart'

✓ *Break the ice*, get through first difficulties, to overcome obstacles and make a beginning 'For several minutes they sat without exchanging a word, but at last one of them broke the ice by making an observation on the weather'

Break in, train to saddle or harness 'A young horse must be broken in before he can be ridden'

Break in upon, disturb by a sudden entrance, enter suddenly, 'They broke in upon him while engaged in his devotions', 'A light broke in upon my brain'

Break into, enter by force 'Robbers broke into his house last night'

Break loose (away), extricate one's self forcibly, to shake off restraint 'Who would not, finding way, break loose from hell?'

Break off, stop or desist 'He broke off in the middle of his discourse'

Break open, open by breaking 'The police broke open the door.'

Break out, arise or appear suddenly 'Cholera has broken out in several parts of the Town'

Break through, violate, free one's self from 'He broke through every rule of morality, but could not break through the bonds of custom'

Break up, dissolve or put a sudden end to, to disperse 'The Chairman broke up the meeting', 'The meeting broke up at 8 o'clock'

Break upon the wheel, execute (a criminal) by stretching on a wheel and breaking the limbs with an iron bar—a punishment formerly used in Germany and France

Break with, quarrel with 'He has broken with nearly all his friends'

Breath Under one's breath, in a whisper 'As there were others who would overhear us, we had to speak under our breath'

Bring. Bring about, cause to happen 'I do not know what has brought about this wonderful change.'

Bring back, recall 'bring back to memory.'

Bring forth, bear, as offspring 'To bring forth children, or young'

Bring forward, produce to a view, adduce 'to bring forward one's reasons.'

Bring in, introduce, produce 'His estate brings in Rs. 1,000 a year.'

✓ *Bring to light*, reveal 'The inquiry has brought no new facts to light'

Bring to mind, recall to memory 'I can bring to mind even the slightest circumstance connected with that event'

Bring on, cause to begin 'Exposure brings on fever'

Bring out, show or expose 'Bring out the force of the figure'

Bring over, draw to a new party 'They soon brought him over to the side of the Government'

Bring to pass, cause to happen 'God alone can bring this desirable event to pass'

Bring to, restore to consciousness 'He fainted, and was brought to with great difficulty'

Bring up, 1 educate 'Bring up a child in the ways of truth and morality' 2 finish 'to bring up arrears'

✓ *Bring up the rear*, close the line of march 'The 8th Company under Captain A brought up the rear'

Bring under, subdue 'The rebels were not easily brought under'

✓ *Burn*. *Burn one's candle at both ends*, be extravagant 'If he goes on burning his candle at both ends, he will soon be a beggar.'

Burn's one fingers, get into unexpected trouble, as by speculation, or by meddling in the affairs of others 'He burnt his fingers by joining the new company, because it soon became bankrupt', 'having once burnt my fingers by trying to help him out of his difficulties, I will not interfere in his affairs again'

Burn out, 1. be consumed entirely by burning (said of a fire or a lamp) 'The servant allowed the lamp to burn out instead of extinguishing it' 'The fire soon burnt out for want of fuel.' 2 destroy by fire, 'They burnt out his eyes with hot iron'

Burn up, destroy by fire 'They burnt up all the waste paper'

Burn with (anger, &c), be inflamed with 'His heart was burning with high hope'

✓ *By*. *By and by*, gradually, presently 'The little boy will be and by be a young man.'

✓ *By the bye*, in passing—used in introducing an incidental or parenthetical remark into a discourse 'By the bye I forgot to tell you that we are to have no more exercises for some time'

Buy. *Buy off*, detach by a bribe 'to buy one off from a party'

Call *Call at*, (a place one's house) visit 'When do you intend to call at my place'

Call to account, demand an explanation from 'He was called to account for his conduct in that affair.'

Call back, revoke, summon back 'I will not call back any of my statements,' 'The Governor was called back at once'

Call down, invoke, bring down, 'They called down the vengeance of heaven upon their enemies', 'to call down thunderbolts from heaven'

Call forth, bring into action 'This work will call forth all his energies'

Call for, demand or require 'This statement calls for no remark', 'This offence calls exemplary punishment.'

Call in, collect, withdrawn from circulation 'to call in debts', 'to call in uncurrent coin.'

Call to mind, recollect 'Try to call the facts to mind'

Call off, summon away, to divert 'to call off one's attention', 'To call off workmen from their employment.'

Call one names, abuse one 'Children should not call one another names'

Call on (upon), 1 make a short visit to 'I called on my friend before I left' 2 invoke 'Call upon me in the day of trouble'

Call out, 1 speak aloud 'I called out to him from a distance' 2 ordered to assemble 'The volunteers were called out'

Call over, read out the particulars or items of anything 'to call over the attendance roll'

Call in question, express a doubt about 'No man likes to have his honesty called in question.'

Call a spade a spade, call things by their right names, be plain spoken 'It is sometimes inconvenient to call a spade a spade as it might wound the feeling of others'

Call up, bring to view or recollection 'to call up the image of an absent friend.'

Carry *Carry coals to Newcastle*, take a thing for sale to a place where it abounds, lose one's labour 'To take canes to Malacca is like carrying coals to Newcastle'

Carry off, 1 kill 'carried off by cholera' 2. bear away 'The wind carried off the smell'

Carry on, 1 promote or help forward 'to carry on a design' 2 prosecute or manage 'to carry on trade'

Carry out, accomplish 'to carry out a design or plan'

Carry through, sustain, or support to the end 'Grace will carry a man through all difficulties'

Catch *Catch at a thing*, be eager for it to try to get it 'A drowning man will catch at a straw'

Catch the eye of a person, meet his gaze 'If this should catch the eye of so and so, he will be good enough to communicate with the undersigned.'

Cast Cast about for, try to get 'As soon as the book was ready for publication, he began to cast about for subscribers'

Cast aside, reject as useless 'He soon got tired of his toy and cast it aside for a new one'

Cast away, throw away, reject 'Such a splendid opportunity should not be foolishly cast away'

Cast down, deject or depress in mind 'He looks very much cast down after his recent loss'

Cast (set) eyes on, see 'He is the ugliest man I have ever cast (set) eyes on'

✓ *Cast in one's teeth*, upbraid or blame one for 'I do not like your continually casting that foolish act of mine in my teeth'

Cast off, reject or discard 'His relatives and friends have cast him off entirely'

Cast out, throw or turn out 'Christ was accused of casting out evil spirits by the aid of the devil'

Cast up, compute 'You had better carefully cast up the expense of the thing, before you undertake it'

Change Change colour, turn pale with anger, fear, &c 'By the way he changed colour when he was accused of the offence, we could easily make out that he was guilty'

Charge Charge with, accuse of 'He was charged with theft'

Chew Chew the cud upon, reflect or meditate upon 'I cannot give you any answer to your proposal till I chew the cud upon it'

Coin Pay one in the same coin, return like for like, retaliate 'One who cheats another deserves to be paid in the same coin'

Clear Clear up, become fair (said of the weather) settle (as an account) 'It has been raining all day but will probably clear up in the evening', 'I have cleared up all accounts with him'

Close Close with, accede or agree to 'As his terms appear to be fair I will close with the proposal at once'

Come Come about, happen 'However did such a thing come about?'

Come by, get 'He came by his wealth by dishonest means'

Come home to, to press closely, to touch the feeling or interest of 'This argument came home to him'

Come in, be brought into use or fashion 'This custom came in with the Norman conquest'

Come of, issue from 'He comes of an illustrious stock', 'This comes of judging by the eye'

Come off, 1 emerge 'He came off victorious in the contest'
2 take place 'When does the anniversary celebration come off?'

Come on, approach 'Winter was coming on.'

Come out, become public 'The matter has come out at last.'

Come round, recover 'The doctors hope that he will come round.'

Come short of, be wanting in 'All have sinned and come short of the glory of God'

Come to, or *come to one's self*, recover consciousness 'He fell down in a swoon, and it was a long while before he came to (came to himself)'

Come upon, 1 fall upon, attack 'They came upon the enemy unawares' 2 meet with 'On their way they accidentally came upon an obstacle and had to turn back'

Come up to, amount to 'His debts come up to a lakh.'

Come up with, overtake 'I came up with the thief in an hour's time'

Credit. *Give me credit for*, believe that one has 'I gave him credit for sincerity', i.e., I thought he was sincere

Crow. *As the crow flies*, straight, direct (said of distances) 'The place is five miles from here by road, but it really is only three miles as the crow flies'

Cry. *Cry down*, depreciate, condemn 'We must not cry down a book simply because we dislike the author'

Cry up, praise or extol 'A merchant will naturally cry up his own goods'

Cry out, scream, complain loudly 'Don't cry out before you are hurt', 'The people cried out against the act'

Curry *Curry favour*, seek favour by flattery, &c 'He tries to curry favour with the master, by telling tales about the other boys'

Cups *In one's cups*, drunk 'It is dangerous to approach him when he is in his cups'

Cut *Cut a dash*, make a display 'He is cutting a dash with the money left him by his aunt'

Cut an acquaintance, refuse to recognize, or avoid recognizing 'I shall cut him the next time we meet'

Cut a figure, appear conspicuously to advantage or disadvantage 'He cut a very poor figure'

Cut and dried (dry), prepared beforehand, not spontaneous 'He had his speech cut and dried (dry)'

Cut down, reduce 'His allowances were cut down'

Be cut off, 1 die 'He was cut off in the flower of his youth' 2 intercept 'to cut off communication with the mainland'

Cut one's coat according to one's cloth, make one's expenditure proportionate to one's income

Cut out, shape 'to cut out clothes'

Cut short, abridge or shorten 'Please cut short your story'

Dead *Be dead against* be entirely opposed to 'He was dead against the scheme'

A dead language, one no longer spoken 'Greek and Latin are dead languages, because no one speaks them now'

A dead letter, something fallen into disuse, become obsolete 'That act has become a dead letter'

Dead loss, complete loss 'He thought he was making a bargain in buying the property, but as the title was bad, it turned out a dead loss'

Make a dead set at, make a determined attack upon 'He made a dead set at him and compelled him to retire'

Dead to, impervious or insensible to, incapable of feeling 'He is dead to all sense of shame'

Do *Do away with*, put an end to 'The custom has been done away with' 'His enemies did away with him'

Do by, treat 'Do as you would be done by'

Do for, answer or be sufficient for 'This will do for my purpose'

Do up, pack up 'Powders done in blue paper packets'

Do with, dispose of, employ 'What am I to do with this money?'

Have done with, have no further concern with 'I have done with him' 'I have done with that business'

Do without, dispense with 'We should learn to do without luxuries'

Deal *Deal in*, trade in 'Only licensed merchants can deal in sulphur or gunpowder'

Deal out, distribute 'He deals out his charity with a sparing hand'

Deal with, be a customer with 'It is dangerous to deal with a dishonest merchant'

Die *Die away*, become fainter and fainter (said of sounds) 'The sound died away in the distance'

Die out, become extinct 'The family died out in a few years.'

Dispense. *Dispense with*, do without 'I have dispensed with his services from the date'

Dispose *Dispose of*, part with, sell or give away 'He disposed of all his property before he left the place'

Draw *Draw back*, retire 'I will not draw back from the attempt, whatever danger I may have to encounter'

A drawn game or battle, one in which neither party wins 'The battle was declared to be a drawn one'

Draw off, retire abstract 'He drew off his forces from the field', 'to draw off liquor from a cask'

Draw on (upon), obtain money from by a *draft* or order 'I have drawn on the Bank for a large sum of money'

(*Metaphorically*—'We must draw on content for the deficiencies of fortune')

Draw out, extend, stretch 'It can be drawn out like gold or silver'

Draw the long bow, tell large stories, exaggerate 'He is very fond of drawing the long bow in relating his own deeds'

Draw up, form in writing as a petition arrange in order, as a body of troops 'A petition is being drawn up', 'The regiment was drawn up in marching order'

Ducks *Make ducks and drakes of one's money*, squander it away 'He is making ducks and drakes of the money he inherited from his uncle.'

Drink *Drink healths*, to drink wine in token of wishing health to others 'The custom of drinking healths is nearly obsolete'

Drink in, to absorb 'Blotting paper drinks in ink'

Drink to the health of, express good wishes for while drinking 'They first drank to the health of the Queen and then to that of the Prince of Wales'

Drink to, drink to the health of 'The party drank to their host with great enthusiasm'

Drive *Drive a bargain*, haggle about terms 'I have been driving a bargain with him for that horse for the last three weeks'

Drive a trade, carry on a business 'He is driving a good trade in leather.'

Drive back, force backward 'With great difficulty the besiegers drove back the enemy'

Drop *Drop in*, come in unexpectedly 'My old friend dropped in for a moment'

Drop off, desert or leave 'As he became poor, his friends dropped off one by one'

Drive *Drive off, away*, force to go away 'The smell of sulphur drives off mosquitoes', 'They drove him away from the place'

Dust *Bite the dust (lick the dust)*, be defeated in a contest 'His powerful antagonist soon made him bite (lick) the dust'

Ears *Up to the ears*, completely (used of debt, &c) 'He is up to his ears in debt'

End. *End and aim*, sole object 'O Happiness, our being's end and aim'

Enter *Enter into*, engage in, sympathize with 'to enter into a contract', 'to enter into another's feelings'

Enter upon, begin 'The new collector entered upon his duties yesterday'

Ever *Ever and anon*, frequently, every now and then 'Ever and anon the darkness was lighted up by a flash of lightning.'

Eye *Under the eye of*, under the inspection or supervision of 'This work machine was constructed under the eye of the inventor himself'

Keep (have) an eye on, watch 'You should always keep (have) an eye on your servants so that you may not be robbed'

Have an eye to, pay particular attention to 'He has an eye to his own advantage in everything that he does'

Fall *Fall away*, 1 lose flesh 'He has fallen away a great deal since his illness' 2 decrease in numbers 'His followers fell away rapidly'

Fall from, withdraw from 'to fall from one's allegiance'

Fall in with, 1 agree with 'He fell in with my views', 'The measure fell in with public opinion' 2 meet with 'In the way he fell in with thieves'

Fall off, 1 withdraw or become separated 'Friends fall off in adversity' 2 perish, die away 'Words fall off by disuse.' 3 drop 'Fruits fall off when ripe'

Fall on, assault 'They fell on him, and threw him down.'

Fall short of, be less than 'The result fell short of my expectations'

Fall to, begin eagerly and hastily 'Fall to, with eager joy, on homely food'

Fall under, 1 come under 'These things do not fall under human sight or observation' 2 be reckoned in 'These substances fall under a different class'

Face *Make faces*, distort the countenance 'He is very fond of making faces at people'

In the face of, before, against, or in the front of 'How could you do such a thing in the face of my orders to the contrary'

Fair *Be a day after the fair*, arrive when all the festivities or amusements are over. If a person comes to a performance, for example, when it is over and the people are going home, we tell him 'You are a day after the fair'

Far *By far*, very much, in a great degree 'He is by far the best of the three.'

Far and near, everywhere 'The news soon spread far and near'

Far and wide, extensively 'He circulated the notice far and wide'

Fault *Be at fault*, have lost one's reckoning, not know how to proceed (like a dog losing scent of his game) 'They had managed to get so far, but now they were at fault'

Be in fault, to have offended 'It is difficult to say whether the master or the servant was more in fault in the matter'

Find fault with, blame 'He has been found fault with for his connection with the affair'

Feather *A feather in one's cap*, a honour or mark of distinction, something to be proud of 'This success was another feather in his cap'

Feather one's nest, provide for one's self from property passing through one's hands (used in a bad sense) 'The overseer was dismissed for receiving bribes, but he did not mind it, as he had feathered his nest well'

Shew the white feather, shew signs of cowardice 'A British soldier should never shew the white feather to an enemy'

Find *Find in one's heart to do a thing*, to be hard-hearted or cruel enough to do it 'He could not find it in his heart to make his servant over to the police for the theft, because the poor man had a large family'

Find out, discover, detect, 'The police are trying in vain to find out the thief'

Finger *Have at one's fingers' ends*, be thoroughly familiar with 'The little boy has the multiplication table at his finger's ends'

Fire *Carry fire and sword into*, lay waste by those means 'He carried fire and sword into the enemy's country'

Through fire and water, through all danger 'The true lover will go through fire and water for his mistress' sake'

Under fire, exposed to the guns of the enemy 'The attacking force was under fire for six hours before they could burst open the gates of the fort'

Fish Like a fish out of water, out of one's own element 'The new Lecturer feels like a fish out of water, because he has never studied the subject on which he has to lecture.'

Fit Fit out, to supply with necessities or means 'To fit out a vessel or expedition'

Fit up, to furnish with things suitable 'To fit up a house for a guest'

Fits By fits and starts, impulsively and irregularly 'One who studied the subject by fits and starts cannot expect to master it'

Flesh Flesh and blood, human nature 'Flesh and blood could not endure more'

Fly Fly at, attack violently 'When she is in a temper she flies at the first person she comes across'

Fly into, get suddenly into 'He flies into a temper when he is found fault with'

Fly open, open suddenly or with violence 'The door flew open as soon as I knocked at it'

Fool Make a fool of, cause to appear ridiculous 'They tried to make a fool of him by persuading him to apply for the post'

Foot On foot, walking 'He went on foot to the station, to save carriage hire.'

Gain Gain ground upon, get an advantage over, to have some success over 'The force began to gain ground upon the enemy'

Gain on, get nearer to 'His pursuers were fast gaining on him.'

Gain over, draw to another party or interest 'They tried to gain him over to their side by offering him a bribe'

Get Get ahead, advance, prosper 'Now that he has got a start he will get ahead fast enough'

Get along, proceed 'We must manage to get along with our small means'

Get at, come near, reach 'I could not get at him on account of the crowd'

Get away, leave, escape 'I got away early from the meeting'

Get back, recover, (intr) return 'He tried to get back the money he had paid in excess', 'He got back safe to his house.'

Get off, 1 alight from 'He got off the horse' 2 escape
'He got off from the encounter unhurt'

Get clear of, be freed from 'He has got clear of his debts'

Get down, descend 'He got down from the platform'

Get forward, advance 'This is very discouraging to one who is trying to get forward in the world.'

Get hold of, seize 'He has got hold of his brother's share of the property in addition to his own'

Get in, enter 'Don't stand at the door, get in'

Get into, enter, become involved in 'They could not get into the house as the doors were locked from the inside', 'He has got into serious trouble.'

Get loose, become free 'He got loose from jail'

Get on, proceed, fare 'How are you getting on with the work?'

Get out, escape to get out of a difficulty or danger'

Get over, overcome 'to get over difficulties'

Get rid of, free one's self from 'He cannot get rid of the habit'

Get round, recover 'The patient is getting round, but very slowly'

Get to, reach 'We have got to the end of the first book.'

Get together, assemble or convene 'He got all his creditors together'

Get the better of, overcome 'I thought I could get the better of him in the competition'

Get the day, win the victory, be successful 'The English got the day, but not without great loss'

Get through, finish 'He has got through half the work'

Get up, 1 rise from sleep 'Children should get up early in the morning', 2 prepare 'to get up an entertainment'

Get up by heart, learn so as to be able to repeat from memory 'The definitions of Euclid must be got up by heart'

Get up by rote, learn by heart by repeating over and over 'He could not explain the definitions as he had simply got them up by rote'

Give, *Give away*, give gratuitously 'He gave away all his property to the poor'

Give ear to, listen to 'Give ear to sensible advice.'

Give in, yield 'Though defeated, he would not give in.'

Give out, emit 'This substance gives out no odour'

Give over, abandon 'He gave over the pursuit as unprofitable'

Give rise to, cause or produce 'His conduct gave rise to grave suspicion.'

Give up, resign, cease from 'to give up an idea or attempt'

Give up a riddle, acknowledge one's inability to solve it

Give vent to, allow to escape, express 'He gave vent to his grief in tears'

Give way, yield to pressure 'The axle-tree gave way'

Go Go abroad, go out of the country 'He is going abroad for a year'

Go astray, wander from the right course 'They have gone astray from the path of virtue'

Go for nothing 'Be of no use, or be considered of no value'

Go hard with, cause serious trouble or danger to 'It will go hard with you if you are caught a second time'

Go off, 1 depart 'He went off home' 2 be discharged 'The gun would not go off'

Go on, proceed 'Everything went on as usual for a time'

Go out, become extinguished 'The light went out'

Go over, 1 read 'Go over a book,' traverse 'We have to go over the whole ground again' 2 change sides 'Go over from one party to another'

Go the way of all flesh, die

Go through, suffer 'If you knew all I have gone through, you would pity me'

Good Be as good as one's word 'Do exactly as one says'

For good, finally or permanently 'He is gone home for good'

Hold good, remain in effect, be applicable 'What law holds good in this case.'

Grudge One one a grudge, have a feeling of enmity towards one 'He has long owed me a grudge for having exposed his dishonesty'

Guard Be on one's guard 'Be vigilant or watchful, so as not to be surprised or cheated' 'As I suspected his honesty I had to be on my guard in dealing with him'

Hand At one's hands, from one 'For all the kindness I have received at your hands, I am truly grateful'

A good hand at, one able to do well 'He is a good hand at composition'

Hand and glove, very intimate 'The two fellows are hand and glove and we cannot expect one of them to give information without consulting the other'

Carry things with a high hand 'Act arrogantly'

Come to hand, be received 'Your letter came to hand to day'

Hand down, transmit in succession as from father to son

'This story has been handed down from father to son for several generations.'

Have on hand, have in present possession 'The merchant had not on hand the goods I wanted'

Have (get) the upper hand, be (become) superior 'On account of his success in the examination, he has the upper hand of me.'

In hand, in present possession 'This is all the money I have in hand at present'

Lend one a hand, help one 'I asked him to lend me a hand in doing the work.'

Live from hand to mouth, live precariously without provision for the future 'He lives from hand to mouth on his small earnings as a bricklayer'

On all hands, by all parties 'It was admitted on all hands that he was not to blame.'

Hand round, circulate 'Attar and pan were handed round at the close of the ceremony'

Try one's hand at, attempt 'I have never done it before, but I would not mind trying my hand at it'

Hand up, over, deliver 'I have a great mind to hand you up to the police', 'The property has been handed over to his son'

Wash one's hands of a thing, profess innocence in respect of it, declare that one has nothing to do with it 'As soon as he found the concern failing he washed his hands of it'

Hand in hand, in union together

'Behold in these what leisure hours demand,
Amusement and true knowledge hand in hand (*Courpei*)

Have a hand in, be concerned in 'I strongly suspect him of having a hand in this business.'

Have one's hand full, be fully occupied 'I have my hands quite full just now, and cannot think of taking any more work.'

Hard Hard by, near, close to 'Hard by there ran a little brook'

Hard up, pressed 'hard up for money, provisions, &c.'

Have Have in view, purpose or design, 'I had a new expedition in view'

Have on, wear (said of dress) 'Do you remember what suit you had on at the time?'

Have to do with, be concerned in or connected with 'I must remember I have to do with a rogue'

Head Over head and ears, completely This phrase is generally used in speaking of *love* or *debt*, as 'He is over head and ears in love (in debt)'

Make head against, resist 'The rebels could not long make head against the Government, and had to surrender at discretion'

Turn one's head (brain), make one giddy, to make one forget one-self 'Looking down from the top of a tower turns our head', 'Sudden prosperity has turned his head'

From head to foot, throughout the body 'He was covered with boils from head to foot'

Heart *Heart and soul*, with great zeal or earnestness 'He enters heart and soul into any work he undertakes'

Lose heart, become discouraged 'We must not lose heart because we happen to fail at the first attempt'

Take to heart, be much troubled or grieved by 'He has taken his friend's coolness very much to heart'

Take heart, gain courage 'Though he failed he took heart and tried again'

With all one's heart, most gladly or willingly 'I will do it with all my heart'

Heels *At the heels of*, closely following 'One misfortune often follows at the heels of another.'

Home *Make oneself at home*, make oneself comfortable, as at one's own home 'Don't be shy, but make yourself at home'

Be at home in, have a thorough knowledge of 'A man must not attempt to teach any subject, unless he is at home in it'

From home, not at home 'He was from home when I went to see him'

Hold *Hold fast*, adhere firmly to 'Try all things, and hold fast that which is good'

Hold on, continue 'I find it impossible to hold on any longer, and I must therefore resign my place'

Hold in play, keep occupied 'They held the enemy in play till the others had cut down the bridge'

Hold one's own, maintain one's ground 'I can hold any one against him in argument'

Hold one's peace, be silent 'Speak now, or henceforth hold your peace'

Lay hold of, seize 'He laid hold of the first weapon that met his eye'

Hold out, resist, refuse to yield, present 'They held out against the besiegers for six months', 'I can hold out no prospect of increase or promotion to you'

Hold together, remain united 'The coat was so tattered, that it could not hold together much longer'

Hold up, sustain 'His own innocence held him up in the midst of all his troubles'

Hold water, be valid (as an argument) 'That argument will not hold water'

Holes. *Pick holes in a persons' character*, find out faults in it 'We must not try to pick holes in each other's character.'

Hook *By hook or by crook*, by any means, by fair means or foul 'When he set his mind on a thing, he would get it by hook or by crook'

Horse. *Take horse*, get on horseback 'He took horse and started on his journey at once'

Hush *Hush up*, suppress, prevent from becoming public 'The matter was hushed up.'

Impose *Impose upon*, cheat, deceive 'He is so simple that he can be easily imposed upon.'

In *The ins and outs of a thing*, all its intricacies and secrets. 'I know the ins and outs of the affair.'

Intents *To tell intents and purposes*, practically 'He is to all intents and purposes the owner of the property, though his father is living'

Issue *At issue*, 1 in dispute 'This is the point at issue', 2 at variance, 'We are at issue on this point,' i.e., we disagree, &c

Keep. *Keep back*, reserve or withhold 'I will not keep it back from you'

Keep company, associate 'He came to grief by keeping company with rogues'

Keep down, hold under control 'Keep down your temper'

Keep from, refrain from 'He cannot keep from drinking'

Keep in, restrain 'He could not keep in his tears'

Keep off, not admit 'This will keep off intruders'

Keep on, continue to advance 'In spite of difficulties, he kept on steadily'

Keep one's own counsel, not tell one's intentions, &c., to another 'He is too talkative to keep his own counsel'

Keep to, adhere to, do according to. 'keep to a custom,' 'keep to one's word'

Keep up, maintain 'He keeps up a large establishment'

Kind *In kind*, in produce or other commodity as distinguished from money 'The tenants pay their rents in kind.'

Large *At large*, free, unconfined 'The prisoner is now at large.'

Last *Breathe one's last*, die 'He breathed his last this morning, after a lingering illness'

Laugh. *Laugh in one's sleeve*, laugh secretly. 'Though he

seemed to listen to the speaker with great attention, he was laughing in his sleeve the whole time'

Lay *Lay bare*, expose 'lay bare one's heart to another'

Lay *before*, present to view 'He laid his sad case before the judge'

Lay *by*, 1. save for future use 'lay by something for one's old age', 2 put aside 'She laid by her avocations'

Lay *hold of*, seize 'They laid hold of the first man that they came across to do the work'

Lay *in*, store 'lay in provisions for winter'

Lay *one's self down*, retire to rest, recline 'He laid himself on the soft grass'

Lay *open*, make bare or uncover 'lay open the designs of an enemy'

Lay *out*, 1 expand 'He laid out a thousand pounds in jewellery', 2 plan 'lay out a garden', 3 dress in grave-clothes 'lay out a corpse'

Lay *siege to*, besiege, tease with urgent and repeated request 'lay siege to a fortress', 'He laid siege to her heart'

Lay *to heart*, feel deeply 'He laid this lesson to heart'

Lay *up*, 1 store 'Lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven', 2 confine to bed 'He is laid up with measles.'

Lay *under*, subject to 'To lay one under obligation or restraint', 'He has laid me under great obligation by this act of kindness'

Lay *wait for*, lie in ambush for, prepare to fall upon and attack suddenly 'He was lying in wait for his enemy, who however, had gone by a different road'

Lay *waste*, destroy or desolate 'They laid waste the enemy's country with fire and sword'

Lead *Lead astray*, induce to do wrong 'Young people are easily led astray by old rogues.'

Lead *into*, cause to get 'Lead us not into temptation'

Lead *the way*, go first 'He led the way and the others followed'

Lead *to the altar*, marry 'He is going to lead a rich young lady to the altar on Wednesday'

Leave *Leave in the lurch*, leave in a difficult situation or in embarrassment 'He left me in the lurch by coming away without giving me his address'

Leave *no stone unturned*, use every possible effort to discover a thing 'They left no stone unturned to find out the criminal'

Leave *off*, discontinue or cease 'It was past six o'clock when I left off writing'

Leave out, omit 'He has left out several words in his exercise'

Leave to one's self, allow one to do as one pleases 'I hope you will leave me to myself, and not keep troubling me with your advice'

Length *Through the length and breadth of*, throughout. 'His fame has spread through the length and breadth of the country'

Let *Let alone*, not interfere with 'Do let me alone I know what I am about'

Let blood, cause blood to flow from a vein by making an incision 'Letting blood was a favourite remedy in former days for a great many ailments'

Let down, lower 'She let them down by a cord through the window'

Let fly (drive), discharge 'He let fly a brickbat at me'

Let loose, permit to go free 'Take off that dog's chain and let him loose'

Let off, suffer to escape or go free 'He was let off without any punishment'

Let out, give on hire 'let out a farm on lease.'

Lie. *Lie at one's door*, be imputable to 'The fault lies at your door'

Lie in wait for, conceal oneself in order to fall by surprise on 'His enemies lay in wait for him but he went another way'

Lie over, be deferred or postponed 'The case is to lie over till the witness is found'

Lie under, be subject to, be oppressed by 'He lies under great obligation to me for his appointment'

Give one the lie, call one a liar, 'to say that what one says is false'

Light *See the light*, come into existence, be born 'The day on which my first book saw the light will always be a memorable one to me'

Live. *Live by one's wits*, live by shifts and expedients, as one without any regular employment or occupation 'As he could not get any employment, he had to live by his wits the best way he could'

Long *The long and short*, the substance. 'The long and short of it was that he lost his appointment'

Look *Look after*, take care of 'He has no one to look after him.'

Look about one, be watchful or vigilant 'You have every need to look about you.'

Look blank, have a stupid bewildered look 'He looked blue when he heard of his failure'

Look blue, look disappointed 'He looked blue when he learnt that his leave was refused'

Look down upon, despise 'We should not look down upon a man because he happens to be deformed or poor'

Look for, 1 expect 'to look for news by the arrival of a ship', 2 search 'Look for the key I lost yesterday'

Look into, examine 'I intend to look into that matter soon'

Look in the face, face or meet with boldness 'He looks the whole world in the face, for he owes not any man'

Look on, be a spectator 'Look on while we are playing the game'

Look out, be on the watch 'look out for squalls'

Look over, examine 'Look over these exercises'

(Look to for), expect from 'I shall look to you for payment'

Look through, penetrate with the eye, understand thoroughly 'I must look through the case before giving my opinion'

Look up, search and find, show a tendency to improve 'I must look up my cases on the point', 'His affairs are looking up a bit now'

Look upon consider 'I look upon him as my benefactor'

Lord Lord it over, treat imperiously to domineer over'

Loss *Be at a loss*, not be able 'I am at a loss to know why you have treated me thus', 'I was at a loss for a word to express my meaning,' i.e., I was not able to find a word, &c

Make *Make against*, tend to injure 'That circumstance will make against you in the case'

Make amends, make reparation, compensate 'He made amends for his rudeness by making a humble apology'

Make as if, pretend that 'He made as if were going away at once'

Make away with, destroy, kill 'They made away with the man to prevent his giving evidence against them.'

Make bold, take liberty, dare 'I made bold to speak to him on the subject'

Make both ends meet, contrive to make one's means suffice for one's expenses 'His pay was so small that he found it difficult to make both ends meet'

Make fast, fasten, secure firmly 'The door was made fast on the inside'

Make for, 1 move towards 'The boat made for the shore' 2 tend to the advantage of 'A war between commercial nations make for the interest of neutrals'

Make free with, 1. treat with familiarity 'We must not make free with those who are much older than ourselves', 2. spend 'to make free with other people's money'

Make game of, mock, raise a laugh against 'There were not earnest in their proposal, but were only trying to make game of me.'

Make good, 1. compensate 'to make good a loss', 2. maintain 'to make a place good against an enemy', 3. prove or fulfil 'to make good one's word or statement'

Make it up, arrange a quarrel, become friends again 'The two boys who quarrelled have made it up again.'

Make known, publish, reveal 'He circulated notices to make the fact publicly known'

Make light of, treat with indifference or contempt, consider as of no consequence 'They make light of his displeasure'

Make little of, treat as of little importance or weight 'He made very little of these difficulties'

Make merry, feast enjoy one's self 'There were dancing and making merry', 'They made merry at my expense'

Make much of, 1. be very fond of 'They make so much of the child, I fear they are spoiling him', 2. treat as of much importance or value 'He made much of this fact in his speech for the defence'

Make mouths, make grimaces or wry faces 'He kept grinning and making mouths at me'

Make nothing of, treat as a trifle 'He makes nothing of a thousand or two thousand pounds.'

Make no difference, be of no consequence 'It makes no difference to me whether I remain here or at Madras'

Make no doubt, be assured 'He makes no doubt that he will pass'

Make of, 1. understand 'I do not know what to make of his letter', 2. esteem 'Makes be no more of me than of a slave'

Make out, 1. understand 'I cannot make out his meaning', 2. prove 'He failed to make out his case'

Make over, transfer or give 'He made over all his property to his sons'

Make sure of, consider as certain 'He made sure of the game'

Make up, 1. collect into a mass or sum 'to make up a bundle, or an account', 2. adjust 'to make up a quarrel', 3. supply what is wanting in 'I want a rupee to make up the amount', 4. compose 'a book made up of extracts', 5. compensate 'to make up a loss', 6. determine 'Make up your mind soon as to whether you will accept my offer'

Make up for, compensate, supply by an equivalent 'Her learning makes up for her plainness'

Make up to, approach 'He made up to us the moment he saw us'

Make up with, be reconciled with 'I can never make up with him'

Make way, open a passage 'The crowd made way for him'

Man To a man, unanimously 'They opposed the measure to a man'

Manner In a manner, in some degree, to some extent 'Though he would not say it in so many words, he in a manner acknowledged he had done it'

Mark Beside the mark, not to the point 'That observation was quite beside the mark'

Of mark, conspicuous 'a man or mark'

Under the mark, inferior 'The essay that he sent in was quite under the mark'

Up to the mark, coming up to the required standard 'He was not quite up to the mark in mathematics'

Be a match for, be equal to 'Though he was young, he was quite a match for his father in villainy.'

Means By all (no) means, undoubtedly (not at all) 'You may do as you please by all means, but you must take the consequences', 'I am by no means his match in cunning'

Might With might and main, with great exertion or strength 'He pulled at the rope with might and main'

Neck Neck and crop, completely 'He was bundled out neck and crop.'

Neck and heels, the whole length of the body, hence completely 'He was turned out neck and heels'

Nick In the nick of time, opportunely, just when wanted 'The telegram to reprieve the condemned man arrived in the nick of time, for the rope was already round his neck'

Off Ill off, in unprosperous circumstances 'I am sorry to see you so ill off.'

Well off, in prosperous circumstances 'He is not so well off now as he was three years ago, having suffered severe losses in trade'

Off and on, intermittently 'He visits the school off, and on not regularly'

One At one, in agreement or concord 'We are at one in this point'

One and all, every one 'Goodbye to you, one and all.'

Out. *Out of hand*, forthwith 'They killed their prisoners out of hand'

Out of place, irrelevant 'The remark is quite out of place here'

Out of season, untimely 'Times are out of season just now'

Out of time, discordant, unharmonious 'You are playing that piece of music out of time'

Over and above, in excess of 'He got £50 over and above his due.'

Part *In good (ill) part*, not in displeasure (in displeasure) 'He took my advice in good (ill) part'

For the most part, in the greatest number of cases 'The exercises were for the most part ill done'

Part from, separate from; leave 'He parted from his friend with great regret'

Part and parcel, an essential portion 'He was part and parcel of the race and place'

Part with, give up 'What will you part with that horse for?'

Party *Be a party to*, be concerned in 'I cannot consent to be a party to such an act of injustice'

Pass *Come to pass*, happen 'You will find that what I predict will come to pass soon'

To pass for, to be considered as 'He passes for a scholar among the sin'

To pass over, not to notice 'The editor passes over several difficulties without attempting to explain them.'

Penny. *Penny wise and pound foolish*, careful of spending money in little matters and extravagant in large ones 'Misers are often penny wise and pound foolish in their policy'

Pick *Pick a lock*, open it by a false key 'He picked the lock of his master's box and took ten Rupees out of it'

Pick a pocket, steal its contents 'When he was in the Evening Bazaar he caught a fellow trying to pick his pocket'

Pick a quarrel, get into a quarrel, purposely 'When he is in a temper, he tries to pick a quarrel with some one or other'

Pick one's way, choose a clear path 'The roads are very muddy, and you will have to pick your way carefully'

Pick up, gather by chance, to acquire 'He collected all the information he could pick up on the subject'

Pitch. *Pitch upon*, choose 'I cannot understand why he pitched upon such a disagreeable subject for his lecture'

Play *Give play to*, give room for action to 'to give play to mirth'

Play into the hands of, act so as to give an unfair advantage to 'The two pleaders were simply playing into each other's hands'

Play on, act on 'The fire engine played on the flames'

Play one false, act treacherously towards one 'He played me false in the affair'

Play one a trick, practise a trick on one 'He played me a trick in taking me to Madras and coming away without telling me'

Play the fool, act or behave like a fool 'He delights in playing the fool when he is among his friends'

Play the truant, stay away from one's work 'If the boy plays the truant again, he will certainly be dismissed'

Play upon, give a droll or amusing application to 'A play upon words may lead to unexpected results'

Prevail *Prevail upon*, persuade 'With great difficulty I prevailed upon him to accompany me to the Police station'

Provide *Provide against*, take precaution against 'He has provided against all accidents that can be foreseen'

Pull *Pull down*, destroy 'It is easier to pull down a house than to build one'

Pull out, draw out, extract 'Androcles pulled out the thorn from the lion's foot.'

Put. *Put a person on his good behaviour*, make his success, &c., depend upon his good behaviour 'I have put him on his good behaviour and will dismiss him without warning, the next time he does the same fault'

Put a person on his mettle, rouse him to do his best 'This unexpected opposition only put him on his mettle'

Put up, instigate 'He was put up by his classmates to disobey the teacher'

Put down, subdue 'To put down an insurrection'

Put forth, exert 'He put forth all his strength to raise the weight'

Put off, postpone 'Never put off till to-morrow what you can do to-day'

Put on, 1 wear 'He put on his coat', 2 assume 'He put on an angry look.'

Put out, 1, extinguish 'to put out a light' 2, make angry 'He was very much put out by my conduct', 3 disturb 'This has put out all my arrangements'

Put to the blush, make to blush, make ashamed 'You put me to the blush by talking so foolishly'

Put to the proof, make proof of, test 'His courage was put to the proof by this danger'

Put to sea, row off from shore 'They put to sea in a small boat'

Put to death, kill 'Socrates was put to death by being compelled to drink a cup of poison'

Put to the sword, kill 'Every inhabitant of the conquered city was put to the sword'

Put by, save 'He puts by a little money every month'

Put up (intr), lodge or stay 'He put up at a friend's house'

Put up (trans), give a lodging to 'His friend put him up for a few days.'

Put up with, submit to 'He could not put up with such an insult'

Question *Beside the question*, irrelevant 'Whether he is willing or not is beside the question'

Out of the question, impossible 'My coming with you is quite out of the question'

Out of question, undoubted 'His guilt is out of question'

Rack *Rack and ruin*, destruction 'Through his neglect, his whole property is going to rack and ruin'

Random *At random*, without care or consideration 'He is talking at random,' i.e., carelessly

Rank. *Rank and file*, the whole body of common soldiers or privates (including corporals) as distinguished from officers 'The rank and file of the army amounted to 700'

Rank with have the same rank as, be classed with 'He ranks with a lieutenant-colonel in the army'

Reckon *Reckon upon*, expect 'You may reckon upon much opposition in carrying out your purpose'

Reins *Give the reins to*, leave unchecked, indulge freely 'He gave the reins to his passions, and soon found himself ruined in health and estate'

Right *Right and left*, on all sides 'He rushed amongst his assailants, and struck right and left'

Roll *Rolling stone*, a person who never sticks to one place 'He has acquired the reputation of being a rolling stone, by never sticking long to one appointment'

Root *Root and branch*, entirely 'to destroy root and branch'

Rhyme *Rhyme nor, reason*, sound not sense 'There is neither rhyme nor reason in what you say.'

Run *Run after*, pursue 'He ran after the thief but could not overtake him'

Run down, speak disparagingly of 'We must not run a man down simply because we do not like him'

Run high, be violent 'Party spirit was running high at the time of the election'

In the long run, in the whole course of things, in the final result 'Honesty is sure to be rewarded in the long run'

Run on, be continued 'The account has been running on for a year'

Run out, come to an end 'My lease has run out'

Run over, 1 go over hastily 'to run over a letter', 2 overflow 'His cup ran over'

Run short of, exhaust one's stock of 'to run short of provisions'

Run through, 1 squander 'He ran through his fortune in a year', 2 Pierce, 'to run one through'

Run up, enlarge by additions 'to run up a bill'

Scale *On a large scale*, extensively, to a very great extent 'He had been speculating on a large scale in cotton'

See *See into*, inquire into 'I hope you will see into this matter and punish those in fault'

See to, be careful about 'You must see to the place being kept clean always, or you will get ill'

Send *Send a person about his business*, dismiss him abruptly or angrily 'As he had nothing particular to tell me, I sent him about his business'

Set *Set about*, begin 'He set about his task with alacrity'

Set aside, 1 reject 'The verdict was set aside', 2 leave out of account 'setting all other reasons aside.'

Set at defiance, defy 'He set his master's authority at defiance'

Set at ease, make easy or comfortable 'I set his mind at ease by telling him he had passed'

Set at naught, despise 'set one's counsel at naught'

Set apart, reserve 'a place set apart for religious worship'

Set free, release from confinement 'The prisoner was set free'

Set in, begin 'The rains have set in'

Set off, 1 start 'They set off in pursuit', 2 show to advantage 'The dress sets off her figure'

Set on, instigate 'He has been set on to do this'

Set one's face against, hate or oppose 'He set his face against the custom'

Set one's heart on, desire greatly, be determined on 'He has set his heart on the enterprise'

Set out, start 'set out on a journey'

Set sail, begin a voyage 'The ship set sail with a very favourable wind'

Set together by the ears, cause to quarrel 'He likes to set others together by the ears'

Set to work, begin working 'He set to work on it at once'

Set up establish, establish one's self 'He set a man up in trade', 'He has set up as a bookseller'

Set up for, claim to be considered as 'I do not set up for a saint'

Shut Shut in, enclose 'He shut himself in for a week to avoid being disturbed in his work'

Set out of, deny admission to 'He was shut out of his father's house for the night'

Shut up, confine, close 'He was shut up for a week in jail before he was tried'

Slip Let slip, let lose 'He let slip the dogs as soon as the deer came in sight'

Sort Out of sorts, unwell, indisposed 'He feels quite out of sorts after his long journey'

Split. Split the difference, adjust a difference by mutual concessions 'I offered a hundred rupees for the horse, he wanted two hundred, so at last we split the difference and settled the price at one hundred and fifty'

Spot On the spot, instantly 'He was so annoyed at his superior's behaviour that he resigned on the spot.'

Spur On the spur of the moment, unpremeditatedly 'I spoke on the spur of the moment, and did not therefore take time to make sure of the facts'

Stand Stand by, support 'I will stand by you in all your troubles'

Stand in need of, require 'I do not stand in need of any help just now, but I will apply to you when I want it'

Stand in the shoes of, be in the place of, supersede 'Would you not like to stand in my shoes?'

Stand in the way of, be an obstacle to 'I do not like to stand in the way of your bettering yourself'

Stand one in (a sum of money), cost one 'That carriage has stood me in the large sum of 500 Rupees.'

Stand out, project be prominent 'The trees stand out against the dark sky'

Stand over, be deferred 'The matter must stand over for the present'

Stand to reason, be reasonable 'It stands to reason that every man must bear the consequence of his own deeds.'

Stand upon ceremony, be punctilious or formal in behaviour, and insist on others to attend to formalities 'I hope you will make yourself at home, and not stand on ceremonies'

Stand up for, defend, maintain 'We are determined to stand up for our rights'

Strike *Strike dumb*, astonish beyond measure 'I was struck dumb by his impudence'

Strike for, start suddenly in the direction of 'The swimmer struck for the shore'

Strike off, remove, as a name from a list, print 'His name was struck off from the Register', 'I had a thousand copies of the notice struck off'

Strike up, begin to play (said of musical instruments) 'The musicians were told to strike up *God Save the Queen*'

Strike work, stop doing work 'The coolies will strike work to-morrow if they are not promised higher wages'

Sun *Under the sun*, on earth 'There is nothing new under the sun'

Take *Take an*, become public 'The matter soon took an'

Take the air, go for a drive, &c, to enjoy the breeze 'He drives to the beach daily to take the air'

Take after, resemble 'He takes after his mother'

Take aim at, direct a weapon at 'He was such a bad marksman that he took aim at one bird and brought down another'

Take arms, commence fighting 'To take arms against a sea of troubles'

Take care of, look after carefully, superintend 'Take care of the pence, and the pounds will take care of themselves.'

Take down, 1 bring down from a height 'To take down a flag', 2 reduce to writing 'Take down what I say'

Take for, suppose to be 'I took him for a fakir'

Take for granted, assume as admitted 'You may take it for granted that he will do what he promises'

Take heed, be careful 'Take heed what you do'

Take heart, become encouraged or cheerful, gain confidence 'Take heart, there is not so much danger after all'

Take horse, mount and ride 'He took horse at once and followed the thief'

Take in, 1 contract 'Take in a sail', 2 deceive 'I was taken in by his fine speeches', 3 comprise 'The definition takes in many things unconnected with the class'

Take in hand, undertake 'He is going to take the work in hand.'

Take it ill, be offended 'He will take it ill, if you do not attend the ceremony'

Take into account, consider 'The possibility of failure must also be taken into account'

Take off, mimic 'to take off a person's peculiarities (such as his manner of walking or talking)'

Take one at one's word, act according to what one has said 'You said you would bet 50 Rs. that I could not do it 'I take you at your word,' i.e., if I do it, you must give me 50 Rs.

Take place, happen 'What took place when you arrived?'

Take root, live and grow as a plant 'Transplanted trees do not easily take root', 'My advice took root in his mind.'

Take to, 1. resort to 'He is at last going to take to business' 2. become addicted to 'He took to smoking on account of asthma'

Take to one's heels, flee 'The thief took to his heels as soon as he saw the constable'

Take to task, find fault with 'I took him to task for writing the letter'

Take to wife, marry 'He took to wife a woman who was old enough to be mother'

Talk *Talk a person over*, persuade him to take your view, or to come over to your side 'He is opposed to my plan, but I hope to talk him over'

Teeth. *In the teeth of*, in direct opposition to 'I will do it in the teeth of all opposition'

Tell. *Tell against one*, be unfavourable to one 'His intemperance will tell against his success.'

Tell in one's favour, be favourable to one 'Your good writing will tell in your favour in the examination'

Tell off, count or divide 'Ten policemen were told off for this duty'

Tell upon, affect or injure 'Too hard study tells upon your health'

Through *Through thick and thin*, under all circumstances, favourable and unfavourable 'Through thick and thin he stuck to me'

Throw. *Throw cold water on*, discourage 'You always throw cold water on my projects'

Throw light on, make more clear 'This incident throws some light on his motive in behaving as he did'

Throw off the mask, betray one's real character 'He has thrown off the mask at last and shown himself the villain he is.'

Throw off the scent, prevent from finding out a clue 'I threw him completely off the scent, by the false information I gave him'

Throw out, utter carelessly 'He threw out a remark or two on the subject.'

Throw up, vomit 'You will throw up if you drink salt water'

Time Time and tide, time, season 'Time and tide waits for no man'

At times, occasionally 'Even mad men talk very sensibly at times'

In time, before the appointment time has passed 'You are just in time to catch the train'

Kill time, pass away time in amusement 'I am reading this worthless book just to kill time'

To To and fro, forward and backward 'He was plying impatiently to and fro'

Tooth Tooth and nail, with the utmost violence 'He attacked his opponent tooth and nail'

Touch Touch on, refer to 'We have no time to more than touch on this point'

Touch up, improve by slight strokes 'I asked him to touch up my essay'

Turn Turn a deaf ear to, refuse to listen to 'He turned a deaf ear to all my advice'

Turn a penny, gain a trifle 'He tried to turn a honest penny by selling fruits.'

A good turn, an act of favour or kindness done opportunely 'One good turn deserves another.'

By turns, alternately one after another 'The boys are to use the book by turns'

Turn the back upon, leave with contempt 'He turned his back upon me as soon as I began to speak to him'

In turn, in due course or order of succession 'He expects to be rewarded in turn'

Turn out, 1 expel 'He was turned out of the class', 2 to prove to be 'He turned out to be a fool'

Turn the scale, to give superiority or success 'A trifling circumstance turned the scale in favour of the opposite party'

Turn to good account, employ to advantage 'Cortest turned this information to account'

Turn the tables, reverse the original position, 'to reverse success, so that the person who expected to fail is now likely to win, and he who expected to win, to fail' 'Clive cleverly

turned the tables on Omichund in the affair of the white and red documents'

Turn tail, flee 'He turned tail as soon as the new enemy appeared'

To a turn, exactly, nicely 'The meat was roasted to a turn'

Up Up-hill work, difficult or laborious work 'He found it very up-hill work to keep up with his classmates.'

Ups and downs of life, vicissitudes or changes of life 'Through all the ups and downs of life, he has been my firm friend'

Use Use up, exhaust 'I have used up all my paper'

Vouch Vouch for, bear witness to, affirm 'I cannot vouch for the truth of the story.'

Wait Wait on a person, come to him, call at his house 'The deputation will wait upon the Governor to-morrow.'

Watch On the watch, watching 'I am on the watch for him to make his appearance.'

Way By the way, speaking incidentally 'By the way, have you got me the books I asked you for?'

By way of, as being, for the purpose of 'He wrote down three sentences by way of illustration'. 'He made a large amount by way of presents.'

Out of the way, extraordinary 'That is a common occurrence and nothing out of the way.'

Weal Weal and woe, prosperity and adversity 'He has been my friend in weal and woe'

Wear Wear off, diminish by use or decay, diminish gradually 'His bashfulness wore off gradually'

Wear and tear, loss or waste by use or injury 'In hiring furniture we have to pay for wear and tear besides the use of it'

Weigh Weigh anchor, set sail 'The ship was about to weigh anchor when the boat came up'

Whip Whip and spur, with the utmost haste 'He rode whip and spur'

Wind. Wind up, to bring to a conclusion or final settlement 'The affairs of the firm have not been wound up as yet'

Wits At one's wits' end, not know what to do next 'He was at his wits' end where to get the money for his journey'

Word By word of mouth, verbally 'He would only

make the promise by word of mouth, but would not put it in writing'

In a word, briefly, to sum up 'He threatened and begged and laughed and cried by turns, in a word he acted as if he were out of his senses'

Worth. *Worth one's while*, of advantage to one 'It is not worth my while to sue him for the amount'

Yield *Yield up*, resign 'He yielded up his claims to the property for a small consideration'



CHAPTER XX.

DERIVATION.

1034. *Derivation* is that part of Etymology which treats of the origin and primary signification of words

1035. Words are either *Primitive*, *Derivative*, or *Compound*

(1) A *Primitive* word is one that is not derived from another word in the language, as, *kind*, *wise*

(2) A *Derivative* word is one that is formed from a primitive, as *unkind*, *wisdom*

(3) A *Compound* word is one that is formed by the union of two or more primitive words which either undergo no alteration or undergo only a very slight one, as, *book-case*, *hog's-lord*.

1036. Words how formed. Words are formed from other words, or from roots (sec 1047) in three ways (1) by *modification*, (2) by *prefixes*, and (3) by *suffixes*

1037. *Prefixes and Suffixes*.—A *prefix* is a particle added before a root (sec. 1047) to form a word, or to a primitive word to form a derivative, as, *de-tain*, *un-man*. A *suffix* is a participle similarly added at the end of a root or a word, as *hum-an*, *kind-ly*

English prefixes are of two kinds—*separable* and *inseparable*. The former may be, and are, used as independent words, the latter have no meaning by themselves and cannot therefore be used as independent words. *After*, *in*, *over* are examples of separable, and *a*, *fore*, *mis*, of inseparable, prefixes

I—MODIFICATION

1038 (a) *Nouns*—

1 *Change of vowel* sing, song, stick, stake, sit, seat, bless, bliss

2 *Change of consonant*, stick, stitch, dig, ditch, speak speech, aic, arch, grieve, grief

3 *Change of vowel and consonant*, weave, woof, lose, loss, break, breach, bank, bench

(b) *Adjectives*—

1 *Change of vowel*, heat, hot, pride, proud, live, live

2 *Change of consonant* diffuse (verb, s soft), diffuse (adj^s hard), loathe (verb, th soft), loth, loath (t soft)

3 *Change of vowel and consonant* cool, chill, wit, wise

(c) *Verbs*—

1 *Change of vowel* sit, seat, gold, gild, blood, bleed, full, fill, rise, raise, roll, reel

2. *Change of consonant* thief, there, wreath, wreathe, wink, wince, dog, dodge.

3 *Change of vowel and consonant* drink, drench, glass, glaze, bound, hunt, wake, watch

II —PREFIXES

1039 (1) English Prefixes

A, on, in *afoot*, *a-shore*, *a-side*, *a-mid*, *a-way*, from, far, away *a-rise*, *a-wake*, *a-bide*, *a-go*, *intensive* *a-weary*, *a-thirst*, *a fresh*

Al—all, quite *al-mighty*

Be see sec 1042

By, by, on the side *by-path*, *by-stander*

For, through, completely, hence, opposite *for bear*, *for-gave*, *for-swear*, *for-bid*, *for-get*

Fore, before *fore-tell*, *fore sight*, *for-ward*

Forth, forward *forth-coming*

fro, from *fro-ward*

Gain, against *gain say*

In, in *in-side*, *in-born*, *in-sight*

In (Frenchified form, *en*), to do or make *en-lighten*, *em-bitter* (*un-bitter*)

Mis, denoting defect or error *mis-take*, *mis-deed*

Off, off *off-spring*, *off-shoot*

Out, out *out-break*, *outside* denoting superiority, or excess *out-run*, *out-bid*, *outshine*.

Over, above *over-hang*, *over-flow*

away *over-blow*

denoting excess *over-bold*, *over-do*

Un, not *un-true*, *un-broken*, *un-rest*.

against, back *un-true*, *un-do*, *un-wind*

intensive *un loose*

Under, below *under-sell*, *under-lie*, *under-ground*.

With, back, against *with-draw*, *with-stand*, *with hold*

1040 (II) Latin Prefixes—

A		a vort	inter-		inter course
ab	} from	ab use	intel	} between,	intel lect
abs-		abs tum	enter Fr		enter prise
Ad-		ad-here	intro		intro duce
ac	} to, at	ac cent	Juxta	} close by,	juxta-position
af-		af fect	male		male factor
ag		ag-gravate	mali-		mali gnant
al		il lege	mal		mal content
Am	} to, at,	am-munition	manu-	} hand,	manu script
an-		an-nual	mis Fr		mis chief
ap		ap prove	non	} not,	non sense
ar		ar rogance	ob		ob verse
as		as sent	oc	} in front of,	oc casion
at		at tempt	of-		of-fend
a		a spect	op-		op pose
amb		ambi-tion	os		os tentation
am		am-putate	omni	} all,	omni science
ante		ante date	pen-		pen insula
bene	} well,	bene diction	pei-	} through	per fect
bis		bis cuit	post		post-script
bi-	} twice, two,	bi ped	pre	} thoroughly,	pre caution
circum		circum stances	preter-		pretei natural
circu-	} around,	circu it	pro	} for,	pro mise
con		con trive	poi		por tent
coll	} with,	col lege	pol		pol lute
com		com pact	pur Fr		pur-pose
cor-		cor rode	re	} back,	re fund
co		co heir	red		re deem
coun Fr	} against,	coun cil	retro	} back	} retro grade
contra		contra dict	se		se cede
contro		contro vert	semi	} wards,	semi colon
countei		counter-poise	sine		sine cme
de	} down from,	de throno	sub	} apart,	sub ject
demi		de clare	suc		suc ceed
dis	} half,	demi god	suf	} under,	suf fer
dif-		dis cord	sug		sug gest
di	} a- under,	dif-fer	sup		sup port
ex		di vorce	sur		sur reptitious
ef	} out of, out,	ex pel	sus	} under,	sus pend
e		ef fect	su-		su spect
equi	} equally,	e normous	subter	} beneath,	subter-fuge
extra		equi-valent	super-		super ficial
in-	} beyond,	extra-vagant	sur-Fr	} over,	sur pass
il-		in vade	trans		trans it
im	} in, into, on,	il lusion	tra	} across;	tra verse
ir		im merse	tres		tres pass
em Fr	} against,	ir-ruption	tri-	} three,	triangle
en		em-brace	ultra		beyond,
in-	} not,	en tito	un-	} one,	un animous
		in decent	uni-		uni-form
		il legal	vice-	} instead of,	vice roy
		im-mense			
		ir rational			
		ignominy			

1041. (III) Greek Prefixes—

a		a pathy	hetero	different,	hetero doxy
an	{	in archiv	hexa	six,	hexa metei
am		am brosia	hier	sacred,	hier archy
amphi	{	ampli bions	holo	whole,	holo caust
ana-		ana tomy	homo	{ together,	{ homo nym
ana-	{	up agum	hydro	{ similar,	{ hydro pathy
ant		ant agonist	hydr	{ water,	{ hydr aulic
anti	{	anti type	hyper	{ above,	{ hyper bole
apo		apo state	hypo	{ measure,	{ hypo thesis
aph	{	aph orism	hyp	{ under,	{ hyp licu
arch		arch bishop	meta	{ after,	{ meta phor
archi-	{	archi episcopal	met	{ change,	{ met-onomy
auto		auto biography	mono	{ alone,	{ mono tone
aut	{	aut hentic	mon	{ right,	{ ortho graphy
cata		cata strophe	ortho	{ all,	{ panto mume
cath	{	cath edral	panto	{	{ pan oply
cat		cat egorical	pan-	{	{ para sito
deca	{	deca logue	para	{ besides,	{ par ody
di		di pthong	par	{	{ penta meter
dia-	{	dia meter	penta	{ five,	{ peri od
dys		dys entry	peri	{ round,	{ philo sophy
ec	{	ec lectic	philo	{ love,	{ phil anthropy
ex		ex odus	phil	{	{ poly-glot
en	{	en comium	poly	{ many,	{ pro grammio
em		em phasis	pro	{ before,	{ pros ely te
el	{	el lipsis	pros	{ towards,	{ pseudo critic
endo		endo genous	pseudo	{ false,	{ pseud onym
epi	{	epi taph	syn	{	{ syn onym
ep		ep hemeral	syl	{	{ syl lable
eu-	{	eu phony	sym	{ with,	{ sym pathy
exo		exo tic	sy-	{	{ sy stem
hemi	{	hemi sphere	tri	{ three,	{ tri pod
hepta		hepta gon			
hept	{	hept archy			

1042 Notes on some Prefixes

Be The prefix 'be'—is identical with the preposition *by*, and is used with the following forces

- 1 It adds an intensive force to transitive verbs *be daub*, *be smear*
- 2 It renders intransitive verbs transitive *be come*.
- 3 Prefixed to transitive verbs, it changes the object of the transitive relation *be thin?*, *be seech*
- 4 It has a privative meaning in *be head*
- 5 It converts nouns into transitive verbs *be friend*, *be nigh*
- 6 It converts adjectives into transitive verbs *be dim*, *be calm*
- 7 It forms adverbs and prepositions from nouns *be cause*, *be side*
- 8 It means near *by stander*, *be side*, *by path*

Dis, un. "*Dis-* implies an *emphatic reversal* of the action or state as, *dis-join*, *dis temper* (a wrong tempering) Hence *dis proved* is more than *un-proved*, *dis-armed* than *un-armed* Compare *dis-belief* *un belief*, and *dis-burdened* and *un-burdened*, *dis-courteous*, and *un-courteous*, *dis embodied* and *un-embodied*, *dis abled* and *un-abled* It is simply intensive in *dis-annul*, *dis-sever*."

In, en "*In-* (*in*) and *Fr. en-* are found in the same words as *in-quire*, *en-quire*, *in-close*, *en-close* *In-* is intensive in *in-ebriate*, *in-ebriate*, *in-passioned* *En-*, *em* often convert an adjective or a noun into a transitive verb as *en-dear*, *en-slave*, *em-bitter*, *en-thral*."

III—SUFFIXES

1043. (i) English Suffixes—

1. NOUN SUFFIXES

er	male agent, garden er	-lock	state,	wed lock
ard	augmen- tative of- ten with	ledge	state,	know-ledge
ait	bad meaning,	ness	diminutive,	mild-ness
	king dom	ock	diminutive,	bull ock
dom	dominion, hence the great whole of anything,	ow	state,	shad(e) ow
	rascal dom	-ied	condition	kind red
hood	state,	ship	condition	war (th) ship
head	rank,	-skip	land ship	land ship O E
kin	diminutive, lamb kin	scape	land scape	
let	diminutive, stream let			
ling	diminu- tive and so deprec- iative,	ster	once female agent now agent,	spinster huck ster
	duck ling word ling	thel	agent, instru- ment,	fa-ther fea-ther
		wright	a work men,	wheel-wright
		y	place of,	smith y

2. ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES

fast	firm,	stead fast	-less	loose from, fear-less
-fold	repeti- tion,	man fold	ly	like, man ly
-ish	1 like,	wasp ish	some	same, like, glad-some
	2 designates nation- alities,	Engl ish Wel ish	-wise	{ way, manner, } righteous O E right wise
	3 joined to adjectives with a weaken- ing effect,	red-(d) ish sweet ish	worth	worth, { stal-worth (stal wart)

3 VERB SUFFIXES (MIXED).

ate (L) often converts the word with which it is joined into a trans verb,	captivate invalidate	fy (Ft) has the meaning of make,	mollify (to make soft)
en er, (O E) sometimes converts an adjective into a verb,	broaden lighten bind er ling-(long)er	-ize (Gr) 1 Converts a substantive into a transitive verb,	monopolize patronize subsidize anathematize
er (O E) sometimes converts a verb into a frequentative verb'	pat ter wand (wend) er	2 Converts a substantive into an intransitive verb,	soliloquize dogmatize philosophize judaize
el le, (O E) sometimes converts a verb into a frequentative verb,	draw (e)l nib (nip) ble grope (grope) el	3 has the meaning of make,	christianize systematize

1044 (II) Latin and Greek suffixes

NOUN AND ADJECTIVE

able { able to, ent able (intrans)	ic { belong }	metal (l) ic
ible { able to, ter ible (trans)	ing to, }	
aceous kind, herb aceous	ic le diminutive, participle	
age collective { carn age	ism (Gt) state, act, barbarism	
ary { place, gran ary	ist (Gt) agent, art ist	
ier { profes, grenad ier	-ment instrument, pave ment	
eer { sion, engin eer	ry { collec }	poul try
er { falcon er	tive, an }	
scule diminutive, corpu scule	ery { art, }	cook ery
ee { object of }	-tery condition, mas tory	
{ an ac }	tive { able to, }	sensi tive
{ tion, }	included }	
esque like, pictu esque	ive { to, }	pens ive
ferous producing, somni ferous	tory place, dormi toly	
ic (Gr) { ait, }	tory { of a nature }	migra tory
{ science, }	-sory { to }	illu sory
	ose { verb ose }	verb ose
	ous { full of, }	glori ous

1045 Notes on some suffixes.

Hood or 'head' is the O E *had*, state, rank, person, character. Affixed to nouns, it means the state or nature of the thing named *Godhead*, *manhood* *maidenhood* (old form, *maiden-head*). Affixed to objectives, it indicates the state consequent on having the quality *likelihood*, *hardihood*. By metonymy it also designates something possessing the quality *falsehood*, also a collective concrete *neighbourhood*, *brotherhood*. *Livelihood* originally meant *liveliness*, but it now stands for *lif-lode* (= *lif-leading*), sustenance.

Dom — is O *ll* *d* *m* judgment authority dominion cognate with Germ *thum* Lat *tum*, Sansk *trām*. It has nothing to do with Lat *domus*, or *dominium*. It denotes 1 the abstract quality *wisdom*, 2 the state *pride*, *thralldom*, 3 what belongs to the state *kingdom*, 4, by metonymy, the act which makes the quality *martyrdom* 5 the class possessing the quality *Christendom* (originally meaning *baptism*)

1046 Hybrids are words whose component elements are derived from different languages. They may be classified as follows —

- I *English words with Latin or Greek prefixes and suffixes*
 - (a) Prefixes *en-dear* *per-haps* *dis-belief*
 - (b) Suffixes *bond-age* *stream-let*, *godd-ess*
- II *Latin or Greek words with English prefixes and suffixes*
 - (a) Prefixes *a-cross* *be-siege* *mis-use*, *out-cry*.
 - (b) Suffixes *fool-ish*, *dot-ard*, *flower-y*, *count-ess*
- III *Compounds made of words taken from different languages.*
 - (1) Latin and German *mountain-bank*
 - (2) German and Latin *bank-rupt*
 - (3) Scandinavian and English *nut-house*
 - (4) Persian and Arabic *check-mate*
 - (5) Arabic and Persian *tamar-ind.*
 - (6) Hebrew and English *man-gold*
 - (7) Celtic and English *cock-bort*.
 - (8) English and Celtic *tad-pole*
 - (9) Latin and Greek *os-tent.*
 - (10) Greek and Latin *mag-pie*
 - (11) English and French *nut-meg*.
 - (12) French and English *hair-locm*
 - (13) Latin and English *cup-board*
 - (14) English and Latin *guer-don*
 - (15) French and Scandinavian *piri-take*
 - (16) English and Greek *harpsi-cord*.

1047 Roots and Stems — The *root* of a word is that part of it which it has in common with a group of allied words. Thus *par* (with the general meaning of *pass*) is the root common to the group of words — Gr *peri-s* (to pass over) Lat *ex-pe-ri-oi* (to pass through, test), German *rah-en* (to go), Eng *tr-e* (to go) '.

The *stem* is "that modification or change which the word assumes before suffixes are added to it. Thus take the word *loved* *lov-* is the root, *love* is the stem and *d* is the suffix of the past tense."

What are usually called *roots*, however as when we speak of Latin or Anglo-Saxon roots, are really *stems* in the languages from which they are taken. Thus we say that (Lat) *cado* is the root from which *cadence*, *case*, &c., are derived, but the root properly so called is *cad-*



CHAPTER XXI

SOURCES OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

1048 The English language is composed of words from a great many languages—we might almost say, from every language that has ever been spoken by man. The most important of these are Anglo-Saxon (which is the foundation or groundwork of the language) and Latin.

Anglo-Saxon is the name given to the dialect spoken by the tribes that invaded England from the north of Germany in the early centuries of the Christian era under the various names of Angles, Jutes, and Saxons. The first invasion took place about the year 450, and in about a hundred years they had established themselves over the greater part of England.

The other great element is Latin, by which we mean the aggregate of words originally Latin but derived for the most part through the French.

Assuming Saxon as the basis, we shall now enumerate the other sources in detail.

1049 (1) **The Classical Element**, by which is meant the Latin and the Greek element, was introduced at four different periods—

(a) *During the Roman occupation of Britain, A.D. 43—410*—The words of this period are found mainly in the names of places, as, *Isca*, a camp, in Lancaster, Manchester.

(b) *During the four centuries from the introduction of Christianity, A.D. 603—1000*—The words of this period are chiefly connected with church matters, and customs and manners and things introduced by the missionaries, as, *angel, baptize, altar, creed, camel, candle, pearl*.

(c) *At the Norman Conquest, A.D. 1066, and for five centuries after*—The words of this period are distinguished as **Norman-French** and are chiefly derived indirectly from the Latin, i.e., the Latin words themselves were not adopted, but the forms they had assumed in the French.

(d) *From the Revival of classical learning (Renaissance) in the sixteenth century to the present time*—The words of this period are of a very miscellaneous character, and include the greater number of words taken directly from the Latin.

1050 (2) **The Keltic Element**,—The Keltic is now represented by the Welsh, Gaelic, and Irish. One large class of

words derived from it are names of places, e.g., *Den, Dee, Mendip, Arian, Bute, Kent, Deion, Liverpool* also, *bag, basket, whip, une*

1051 (3) The Scandinavian Element, resulting from the intercourse between the English and the Scandinavians. It will be remembered that at one time the Danes held all the country north of the Humber and that during another period a Danish line of kings ruled England.

EXAMPLES — *big, bush, cake, dog, shy, window*

1052 (4) Other Sources —

- 1 *Hebrew* — abbot, amen, cherub, sabbath
- 2 *Arabic* — alchemy, chemistry, cotton, sofa, zero
- 3 *Persian* — caravan, paradise, hookah, turban
- 4 *Hindu* — coolies, jungle, pundit, sugar
- 5 *Malay* — bantam, sago
- 6 *Chinese* — satin, tea
- 7 *Turkish* — divan, scimitar
- 8 *American* — canoe, potato, tobacco
- 9 *Italian* — brandy, darts, griddle, umbrella
- 10 *Spanish* — alligator, cigar, sherry
- 11 *Portuguese* — caste, cash
- 12 *French* — depot, foible
- 13 *Dutch* — boot, loiter
- 14 *German* — rino
- 15 *African* — canvas, zebra, oasis, gummi
- 16 *Polynesian* — taboo, tattoo, boomerang, kangaroo
- 17 *Russian* — cossack, steppe, mammoth, rouble, ukase
- 18 *Hungarian* — salmi, cravat, hussar, prindom

1053. Words derived from names of persons — *Tantalize* (from *Tantalus*), *herculean* (from *Hercules*), *philippic* (from *Demosthenes'* oration against *Philip of Macedon*), *hermetic* (from *Hermes* or *Mercury*), *galvanism* (from *Galvani*), *daisy* (from *San Humphrey Daisy*), *lazaretto* (from *Lazarus* in the Bible parable), *maudlin* (from *Mary Magdalene*), *stentorian* (from *Stentor*), *quixotic* (from *Don Quixote*)

1054. Words derived from names of places — *bayonet* (from *Bayonne*), *corinths* (from *Corinth*), *copper* (from *Cyprus*), *cambric* (from *Cambray*), *damask* (from *Damascus*), *ermine* (from *Armenia*), *parchment* (from *Peraamus*), *muslin* (from *Mosul*), *spaniel* (from *Spain*)



CHAPTER XXII

SAXON AND CLASSICAL WORDS.

1055 No general rule can be given for distinguishing between Saxon and Classical words. The following, however, may be of some help to the student.

Pure English words are —

- I 1 Demonstrative adjectives (*a, the, this*), Pronouns Numerals
- 2 Auxiliary and defective verbs
- 3 Prepositions and conjunctions
- 4 Nouns that form their plural by a change of vowel
- 5 Verbs that form their past tense by a change of vowel
- 6 Adjectives that form their degrees of comparison irregularly
- II Monosyllables
- III Most words with distinctive English prefixes or suffixes
Prefixes *a, al, bi, for, full, on, over, out, under* —
 Suffixes $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{To nouns} \text{ ---} \text{hood, ship, dom, thiness, ary, lity, lin, ol} \\ \text{To adjs.} \text{ ---} \text{full, ly, en, ish, some, ward} \\ \text{To verbs} \text{ ---} \text{en} \end{array} \right.$
- IV Names of kindred home, domestic life (*father, hearth, cradle, meat, drink*)
Of the simpler natural feelings mental and bodily (*glad, sorry, wrath, mildness*) of the familiar objects of sense— (*earth, fire, spring, stream, fly, dog*).
Of the ordinary transactions of the market place and the farm (*trade, business, wagon*)
- V Words in English national proverbs (*'a rolling stone gathers no moss*)
- VI Terms of pleasantry, contempt, abuse anger—(*pretty, darling, fool, rascal*)
- VII Terms denoting special and individual objects and actions, as opposed to general or abstract terms
 Penny, shilling Cf Lat *moner*
 Run, walk Lat *move*
 Hear, sing Lat *sonnd*

1056 Some Classical Words with Saxon equivalents —

Classical	Saxon	Classical	Saxon
Adieu	— Goodbye	Annual	— Yearly
Amiable	— Lovely	Anticipate	— Forestall
Amicable	— Friendly	Artisan	— Workman
Ancient	— Old	Assist	— Help

<i>Classical</i>		<i>Saxon</i>		<i>Classical</i>		<i>Saxon</i>
Avert	—	Turn away		Infidel	—	Unbeliever
Benediction	—	Blessing		Insert	—	Put in
Celestial	—	Heavenly		Language	—	Speech
Cemetery	—	Burial ground, graveyard		Liberty	—	Freedom
Campaign	—	War		Magnitude	—	Bigness
Cognate	—	Kindred, akin		Malediction	—	Curse
Commence	—	Begin		Malady	—	Illness
Compensate	—	Make amends for		Malefactor	—	Evil doer
Completely	—	Wholly		Maternal	—	Motherly
Connect	—	Join		Miserable	—	Wretched
Condonal	—	Hearty		Mortal	—	Deadly
Cultivate	—	Till		Nocturnal	—	Nightly
Cultivation	—	Husbandry, till- age		Pagan	—	Heathen
Dinnal	—	Daily		Paternal	—	Fatherly
Decieve	—	Wane		Paucity	—	Fewness
Deity	—	God		Ponderous	—	Heavy
Deride	—	Mock		Postpone	—	Put off
Desire	—	Wish		Precipitate	—	Headlong
Desolation	—	Waste		Prevent	—	Hinder
Desperate	—	Hopeless		Profound	—	Deep
Dexterous	—	Skilful		Prohibit	—	Forbid
Discover	—	Find out		Prudence	—	Foresight
Dismiss	—	Send away		Puerile	—	Childish, boyish
Divine	—	God like		Purchase	—	Buy
Edifice	—	Building		Rehable	—	Trustworthy
Eject	—	Turn out		Reluctant	—	Unwilling
Eclipse	—	Glide by		Resemblance	—	Likeness
Felicity	—	Happiness		Sentiment	—	Feeling
Flower	—	Blossom		Sollicitous	—	Careful
Formidable	—	Fearful		Solitude	—	Loneliness
Fraternal	—	Brotherly		Stellar	—	Starry
Friction	—	Rubbing		Tepid	—	Warm
Frigid	—	Cold		Timid	—	Fearful
Gentle	—	Meek		Terrestrial	—	Earthly
Increase	—	Wax		Vagrant	—	Wandering
Incredulous	—	Unbelieving		Velocity	—	Swiftness, speed
				Verdant	—	Green
				Vision	—	Sight
				Vital	—	Living, quick



CHAPTER XXIII

NOTES ON PROSODY.

I—ON THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF POETRY

1057. Any work composed in verse is called a Poem

Of poems or poetry there are different kinds, called by different names from their subject, form, and style

Poetry is usually divided into *pastoral*, *lyric*, *descriptive*, *elegiac*, *didactic*, *dramatic*, *epic* or *heroic*.

1058 Pastoral poetry treats of the actions and conversation of shepherds, and the scenes and circumstances connected with the tending of flocks. It also describes the manners, the employment and the amusements of rustics in general. Pastoral poems have been written in English by Shenstone, Pope, Gay, Phillips, &c

1059 Lyric poetry so called from the lyre with which it was usually accompanied in ancient times, included all poetical compositions intended to be accompanied with music, whether of the voice or of instruments. This kind of poetry came to get the name of *ode* because it was designed to be sung. The chief English lyric poets are Milton, Dryden, Collins, Gray, Mason, Warton

1060 Descriptive poetry is employed in describing the appearances of nature or of art, so as to convey to the mind of the reader all the information and pleasures that he would receive from actually seeing the things described. Almost every good poem contains some specimens of descriptive poetry. But as a truly descriptive poet, Thomson stands first. His *Seasons* is an excellent specimen. Good specimens of this kind of poetry are also to be found in Pope's *Windsor Forest*, Cowper's *Tish*, Denham's *Cooper's Hill*, and Parnell's *Hermit*

1061 Elegiac poetry is expressive of grief, and was originally employed to lament the loss of friends and relations, but it is now also employed to the expressions of various other emotions, such as tenderness, love, moral sentiments. Elegies have been written by Gray, Pope, Shenstone, and most poets of reputation

1062 Didactic poetry is that which is employed in some branch of science, art, morals or philosophy. It conveys moral instruction, through the elevating and entertaining medium of verse. The chief didactic poems in English are *Essay on Man* (Pope), *Plastics of Imagination* (Alcibiades), *Art of Preserving Health* (Armstrong), *Night Thoughts* (Young), and *The Iliad* (Dyer).

1063 Dramatic poetry is devoted to plays and is most used on the stage. It differs from every other kind of poetry in this respect, that the characters appear, act, and speak for themselves, while the poet never appears as a speaker. Its two principal kinds are **comedy** representing the actions of ordinary life generally with a happy issue, and **tragedy**, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages commonly with an unhappy issue. Many of the poets have written dramas, but Shakespeare stands alone, pre-eminent above the rest, in this kind of composition. Among other English writers in this department of poetry are Marlowe, Massinger, Ben Jonson, Beaumont and Fletcher, Congreve, Wycherley, Dryden, Otway, Garrick, Sheridan.

1064 Epic or heroic poetry treats of some important transaction of some illustrious person, with its various circumstances. The composition is partly narrative and partly dramatic, that is, the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes his characters speak. In an epic poem there is a hero who either singly or with the aid of others is determined to perform some great achievement. The *Iliad*, and the *Odyssey* (Homer), the *Æneid* (Virgil), the *Ramayana* (Válmiki), the *Mahábhāratha* (Vyasa?), *Paradise Lost* (Milton), the *Divina Commedia* (Dante), the *Lusiad* (Camões), *Jerusalem Delivered* (Tasso), and *Orlando Furioso* (Ariosto) are examples of epic poems.

1065 Minor varieties of poetry—

Sonnet—a poem of fourteen lines, generally of a lyric character.

Epitaph—a versified inscription on a tombstone.

Elegy—a poem on a mournful subject.

Epigram—a short witty poem, generally of a satiric character.

Satire—a poem censuring the vices of an individual or a community.

Ballad—a short narrative poem, lyrical in character.

II — POETICAL LICENSE

1066 Poetical license allows the violation of rules of orthography, etymology, and syntax in poetry, on account of the difficulty of arranging words in regular measure. Poetical licenses may be classified as follows —

I. Poetical Archaisms—

1. Of words, as, *hallow'd, sojourn, wol, ire, wrath*

2. Of constructions, as

(a) *Meseems, methinks*

(b) *Use of the subjunctive with the first and third persons to express a command, entreaty or proposal —*

Ruin thee thee ruthless king 'I'
' And rest we here ' Matilda said "

(c) *Were, had for would be, would (should) have been.*

*" His spear to equal which the tallest pine
Here but a wand "*
' Else I often had been miserable "

(d) *As for as if*

*" And into strong vagaries flew
Is [if] they would dance! "*

(e) *The old interrogative for the modern*

" Breathe there the man with soul so dead, &c. "

(f) *Me, him, them, &c., for myself, himself, themselves, &c.*

' He sits him down at a pillar's base '

(g) *Omission of antecedent*

" Who steals my purse steals trash "

(h) *' Or, or, ' nor, nor, ' for ' either, or, ' neither, nor, ' now, now, ' here, here, for ' now, then, ' here, there ' "*

' Nor zeal to God nor love to man, &c. "

' O! by the lazy Scheldt or wandering Po "

(i) *Omission of ' neither ' before ' nor ' "*

" Sigh not word nor struggling breath "

(l) *Omission of ' so ' before ' that ' "*

*With high woods the hills were crowned,
With borders long the rivers that earth now
Seemed like to heaven*

(m) *Omission of ' the ' before epithets treated as part of the name*

*' On such a stool immortal Alfred sat',
and also before names of rivers
' The flies and gnats of Nile*

II Poetical "regularities"—

- 1 *Noun and its pronoun nominative to the same verb*
"The smith a mighty man is he"
- 2 *Nominative after verb, and verb after object*
"Such resting found the sole of unblest feet",
i.e. the sole of unblest feet found such resting
- 3 *Epithet placed after noun*
"Refrained his tongue blasphemous"
- 4 *Noun in apposition with another put before it*
"Two broad suns, their shields
Blazed opposite"
- 5 *Preposition after word governed by it*
"Where echo walks the steep hill among"
6. Comparatives of adverbs formed by changing *-ly*, into *-lier*, as *durklier*
7. Other irregularities come under

III Poetical Abridgments—

- 1 *Short forms of words, as, vale (valley) marge (margin), helm (helmet)*
- 2 *Omission of the verb 'to be'*
"Dagon [was] his name" "Peace [be] to his bones"
- 3 *Omission of relative*
"'Tis distance [that] lends enchantment to the view"
- 4 *Omission of preposition*
"Despair and anguish fled [from] the struggling soul"
- 5 *Adjective used for adverb*
"Hope springs eternal[ly] in the human breast"
- 6 *Adjectives and participles and nouns in apposition, instead of subordinate clauses*
"Chemos the obscene dread of Moab's sons,"
i.e., who was the obscene dread
"Lely on animated canvas stole
The sleepy eye, &c,"
i.e., on canvas that assumed animation under his pencil
7. *Epithet for name of thing denoted, as azure for the azure sky, the vast abrupt for the vast and abrupt Chaos*
8. *Principal verb omitted*
"Why still delay," "why longer dwell on horrors"
9. *Nouns used as verbs*
"And as they pleased
They limb themselves"
i.e., endow themselves with limbs

10 *Intransitive verbs used as transitive*

"The terms we sent were terms of weight
And stumbled many,"

i.e., caused many to stumble.

11 *Neir compounds, as world earthquake, woman-vested*

III —VERSIFICATION

1067 **Metre, Rhythm** — *Metre* is an artificial arrangement of words, in which the accent falls at regular intervals, according to certain laws

Rhythm is the harmonious flow of words, resulting from the regular recurrence of accented and unaccented syllables

The difference between *metre* and *rhythm* is that to constitute the former, the composition should be divided off into lines of *fixed* length, and the accents recur at *fixed* intervals while rhythm does not require division into lines, or the recurrence of accents at fixed intervals, but simply that the accented and unaccented syllables should be mixed up proportionately, so that there may not be too many accented syllables, or too many unaccented syllables, occurring together

1068 **Verse**.—A *verse* is one line of poetry, consisting of a certain number of accented and unaccented syllables, arranged according to metrical rules.

1069 A **foot** is a portion of a verse (line), consisting of two or three connected syllables, one of which is always accented

There are eight kinds of poetic feet four dissyllabic, and four trisyllabic We shall represent the accented syllables by an accent

<i>Dissyllabic</i>	<i>Trisyllabic</i>
Iambic——adóre	Dactylic——holiness
Trochee——rósy	Anapestic——intercéde
Spondee——áin man	Amphibrachic——coólal
Pyrrhic——on a (bínk)	Tribrachic ——(témp)orary

1070 **Rhyme** is applied to lines which end in the same sound **Blank verse** is verse that does not rhyme.

Rhyme is not only not necessary to English poetry (many of the best English poems are written without it), but is an encumbrance to the poet, as it limits him to a narrow range of words

1071. Couplets, triplets, quatrains, &c —

Two rhyming lines coming together make a *couplet*, three, a *triplet*. Four lines rhyming alternately make a *quatrain*. Two consecutive lines of verse, making complete sense, make a *distich* (whether they rhyme or not). Half a line is called a *hemistich*.

1072 Essentials of a perfect rhyme —

- 1 The vowel sounds must be the same
- 2 The parts following the vowel must be the same.
- 3 The consonants preceding the vowel must be different
- 4 The rhyming syllables must be accented alike.

The rhyming of one syllable with another is called a *simple* or *single* rhyme but when the rhyming syllables are each followed by the same termination, or by an unemphatic monosyllable, the rhyme is called *double*. When they are each followed by the same twosyllable, the rhyme is called *triple*. *Sold, gold*, are single rhymes *peeping, sleeping, ease us, please us*, double and *notorious, crumious*, triple.

Note — A foot, which is the unit of metric, cannot have less than two syllables or more than three. It should be borne in mind that the syllables constituting a foot need not all belong to one word but may belong to different words, so that of the same word, a part may belong to one foot and a part to another.

The prevailing kinds of feet in English poetry are the Iambus, the Trochee, and the Anapaest the others occur chiefly as variations.

1073 Monometer, Dimeter, &c — According to the number of feet in each line, the verse is called *monometer*, *dimeter*, *trimeter*, *tetrameter*, *pentameter*, *hexameter*, *heptameter*, *octometer* — *monometer* meaning that each line consists of a single foot, *dimeter*, two feet, and so on.

1074 Scansion. To scan verse is to show how it is formed in respect of its feet, in other words, to analyse its versification. To scan a line, divide it into feet by parallel vertical lines, and mark the accented syllables by means of an accent ('), thus

Remóte, | unfriénd | ed, mé! | auchó! | v, slów,
O! | by the la | zv Schéldt | o! wánd' | ring Pó

Or we may write above each foot its kind, thus

Anapaest Anapaest Anapaest
I am mon | aich of all | I survey
Iambus Anapaest Anapaest
My right | there is none | to dispute

The former method is usually adopted

CHAPTER XXIV

VARIETY OF EXPRESSION..

1075 In some of the foregoing chapters we have shown, by numerous examples, how to change the form of sentences without changing their meaning. In the present chapter we purpose to point out some more ways in which we may vary expression

1076 Circumlocution—one of the commonest ways in which expressions are varied is by circumlocution, that is, by expressing a simple idea in a roundabout way, in other words, by using several words instead of one or a few. Thus, when we say 'our inward monitor,' we are using a circumlocution for the single word conscience. The following are examples of roundabout expressions used instead of single nouns —

(1) Nouns —the lords of creation, for men, the weaker sex, the fairer sex, for women, the finny tribe, for fishes, the azure vault of heaven, for the sky, the Almighty Ruler of the Universe, for God

(2) Adjectives —contrary to law, for illegal, attended with great bloodshed, for bloody or sanguinary, free from guilt, for innocent, of the greatest consequence, for most important, easily made angry, for irritable, free from affectation, for unaffected

(3) Verbs —sent out of the country, for banished, keep company for associate, put out of one's way, for remove, look forward to, for expect, departed this life, for died

(4) Adverbs —Without doubt, for undoubtedly, at that time, for then, beyond question, for unquestionably, step by step, for gradually, suer and anon, for frequently

1077 Condensation.—As we may use a roundabout expression for a single word or a short phrase, so conversely, we may substitute a single word or a short phrase for a roundabout expression. Thus, instead of saying 'We have long kept up a mutual intercourse by letters,' we may say more briefly, 'We have long corresponded.' We may thus use single nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs instead of *periphrases*, that is,

roundabout expressions This process may be called *condensation*

1078 Transposition is the process of changing the order in which the parts of a sentence are mingled, without changing the sense, and allows such alterations in the construction as the new arrangement requires The following is an example

(a) I had long before now repented of my roving course of life, but I could not free my mind from the love of travel

(b) Of my roving course of life I had long before now repented but from the love of travel I could not free my mind

(c) I could not free my mind from the love of travel, though I had long before now repented of my roving course of life

(d) From the love of travel I could not free my mind though of my roving course of life I had long before now repented

1079 Substitution of synonyms—Another mode of varying expression consists in the substitution of synonymous words and phrases

The following is an example of the substitution of synonyms

Occasionally large portions of rock are detached and roll down in heaps, effacing every path which has been formed beneath, filling the beds of the rivers and converting them into cataraets

[Words changed] *Sometimes great pieces of rock are loosened and roll down in heaps, destroying every road which has been made below, filling the beds of the streams and changing them into waterfalls*

1080 The Interchange of Saxon and Classical Words is another mode of varying expression The following is an example —

= *Equestrians* and *pedestrians* were mingled together

= *Riders* and *walkers* were mingled together

When a single Saxon word cannot be substituted for a classical word, we may substitute for it a phrase made up of Saxon words as —

|| He squandered his fortune in a few months

= He ran through his fortune in a few months

1081 The Interchange of Conjugate Forms forms another mode of varying expression, as shown in the following examples —

1 *Noun* Formerly the punishment for theft was death
Adjective Formerly theft was punishable with death
Verb Formerly theft was punished into death

- 2 *Noun* He is a man of great *prudence*
Adjective He is a very *prudent* man
 3 *Noun* He returned with great *speed*
Adverb He returned very *speedily*

1082 The expansion of metaphors into similes, and the change of similes into metaphors, which form modes of varying expression, has been explained and illustrated in Chapter XVII

1083 The use of Euphemisms (see 974) furnishes another source of variety of expression. Thus the expressions 'He is dead' and 'He is gone the way of all flesh' are mutually interchangeable

1084 Figurative and unfigurative language.—Expression may also be varied by substituting unfigurative language where any of the other figures are used, especially by the removal of litotes (see 984) by using antonyms.

- 1 He suffered no inconsiderable loss
 = He suffered very great loss
 2 O Death! where is thy sting?
 = Death no longer causes us any pain
 3 The school was a perfect Babel
 = The school was in a state of noisy confusion
 4 A fleet of fifty sail
 = A fleet of fifty ships
 5 The waves rose mountains high
 = The waves rose very high
 6 I am reading Milton
 = I am reading Milton's works

1085 Other modes of varying expression are illustrated by the following examples —

- 1 He is too ill for work
 = He is so ill as not to be able to work
 = He is so ill that he is not able to work
 = He is so ill that he cannot work
 2 Be so good as to excuse my absence
 = Be good enough to excuse my absence
 3 No sooner had he arrived than he came to see me
 = He had scarcely (hardly) arrived when he came to see me
 = Directly (immediately) he arrived, he came to see me
 4 The king's residence
 = The royal residence
 5 There is no other course open to me
 = This is the only course open to me
 6 I have only ten Rupees
 = Ten Rupees is all the money I have
 7 He is at least fifty years old
 = He is fifty years old, even if he be not more
 8 He spoke so loud as to be heard by all
 = He spoke so loud that he could be heard by all
 = He spoke loud enough to be heard by all

- 9 Learning is better than wealth
= Learning is preferable to wealth
10 If you do not allow me, I cannot go
= Unless you allow me, I cannot go
11 But that he was ill, he would have come
= If he had not been ill, he would have come
12 For all his wealth, he is not happy
= Though he is so wealthy, he is not happy



CHAPTER XXV

PARAPHRASING.

I HINTS ON PARAPHRASING

1086 Paraphrasing: its nature, objects, and uses
—The word *paraphrase*, from the Greek *para*, beside or near, and *phrassein*, to speak, means literally a “speaking near to”, and to paraphrase a passage is to give its meaning as nearly as possible, in different language from that used by the writer or speaker of it

1087 Essentials of a good paraphrase—A good paraphrase must satisfy *four conditions*

- 1 It must express all that is expressed by the original
- 2 It must express nothing that is not expressed by the original.
3. The language of the paraphrase must be as different as possible from that of the original, in respect not only of the words used, but also of the structure and form of the sentences.
4. The language of the paraphrase must be simpler than that of the original

1088. (1) The First Step in Paraphrasing is to read over the given passage *carefully* once, and even twice or thrice if necessary, to make sure that you *thoroughly understand its meaning*. It is obviously impossible to lay down any rules on this point: the student must rely on his own intelligence and powers of thinking to master the full sense of the original.

If after carefully reading over the passage twice or thrice, the student finds himself utterly unable to grasp the meaning, *he should not attempt to paraphrase it at all*. Such a contingency, however, will happen but rarely, if at all, in the case of a student of average intelligence, provided, of course, that the passage has been selected with due regard to the standard of attainments of those who have to paraphrase it. The reason why students often fail to understand the meaning of a passage is not that it is too difficult for them to understand it, but that they do not *try* to understand it, or, at any rate, they do not go about it the right way and with the determination of grasping the meaning.

If however, the student has succeeded in mastering the sense of the passage, he should proceed to the next step, reduction to syntactical order.

1089. (II) Reduction to Syntactical Order.—The next step is to re-arrange the parts of each sentence in the regular *syntactical order*, removing all *insertions*, whether poetical or rhetorical, and supplying all *poetical ellipses*, and *prose ellipses* where necessary.

1090 (III) Removal of Poetical or Uncommon Constructions—All poetical, archaic, or uncommon, constructions should be changed into ordinary prose constructions. This step may be combined with the preceding one, and the two kinds of changes made together.

1091 (IV) Removal of Poetical or Archaic Words and Phrases—The student should substitute ordinary prose expressions for all poetical or archaic words and phrases.

This step may be combined with the two preceding ones, and all three kinds of changes made in one operation.

1092. (V) Change of Structure—The structure of the sentences should be changed as much as possible.

Long and complicated sentences should be broken up into a number of shorter and simpler ones, so as to make the meaning clearer and more intelligible. On the other hand, when two or more *very short sentences* come together, they may be combined into a compound or a complex sentence, provided that it be not too long or involved.

1093 (VI) Removal or Change of Figures—Figurative language should be changed into plain language, but a metaphor may be expanded into a simile, and a simile may be expanded or explained, so as to bring out the resemblance more clearly.

A metaphor or a simile should be expanded or explained, instead of being altogether removed, when its removal would materially injure the force of the passage. As a rule a simile should not be compressed into a metaphor, for such compression makes the resemblance less plain, and therefore the meaning less clear. But it may be done if the metaphor would express the meaning as clearly as the simile. Thus we may change "The cannon roared like thunder," into "The cannon thundered."

The student should not suppose that he must *entirely avoid* figurative language in his paraphrase. Familiar metaphors are as intelligible as plain language, and nothing can be gained

by removing them. Such common hyperboles, again, as "a handful of men," may be used as freely in ordinary prose as in poetry. But all such figures as personification, metonymy, synecdoche, irony, and paradox, should be removed. Apostrophes should also be removed except *where the whole passage forms an apostrophe*. An antithesis cannot be removed without destroying the force of the passage altogether. Purely ornamental epithets, as *green* in "the green grass" form a sort of pleonasm, and may be omitted altogether. When a pleonasm is employed for emphasis, it should be retained.

1094. (VII) Change of Form—The student should make as many changes as he can in the form of the sentence, by changing direct speech into indirect and *vice versa*, the active form into the passive and *vice versa*, one degree of comparison into another, one part of speech into another, interrogative and exclamatory sentences into assertive, and so on.

When there is a *long direct quotation* in the original, it will be as well to retain the direct form.

The voice should not be changed unless the active and or the passive form may be indifferently used in the sentence in which the verb occurs, which is not *always* the case.

It may be laid down as a *general rule* that no change of form should be made, if the change is one for the worse.

1095 (VIII) Change of Phraseology—When all the changes above described have been made, the student may proceed to the last step, that of substituting synonymous words or equivalent expressions for words or phrases in the passage as it then stands. To facilitate the process, all such words and phrases may be *underlined*, as soon as this step is reached.

Caution—This student must here be cautioned against the error of supposing that *every word* in the original should be changed. If he substitutes an equivalent for every word, the result will be either that the paraphrase does not convey the exact meaning of the original, or that it becomes absurd or nonsensical. All *difficult* or *uncommon* words must, of course, be changed, but nothing can be more absurd than changing *lightning* into "the discharge of the atmospheric electricity," or *leg* into "one of the lower limbs." The substitution of a more difficult or unfamiliar word for a simple or more familiar one should also be carefully avoided, it violates one of the essential conditions of a good paraphrase.

1096. Abridgment of the above Processes—It is not expected that in paraphrasing a passage, the student will go through all the above steps successively in the order we

have indicated, or in any other order, and re-write the passage at every step, nor is it intended that he should do so. The number of steps in which he performs the operation must depend on the degree of expertness that he has attained. At first he should go through every step in succession, then he may combine some of the steps into one, as II and III, III and IV, II, III and IV, V and VI, or VII and VIII, and finally he may perform the operation in *two* steps—reading the passage over carefully, and then writing off the paraphrase, making the different changes simultaneously. But a High School student will rarely, if ever, have reached this final stage, and he should therefore go through at least three steps: (1) reading over the passage, (2) changing the order, form, and structure, and (3) removing and changing figures, and substituting equivalent words and phrases. This will require his re-writing the passage once, before writing his paraphrase, but no student who wants to write a good paraphrase will think it too much trouble to do this. In the illustrations which follow, we have shown *four* steps—(1) reduction to regular syntactical order (ellipses being supplied, and poetical language changed), (2) removal or change of figures, (3) change of form and structure, and (4) change of phraseology.

1097 Illustrations—We shall now give two examples of short passages paraphrased according to the rules we have given above. The different steps are numbered as indicated in the preceding section.

EXAMPLE 1

Many a shaft at random sent
Finds mark the archer little meant,
And many a word, at random spoken,
May soothe, or wound, a heart that's broken

(1) The only change of order required is in the first and third lines, where *sent* and *spoken* should be put before *at random*.

(2) Expressing as a simile *Many a shaft sent at random finds a mark that the archer little meant, so, many a word spoken at random may soothe or wound a heart that is broken.*

(3) Transforming *A shaft which an archer sends at random often finds a mark that he little meant, so a word spoken at random may often soothe, or wound, a heart that is broken.*

(4) Changing phraseology *An arrow which a man shoots from a bow without taking any aim, often strikes a point that he had no intention it should strike, so a carelessly uttered word may*

prove to be applicable to some person crushed by grief and despair, and either increase or alleviate his misery.

Note—Observe that *and* in the third line of the above passage has the force of *so*

EXAMPLE 2

Full many a gem of purest ray serene,
The dark unfathomed caves of ocean bear ,
Full many a flower is born to blush unseen
And waste its sweetness on the desert air

(1) In prose order *The dark unfathomed caves of the ocean bear full many a gem of purest serene ray , full many a flower is born, &c*

(2) and (3) Removing the metaphor and transforming
In the dark caves of the ocean which are at a depth that cannot be fathomed, there is full many a gem of purest serene ray , and there is full many a flower which grows to bloom unseen and waste its sweetness on the desert air

(4) Changing phraseology *In the dark caverns of the sea, which are at a depth that cannot be measured by man, there lie hidden many gems of the brightest and clearest lustre , and there are many flowers growing and blooming in the desert, whose beauty and fragrance are of no use because there is no one to enjoy them*

There is an implied simile in this passage, which may be fully expressed by adding to the paraphrase given above “ *So there are many persons possessing the most brilliant natural abilities in the most obscure ranks of society, of whom the world knows nothing, and whose excellent parts there is no one to appreciate* ”



CHAPTER XXVI

LETTER-WRITING.

1098 The Language of Letters—Letters should always be written in a simple familiar style. The best rule as to the language of letters is, '*Write as you would speak*'. To intimate friends write in a familiar style, to strangers in a more formal and distant tone. We cannot, of course, use *precisely* the same style in writing as in speaking. Written language should always be more exact and careful than speech, and greater attention must be paid to the construction of the separate sentences, and the connexion between them, and their order or arrangement. Contractions, as *I don't, I'll, isn't*, which are allowable in speaking, should be avoided (except in the most familiar style *ie*, in letters to your very intimate friends). In letters all stiffness should be avoided, and we should aim at a purely colloquial or conversational style.

1099. The Form of Letters—We must pay particular attention to the form or mechanical arrangement of letters. If we neglect this in our familiar letters, we shall get into the habit of doing the same in more important ones, and serious consequences may follow.

The following are the parts into which every well-written letter may be divided, and attention must be paid to them all and particularly to the forms of address, and of subscription or conclusion —

- 1 The Place where the letter is written and the Date of writing it
- 2 The Form of Address
- 3 The Narrative or body of the letter
- 4 The Form of Subscription
- 5 The Name of the Recipient, or person to whom the letter is written

We shall give a few directions regarding these points

1100. The Place and Date—The name of the *place* from which the letter is written should be put at the *top* of the first page at the *right hand side*, and under it the *date* in the form '*28th October 1865*,' the date of the month first, the

month next, and the year last. This is preferable to the form 'October 28th, 1885' which is also used. Never put the date thus 28-10-85, or thus 25/10/85, except in strictly business letters.

1101. The Form of Address—The form of Address, as *Sir, My dear Sir*, should be written a little, say an inch, below the date on the *left hand side*. There are different forms of address varying with the intimacy of the parties. Thus, we may write 'My dear Rama-samy' to an intimate friend, but not to a stranger. The following are some of the different forms of address arranged according to the degree of familiarity they express, the first being the most distant, respectful or formal, and the last the most familiar. 1 *Sir*, 2 *Dear Sir*, 3 *My dear Sir*, 4 *Dear Mr Krishna Row*, 5 *My dear Mr Krishna Row*, 6 *Dear Subramany Iyer*, 7 *My dear Subramany Iyer*, 8 *Dear Subramany*, 9. *My dear Subramany*, 10 *My dear Subbu* (dim form), 11 *My dear brother*, 12 *My dearest father*.

Note—1 Avoid such exaggerated expressions as 'My beloved friend,' 'Friend of my heart'. The form 'My dear friend' is hardly English now in letter writing.

2 After the address put a *comma*, not an exclamation. That would be German not English usage.

1102 The Narrative or body of the letter. Begin the body of the letter in the next line after the address, an inch or so from its beginning. The body of the letter may consist of as many paragraphs as there are distinct subjects written about.

1103 Forms of Subscription—After the body of the letter is finished, the subscription should be written on the right hand side. The address is *generally* repeated in the subscription, as may be seen from the examples given below. The subscription should be written thus

I remain,
Sir,
Yours faithfully,
A B

The form of subscription varies with the form of address, that is to say, according to the degree of acquaintance or intimacy of the parties. The following are the chief 1 *Yours faithfully*, 2 *Yours truly*, 3 *Yours sincerely*, 4 *Yours very faithfully*, 5 *Yours very truly*, 6 *Yours very sincerely*, 7 *Yours most faithfully*, 8 *Yours most truly*, 9 *Yours most sincerely*. These are arranged according to the degree of familiarity they express.

Note—1 In writing to a superior we write *Yours obediently*, *Yours very obediently*, *Yours most obediently*, or we may use *respectfully* instead of *obediently*.

2 Sometimes *I am*, *I remain*, are omitted and the subscription written simply thus *Yours truly*, A B Also '*Believe me to be*' is used sometimes instead of *I am*, &c The difference between *I am*, &c, and *believe me to be* is that the latter may be written in the body of the letter, the former cannot

3 In letters to relatives and very dear friends we may write '*Your most affectionate friend*,' '*Your loving son*,' '*Your sincere well wisher*,' &c

1104 The Name of the Recipient of the letter should be written at the left hand side, a line below the signature, thus

A B

To

A H PRIMO, Esq.,
Bellary

Note —Never use *Mr* and *Esq*, or *Mr* *R* *Ry* and *Esq*, together

1105 Official Letters —In official letters, the *Date* and *Place* may be written either at the right hand top, or left hand bottom of the letter The name of the writer and recipient are given as under

From

The Collector of Ganjam,

To

The Deputy Collector
In charge of the Treasury,
Vizagapatam

The body of the letter begins with '*I have the honour to*, &c,' and the subscription is

I have the honour to be,

Sir,

Your most obedient Servant,

A B

This is sometimes varied into '*I am*, Yours most obediently,' or '*Yours obediently*'

1106 Business Letters should be *clear*, *concise*, and *courteous* They should introduce the main topic as soon as possible, and should contain nothing that does not pertain directly or indirectly to the business in hand Expressions of friendship or regard are quite out of place in such letters

The designation or address of the writer should always be given in business letters

1107 Applications for Appointments should be brief and to the point, and respectful, but not servilely so, in language Only those circumstances should be mentioned which strengthen the applicant's claim, such as the education he has received, the examinations he has passed, the appointments he has held, together with any special qualifications he may have

for the post. Other personal details regarding the applicant's poverty or the large family dependent on him, and appeals to the benevolence of the person addressed, are out of place except in begging letters, and have no weight in determining the bestowal of an appointment, especially if the post is one in the public service. The candidate's testimonials should accompany his application, and if not sent in original, should be marked in each case "*True Copy*," with the applicant's signature below those words.

As an example of a badly written application take the following

To

THE COLLECTOR OF TANJORE,

Tanjore

HONOURED SIR,

Being given to understand that your honour is now taking volunteers into your honour's office, I most humbly beg your honour to take me as one. I have passed the Middle School Examination and am reading for Matriculation, but my parents are too poor and I have to get employment. I beg your honour therefore to be kindly pleased to take me as a volunteer, and to give me an appointment when the proper time comes. I am of good character as your honour will see from the enclosed certificates.

Your obedient and humble servant,
C Damodaram

Dated 17th October 1895

KUMBHAKONAM

The following would be far better and more manly —

KUMBHAKONAM,
17th October 1895

To

THE COLLECTOR OF TANJORE

SIR

I understand that you are taking on volunteers in your office, and I beg respectfully to offer myself as a volunteer. I have passed the Middle School Examination and am now reading for Matriculation, but my circumstances not permitting me to continue my studies, I am obliged to seek employment. I beg you will be good enough to take me on as a volunteer, and to give me an appointment when an opportunity occurs.

I beg to enclose copies of my certificates

I remain, Sir,
Yours most obediently,
C Damodaram

1108 'And oblige.'—We shall now remark on some mistakes commonly made by native students in letter-writing. And first as to the expression '*and oblige*,' at the end of a letter. *Oblige* is a transitive verb and must govern an object directly.

It should also agree with a proper nominative. The following, so often seen, is wrong

Sir,
As I am very ill, I shall feel thankful to you for granting me three days' leave and oblige

I remain,
Your obedient pupil,
A. B

Here the only nominative *oblige* can have is *I*—which is obviously not the writer's intention. Also *oblige* cannot govern *pupil*, which is in altogether a different sentence, 'I remain, &c.' *Oblige* ought to be co-ordinate with *granting* and should govern *pupil*. We should therefore either change *oblige* into *obliging* (i.e., for obliging) and strike out *I remain*, using no stop after *oblige*, or recast the whole sentence thus —

Sir,
As I am very ill, kindly grant me three days' leave and oblige
Your obedient pupil
A. B

1109. **Un-English Forms**—The forms "*Honoured Sir*," "*Respected Sir*," &c., and their variations formed by prefixing *most* to the adjective, are against English usage, and should therefore not be used.* There are no special terms of honour in English corresponding to those used in vernacular letter-writing.

"*Your honour*," used to ordinary individuals, in an Irishism, and should be avoided. No European, who is not officially entitled to such a mode of address, has any right to expect it, but it is so commonly used by natives in their letters and petitions to Europeans and high officials generally that an omission to use it *might* (we do not say it *will*) be considered disrespectful. It would be perfectly right, of course, to address a judge on the bench "*Your honour*."

1110 **Incongruous Forms**—If you wish to adopt the respectful style, do so by all means, or use the familiar style, if you like it and if you are sufficiently intimate with the person you are writing to. But never *mix* up the two styles. It is ridiculous to say "*Your sincere and humble friend*," though we may say correctly, "*Your obedient and humble servant*."

We should also take care that the forms of subscription and address harmonise with each other. Thus we should not begin with "*Sir*" and end with "*Yours affectionately*," or begin with "*My dear Ramaswami*" and end with "*Yours respectfully*."

* They may, however, be used when the occasion of writing the letter demands a stronger expression than usual of respect or affection, as when the students of a school write a letter of farewell to a teacher, or the clerks of an office write one to their retiring head, and so on.

1111. "Yours" and "Your"—These are constantly confounded, although the difference between them is so plain. *Yours* cannot be followed by a noun, or *your* by an adverb. We should say not *yours obedient pupil*, but *your*, not *your obediently*, but *yours*.

Note—Never write *Your's*. There is no such form in English.

1112. 'And hope to hear the same from you.'—Native students often begin a letter thus "I am doing well here by the grace of God, *and hope to hear the same from you*." Now "*the same*" here can only refer to the first clause of the sentence, and what the writer actually *says* is that he hopes to hear from his friend that *the writer* is doing well, while what he *means* is that he hopes to hear that *his friend* is doing well.

We would also observe that the above mode of commencing a letter is very illiterate, and should be avoided.



CHAPTER XXVII.

ESSAY-WRITING.

1113 The Essay—An Essay is a series of paragraphs discussing the different parts of a subject so arranged as to give a complete exposition of the subject of which it treats

1114 Outline—An essay should treat of its subject in a *methodical and orderly manner*, and that it may do so, it must be written according to a prearranged plan

Before beginning to write an essay, therefore, the student should think over the subject for a while, and draw up a short outline, noting down his leading ideas on the subject under the appropriate heads, in logical order. This will not only ensure orderliness and system, but will also “afford some security against repetition and digression,” and enable the relative importance of the various parts to be gauged, and the amount of space devoted to each to be regulated by comparison.

1115. The Structure of Essays—An essay is made up of paragraphs, *at least three in number*. The *first* paragraph opens the subject and the *last* concludes it while the *intervening* treats it. In a large essay consisting of a series of paragraphs, different views or aspects of the same subject are given in the intermediate paragraphs, with suitable illustrations, and these paragraphs must follow one another in the natural order of thought.

✓ **1116 Three kinds of Essays**—There are three kinds of Essays—1 *Narrative*, 2, *Descriptive*, and 3 *Expository* or *Reflective*.

1117 A Narrative Essay has for its subject some event of special interest *real or imaginary, biographical or historical*. The language used in it must be simple and suggestive. This kind of essay admits of description and reflection but in a small way, only if they conduce to making the subject clear.

Example BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

1 Benjamin Franklin was a remarkable, rather than an accomplished, man. His name is connected in England with the idea of worldly prudence and strong commonsense, while in the United States of America, he is almost adored as one of the directors of their struggle for independence. He has also attracted some attention by his experiments on lightning. The ancestors of his family had been Englishmen, of Eton, in Northamptonshire, but, at the time when the colonies of North America afforded an easy retreat for all that were dissatisfied with Government at home, his father and uncle, who were dissenters, crossed the Atlantic, to settle in New England. Here his father set up the business of soap-boiler and tallow-chandler.

2 Benjamin Franklin was born in 1705, and was one of a family of thirteen. He was tried at several trades, none of which he liked, but, finally, he settled to the business of printer, one not much practised at that time in the new settlement. His father seems to have contributed much to form the character of his young son. By his example, he taught him to aim at high and honourable objects, by the correctness of his remarks, he urged him to bestow pains upon the cultivation of an accurate and just taste in composition, and by his own necessities he taught him to pursue the task of earning his daily bread with industry and honour.

3 At seventeen, Benjamin disagreed with his elder brother, to whom he had been apprenticed as apprentice and set off to seek his fortune in New York. After several months of labour, he came to England, where he entered a printing office, and worked for a year and half. This visit proved of great advantage to him, both directly in his business of printer, and indirectly in expanding his mind. His energy and perseverance finally made him, as might have been expected, a successful tradesman.

4 When the difficulties between the American colonies and the mother country commenced, Franklin was engaged as an agent in England, Canada, and France. The art of composition, in which he had become a master, was now employed in drawing up addresses and declarations in defence of the politics of the new republic. He was elected one of the delegates to the Congress, or temporary government, which took the first steps towards cutting off the ties binding America to the British empire. After having enjoyed many honours, he died at Philadelphia in 1790, at the age of 84.

1118. A Descriptive Essay aims to describe objects in such a manner that they shall appear to the reader *exactly* as they do to the observer. A good description is a *clear, vivid, and accurate word-picture*, of an *object*, of *scenery*, or of a *person*. In these the *salient* points must be noted and combined in the order which tends to make their description the most effective.

Example THE PYRAMIDS OF EGYPT.

1 The three pyramids that are most taken notice of by travellers, as exceeding all the rest both in size and in beauty, are situated on a ridge of rocky hills, on the borders of the Libyan desert, about ten miles westward from the village of Ghizeh, which is supposed to be the spot where

ancient Memphis stood, though there are now not the least traces to be found of the ruins of that great and renowned city.

2 The largest of these pyramids, which has suffered least by time and weather, is six hundred and ninety three English feet square at the base, and its perpendicular height is four hundred and ninety-nine feet, but if the height be taken as the pyramid ascends inclining, it is then six hundred and ninety three feet, which is exactly equal to the breadth of the base, so that the edges of two sides make an equilateral triangle with the base. The whole area therefore, of the base is four hundred and eighty two thousand two hundred and forty-nine square feet, which is something more than eleven acres of ground.

3 On the outside of this pyramid there is an ascent by steps, the breadth and depth of every step is formed by one entire stone, and several of the stones are thirty feet in length. The top of the pyramid does not end in a point, as it appears to those who view it from below, but in a little square consisting of nine stones besides two that are wanting at the angles. Each side of the platform is about sixteen feet, so that a considerable number of persons may stand upon it. From this elevation there is one of the most beautiful prospects that can be imagined.

4 On the north side of the large pyramid, sixteen steps from the bottom, there is a narrow passage leading downwards into the body of the structure. Those who have explored this passage have found within, galleries, chambers, and a noble hall, built of Theban marble, situated in the centre of the pyramid. In this stately hall stands a tomb, which consists of one entire piece of marble hollowed, without any lid or covering, and on being struck it sounds like a bell. The general opinion is, that it was designed for the tomb of *Cheops* or *Chemmis*, king of Egypt, the founder of this pyramid. There is no appearance, however, of any corpse having been laid in it.

5 The utmost uncertainty exists in all that concerns the construction of the pyramids. Their builders origin, date, and purposes, are entirely lost in the night of ages. As the sides of all the pyramids face the cardinal points, and of course give the true meridian of the places where they are situated, it would seem that their builders had made some progress in scientific knowledge, and the structures themselves, under all circumstances, notwithstanding their plain exterior, clearly show the advanced state of art in those very early times.

1119 Expository or Reflective "Essay"—The subjects for a Reflective Essay are of an abstract or general character, such as 'Friendship,' 'Kindness to Animals,' 'Caste,' 'Female Education' or proverbial truths or precepts, such as 'Knowledge is power,' 'Always make the best of things.'

An Expository Essay may consist of the following

- 1 The *Introduction* of the subject,
- 2 The *Proposition*, or statement of the question,
- 3 The *Proof*, or arguments in support of it
- 4 The *Refutation* of objections,
- 5 The *Exhortation*, or appeal to the feelings, and
6. The *Recapitulation* and *Conclusion*

Example.

ON THE ADVANTAGES OF AN INTELLECTUAL EDUCATION,

1 Of the two constituent parts of which man is formed, every one must acknowledge the superiority of the mind over the body. It is the mind which prompts every single act that the body performs, which has the power of predetermining future actions, and which often retains its vigour long after the body has begun to languish and grow feeble with disease or age. Strength of body is indeed a high privilege, and by no means to be despised; but when unaccompanied with vigour of intellect it places man no higher than the brutes in the scale of creation, and is never capable alone of producing important results. The mind, then, may be considered the director and ruler of the body, and it is to be regarded as the origin of all the great and admirable works which have ever been performed by man, works which mere physical force could never have accomplished.

2 The superiority which education gives one man over another results from the culture of his mental powers, so that by the advantages of intellectual education is here meant whatever power or influence a man of strong judgment and cultivated intellect possesses over his fellow-creatures, whether in bending them to his will, in advising them for their advantage or in the obedience which men of inferior minds naturally pay to the superior and well informed. Though some men certainly are born with a mental capacity far superior to that of others, and though many of the uneducated have discovered great natural powers, still these faculties, in order to produce important benefits to society, must be properly trained and brought to perfection, as otherwise they are comparatively of little use either to their possessors or to mankind.

3 There are few expressions more frequently used, and yet less understood than the word *education*. The conning over a few rules of grammar, or the acquirement of a good handwriting and the knowledge of the first principles of calculation, are imagined by some to embrace the whole definition of the term. It may therefore be necessary to explain more fully the signification of the word, in order that the reader may more clearly understand the subject of the present essay. He must then be informed, that, by the word *education*, is here meant that process by which all the faculties of the intellect are gradually trained, strengthened, and brought to perfection, by which the mind is stored with various and extensive knowledge, and is made to approach nearer, though still at an infinite distance, to the nature of that Divine Being who is the author of all wisdom.

4 Birth, riches, and talent are objects which, in the estimation of the world, are generally looked upon as great advantages. Now, though it cannot be denied that a noble birth or great riches confer privileges which may be rationally desired, yet it must be allowed, that the possession of a vigorous mind and cultivated understanding is an advantage at least equal, if not preferable, to those of family or fortune. This is one of those blessings of which no change of fortune can deprive us, which, in the language of the Roman orator, is the ornament of our youth, the delight of our old age, and the greatest consolation in adversity. It opens to us a constant spring of pleasures which neither time nor circumstances can effect, and since, in addition to this, it is frequently the source both of

wealth and honour, it may be even said to contain within itself their advantages

5 A man of cultivated intellect possesses the power of innumerable enjoyments of which the rude and illiterate are wholly deprived. He is never tormented with that listless weariness which is a continual misery to the uneducated when not engaged in business. He is never at a loss for materials with which to occupy himself with advantage and pleasure in his hours of vacancy. In whatever situation of place or circumstances he may be thrown, his mind will be engaged in some interesting research, and the most insignificant object in nature will furnish him with a subject for reflection. The cultivated mind will find a spring of delight in the wildest desert, whilst the ignorant man will feel lifeless and miserable amidst the bustle and noise of the most populous city.

6 If it were only in the light of a preventive against evil, the cultivation of our intellectual powers should be viewed as a desirable object, and though it cannot be maintained that this furnishes us with a sufficient incentive to virtue, or that the weakness of human nature does not require much stronger motives for the regulation of the passions, yet it must certainly be admitted that it has tendency to correct our natural defects, and to raise the mind to the contemplation of those objects by which it becomes refined and ennobled. Thus, though intellectual education does not of itself produce virtue, yet it furnishes us with that sort of knowledge which promotes its practice, since its object is not only to enlarge and strengthen the faculties of the mind, but also to show us how those faculties are to be put to a good use, and employed for the benefit of mankind.

7 To these considerations may be added that knowledge, however it may have been sometimes perverted, has been of more real and permanent utility to man than any other object of his desire. Other advantages, whether real or imaginary, are fluctuating and temporary, knowledge alone is firm and lasting. The empire of Rome was crumbled into ruins, her enormous wealth was dispersed over the deserts of the north to glut the wild desires of savage barbarians, her dignities and honours were swept away from the face of the earth,—but the lays of her poets still remain, the eloquence of her orators still animates the breasts of thousands, and the wisdom of her philosophers yet lives in the hearts of all those who have any love of what is great and ennobling in human nature.



CHAPTER XXVIII

HINTS ON ANSWERING EXAMINATION PAPERS

1120. Only students who have read up their subjects thoroughly, and have also had constant practice in answering papers, can answer them well. But it is hoped that the following directions as to the manner of answering will, if carefully observed, enable the candidate to obtain more marks than he will if he pays no attention to them. The candidate must remember that many are "plucked" for want of a *single mark* and he should therefore avail himself of every honest means of obtaining as many marks as he can.

1 When the question paper is put into your hand, *begin at once to read it through*, without wasting your time in looking about you. When you have read over the paper once, select *some question which you are sure you can answer correctly and well*, and answer it. Take up the easiest questions first, then those that are more difficult, and lastly those that you think are very difficult and require much thought. It is very important that the first answer should be well written. It goes a great way in prepossessing the examiner in your favour, and that is a great thing.

Before beginning to answer the paper, note the number of questions in it, roughly estimate the time required for answering each, and try to regulate the length of your answers by this estimate.

2 Before you begin to write on a sheet, *number it at the right hand top corner*. This will help you in arranging your sheets, when you are done.

3 *A good handwriting* is very useful in an examination, but it is not every one who can write a good hand. Every one can, however, write *legibly and neatly* if he chooses, and that will make up in a great measure for the want of a good handwriting. Write legibly, *i.e.*, so that every word you write can be read without difficulty. If any word is written illegibly, you may be certain the examiner will not take the trouble of

making it out, he often has hundreds, sometimes thousands, of papers to examine in a limited time, and he has no time to devote to deciphering the illegible hand-writing of the examinees. To write neatly, pay proper attention to direction about blots, leaving a margin, &c

4 Leave a *fair margin*, say about an inch or an inch and a half, on the left hand side of your papers. This is best done by doubling the paper over and making a crease or fold at the required distance from the edge

5 Write *nothing in the margin* except the numbers of the questions. These numbers must be written just near the fold on the *left hand side* of it.

The letters or numbers marking the *subdivisions* of questions must be inserted just near the fold on the *right hand side* of it

Caution —In numbering your answers, take care that you number them exactly as the questions to which they are the answers are numbered. For instance, if a question is divided into three parts, *a, b, c*, do not number your answers 1, 2, 3, or if Roman numbers (I, II, &c) are used for the questions, do not use Arabic numbers (1, 2, &c). Also do not write 'Answer to the first question,' 'Answer to the second question,' &c. Simply put down the *number of the question* as directed above, and proceed to answer it. Do not write the question out again in your answer paper.

6 Begin every answer and every subdivision of an answer with a *new paragraph*, i.e., let the first line begin a little further to the right than the following lines.

7 Leave a *uniform space between the lines*, say about half an inch, and take care that your lines are straight, and parallel to one another. Both these ends can be easily secured by ruling half a sheet of paper with thick black lines, with the required distance between them. These lines will be plainly visible when placed under your answer paper, and you have only to write over them. This is far better than ruling your answer papers with a black-lead pencil. This causes the waste of a precious minute or two for every sheet, and besides, gives a clumsy appearance to your answer papers.

8 Between the end of one answer and the beginning of another, leave a *space of about an inch and a half or two inches*, and between subdivisions of answers, leave a *space of about $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch or one inch*.

9 Do not write so as to make *one word run into another*, but keep your words distinct from one another.

10 *Avoid blots*, by taking care not to take up too much ink in your pen. If, however, a blot is made, do not try to wipe it out with your finger (that will only make bad worse), but carefully dry it with your blotting paper, and then remove it with an ink-eraser. If you wish to strike out a wrong word, do not use your finger for the purpose, but draw a line or two lines horizontally through the middle of the word. If you use your finger, you will only deface your paper with little smudges of ink. Do not suppose that by blotting the word you will conceal your ignorance of its spelling. A blotted word is, or ought to be, always considered as ill spelt.

11. Before you begin to answer a question, try to *understand exactly* what the examiner wants you to tell him. Then, *before you begin to write, frame the answer in your mind*. This will save the time which you will have to waste in corrections and erasures and additions, if you write first and think afterwards. Time spent in thinking over an answer before writing it down is not wasted, but is most usefully employed.

12 Let your answers be *brief and to the point*. The examiner wants answers to what he asks, and nothing more. Do not therefore drag into your answer *useless and uncalled for details*. Nothing annoys an examiner more than to have to toil through two or three pages to find out that the candidate is able to answer that which he is asked, and which he might have answered in as many lines.

13 Whenever you can put an answer in a *tabular form* you should do so. This saves you time and space, and, while making the answer look neater, makes it easier for the examiner to value it. Let us suppose the question to be

"Give the Comparative and Superlative of *late, old, ill*."

Ans. 1. The Comparative of *late* is *later* or *latter*, and the Superlative, *latest* or *last*.

The Comparative of *old* is *older* or *elder*, and the Superlative *oldest* or *eldest*.

The Comparative of *ill* is *worse*, and the Superlative *worst*.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
Late	Later Latter	Latest Last
Old	Older Elder	Oldest Eldest
Ill	Worse	Worst

Both the above answers have exactly the same meaning, but any one can see at once which is the better, in respect of the style or manner of answering

14 Never attempt to *palm off an answer* to some question not asked, in the belief that the examiner will think you have mistaken the question. This will do you no good at all. It will only make the examiner think that you are either careless or are trying to deceive him, and it will in either case injuriously affect the valuation of your paper

15 If you are required to *explain* anything, try to make it so plain that a person who did not understand it at all, would be able to understand it with the aid of your explanation. In explaining anything, use the same language as you would use in making the meaning of it clear to one who does not understand it. In an explanation, as distinguished from a paraphrase, you may *add* anything that is necessary to make the meaning clear, such as examples and illustrations

Do not repeat the same explanation in other words. One well-constructed sentence containing all you have to say is better than half a dozen imperfect ones.

16 *Pay great attention to the Rules of Grammar* Although candidates for the Matriculation or Entrance Examination are not expected to write correct and idiomatic English, they certainly are expected to avoid such mistakes as using a plural nominative with a singular verb, the perfect participle for the past tense, and so on. These errors arise entirely from carelessness and negligence, and cause the loss of a good many marks

17 When you *quote* any word or phrase from the question or when you speak of a word or expression *as a word or expression*, always *underline* it, or put it within quotation marks, thus

'The word *man* in the given passage is in the nominative case absolute'

'There is some difference of meaning between *enough* and *sufficient*'

'The writer has mistaken "*contemptuous*" for "*contemptible*"'

Also *underline* anything to which you wish to draw the special attention of the examiner

18 Some boys have an absurd habit of *underlining*, or *enclosing in parentheses* (), any word they wish not to be considered as part of an answer. Underlining a word in English, instead of taking away from its meaning, only makes it more forcible and emphatic. Words *enclosed* in *parentheses add to*

or explain, the meaning of the sentence, though they do not enter into its construction. The best way to strike out an expression is to run your pen horizontally through the middle of it, once or twice.

19 If you happen to leave out something and wish to supply it, make the mark \wedge , called a caret, between the words between which it is to be supplied, *below* the line, the required word or words being inserted *above* the line. Many boys supply words under the line, this is wrong, and is besides misleading to the examiner, who will naturally take the inserted words with the line *above* which they are written.

20 *Avoid appeals to the examiner*. It not only does you no good whatever, but might possibly do you harm, to make such appeals as 'I hope your honour will show some pity on me, as this is my last chance', 'I have a bad pen, and a severe headache', 'The time is not sufficient'. Carefully avoid everything of the kind. You had better also not write at the top of your paper such expressions as 'May God bless me', 'Allah', 'கடவுள் துணை'. It is very proper of course to have trust in God, but you need not make a display of it in your answer paper.

21 If time permits, read over your answer papers and make any corrections you think needed, particularly of grammatical errors. As soon as you are told you have only five minutes more, stop writing, and begin to revise your answer papers. The five minutes so spent will bring you more marks than if you spent them in scrawling down some hurried and scrambling lines on the last page.

22 After you have finished writing, arrange your sheets in order, the first being on the top, the second below it, and so on, and not, as some actually do, to put down the first sheet on the desk first, the second above it, and so on, so as to leave the last sheet to be examined first. After you have arranged your papers, pin them together *securely at the left hand top corner*.

Remember that if you do not arrange and fasten your papers properly, the examiner will *not* take the trouble of doing it for you.



EXERCISES

CHAPTER I.

1 Correct the division of the following words, mentioning the rule of syllabification violated in each case

- (a) C1vil, co loui, co py, da mask, do zen, e'vei, fea ther, ga ther, hea von, le mon, mea dow, ne ver, o range, pu nish, ro bin, sho vel, ti mid, wi ther, be ne fit, ca nis ter, go ne rous, le ve ret, li be ral, se ve ral, mi se ra ble, to le ra-ble, e pi de mic, pa ra ly tic, a cr de mi cal, cha rac te ris tic, ex pe ri ment al

(MURRAY'S SPELLING BOOK)

- (b) Fol io, gen i al, gen ius, jun ior, sa ti ate, vi ti ate, am bro sia, per hel ion, con ven ient, in gen ious, om nis cience, pe cul iar, so cia ble, par tial ity, pe cun ia ry, an nun ciate, e nun ciate, ap pie ciate, as so ciate, ex pa tiate, ne go tiate, sub stan tiate

(WEBSTER'S SPELLING BOOK)

- (c) Dies sei, has ty, past ry, sei zuie, iol lei, jes ter, wea vor, hau dy, dros sy, glos sy, mo ver, mo ving, co zy, ful ler, ti us ty, weigh ty, noi sy, drow sy, swar thy, eas tern, full y, pull et, rill et, scan ty, nec dy, woo dy, stoi my, clou dy, ex al ted, at ten dance

2 Syllabify

- (a) Ado, adorn, adown, adrift, anoint, athwart, awiy, bespeak, bestow, between, encioach, incrust, foreknow, foistall, forswear, preterite, retrace, uncoiled, underanged, upholdet, uprouse, withal
- (b) England, anthill, cowslip, foierail, ioretop, hogshhead, home ward, sandstone, husbandman, painstaking, anothei, luscious, varnish, tickle, musket, extraordinary, possession, monkey, western, paternal, reformation
- (c) Recollect, recreate, impetuous, rafter, charter, chanter, waiter, traitor, colony, felony, pitcher, sorcery, gallery, artery, knitting, shilling, willing, azure, nation, siren, associate, pronunciation, Diana, Hercules
- (d) European, chaos, deplorable, confusion, original, envious, Russian, language, mother, attend, parent, illegal, cooling, suspicion, phthisic, condescend, victoria, covetousness, tenor, amicable, beginner, comprehension, foliage, figurative, peaceable, celestial, duel, secondary, galvanism, civility

3 Correct the spelling of the following, where wrong quoting the rule when you can

- (a) Dignig, shuned deeper, oversetting, smalness, recklessness, freedom, convincsing, inquirey, obligsing, improvehment, encouragement, happyness, variance, donyest, welspent, Uphill, beguning, proped, gossiping
- (b) Tranquilize, closetted, undertakeing, vallies, monies, downfal, windfal, forgetting, confesed, outstriped, biassed, foolsh, whispering, bigotted, rareity, deploreable, blameable, irreconcileable, judgement, holyness
- (c) Chimmies, inatured, improoving, niped, compaireable, abideing, singeing, sillyly, defeering, offering, valueable, positivly, mismanngement allways, liberalhity, downhil, traveled, dung, pastime, talness

4 Add each of the following terminations to the words opposite to it—

ing—judge, bid, obey, tune, agree, begin, love, worship
ous—bile, grace, melody, joy, virtue, grief, plenty, note
ness—like, blue, stiff, careless, tall, full, ill, feeble
able—pay, cure, remove, change, agree, value, desire, taste
ful—awe, joy, bliss, woe, will, duty, skill, rue
ed—rib, fade, stuff, hoof, rage, crag, wing, study
ly—easy, chill, dry, ready, cool, time, bristle, whole
ment—judge, entice, agree, manage, lodge, retire, move, engage
ance—aid, guide, avenge, defy, hinder, wait, cumber, pursue

5 Add the suffix *ing* to *die*, *stay*, *pity*, *die*, *able* to *peace*, *change*, *excuse*, *advise*, *ous* to *envy*, *pity*, *glory*, *duty*, *ly* to *real*, *whole*, *true*, *day*, *ed* to *sin*, *disown*, *repeat*, *travel*, *worship*, *ment* to *confine*, *acknowledge*, *abridge*, *ence* to *occur*, *infer*, *confer*, *abhor*

6 Account for the difference in spelling between *relieve* and *receive*

7 Give the meanings of the following abstract nouns when used in the plural *length*, *friendship*, *life*, *grace*, *curiosity*, *pleasure*, *memory*, *government*, *belief*, *proof*, *reason*, *virtue*, *genius*, *error*, *service*, *truth*

8 Give the meanings of the following material nouns when used in the plural *wood*, *bone*, *diamond*, *paper*, *glass*, *water*, *coal*, *sand*, *money*, *self*

9 Insert the indefinite article rightly, in each of the following phrases *new name*, *very quick motion*, *other sheep*, *such power*, *what weight*, *such worthy cause*, *too great difference*, *high honour*, *universal law*, *what strange event*, *so deep interest*, *as firm hope*, *humorous story*, *historical personage*, *such person*

10 Write the plurals of *country*, *case*, *sea*, *rush*, *arch*, *monarch*, *blemish*, *distich*, *gas*, *bias*, *stigma*, *giotto*, *folio*, *punctillio*, *ally*, *toy*, *valley*, *dwarf*, *half*, *strife*, *knife*, *roof*, *muff*, *chief*, *cheaf*, *os*, *foot*, *erratum*, *axis*, *thesis*, *criterion*, *rebus*, *son in-law*, *pailful*, *mansevant*, *servantman*, *tyro*, *hero*, *loaf*, *grief*, *staff*, *distaff*, *medium*

11 Give the feminines of *earl*, *fiar*, *stag*, *lord*, *duke*, *marquis*, *hero*, *executor*, *nephew*, *hen*, *actor*, *enchanter*, *hunter*, *prince*, *traitor*, *lion*, *arbiter*, *monaster*, *abbot*, *master*, *widower*, *uncle*, *son*, *landgrave*, *negro*, *foi*

12 Give the possessive singular of *table*, *leaf*, *boy*, *torch*, *park*, *porch*, *portico*, *lynx*, *alf* *sheep*, *wolf*, *echo*, *folly*, *cavein*, *father in law*, *court martial*

13 Write down the feminines of *actor, governor, spectator, tailor, testator, traitor, hunter, master, songster, widower, tiger, hero, negro, sultan, don, beau, earl, fox, god, host, landlord, stag*

14 Write down the nouns of common gender corresponding to *boar* or *sow*—*cock* or *hen*—*father* or *mother*—*hart* or *roe*—*king* or *queen*—*iam* or *cue*—*son* or *daughter*

15 Form the possessive singular of, *justice, James, Moses*, and the possessive plurals of *wife, lady, child*. Give the rule in each case

16 Place the indefinite article before each of the following, and give the rule, *box, vice, hen, historian, horse, union*

17 Give the force of the italicised words in 1 *If a man keep my saying* 2 *All of a size* 3 *Once a week* 4 *A school boy must know this* 5 *A Hercules* 6 *He is no dunce* 7 *The more the merrier* 8 *The dog is a faithful creature* 9 *The wise are respected* 10 *Poets love the beautiful*

18 Distinguish between 1 *each* and *every*, 2 *all* and *every*, 3 *either* and *both*

19 What clauses of adjectives cannot be compared? Give examples

20 Write down the positive degree of *better, first, farther, further, last, less, more, next, utmost, worse*

21 Write down the comparatives of *fore, late, old, out*

22 Write down the superlatives of *evil, fore, late, little, low, many, nigh, southern, top*

23 Write down the comparatives and superlatives of *sly, gay, holy, lovely, happy, thin, hot, red, wet, cruel, clever, humble, able, noble, benevolent, numerous, perfect, chief*

24 Define and exemplify 1 A finite verb 2 A copula 3 An auxiliary verb 4 An impersonal verb 5 An irregular verb 6 A defective verb 7 A causative verb

25 Use the following verbs 1 intransitively, 2 transitively *fly, sail, walk, write, flow, laugh*

26 Give the force of the italicised verbs in 1 *I eat that I may live* 2 *May you be happy* 3 *I do like you* 4 *How do you do* 5 *Read as I do* 6 *He would sit for hours* 7 *I would it were so* 8 *You should obey your parents* 9 *He asked me if he might go home* 10 *He asked me if he could go home*

27 Distinguish between 1 *He appeared to be a rich man—and—He appeared to have been a rich man* 2 *I have lived in Madras two months—and—I lived in Madras two months*

28 Write down the past tense and perfect participle of *fall, fell, fly, flee, flow, lie, lay, lo, loose, profit, quit, read, lead, plead, repeal, recede, repel, reel, reply, obey, slay, rid, ride, see, saw, sit, set, sow, sew, spread, lead, rein, pin, spin, sting, bring, strike, stroke, strow, strew, differ, defer, offer, confer, strip, gallop, hit, knit, spit, slide, stride, tread, trot*

29 Distinguish between *born, borne, died, dyed, hung, hanged, laid, lain, rode, rowed, naked, wole*

30 Explain the force of *too* in each of the following 1 *You are too lenient* 2 *You are too late to be admitted* 3 *You are too lazy to study* 4 *He is too clever not to know it* 5 *I shall only be too glad to help you*

31 Distinguish between 1 *This question is very difficult for me to answer—and—This question is too difficult for me to answer* 2 *He is looking at his book—He is looking for his book—and—He is looking through his book*

32 Fill up the blanks in the following with appropriate words
1 ————he———his brother was at home 2 ————he———his father were at home 3 *He is———ill, he cannot come* 4 *He is———ill that he*

cannot come 5 He is———ill to come 6 He is not rich———he appears
 7 Scarcely had he begun to speak———he was interrupted 8 No sooner
 had I arrived———he went away 9 He is not only idle———mischievous
 10 That is a good pen but this is a bad———

63 Compose short sentences to show the correct use of *other than*,
otherwise than, rather than no sooner, more or less, the less, better than
me too good, provided that, would that, had better, since July, from July,
 all but, by all means, within ten days, to the full, here and there

64 Form diminutives from army, bully, rock, cat, crown, den, duck,
 eagle, eye, goose, hill, lamb, lance, maid, man, owl, part, pile, ring, river,
 stream, thumb, tower, water

65 Put an abstract noun (used as a common noun) in place of the
 italicised phrases in 1 He put a stop to these horrible acts-of-cruelty
 2 We have received from them several acts-of-civility 3 The courteous
 acts of life are not to be neglected 4 Our actual experienced events make
 a lasting impression 5 That is a plea against those acts-of-self-accusation

66 Use the possessive formed by inflection instead of the italicised
 phrases in 1 He is going to the shop kept by Horrell and James 2 He
 flies on the wings of an eagle 3 The house belonging to Curo was in flames
 4 It was a part of the commission given to Cato 5 We should be pre-
 pared to suffer death itself for the sake of righteousness 6 The house
 belonging to Claudius 7 The presence of Quintus was necessary 8 I
 would suffer greater things than these for the sake of conscience

67 Use anticipative *it* in 1 To see a young consul, the scholar as it
 were of my discipline, flourishing, will be glorious to me 2 To err is the
 case of every man, but to persevere in error is the part only of a fool 3 To
 reflect that I have never promised anything rashly of myself to you is a
 pleasure to me 4 To send him on board was necessary 5 That there
 was a conference is evident

68 Make the following emphatic by using *it* 1 He had not taken
 the step for his own sake 2 Remember that I am to be with you on Wed-
 nesday 3 The farmers complained of excessive taxation not without reason
 4 A bad workman complains of his tools 5 The dishonest are always
 suspecting dishonesty in others 6 You have done all the mischief 7 They
 employed the vile informer

69 Turn *and not into no* in 1 That I shall not give him an op-
 portunity is certain, and he will not find it an easy matter to steal one
 2 The rich man would be miserable and the clown would not find in an
 unmet blessing 3 I do not know where he is, and I do not care

70 Re-write using of and the possessive 1 He was one of Sir Josiah
 Child's creature 2 He is one of my friends 3 That was one of the poet's
 pictures 4 I met one of your uncle the other day

71 Leave out the unnecessary words in 1 I have sent the book to
 Johnson's house 2 Have you seen St Paul's Church? 3 St Peter's Church
 at Northampton is a fine old church 4 I am glad that you have changed
 your mind 5 I am sorry that you are not well

72 (a) Change that into *which* in 'He has caught you with the
 same snare that he brings to have caught Cicero with'

(b) Use *but* 1 'There is not one commentator of note who
 would not have set him right' 2 Scarce any one has
 disowned the receiving of his being from God who has not
 also, in a manner, disavowed his own being what he is
 3 There is no man who does not disapprove of the peace
 4 There is no one who does not shrink from so fearful
 a risk

73 Omit the relatives in 1 *The man on whom you so grossly impose threatens to bring an action against you* 2 *The remedies with which you relieved me were very dangerous* 3 *The men with whom you acted were of very indifferent character* 4 *The offence with which he is charged is very serious* 5 *What is the offence with which you are charged?*

74 Invert the order of the following sentences 1 *You will reap as you sow* 2 *Your reward will be as your labour* 3 *He acts as he believes*

75 Use *too* in 1 *The quantity of salt is so small that it cannot season the whole mass* 2 *This argument is so precarious that it cannot satisfy a man of judgment* 3 *Pompey might reasonably condemn the thought of it, as of an attempt so rash that no prudent man will venture upon it* 4 *The world knows him so well as not to be imposed upon*

76 Use *the—the* with comparatives in 1 *The rich are endangered in proportion as the objects of ambition are multiplied and made democratic* 2 *Truth attracts the most strongly, when it is the most exposed* 3 *In proportion as they are more numerous, so they better clear and ascertain the genuine text* 4 *When there are many methods in a state for acquiring riches without industry or merit, there will be but very little of either in that state* 5 *Your progress will be in proportion to your diligence*

77 Omit *if* in 1 *If men felt this adequately, they would have little heart to indulge in random speculations* 2 *If Cicero's advice had been followed, Cæsar must inevitably have been ruined* 3 *He could easily make excuses more plausible than any adduced by the old man you mention, if he were disposed to trespass against his duty and his conscience*

78 Use the infinitive of purpose in 1 *He was impatient that he might do this service to his country* 2 *I have brought a passage that you may explain it* 3 *The reader will think it high time that I should come to the point in question*

79 Distinguish between a *dancing master*, and a *dancing master*, a *mad house*, and a *mad house*, a *negro merchant*, and a *negro merchant*, a *black bird*, and a *black bird*, a *dog's ear* and a *dog's ear*

80 Express the consequence by the infinitive mood in 1 *Is any one so stupid that he believes this?* 2 *He was so foolish that he built a house without consulting an architect* 3 *I am so candid that I allow him the sole and entire credit of it*

81 (1) What are the kinds of adjectives that do not admit of comparison? (2) Distinguish between strong and weak verbs, and show, by giving the past tense and past participle, which of the following are strong *teach, bind, fight, tell* (3) Distinguish the ordinary superlative from the superlative of pre-eminence by an example

82 To what do the following pronouns refer? Suggest amendments—*Health is largely dependent on exercise. It is very unlikely that it will be long kept without a certain amount of it. Without it we cannot be happy, however much we may seek pleasure.*

83 (1) Write out the possessive plurals of *man, child, mouth*, and *thief* (2) Give the past tense and the past participle of *set, beat, tread, lie* (meaning *say what is not true*), *lay, cast, forsake*, and *freeze*

84 Give two examples of words plural in form but singular in meaning. Write down the plural of *chimney, Turcoman, lord justice, soliloquy*, the masculine of *viren, doe, lass, belle*, and the positive of *more, last, least, best* (the adverb)

85 What is a *strong verb*? Give the present infinitive, of *besought, frozen, flown, lost*, and the past tense (only *strong* forms should be given) of *thrive, seeke, crow, dig*

86 (1) Distinguish between (a) *the first two*, and *the two first*, (b) *Do*

if it, and I shall be angry and do that or I shall be angry (2) Introduce each of the following correctly into a sentence of your own construction (a) better than I, (b) better than me

87 (1) Give the masculine of *ustch*, *kind*, *goat*, and *brave*, and the feminine of *chlo'*, *time*, *lean*, and *ter'ator* (2) Give the two plurals of *brother*, and of *broth*, and distinguish their meanings Give the singular and the plural of four words that form their plural by vowel change

88 (1) Distinguish the use of the italicised pronouns in these sentences (a) I washed *myself*, (b) I did it *myself* (2) Construct a sentence in which the pronoun *it* is used with forward or anticipative reference to a noun clause

89 Give (1) the masculine of *unc*, *em*, *nice*, *nun* (2) the ordinals of *three*, *five*, *eighth*, *twelfth* (3) the past indicative of *catch*, *be*, *mis'ake*, *break* (4) the present infinitive of *founden*, *laud*, *shorn*, *woven* (5) the verb describing the characteristic sound made by the horse, the sheep, the dog, the owl

90 (1) Construct simple sentences containing an Indirect Object, Preteritive Object, a Cognate Object, and an Adverbial Object and take which word in each sentence illustrates the particular kind of object (2) Parse fully the italicised words in the following — (a) Everyone, however, but his *son*, was reminded (b) None but the brave deserves the fair

(c) But the *joining* of the gunners helps the hurt that honour feels And the nations do not murmur *start* at each other's heels

(1) Introduce the word *home* in three sentences, in the first as a noun in the second as an adjective and in the last as an adverb

91 Give sentences that will illustrate each of the following statements — (1) The infinitive is often equal to a noun (2) Some adjectives cannot be used attributively but only predicatively

92 (1) Give the masculine corresponding to (a) *rex* (b) *navis*, (c) *rex* and a word of common gender applicable to each pair (2) Give two examples of (a) transitive verbs formed from intransitive verbs by vowel change, (b) strong participles now used only as adjectives, (c) verbs followed by (i) two objectives and (ii) an objective and a dative (3) Mention four methods of forming the plural of an English noun, and give two examples of each

93 Construct three complex sentences in order to illustrate the difference in meaning or use of the members of the following pairs of adjectives (a) *rich*, *many*, (b) *late*, *latter* (c) *older*, *elder*. N.B. — Only one sentence is required for each pair

94 Indicate the antecedent of the relative in (a) account for the number in the verbs in (b) name the subject of *are* in (c), and supply the ellipsis in (d) —

(a) Each element His dread command obeys,
It *he* makes or ruins with a smile or frown

(b) The army — which a month ago *was* pining for peace — *are* now, to a man, clamorous for war

(c) There *are* who judge still worse than he can write

(d) Better owe a yard of land to labour, than to chance be debtor for a road

95 Give the plural of *proof*, *mouse*, *hazard*, *hanger on*, the masculine of *spinster*, *filly*, *duck*, *ewe*, the comparative of *bad*, *fore*, *far*, *qu*, and the past tense and the perfect participle of *cast*, *eat*, *trick*, *for'get*.

96 Construct three complex sentences illustrating the use of the word *grow* as a transitive verb, as an intransitive verb, and as a copulative verb (2) Construct complex sentences illustrating the use of *but* as an adverb, a preposition, and a conjunction

97 Write down the comparatives of *gay, dry, red, bitter, proper, much*, and *many*, and all the comparatives and superlatives formed from *forth, in*, and *out* (b) Write down two pairs of sentences illustrating the use of *elder and older, later and lat'er*

98 Distinguish between—

(a) I met a man—I met one man

(b) He spoke little—He spoke a little

(c) Valmiki was a Homer—Valmiki was the Homer of India

(d) A virtue, the virtue, virtue

99 (A) Re write merely changing *more* into the positive The one has more friends, the other more wealth

(B) Give two plurals, with meanings, of *die*, two meanings of the singular of *letters*, and of the plural of *custom*, the masculine of *crimen*

(C) What does it stand for in the following sentences?

(a) 'Tis not in mortals to command success, but w'll do more
Sempromus, w'll deserve it

(b) It is uncertain when he will come

(D) Supply the omissions in the following sentence so as to express (a) the condition as certain, (b) the condition as doubtful, (c) denial

If that—the case, he—punished

100 (a) In what respects does the relative pronoun *agree*, and in what does it not agree, with its antecedent

(b) Illustrate the above rule * by showing the difference in meaning between the following pairs of sentences—

1 The officer had arrested a suspected person { whom } the judge
knew nothing of { which }

2 Art thou a man who { would } do this?
{ wouldst }

(c) When are *what* and *that* admissible as relatives?

CHAPTER II

Parse the italicised words in the following (1) Though this ford the enemy *must needs pass* (2) 'You will break it' said Epictetus, and the next moment *snap* it went (3) There was no one here but you (4) The book is worth quite twenty rupees (5) His courage failed him (6) The wall is a yard thick (7) Were it not for this, I should go to see him as I want to go very much (8) As has been already observed he supposed it to be a continent (9) I look forward to his return, full of years and honour (10) It is like living in Paradise He was shown the parts where the best ore was found (11) The very day that he sailed, he was struck, &c (12) The more it rains the cooler it is (13) It is useless to ask me (14) Who steals my purse steals trash (15) The labour we delight in physics pain (16) To be or not to be—that is the question

* The wording of the question, which is taken from a Madras University paper, is faulty "The above rule" is nonsense, because no rule has been given above, only a question is asked about a rule Then, the difference is not between the pairs of sentences, but between the two sentences in each pair It may be observed here that such clumsily, or rather inaccurately, worded questions are common enough in university examination papers, and that the English of university examiners, and especially of English examiners of the Madras University, is capable of considerable improvement

(18) All but three jumped into the water (19) There is no rose but has a thorn (20) He studied but to obtain honour (21) That would have happened but for him (22) They are as though they were not (23) A few years after (24) Ten years ago (25) What you say is true (26) We need hardly say so (27) Difficulties which none would have had here enough to look in the face (28) To confess the truth, I am in fault (29) He was promised an appointment (30) He was made Collector (31) The boys came in one by one (32) Their eloquence was little worth (33) She had the Asmat eye all love half languor and half fire (34) The very chin was, modestly speaking as large as my whole face (35) That they might the more surely be distinguished (36) His vigilance had well nigh proved fatal (37) His courage had run all away like water (38) He demanded what she had to say (39) The tents were all silent (40) Their cheeks all pale (41) It is but the living who are dumb (42) What is left the poet here? (43) There is one will let me in (44) They stood gazing where he sank (45) All bloodless & wearied his look (46) Down with him (47) Heaven help him! (48) I came up the valley (49) From a king to a beggar is a hard change (50) They are met in council (51) I cry you mercy (52) I am fond of hearing you play (53) The more it runs, the cooler it is (54) Not a drum was heard (55) The old man returned with it a few days after (56) I am, yours affectionately, Ramaiya (57) He died long ago (58) I leave it to you to decide (59) He did not know exactly what a battle was like (60) I like to see you do things like that (61) He walked three miles in less than an hour (62) I found what you sent me very useful (63) A deal box was lying open before him (64) What is it that you want? (65) No bread is so sweet as that we earn (66) One does not know what to do under such circumstances (67) How do you do this morning? (68) You want to go shares, I agree to let you have something (69) Thirty yards at fifteen crowns each makes four hundred and fifty crowns (70) A red snake about the thickness of a cane, was hanging down (71) He declared that he would pay up his arrears, cost what it might (72) If I am appointed President—a not improbable event—I shall reorganize the society (73) The sailor was reprimanded for letting the rope go (74) That he should be annoyed was but natural (75) I'd sooner starve than eat his bread (76) Tell you what you mean (77) A good cause would do well, though (78) I saw him directly he arrived (79) He became the better of the two (80) It is uncertain when he will come (81) To day thy note is louder than before (82) With him saying was doing (83) He said there were duties to perform so that it was difficult for them to attend to the matter (84) He loves to read and reads to know (85) Alas! how cheerless now the mourner's breast (86) There are fifty soldiers here (87) The above statement has been well considered (88) It is no use saying anything to you (89) Give me some money, say five pounds (90) Go on to the king (91) The lesson was easily learned (92) The philosopher was very learned (93) Every ten years the census is taken (94) He fell ill (95) The iron was red hot (96) He was allowed his expenses (97) These men, how I detest them (98) There will I plead with you face to face (99) It becomes colder, the higher you ascend (100) He is gone a hunting

CHAPTER III

- 1 Define *sentence*, *subject* and *predicate*. Give examples.
- 2 What are the primary elements of the sentence, and what the secondary? How are these expanded?
- 3 What is a subordinate clause? Define and exemplify the different kinds of subordinate clauses.
- 4 Classify sentences according to 1. *meaning* 2. *structure*, 3. *quality*. Define each class.
- 5 Distinguish between *compound* and *complex* sentences.
- 6 Define *co-ordinate clauses*. What conjunctions connect them?
- 7 Analyse in the usual form —

(1) I knew a man that believed that if a man were permitted to make all the ballads, he need not care who should make the laws of a nation

(2) There is strong reason to suspect that some able Whig politicians, who thought it dangerous to relax, at that moment, laws against political offences, but who could not, without incurring the charge of inconsistency, declare themselves adverse to relaxation, had conceived a hope that they might, by fomenting the dispute about the court of the Lord High Steward, defer for at least a year the passing of a bill which they disliked, and yet could not decently oppose

(3) To a limited apprehension it would seem as if the greater part of the existence here allotted us, were little more than an apprenticeship to the business of living, and that, if ever we come to understand our authentic position and relations in the world, and how our time and talents might have been wisely and most effectually employed, it is at a stage of life, when the journey is drawing to a close, and hardly an opportunity is left us to turn what we have been learning to account

(4) So live, that when thy summons comes to join
The innumerable caravans, that move
To the pale realms of shade, where each shall take
His chamber in the silent halls of death,
Thou go not like the quarry slave at night,
Scourged to his dungeon, but, sustained and soothed
By an unfaltering trust, approach thy grave,
Like one who wraps the drapery of his couch
About him, and lies down to pleasant dreams

(5) Look, as I blow this feather from my face,
And as the air blows it to me again,
Obeying with my wind when I do blow,
And yielding to another when it blows,
Commanded always by the greater gust,
Such is the lightness of you common men

(6) Among numberless extravagances, which have passed through the minds of men, we may justly reckon for one, that notion of a secret affection, independent of, and superior to, our reason, which we are supposed to have for our country, as if there were some physical virtue in every spot of ground, which necessarily produced this effect in every one born upon it

(7) That he might not enjoy any ease or quiet during the short remainder of his life their ministers came presently to insult him with all the reproaches imaginable, pronounced his damnation, and assured him that the judgment he was the next day to suffer was but an easy prologue to that which he was to undergo afterwards,

(8) The difficulty to which I am referring is that which Goethe himself has so happily expressed, when, in speaking of some comparisons that had been instituted between himself and Shakespeare, he said "Shakespeare always hits the right nail on the head at once, but I have to stop and think which is the right nail, before I hit"

(9) But whatever portion of this facility we may suppose even the greatest poet to possess there cannot be a doubt that the language which it will suggest to him must often, in liveliness and truth, fall short of that which is uttered by men in real life, under the actual pressure of those passions, certain shadows of which the poet feels to be produced in himself

(10) If we add now the melancholy fact that when belief waxes uncertain, practice too becomes unsound and miseries everywhere more and more prevail, we shall see material enough for resolution At all times a man who will do faithfully, needs to believe firmly

(11) That he lost the crown which he had received from a long line of ancestors, was entirely due to the manner in which after he had once learned the temper of the people he persisted in his attempt to force a religion upon them which, attractive though it was, they disliked exceedingly

(12) All day the unhappy creature, in the misery of that horrible disease to which our faithful companions are sometimes subject, rushed round and round the tree, champing the foam that rushed from his jaws and when food was thrown to him snatched at it with fury but could not eat it

(13) And though her sons are scattered, and her daughters weep apart while desolation like a pill weighs down each faithful heart, as the palm beside the waters, as the cedar on the hills, she shall rise in strength and beauty, when the Lord Jehovah wills

(14) At the time the history of these ladies commences, some young men of high rank in the army, as they were passing through Messina on their return from a war just ended in which they had been distinguished by their great bravery, came to visit Leonata

(15) The governor of the town, who was present, called out with a loud voice and ordered Androcles to explain how a savage beast could have so forgotten its innate disposition all of a sudden, that it became converted into a harmless animal, which preferred rather to spare its victim than to devour him

(16) As I withdrew, however, I am afraid I noticed in a parting glance at him, as he sank back in his chair that his melancholy was not so easily to be baffled but that it only waited for my departure to seize upon him again

(17) Forgetting that leaders derive what power they possess from the sympathy of those whom they lead he regards the Revolution as the work of a few self-seeking agitators who lulled a people by delusive promises and then ruined them by their violence

(18) When Siradin was about twenty, my father was taken dangerously ill and as he felt that he should not recover he sent for my brother to the side of his bed, and to his great surprise, informed him that the magnificence in which we had lived had exhausted all his wealth

(19) The hope he expressed in November 1839, that he might soon be relieved from the unhappy lot which had befallen him, was gratified a very little, when, after the accession of William the Fourth the Revolution of July was the signal for an imperative demand for the reform of Parliament

(20) Then the kindness of my master, and the words he said

about me to the viewer, came into my memory, and I was so worked up that I resolved, let the consequence be what it might, I would, living or dying, be faithful to my benefactor.

(21) We are happy to see that this imitable artist remains another week at the Boston Theatre, where he has delighted all who have escaped the pecuniary pressure which has reduced many from affluence to a condition which requires strict economy and prevents the enjoyment of amusements which is characteristic of our citizens.

(22) Captain Baker last of all joined his crew, and it was then discovered that they were at no great distance from the land, but that the tide was rising, and that the rock on which they stood would assuredly be covered at high water, and the heavy mist and lonely coast gave scarcely a hope that help would come ere the slowly rising waters must devour them.

(23) One of the principal reasons why comparatively so few learn phonography is that they are not really aware of its great usefulness until they have finished their school days, and entered upon the active duties of life, after which, it is as a rule, too late to rectify the mistake or to do anything but long for and regret not having acquired the needed accomplishment.

(24) This was indeed the only practical good which those teachers even pretended to effect, and undoubtedly if they had effected this, they would have deserved for higher praise than if they had discovered the most salutary medicines.

(25) Marietta had scarcely put her foot on the first step of the staircase leading to her brother's workshop, than Dominic, catching her hand, pressed it affectionately, and whispering, 'Good-by, sister, I am going to bed,' disappeared inside the door of a small room which he occupied on the ground floor.

CHAPTER IV.

1 Fill up the blanks in the following with the appropriate person, number, tense, &c., of the verb *to tell* 1 *I have come that—you the news* 2 *They came that—you the news* 3 *He is coming that—you the news*

2 Supply the omissions in the following —1 *If he—arrived, he—here soon* 2 *If you—foreseen the consequences, you acted as you—*

3 Correct the errors in 1 *I said that you may take it* 2 *I asked him what I can do* 3 *I said that I shall read* 4 *He said he will not come* 5 *The wound will kill him were it not for his great strength* 6 *I believed you are a good man* 7 *If he is gone, I would do so* 8 *If he had studied, he would pass* 9 *If he did that in England, he would have been hanged* 10 *He was no sooner departed than they expelled his officers* 11 *No sooner he came than I went away* 12 *No sooner he will come than I should tell you* 13 *He did not know that honesty was the best policy* 14 *He said that virtue was its own reward* 15 *The lecturer stated that light travelled in straight lines* 16 *He observed that fever generally produced thirst* 17 *I intended to have read this book* 18 *I had intended to have read this book* 19 *I expected to have received the letter yesterday* 20 *He was too young to have felt his loss*

4 Point out the violation of the rule of Sequence of Tenses, if any, in each of the following —

(1) *I expected to have received an answer to my letter,* (2) *You appear to me to have been fatigued* (3) *It was a pleasure to have received his approbation* (4) *It would have afforded me still greater pleasure*

to receive his approbation at an earlier period, but to receive it at all is a gratification to me. (5) He would have assisted one of his friends if he could do it without injuring the other, but as that could not have been done, he avoided all interference. (6) What made you say you are not going to the fair? (7) If he try, he would succeed. (8) I asked him what I can do and he told me to work harder. (9) I do not recollect ever having paid it. (10) The Stoics taught that all crimes were equal. (11) I wanted him to have come yesterday. (12) After he visited Calcutta he has returned to Benares. (13) I have finished my letter before my brother arrived. (14) It is a long time since we had met. (15) The work has been finished before you came. (16) Come to me that you might learn to read. (17) We have done no more than it was our duty to have done. (18) We expected that he would have come last night. (19) The doctor assumed that fever always produced thirst. (20) I request that you would kindly raise my salary. (21) He was so changed that I should not have known him if he did not tell me his name. (22) I wished to have shown my letter to him. (23) I write a letter that I might get a reply. (24) The girl said that if her master would but have let her had money, she might have been well long ago.

CHAPTER V

- 1 Distinguish between *direct* and *indirect* speech.
- 2 Give and exemplify the rules to be observed in the following cases: interrogative sentences, imperative sentences, optative sentences, exclamatory sentences, universal truths.
- 3 When is it necessary to insert a conjunction in changing into the indirect? What conjunctions are so inserted?
- 4 Give and illustrate the rule for the change of tenses.
- 5 What classes of words have to be omitted in changing into the indirect? Exemplify.
- 6 Give examples showing how words outside the quotation marks other than the reporting verb have sometimes to be changed.
- 7 Show how the Indirect is changed into the Direct.
- 8 Change the following into the Indirect form --
 - (a) 1 Reynolds says to us 'If you have great talents, industry will improve them.' 2 The aged worker replied, 'If then shade afford me no pleasure, it may afford pleasure to my children and even to you.'
 - (b) Then Hector thus 'Ye dauntless Dardans, hear'
 And you whom distant nations send to war,
 Be mindful of the strength your fathers bore,
 Be still yourselves and Hector asks no more.
 One hour demands me in the Trojan wall
 To bid our altars flame and victims fall,
 Nor shall I trust the nations' holy truce,
 And reverend elders seek the Gods in vain."
 - (c) Farmer — I have caught you now, you rogue, I will hang you. Fox Why, Farmer! For stealing my geese. Fox It is the way of my family. Farmer It shall be your way no longer, you shall be hanged, you are a rogue. Fox No, either rogue nor fool. At any rate have patience with me. Farmer Well what then? Fox Give me my share and I will not touch yours hereafter. Farmer Your share? No. Fox Then take and teach me, who knows but I may improve? Farmer Nonsense, you animals never do change your ways.

(d) Socrates, looking after him said ' And thou too, farewell, and we shall take care to act as you advise ' And at the same time turning to us, ' how courteous ' he said ' is the behaviour of that man ' During the whole time of my abode here he has visited me, and often conversed with me and proved himself to be the best of men, and now how generously he wraps on my account ' But let us obey him ' Craton, and let some one bring the poison if it is bruised, and, if not, let the man whose business it is, bruise it ' ' But Socrates,' said Craton ' I think the sun still hangs over the mountains and it is not set yet ' And at the same time I have known others who have drunk the poison very late after it was announced to them, who have supped and drunk abundantly ' Therefore do not be in such haste, for there is yet time enough "

(e) He said to me ' If your story turns out to be true I shall have much pleasure in assisting you, but I have been so often deceived that I must needs be cautious "

(f) Antony said -

" Friends, Romans, Countrymen, lend me your ears
I come to bury Caesar, not to praise him
The evil that men do lives after them,
The good is oft interred with their bones
So let it be with Caesar "

(g) It was not of myself,' said she to me ' that I purposed to speak when I beheld you from the summit of yonder grey rock and came down the path to meet with you ' My fortunes are fixed beyond change ' For myself I have ceased to feel much "

(h) 1 He says ' I am a reading " 2 He said " Alas ' I am thus deceived " 3 He said to me " Please come here and take this book now ' To-morrow you will have another, but I shall want it back " 4 I said to him " Do not disobey me or I shall punish you " 5 He said to me " Are you sleeping " " I said ' No " 6 He asked me " Will you give me your pen " 7 He said to me " How old are you " " I replied " I am just sixteen " 8 He said to me " Give me a pen " 9 He said to me " May you be blessed with success " 10 He said to me " What a fool you are " 11 He said " The earth is round " 12 He said " I hope you will pass " 13 He said to me " I thank you for the kind way in which you have entertained me ' Let me never forget it " 14 He said to me " Good morning how do you do " 15 " Shall we try to catch it " asked Francis " No," answered Edward

I would rather observe it a little ' You may look for its nest as you have good eyes " 16 He asked the soldiers " Why are you driving these poor people to prison " " The soldiers answered " They have not paid the king's taxes, that is why we take them to prison " 17. He asked the Magistrate " Please tell me how much these poor prisoners owe " 18 She said to the beggar " Let me see the ring you have on your finger " 19 The minister said to her " Go on, how can you speak to that ragged man " 20 The young lady took the paper and reading it said " (Old man, sit down ' To-day I am king, but if I were a beggar I would fulfil my word, and acknowledge my signature ' Therefore we will divide all that I have " 21 The kind father said to him " Stop here, my son, with the dog, while I go up yonder hill "

(i) ' Indeed,' he added, " this assurance must be our stay for every other refuge is now cut off but that afforded by the providence of God and our stout hearts "

(j) ' Pardon me, dear master,' said Ariel ' I will obey your commands " " Do so," said Prospero " and I will set you free "

(k) The old woman said to her, " Since you are so pretty and so

kind I will bestow on you a gift Whenever you speak there shall come out of your mouth either a rose or a diamond"

(l) "Charlie," said his master "why did you not come to school yesterday?" "I could not come, sir," he answered, "my mother was so sick"

(m) "Stop stop John Gilpin" Heir's the house,"

"They all at once did cry

"The dinner waits, and we are tired,"

Said Gilpin, 'So am I!'"

(n) "What is this strange outcry?" said Sociatus "I sent the woman away in my order that she might not offend in this way, for I have heard that a man should die in peace Be quiet then and have patience"

(o) The judge, addressing the jury, said, "While it is my duty to instruct you in the law of the case, it is yours, and yours only, to find the prisoner guilty or not guilty upon the facts"

(p) "Heaven thank you, my dear father," said Miranda "Now you tell me, Sir, your reason for rousing this sea storm" "Know then," said her father "that by means of this storm my enemies are cast ashore upon this island"

(q) Mrs Candle said "However there is one comfort, it can't last long I am worn to death with your temper and shan't trouble you much longer If you may laugh And I dare say you would laugh I have no doubt of it That is your love—that is your feeling I know that I am sinking every day, though I say nothing about it and when I am gone, we shall see how your second wife will look after your buttons"

(r) "If it had not been for me," said the old woman, "you would probably have been dead at this instant, but I have made a vow to our great Prophet that I would never neglect an opportunity of doing a good action, therefore when you were deserted by all the world, I took care of you"

(s) "Fear nothing my child," said Prospero, "I have overheard and approve of all you have said And, Ferdinand, if I have too severely used you, I will make you rich friends by giving you my daughter"

(t) Mr Barton said, "What a silly boy you are to be naughty, if you were not naughty, you would not be beaten But if you are naughty God will be angry as well as Mr Sprit If you will be a good boy, God will love you, and you will grow up to be a good man Let me hear next Thursday that you have been a good boy"

(u) "He brags himself to be a Croton bomin," said Eumais "and that he has been a traveller, but whether he speak the truth or not he alone can tell But whatever he has been, what he is now is apparent Such as he appears, I give him to you, do what you will with him, his boast at present is that he is at the very best a supplicant"

(v) "Mamma!" shouted Jack, "a lobster! Eincest a lobster! Where is Fritz? Take care, Francis, or it will bite you Look at the monster, he seized me by the leg with his terrible claws, but I soon made him repent of his assaults" "You little brats," said I, "you would have fared but poorly had not I come to your aid"

(w) "We have been exactly a quarter of an hour here," said Edmund, taking out his watch "Do you think we are walking four miles an hour? Oh! Do not attack me with your watch," said Miss Crawford "A watch is always too fast or too slow I cannot be dictated to by a watch" "I am afraid you are very tired, Fanny," said Edmund, "why would not you speak sooner? Every sort of exercise fatigues her so soon, Miss Crawford, except riding" "How abominable in you, then,"

said Miss Crawford, "to let me engross her house as I did all last week I am ashamed of you and of myself, but it shall never happen again"

9 Change the following into the direct form --

(a) I told him that I should not go out of his house until he had done justice to myself and my sister. To which he replied that as to that I might please myself, that I was welcome to remain in that house as long as I pleased, and that he hoped I should be comfortable while I honoured it with my presence, but that, as for himself, he unfortunately had an important engagement elsewhere just then, and would therefore be unable to enjoy my agreeable society.

(b) The boy wrote to his master that his patients had arrived from his village, and as he had to go and make arrangements for their accommodation, he requested him to grant him leave for that forenoon.

(c) The gardener drove him away, saying that the king and his family were soon coming that way.

(d) She told the king, her father, that she had recognised her husband's ring on the hand of the beggar who sat by the side of the garden, and she asked him to send for him that they might find out how the ring had come into his hands.

(e) The old man gave his half to the king, telling him to take it, for he was not a man but an angel from God. He had been sent by God to save him for the sake of his good deeds.

(f) I asked him how he dared to disobey my orders and whether he did not deserve to be punished. He said he was sorry he had offended me and hoped I would forgive him.

(g) He asked me when I intended to leave Madrid, I told him that as that was the day of the execution, I could not leave then, but hoped to do so next day.

(h) The queen told him that she was much pleased with him for his brave and manly conduct, and that she would certainly reward him by making him her own attendant.

(i) In reply Maurice said that his father was really fond of it, for his father was a gardener, and he (his father) let him help at this work. He further added that his father had given him a little garden of his own.

(j) The lion told the fox that he was very weak, that his teeth had fallen out, and that he had no appetite. He then asked him to enter the cave as he wished to have the pleasure of his conversation.

(7) The tyrant assured the people, that if only they let him go then, he would abolish all the oppressive taxes they had been groaning under, and hoped that they could afford to forget the past.

(8) He answered me with a great deal of candour that the condition of his comrades was miserable, and that he was sure if I would undertake their relief, they would live and die by me.

CHAPTER VI

Change the voice of the italicised verbs in (1) Six thousand victims *were said to have been annually offered up at their shrines* (2) Let the wisest of the earth *expound the words of fear that mar our royal mirth* (3) Here *he was joined by his friends* (4) *I was saved much trouble by this kind means*. (5) The master *asked me three questions* (6) My mother *taught me French* (7) He *lent me a thousand pounds* (8) *I envy your position*. (9) Does he *know how it happened*? (10) Promises should

not be made to be broken. (11) God will bless the hand that saves an old man from the grave (12) The plan of the work is believed to be new (13) They say the king has arrived (14) Fortune smiled on him (15) The ship may be heard of yet (16) These letters were never written by Goldsmith (17) This has been put an end to (18) This is an unusually high office to be held by a foreigner (19) They are allowed six pence a day (20) I shall attend to your order (21) The gospel wherever it is planted, will have its genuine effect upon some few, upon more perhaps than men take notice of in the hurry of the world (22) Did I ever deny you access to me? (23) They allow me six pence a day. (24) Cornwall elect, as may members as Scotland, but does parliament take better care of Cornwall than of Scotland? (25) Death soon put an end to the enterprises of Francis I and Henry VIII. (26) The wicked will be excluded from heaven (27) The publication is postponed till Christmas (28) Can impure sacrifices avert the wrath of God? (29) Cosar entertained the city with the most splendid triumph that Rome had ever seen but the people considered it a triumph over themselves purchased by the loss of their liberty (30) He had before given the same proof of his discontent (31) The people were at last put into good humour by Cicero's exertions (32) This wanton profanation of the sovereign dignity raised a general indignation in the city (33) You are desired by me to come home (34) It is thought that the Queen will not go to Brighton before Christmas (35) Hope may visit even me (36) You could see the fires from your windows (37) My good state of health is accompanied by frequent fits of dejection (38) He acceded to my proposal (39) He cheated his employer (40) Some mention of this must be inserted here (41) Somebody has broken a pane. (42) We expect a good harvest. (43) The child has torn the book (44) Bees gather honey (45) One seldom enjoys such a treat (46) They say that the king has arrived (47) People heard the rattle of musketry in the streets. (48) He taught me grammar (49) They promised us help (50) They will have to contend against serious difficulties (51) He soon ran through his fortune (52) None of the speakers touched upon the real cause. (53) What are you thinking of (54) Nobody has ever objected to our proposal (55) The spire of the church has been struck by lightning (56) The first floor is occupied by an office (57) The gate was opened by an old man (58) We have all been saved by you to day (59) Britain was subjugated by the Roman arms (60) I was recognised by him at once (61) The dangers whereby the state was threatened had been strongly represented to the King (62) It was a message whereby many hearts were lightened (63) He was often interrupted by the deep hum of his audience (64) The boat was swept away during the flood (65) He was bound in honour to provide for her (66) Napoleon's tactics were turned against himself (67) A relieving force was daily expected (68) Who is alluded to? (69) The robber must be laid hold of (70) His conduct was found fault with (71) Their horses will be taken good care of (72) The fortress was laid siege to. (73) Those trees were recently planted (74) Many grievances were complained of (75) Give even the devil his due (76) Spare the rod and spoil the child (77) All the air a solemn stillness holds. (78) Raman played his brother a trick (79) The explosion almost startled us out of our senses (80) Many sluggish flat boats were overlooked and passed (81) There was again the same look of polite indifference which had greeted him upon his entrance (82) The open windows seemed to invite the freeman to a farewell flight (83) They will have to contend against serious difficulties (84) The vivification is such as will shock any body (85) The boys have eaten the cake (86) I would do this for you willingly (87) If I only

called him prudent I should say less than I ought (88) The king created him a lord (89) The men will be carrying the hay to-morrow (90) The master found fault with the boy (91) Should he find us in the glen, my blood would stain the heather (92) Not speaking much, but speaking well, denotes the truly wise (93) If they once *may* win the bridge, what hope to save the town (94) Men said he saw strange visions which none beside might see (95) Eternal blessings crown my earliest friend (96) He could not get rid of the encumbrance (97) The thief gave me a sudden blow (98) My uncle left me a small sum of money (99) They took no notice of the theft (100) A little forethought will save us a great deal of trouble

CHAPTER VII

1 Use the positive degree in the following — (1) This is the best book on the subject (2) This is not the best book on the subject (3) This is one of the best books on the subject (4) This is the least useful book on the subject (5) Some books on the subject are better than this (6) No book on the subject is better than this (7) Few books on the subject are better than this (8) This is better than most books on the subject (9) This book is more useful than cheap (10) This book is less useful than cheap (11) I know no other book on the subject which is better (12) He is better off than his brother

2 Use the comparative degree in the following — (1) This is the best book on the subject (2) This is not the best book on the subject (3) This is one of the best books on the subject (4) This is the least useful book on the subject (5) This is as good as any other book on the subject (6) This is not as good as any other book on the subject (7) I do not know any other book on the subject as good as this (8) Few books on the subject are so useful as this

3 Use the superlative degree in the following — (1) Some books on the subject are better than this (2) No book on the subject is better than this (3) I know no book on the subject which is better (4) This is not so useful as any other book on the subject (5) I do not know any other book on the subject as good as this (6) None are so badly off as they

4 Correct the errors in the following, giving reasons — (1) The amond is the hardest of all other minerals (2) The diamond is harder than all minerals (3) Jacob loved Joseph more than all his children (4) I can do that work better than anybody (5) I know none so clever as John

5 Change the adjectives into the comparative degree in — (1) This plum is as red as that cherry (2) This ground lies as high as any in the country (3) Henry is as honest as his father (4) This is as glorious a victory as that of Waterloo (5) The senate was as eager as the people to avenge his death (6) You have as little cause to complain as anybody

6 Change the adjectives as directed in — (1) She was as cross as the rheumatism could make her (c) * (2) He said I was the iddest little fellow on the surface of the earth (c p) (3) I could have fought the stoutest man in the mine that said a word to my master's disparagement (c p) (4) No one else tended the horses so well as I did (c s) (5) I might do a nobler action than any man among them would have the courage to do in my place (p) (6) I had never more reason to sleep with a safe conscience (p) (7) No one was ever sooner dressed than I was (p s) (8)

* = change the adj into the comp degree, s = into superl. degree, p = into pos degree

This was nearer the truth than he imagined (*p*) (9) Some kinds of labour are more highly paid for than others (*p*) (10) As soon as the coast was clear I hastened home (*c*).

7 Re write the following, using the positive degree of each italicised adjective or adverb — (1) A hot body is not a bit *heavier* than a cold one (2) When spring with dewy fingers cold, returns to deck the hallowed wood, she there shall dress a *sweeter* sod than Fancy's feet have ever trod (3) The bottom of the oldest grave was not *more still* and *quiet* than the churchyard in the pale frosty moonlight (4) This is something *wider* than that (5) The ox fed in the plains of Hindustan is *very much larger* than that which is *more hardly* maintained on the sides of the Alps (6) I have *more* friends and you have *more* wealth (7) Edward I was *braver* and *wiser* than his son (8) The patient is *worse* to day than he was yesterday (9) Success depends *more* on industry than on intellect (10) *More* Romans died on the field than in their beds

8 Re write the following, using the comparative degree of each italicised adjective or adverb — (1) I rose up as *soon* as the light was in the sky (2) He was as *wise* as he was virtuous (3) I have never seen her so *quiet* and *subdued* before (4) Even was as *beautiful* as dawn (5) England is at the present day as *much* at home on the Mediterranean as if it were one of her own lakes (6) Johnson has sinned in this way at least as *grievously* as Shakespeare (7) My own misfortunes are not so *nigh* my heart as yours (8) Thou'rt *wrong* as wrong can be (9) We are most of us proud of belonging to the *greatest* empire the world has ever seen (10) The muscles of his brawny arms are *strong* as iron bands

9 Re write the following, using (1) the superlative, (2) the positive degree of each italicised adjective or adverb — (1) Rama is *more diligent* than any of his classmates (2) No man can be *more loyal* to it than he was (3) There is nothing *more conducive* to health than exercise (4) There is nothing in the world that I should like *better* than a long ride (5) Woman's wit never devised a *bolder* plan than that (6) Nothing can be *more obvious* than the explanation of this phenomenon (7) There was not a *braver* man than Exeter there (8) A *bolder* and a *sterner* man than Randolph Murray had never couched a spear (9) I had never *more* reason to sleep with a safe conscience than I had that night (10) Few monarchs have *better* deserved the epithet of Great than the Great Peter.

CHAPTER VIII

1. Change the italicised portions of the following into clauses — 1 Delay is dangerous 2 Walking is healthy 3 Honest persons are trusted 4. To err is human 5 To be humble is our first duty 6 The wind being favourable we set sail 7 They requested him to stay 8 I begged him to come along 9 This book was bought for you to read. 10 This book was bought for me to read 11 This is the only rule to go by 12 Ascending the mountain, we had a wide prospect. 13 Beaten at one point, we made for another 14 You will catch cold by remaining out 15, I cannot deny having written the letter 16 He is a simple man with all his learning 17 On my going, he offered me his purse 18 No one doubts the roundness of the earth 19 I am too old to learn 20 You are too generous to punish him 21 He is very tall for his age 22 To me at least, the loss is irreparable 23 He is afraid of your cheating him 24 He acted like a fool or a madman 25 He would have faced the devil himself without trembling.

2 Change into *simple sentences* —1. It was requested that he should stay. 2 Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him. 3 Not only did he render himself famous as a mathematician, but he distinguished himself by valuable contributions to the leading periodicals of the day. 4 She advanced towards the robber, and presented the young prince to him, and called out to him 'my friend'. 5 I contemplated the great names, and thought of the noble ancestry of the illustrious youth, and experienced a new and hitherto unfelt emotion. 6 As soon as he came into the room, I walked out that I might not be under the necessity of speaking to him. 7 I asked my master whether he thought me fit to appear for the examination, and as he advised me to appear, I registered my name. 8 Why he went that way, where and how he met with his death, were questions that caused a stir in the village which it is impossible to describe. 9 The fact that he was absent has been established beyond doubt, so that it is unnecessary to bring forward any other proof that he is innocent. 10 The North cape is an enormous rock, and projects far into the ocean and is exposed to all the fury of the waves, and crumbles every year more and more into ruins.

3 Express each of the following as a *compound sentence* —1 Having come here, he went to bed. 2 Seeming to be poor, he is really rich. 3 But for your help I should not have passed. 4 He brought the carriage without the horse. 5 I hate him for his haughtiness. 6 If you do this, I will reward you. 7 I am crying because my master has beaten me. 8 I met a boy who told me this news. 9 He went home when he had finished his work. 10 I went to the park where I saw a lion.

4 Express as *complex sentences* —(1) Tell me your age. (2) I know not what to do. (3) This is my meaning. (4) His guilt or innocence is still uncertain. (5) I am sure of passing. (6) I know it to be useless. (7) He seems to have been innocent. (8) There is no rose without a thorn. (9) I have no money to waste. (10) Do you know the year of your birth? (11) We can do nothing without money. (12) Notwithstanding his hard work, he did not pass. (13) With perseverance you may succeed. (14) Just give me a pen and I can write volumes. (15) Spare the rod and spoil the child. (16) He arrived at the moment or I should have perished. (17) You may do all you can, but you will never satisfy him. (18) The sea spent its fury and then became calm. (19) This being finished, my work will be finished. (20) You are punished for your laziness. (21) Seeing me he ran away. (22) Having spoken for three hours, the member sat down. (23) The famine began with the want of rain. (24) I came to see the play. (25) I brought him here for his education.

5 Turn the following assertions into *questions of appeal*, and *vice versa* —(1) Is every rich fool to hold his head higher than his poor neighbour? (2) Do we not find ourselves at the bottom of the vale of tears, before we have reflected upon the steepness of the declivity that leads us into it? (3) Is not happiness to be pursued as the chief good of man? (4) This will at any rate serve to speculate and converse upon. (5) In two years not only this project, but all the projects in Europe, may be discontinued. (6) When our animal spirits are depressed, dullness is the consequence. (7) Is not the situation as favourable to your purpose as you could wish? (8) It proves that he is capable of great despatch. (9) It is three weeks since you left. (10) A new scene will soon open.

6 Turn the *conditional clauses* in the following into *imperative clauses* —(1) If you take away the waters from your river, it is no river, but a den or a dry ditch, if you take away the banks, it is a pool, or lake, or flood. (2) If you tell a miser of bounty to a friend, or mercy to the poor, he will not understand it. (3) All other circumstances remaining

the same, if you change but the situation of some objects, they shall present different colours to the eye (1) If you do but discover a wish to please her, she will never forget it

7 Turn the italicised nouns into infinitives or infinitive phrases — (1) Opposition was useless (2) Starvation will be their fate (3) Gentleness gains friends (4) Brevity is the soul of wit (5) Complaint was vain, retaliation was impossible (6) Wisdom and goodness to the vile seem vile (7) Many people hate work (8) We prefer obscurity (9) They expected better treatment (10) The culprit implored forgiveness (11) The statement is capable of proof (12) He could not be moved by threats (13) The canoe was intended for the conveyance of cattle (14) Knowledge is power (15) Sometimes ignorance is bliss

8 Change the italicised into noun clauses in — (1) His carefulness is well known (2) The time and the manner of the death of Herodotus are uncertain (3) The truth of this statement is disputed (4) Increases were to be expected (5) The recovery of the patient was long doubtful (6) I acknowledge your kindness to me (7) He recommended caution (8) I do not understand your reason for acting so (9) Who would suspect ingratitude in him (10) Chemistry teaches us the composition of bodies (11) The only question is the degree of their guilt (12) I will not now speak of his conduct (13) We can only guess at the General's intentions (14) What has he to do with your property (15) We will enquire into his history

9 Change the italicised into adjective phrases in — (1) The cargo of the ship is valuable (2) His usefulness is indisputable (3) Silver is lighter than gold (4) All the acts of rebels are illegal (5) Their emotion was uncontrollable (6) The public burdens were heavy (7) Those are dangerous practices (8) National disasters teach severe lessons (9) They regard the Mosaic law as final (10) Some difficult and dangerous exploit was on hand

10 Change the italicised into adjective clauses in — 1 Tell us interesting stories 2 Your proposal has been approved of 3 The late rains did no good 4 Industrious people should be encouraged 5 Nelson won for himself deathless fame 6 Above us were countless stars 7 The expedition met with almost insurmountable difficulties 8 Unfruitful trees are cut down 9 Dense forests cover a great part of the country 10 He lived in troublous times 11 It was not easy to surprise our watchful enemy 12 The sun was now resting his huge disc upon the edge of the level ocean 13 His broad clear brow in sunlight glowed 14 Lord Ullin reached that fatal shore 15 He returned to his lonely room

11 Change the italicised into adverbial phrases in — 1 Parliament met annually and sat long 2 The man is helplessly drunk 3 These people are ungovernably bold 4 He will probably refuse to come 5 The expedition ended disastrously 6 He did his work cheerfully 7 He deliberately refused to escape 8 They were imprisoned unjustly 9 He unconsciously set an example to his companion 10 He was violently expelled from his dwelling

12 Change the italicised into adverbial clauses in — 1 He was visibly moved 2 The weather is unusually severe 3 The affairs of the company are hopelessly involved 4 The sentence is unexpectedly lenient 5 Their proposal was unpeppably absurd 6 The soul and the body are inextricably united 7 Confinement is intolerably irksome to him

13 Change the italicised into co-ordinate clauses in — 1 He pleaded his own cause successfully 2 Several measures were unavoidably postponed 3 They are still prosecuting their researches diligently 4 The weather has been unusually severe 5 Seriously, you must reconsider

your decision 6 He was *fortunately* taken out of the well alive 7 The working of the act is *necessarily* expensive 8 The position of the company has been *incalculably* improved. 9 The fortress was *impreguably* situated on a rock 10 The man gave false witness *knowingly*

14 Change the italicised into noun clauses in 1 *To obey is better than sacrifice* 2 *To reconcile those two men was impossible* 3 *How to act under the circumstances* was a point of anxious consideration 4 What signifies *his being a lord* 5 I never thought to marry 6 You professed to love me 7 The prisoner denied *having printed the libels* 8 She remembered *having been in a forest* 9 The English nobles swore to conquer or to die 10 He knew not *what to answer* 11 I cannot repent *doing my duty* 12 He believed *the enemy's land to be defenceless* 13 Every moment we expected *him to fall* 14 Our expectation was to reach the coast in three days 15. He could scarcely expect them to defend his cause

15 Use adjectives for the italicised in —1 Those privileges belonged to our fathers from time *beyond all memory*. 2 Many officers of *distinction* have fallen 3 The colonel's daughter was a child of great beauty 4 The woods in the neighbourhood were on fire 5 The decision of the judges increased the irritation of the people 6 He is a person of good sense and some learning 7 His recovery is not yet beyond hope 8 These stones are of great antiquity 9 Voltaire's merriment is without disguise or restraint 10 A prize was given for the best poem written in Latin. 11 The commander is a man advanced in years 12 Tribes given to the worship of idols were to be exterminated 13 He never touched on matters relating to himself 14 Let us revert to the plan first suggested

16 Change the italicised into adjectival clauses in —1 Sir Roger has beautified the inside of his church with several texts of his own choosing 2 A deep laid plot to set Robert on the throne was discovered 3 We pictured to ourselves the scene to be beheld in the dark recesses of the forest 4 The first thing to be considered in an epic poem is the fable 5 The story now to be related is quite true 6 They waged a war of extermination 7 It is a conquest for a prince to boast of 8 He sees no way of getting out of the difficulty 9 They had no other friends to take refuge with 10 This seeming miracle is explained by the peculiar circumstances of that generation 11 The directors, in their fury, lost all self command 12 The question of maritime right then in agitation between Spain and England, called forth his powers 13 The Governor, in great excitement, called out the troops 14 Near them was standing an Indian, in stern and defiant attitude 15 Some smaller guns, under the direction of a few French auxiliaries, were perhaps more formidable 16 Actions not prompted by feelings, are not voluntary 17 No prince usurping a crown ever caused less blood to be shed 18 These are scenes surpassing fable 19 Dunkirk, won by Oliver from Spain, was sold to Louis XIV. 20 I promise you this ring, adorned with costly stones

17 Change the participial phrases into coordinate clauses in —1 Rushing against Horatius, he smote with all his might 2 Scattered over the field, they had already begun the work of pillage 3 The island, being girded by a coral reef, is very difficult of approach 4 Drawing their swords, they dashed out upon the crowd 5 The people, yielding to thy prowess, yet confide in thy mercy

18 Change the italicised in the following into adverbs —1 The scene was in a singular degree minute 2 The ship is so near the shore as to be in danger 3 He has been supported with great energy 4 This work is so bad as to be inexcusable 5 He loves her even to madness 6 Bentley was beyond measure superior to all the other scholars of his time. 7. He waited with the utmost anxiety.

19 Change the italicised in the following into *adverbial clauses* —
 1 The prince was to be found *in the hottest of the battle* 2 He had never seen such wonders *in all his travels*. 3 *In cases of serious difficulty* there is little help to be had 4 The Conqueror built a fortress *on the present site of the Tower of London*. 5 *Before our entrance*, the business was begun 6 Be patient till our return 7 *By six o'clock*, we were ready to go ashore 8 *Upon the reading of this letter*, there was not a dry eye in the club 9 *In the midst of this discourse* the bell rang to dinner 10 *At the sight of the old man's writing*, Sir Andrew burst into tears 11 *With diligence* you will succeed 12 *But for his own confession*, he would not have been convicted 13 *Without help*, I cannot last till morn 14 The business would be successful *under different conditions* 15 He struck me *without provocation* 16 *Notwithstanding these misfortunes*, the Britons were not subdued. 17 *In spite of his ingratitude*, I love him 18 *For all his wealth*, he is not happy 19 He made great exertions *for the prevention of war*, 20 Laws were enacted *against usury* 21 *To the great joy of the people*, he was acquitted 22 He never passed a child *without saying a kind word* 23 I confess myself discharged of so much labour, *having all these things ready done to my hand* 24 The crew abandoned the ship, *believing that she was sinking* 25 *Richard having been deposed*, Henry became King 26 The ghost appeared, *the bell then beating one* 27 *The wind having fallen*, the sea gradually became calm 28 *His hunger being appeased*, he began to be in better humour 29 A storm coming on, they made towards the coast 30 *His calling land aside*, he lived at ease 31 *Considering the size of the vessel*, the apartment was spacious and high 32 *Strictly speaking*, every one must educate himself 33 *Assuming this to be true*, the point I contend for necessarily follows 34 *Even though vanquished*, he could argue still 35 He was objected to *as being a foreigner* 36 I will not fight, *unless compelled* 37 He is a fool to squander his money *in that way* 38 I am glad to see you well 39 I was surprised to hear of it 40 He is ashamed to appear *as a witness in the case* 41 You are mistaken to think *that the case is false* 42 He conducted the war so to render himself famous 43 He acted so as to justify my confidence in him 44 Who are you to find fault with me? 45 What is their quality to make them so much respected? 46 London was guarded by soldiers to overawe resistance 47 I am going there to find out the truth 48 This is too warm work to last long 49 The window was too high to reach from the ground 50 It is never too late to mend

20 Change the italicised adverbial phrases in the following into *co-ordinate clauses* — 1 Lessing was beyond all dispute, the first critic in Europe 2 The tax, *besides being oppressive*, is inexpedient 3 *Upon hearing of my distress*, he immediately came to me 4 *According to the latest accounts*, the island is quiet 5 *In addition to these misfortunes*, his health gave way 6 *For all the outcry*, there is very little wrong 7 He maintained his opinion *in the face of serious opposition* 8 *Beyond all hope*, the boat reached land 9 He must resign on pain of public dismissal 10 *With every desire to oblige him*, I must yet refuse this request 11 *In consequence of our representations*, the matter was inquired into 12 *To his great disappointment*, he was passed over unnoticed 13 *In the interest of my friend*, I must insist on a full explanation, 14 *In pity of his misfortunes*, we treated him kindly 15 The members, *in conformity with their oaths*, refused to submit to the usurper 16 Many Normans suddenly disappeared, *leaving no trace* 17 Mahomet now broke up his camp, *promising his troops to renew the siege at a future time* 18 Down fell the rain, *echoing along the street* 19 Godfrey rode along slowly *representing to himself the scene of confession to his father* 20 The soldiers advanced

courage, each man encouraging his neighbour 21 All remained silent, some wondering, others smiling with incredulity and derision 22 The troops marched without order, each one choosing his own path 23 He distributed money among the people, gladdening every heart by his bounty 24 He fired on the crowd, wounding three men 25 He has worked very hard for the cause, thus showing his sincerity 26 An explosion of gas took place, the roof of the house being blown off 27 To confess the truth, this man's mind seems fitted to his station 28 To do her justice she was a good natured woman 29 To augment their misery, a disorder of a dangerous nature spread through the land 30 To add to Charles's difficulties, a war with France began

21 Change the italicised into noun phrases in the following — 1 That you were weak is your excuse 2 It is uncertain on what conditions peace was made 3 Where Attila was buried cannot be determined 4 That some flowers are more beautiful than others is not to be denied 5 When he will arrive is not yet known 6 They demanded that the obnoxious chief should be dismissed 7 We can prove that the earth is round 8 I expect that he will arrive to-morrow 9 Inquire when the show will be held 10 He knows who wrote the book 11 Tell me which the way to the village is 12 They now admit that their conduct was improper 13 I wish to find out where John lives 14 Tell me what poem you like best 15 State when and where you were born 16 The result was that the treaty was signed 17 We are not agreed as to when we should begin work 18 A chief cause of ambiguity is that the signification of words is constantly shifting 19 The law was strictly enforced against whoever committed offences 20 The cause of his hesitation was that the army was disorganized 21 It was owing to him that I succeeded so well 22 That you have wronged me appears clearly from this 23 It was necessary that he should support himself by his own exertions 24 That he has succeeded is the only justification of the enterprise 25 How he should advance the interests of the family was his only care 26 It appears that Dryden was much gratified by the young scholar's praise 27 It is by no means evident when one may interfere with effect 28 How the government should be carried on is a pressing question 29 He vowed that he would devote himself entirely to the service of the prince 30 He swore he would be avenged 31 We all regretted that he persisted in his course 32 We were in doubt whether we should go or stay 33 He had not wherewithal he could buy a coat 34 He desired I would immediately see him 35 He ordered that the whole line should advance 36 He declared that he was the sole survivor 37 The question is when operations may be advantageously begun 38 He was in much perplexity as to where he should hide himself 39 I regret that I must say so 40 He proved that he was worthy of the high command

22 Use adjectives or possessives instead of the italicised in — 1 They have begun a dispute that can never end 2 Here is a barrier that cannot be passed 3 The speech he made was little to the purpose 4 He said so at a moment when he was not on his guard 5 His malice was such as cannot be expressed or measured 6 He died in the village in which he was born 7 Here was a battle where neither side was victorious 8 Many of the orations which Cicero composed have been preserved 9 The purpose that the writer had in view is not always clear 10 I do not see the force of the objections you have urged 11 The story that they tell appears to be true 12 The ingenuity that the beaver exhibits is admirable

23 Use adjective phrases instead of the italicised in — 1 The prince who is an excellent horseman, kept his seat 2 The nation honoured Wellington, who won the battle of Waterloo 3 Wolsey erected a college at Ipswich, where he was born 4 Edinburgh, where the government was car-

ried on, was in a state of anarchy 5 The century that followed the Restoration produced a number of eminent writers 6 That was an offence that could not be forgiven 7 The scheme was disconcerted by the course that the civil war took 8 They settled in a green valley through which a brook runs 9 He was a person whose habits were studious, and whose morals were irreproachable 10 Assassination was an event that occurred daily 11 A conspiracy whose object was to waylay the King was set on foot 12 At the time when Mahomet came into the world, a celestial light illumined the surrounding country 13 There was no anchor whereby the ship might be held 14 These are the two causes whence it derives its name 15 The evil that men do lives after them 16 The difficulties whereby this inquiry is surrounded are not readily overcome 17 This is a matter in which no proof is necessary 18 All claims whereby life is threatened are unknown to them 19 Many renounced the religion in which they had been brought up. 20 He had but one son, whose name was Offa.

21 Change the italicised in the following into adverbs. — 1 After he had made a short pause, he went on again. 2 I will return before many days pass by. 3 When I was younger I thought so. 4 The speech was more brilliant than was expected. 5 The workmen are as dissatisfied as they can be. 6 Your brother is more diligent than boys generally are. 7 These men are as miserable as can be. 8 The offer is so liberal that one is tempted to accept it. 9 As far as one can judge it will be fine to morrow. 10 A regent will be appointed as is most probable.

25 Change the italicised in the following into adverbial phrases. — 1 Coblenz stands where the Moselle joins the Rhine. 2 Whither thou goest, I will go. 3 When beggars die, there are no comets seen. 4 When Addison was in his twenty-second year, he appeared before the public as a writer of English verse. 5 When the King reached his majority, he surrounded himself with wise counsellors. 6 I have not seen him since he was a child. 7 We did not wait till the performance was over. 8 The night had closed in before the conflict began. 9 As soon as we received the news, we set out. 10 Hardly had he set foot on shore when he was arrested. 11 My heart smote me the moment he shut the door. 12 I will praise thee as long as I live. 13 They have defended their cause as ably as they could. 14 The greater his difficulties are, the more energy he displays. 15 The higher the state, the more nervous he became. 16 He is so clever that he cannot be deceived. 17 He was so weak that he could not undertake a public career. 18 Keep peace, as you love your lives. 19 We rowed, as I computed, about three leagues. 20 As far as I observed, none of my friends were present. 21 He was reprimanded because he was late. 22 As the weather was bad, we remained indoors. 23 Because he was restless in youth, he is miserable now. 24 As he persisted in refusing help, I left him alone. 25 As he continued to speak, the audience became uproarious. 26 When they refuse to obey, they are at once dismissed. 27 As every thing was in confusion, the little boy was forgotten. 28 The King would impose no tax unless his Parliament consented. 29 If you assume indifference you may escape suspicion. 30 If you exert yourself strenuously, you may still gain your object. 31 If you associate with bad people, you will become bad. 32 In case we are surprised, keep by me. 33 If you had not helped me, I should have failed. 34 You will not remain strong except you take more exercise. 35 Were I to live to the age of Methuselah, the impression would not be effaced. 36 Although I had so many difficulties, I managed to master the language. 37 Though we strongly remonstrated with him, yet he would not yield. 38 Whatever the event maybe, we are safe. 39. Say what you will, I am determined to go. 40 Exasperated as they were, men hesitated long before they drew

the sword 41 He laboured earnestly that abuses might be reformed 42 I repeated my orders that there might be no mistake 43 Love not sleep lest thou come to poverty 44 You cannot open your eyes but you will see similar cases 45 A great many visitors came at one time, so that we were put to some inconvenience 46 He has acted as he was instructed 47 He acts as if he were guilty 48 He wept as if he had been a child 49 I owned him as a son 50 We are sad, because we feared you would not come 51 When the fire was extinguished, the mob dispersed 52 When their meal was over, they at once proceeded on their way 53 Some were thrown into prison, while others went into exile 54 The dog could not enter, because the hole was too small 55 Since there is no longer fear of invasion, the army may be reduced 56 He is most imprudent as he still persists in error 57 When you have once attained your object, will you be satisfied? 58 I should be sorry if I were the cause of his failure 59 He would be very thankful, were he relieved of his duty 60 The boy loitered so long on the way that he was afraid to go in 61 The tree had fallen right across road, so that it barred our way 62 Am I a child that I should be thus dictated to? 63 What has happened that you all turn away from me? 64 What have they done that you should be so deeply offended? 65 Come into the light that we may see you 66 I closed mine eyelids lest the gems should blind my purpose 67 He is so old that he will not earn

24 Change the adverbial clauses in the following into co ordinate clauses — 1 When she opened the ark, she saw Moses 2 As soon as they arrived, the work began 3 If you do not finish the work, we shall all be lost 4 Had they not gone forward, death was inevitable 5 Whereas I was blind, now I see 6 We love him because he first loved us 7 Do not urge him more, lest he become angry 8 We have laboured earnestly that the projects should not miscarry 9 Many people came up to London that they might see the coronation 10 This event gave me great joy, as I was permitted now to continue my journey

25 Change one of the co ordinate clauses in each of the following into an adverbial phrase — 1 He has good natural ability, besides, he is well educated 2 They promise liberally, but they are slow to perform. 3 Many experiments have been made, and the results have been in all cases the same 4 We searched for the papers, but could not find them 5 They laboured assiduously, yet they failed in their object 6 The bill was passed and the people were delighted 7 He was very unsteady and therefore could not hope to succeed

CHAPTER IX.

1 Combine the following groups of statements into sentences as directed — 1 Milton was born in 1608 He was a great English poet He was born in Breadstreet Breadstreet is in Cheapside Cheapside is in London—into a simple sentence 2 The cuckoo builds no nest for herself She lays in the nests of other birds She does not lay in the nests of all birds—into a compound sentence 3 The Highlanders were composed of a number of tribes These tribes were called clans Each clan bore a different name Each clan lived upon the lands of a different chieftain—into a simple sentence 4 The pitcher plant is a native of the East Indies It has mugs These mugs are attached to its leaves Each mug holds about a quart of very pure water—into a complex sentence 5 The king broke off both treaties The people learned this with triumph They celebrated their triumph They celebrated it by bonfires and public

rejoicing—into a complex sentence 6 Bruce was gradually getting possession of the country He was gradually driving out the English Edinburgh remained in the possession of the English Edinburgh was then the chief fortress in Scotland At last it was taken by Randolph—into a complex sentence 7. Eugene Aram was convicted at the York assizes. The date of the assizes was 1759 He had murdered Daniel Clarke at Knarborough. The murder was committed fourteen years before the trial. He was sentenced to death Before receiving sentence, he delivered an able but unavailing speech The subject of his speech was the improbability of a man like him doing such a deed—into a complex sentence with the italicised words as subject and predicate

2 Combine each of the following groups of statements into a simple sentence —(1) The boy tended cattle He tended cattle from his sixth year He tended them in summer He tended them on the hills (2) General Elliot headed a sortie It was in November It was in the same year The sortie was made at midnight (3) The river overflowed The river was the Thames The banks were overflowed It was in November It was on the 15th of that month On both sides it was overflowed (4) The wind was favourable They pursued their way rapidly They used sails and oars (5) Sandals protected his feet They were bound with thongs (6) He approached the Christian He had his right hand extended He no longer did so in a menacing attitude (7) John signed John was a king It was a document called Magna Charta that he signed John was afraid of his barons He did not care about liberty He signed it at Runnymede Runnymede is on the Thames It is not far from Windsor (8) The armies lay encamped before each other They lay encamped all night They were encamped in a part of Sussex It was then called Senlac It is now called Battle

3 Combine each of the following pairs of statements into a complex sentence —(1) No one would appear for a Jewess accused of sorcery This was the general belief (2) A jay robbed the peacocks of their feathers She was soon punished for her robbery (3) Some of these mummies have been found They are said to be over three thousand years old (4) The wicked may seem to prosper for a time Punishment nevertheless comes at last to them (5) I must walk a mile further Then I shall begin my tale (6) You must invite me Otherwise I will not come (7) Let us suppose the sermon finished No one presumes to stir The knight must first go out of the church (8) This answer was delivered with a smile The black knight could not bear that smile He grew warm in the dispute (9) They raised a great shout It alarmed the tiger very much The tiger in consequence made a desperate tug (10) Bruce was a fugitive in the island of Raccin Raccin is off the coast of Ireland About this time an incident took place It rests only on tradition in certain families These families have the name of Bruce The incident is nevertheless probable It is rendered so by the manners of the times (11) Johnson took away the novel He sold it to Francis Newbery Francis Newbery was a nephew of the elder bookseller The novel was the *Vicar of Wakefield* Every one knows this (12) The path had been betrayed The enemy were climbing it They would come down beyond the Eastern Gate These were the tidings brought by a Cimmerian He had crept over to the wall from the Persian camp

4 Combine each of the following pairs or groups of statements into a compound sentence with simple co ordinate clauses 1 He looked upon his people A tear was in his eye 2 Sir Brian turned his countenance towards Rebecca He turned it irresolutely He then looked at Ivanhoe He looked fiercely at him 3 Bruce was lying on his bed The bed was a wretched one He looked up to the roof He saw a spider 4, The water

is drawn off. The saltpetre is afterwards separated. This is effected by heat. 5 Lindsay knocked at the door of the old chief. He wanted admission. He asked for it in friendly language. 6 I swam towards the strange object. I had got within 8 or 10 yards of it. Then I found it to be composed of animal substances. 7 The unhappy father lost all perception. He sank down. He was in a state of insensibility. 8 He raised himself up. He did it with assistance. Two of his servants assisted him. He instantly fell down dead. 9 Do not ask your teacher to parse the difficult words. Do not ask him to assist you in the performance of any of your studies. Do it yourself. 10 Sir Ralph the Rover sailed away. He scoured the seas for many a day. He is grown rich with plundered store. He now steers his course to Scotland's shore.

CHAPTER X

SYNONYMS

1 Write out the following extracts selecting the suitable word or phrase of the two given in parentheses —

1 While the cities of Italy were thus (*advancing, progressing*) in their (*career, course*) of improvement, (*an event happened, a circumstance occurred*) the most (*remarkable, extraordinary*) perhaps in the history of mankind, which, instead of (*retarding, stopping*) the (*trading, commercial*) progress of the Italians (*rendered, made*) it more rapid. The (*warlike, martial*) spirit of the Europeans, (*increased, heightened*) and inflamed by religious (*serious, zeal*) (*induced, prompted*) them to attempt the (*deliverance, rescue*) of the Holy Land from the (*government, dominion*) of Infidels. (*Great, vast*) armies (*composed, made up*) of all the (*nations, countries*) in Europe, marched towards Asia upon this wild (*enterprise, expedition*). The Genoese, the Pisans and the Venetians (*furnished supplied*) the transports which (*carried, conveyed*) them thither — *Robertson*

2 But it is of no (*importance, use*) to read much, (*except, unless*) you be (*regular, uniform*) in your reading. If it (*be interrupted, cease*) for any (*considerable, great*) time, it can never be (*attended, accompanied*) with proper (*improvement, advantage*). There are some who study for one day with (*intense, excessive*) (*application, diligence*), and (*repose, rest*) themselves for ten days after. But wisdom is a coquette, and must be (*courted, wooed*) with (*unabating, untiring*) (*assiduity, perseverance*) — *Goldsmith*

3 The (*decline, declension*) of Venice did not, like that of Rome, (*proceed, arise*) from increase of luxury or the (*revolt, rebellion*) of her own (*armies, forces*) in the distant colonies, or from civil (*Wars, contests*) of any kind. Venice has (*dwindled, diminished*) in (*power, strength*) and (*influence, importance*) from (*causes, reasons*) which could not be (*foreseen, anticipated*), or guarded against by human (*foresight, prudence*), although they had been (*foreseen, anticipated*). How could this (*republic, commonwealth*) have (*hindered, prevented*) the (*discovery, invention*) of a (*passage, voyage*) round the Cape of Good Hope, or (*hinder, prevent*) other (*nations, countries*) from being (*inspired with, actuated by*) a spirit of enterprise, industry and (*commerce, trade*) ? — *Dr Moore*

2 Supply the appropriate words selected from those given in —

(1) *Abandon, abdicate, desert, forsake, renounce, resign, relinquish*

He——his design. A young man should——all intercourse with persons of low habits, Charles the Fifth of Germany——his throne

The clerk having been negligent is compelled to——his situation
 After the disasters of Egypt and Russia, Napoleon——his army, and
 hastened to Paris How hard it is for a mother to——her child! The
 duke——all claims upon the property

(2) *Cause, reason, motive*

Cut off the——and the effects will cease I do not know what——
 he can allege for such conduct, any more than I can understand his real

(3) *Difficulty, hindrance, impediment, obstacle*

He who undertakes anything of importance will find that there are
 ——to be encountered, ——to be surmounted, and ——to be removed.
 Difficulty is no ——to a decided mind

(4) *Discover, invent*

Galleo ——Jupiter's satellites with the telescope which he is said to
 have —— America was ——by Columbus The barometer was ——
 by Torricelli

(5) *Do, execute, perform, fulfil, effect, accomplish*

We ——our commissions, ——our promises, ——our purpose, ——
 our designs, and ——our engagements England expects every man to
 ——his duty

(6) *Ease, relieve, mitigate, alleviate, allay, appease, soothe,
 tranquillize, quiet, still*

Bunyan represents Christian as being ——of his burden at the sight
 of the cross It is our duty to ——the distresses of others by ——their
 sufferings, ——their heart burnings, ——their sorrows, ——their fears
 and ——their resentments The wrath of Achilles was not to be ——
 Do not hope to ——your conscience while enjoying the fruits of your
 offence

(7) *Enjoyment, pleasure, delight, satisfaction, gratification*

She is in the ——of excellent health I hope to have the ——of
 spending a long evening with you It gives me no ——to have the pri-
 vate affairs of my neighbour overhauled in my hearing Life was given us
 for more important purposes than the ——of our animal appetites True
 friendship is a source of exquisite ——

(8) *Entangle, implicate, involve, perplex, embarrass, complicate,
 puzzle, bewilder*

The crafty man is not unfrequently ——in a web of his own weaving
 through being ——in that dishonest affair, they are ——in difficulties
 We may ——ourselves by diving into matters too deep for us, till our
 minds are wholly —— We have ——ourselves with that ——affair
 He is said to be in ——circumstances

(9) *Entreaty, prayer, supplication, petition, request, solicitation, suit*

No ——could turn him from his purpose The ——of the blessing
 of the Creator is surely the duty of the creature She offered up a ——
 for her beloved son A ——was presented to the House, urging the re-
 moval of certain grievances Had he made any ——, it would no doubt
 have been acceded to He preferred his ——, but to no purpose He was
 appointed to the situation without any ——on his part

(10) *Freedom, liberty*

A prisoner under trial may ask ——— to speak his sentiments with ———
The ——— of the press is our great security for ——— of thought

(11) *General, common, universal*

To be able to read and write is so ——— an attainment in England that
we may pronounce it ——— though by no means ———

(12) *Haughty, arrogant, disdainful*

A person is ——— in disposition and demeanour ———, in his claims of
homage and deference, and ——— even in accepting even the deference
which his ——— leads him ———ly to accept

(13) *Permit, allow, suffer*

The instructor of a class may ——— some things to pass unnoticed
which he does not ——— and may ——— certain practices, at least for a
time, which he would by no means directly ———

(14) *Persist, persevere, persist*

A learner ——— in his studies, a child may ——— in making a request
till he has got what he wants

(15) *Reluctance, aversion, repugnance, disguise, antipathy*

Men have an ——— for what breaks in upon their habits, a ——— to do
anything which involves self sacrifice or inconvenience, a ——— to what
crosses their will, a ——— for what offends their sensibilities, and are
often governed by ——— for which they can give no good reason

(16) *Ridiculous, ludicrous, laughable*

His stories were highly ———, representing his friends some in a ———
and others in a ——— point of view

3 Distinguish between the synonyms in the following pairs — 1
Stillness, silence 2 Ripe, mature 3 Remember, recollect 4 Habit,
custom 5 Die, expire 6 Corpse, carcase 7 Confess, acknowledge
8 Dwell, reside 9 Active, diligent 10 Vice, wickedness
11 Crime, offence 12 Glad, willing 13 Accompany, attend 14
Consent, comply, 15 Curious, wonderful 16 Refuse, reject

ANTONYMS

4 Give the antonyms of the following words — assemble, fertile, simple,
retreat, reject, ancient, foolish, antipathy, invest, exterior, friendly, hopeful,
disease, hard, rude, gain, freedom, enrich, noble, ugly, numble, success, stern,
lament, omit, mortal, please, deep, stubborn, general, health, vulgar, oral,
tender, mature, praise, wild, false, grief, cress, vice

HOMONYMS

5 Give as many meanings as you can of each of the following words —
(1) angle, bat, butt, chase, comb, vault, strain, spring, mortar, palm, left,
grave, (2) light, foot, crop, dear, fret, nail, taper, utter, stern, stock, grate,
consistency, (3) arch, comb, bill, ashes, bark, bay, game, grain, partial,
pitch, court, dam, (4) base, bale, cast, board, stick, rank, port, kind, jet,
found, club, litter, lighten, (5) arms, calf, corporal, effects, end, felt, keep,
older, spirits, subject, transport, watch

PARONYMS

6 Distinguish between the paronyms in the following pairs —(1) break, brake, augur, anger, bier, beer, reck, wreck, hail, hale, cord, chords, (2) cession, session, chagrin, shagreen, fain, feign, mean, mien, pare, pair, depository, depository, (3) peer, pier, pray, prey, fur, fir, discrete, discreet, principal, principle, fowl, foul, (4) wear, ware, ewe, yew, sower, sewer, seize, cease, seam seem, rote, wrote, (5) root, route, vain, vein, waste, waist, wither, whither, sweet, suite; symbol, cymbal, (6) adze, adds, ail, ale, altar, alter, ark, are, aspiration, asperation, aught, ought, (7) awl, all, bold, bowled, bear bare, barren, baron, bawl, ball, beach, beech, (8) beau, bow, bell, belle, berry, bury bite, bight, board, bored, bald, bawled, (9) bow, bough, boy, buoy, breach, breech, broach, brooch, brute, brut, burrow, borough, (10) calender, calendar, cask, casque, ceiling, sealing, cellar, seller, censer, censor, sent, scent, (11) cheque, check, cite, site, collar, choler, cruise, crews, demean, demesne, drift, draught, faint, feint, (12) fellow, fellow, fisher, fissure, fort, foite, gold, guild, gilt, guilt, gage, gauge, (13) glare, glair, grizzly, grisly, hide, hied, horde, hoard, indict, indite, intention, intension, (14) key, quay, kill, kiln, lax, lacks, leak, leek, led, lead, lee, lea, (15) leavy, levee, limb, lumn, literal, littoral, load, lode, loan, lone, lumber, lumbar, (16) lynx, links, moun, mune, manners, manors, marshal martial, maze, maize, meet, mete, (17) metal, mettle, minor, miner, moan mown, muscle, mussel, naval, navel, need, knead, (18) oar, ore, ode, owed, pale, paul, pause, paws, peak, pique, pendant, pendent, (19) plain, plane, plate, plait, quire, choir, rein, reign, rip, wrap, raze, raise, (20) riot, ryot, write, wright, ruff, rough, seed, cede, shear, sheer, signet, cygnet, (21) slight, sleight, sloe, slow, sorr, sore, staid, stayed, stationery, stationery, stile, style, (22) sutler, subtler, tare, tear, teem, team, time, thyme, told, tolled, urn, earn, (23) vale, veil, vain, vane, val, viol, wain, wane, ware, waive, week weak, (24) weakly, weekly, would, wood, wort, wert, wrest, rest, yew, you, yoke, yolk

CONJUGATE FORMS

7 Give as many conjugate forms as you can of each of the following words —(1) declare, profound, conclude perceive, respect, advantage, simple, moment, dismiss, brilliant, (2) study, confidence, develop, appreciate, join, revolution, prosper, resume, adopt, venerate, (3) demonstrative, acquire invent, recognise, disaster, occur, custom, impetuous, grant, active, (4) necessity, provide, exhaust, refuse, popular, mix, hardly, be have, interrupt, false

8 Rewrite the following sentences, using the noun form of the italicized words —1 The fine English cavalry then advanced to support their archers 2 To study *successfully*, the body must be healthy 3 A candle shines by *consuming* its own smoke 4 Pasco is the *most elevated* city in the world 5 The peacock *displays* his glittering plumage 6 I *sincerely advise* you to give up smoking entirely 7 I shall *remember* his kindness as long as I live 8 My uncle spends all he *earns* in maintaining his large family 9 All his *endeavours* to *discover* the thief were in vain 10 I am sure he will not *pry* you unless he is *compelled*

9 Rewrite the following sentences, using the adjective form of the italicized words —1 The soil here is of *extraordinary fertility* 2 The old man *waved* his hand with authority 3 He *absolutely* denied the charge brought against him 4 No man of *prudence* would have agreed to such terms 5 He has *evidently* no *desire* to learn 6 He had the *sagacity* to see through the device 7 The bird had a singular *tenacity* of

lifo 8 He pointed out the *necessity* of their being once more on the alert 9 He was *absolutely* ruined by that unlucky business 10 The *expense* of the journey was not great

10 *Re-write the following sentences, using the verb form of the italicised words* —1 I had little *pleasure* in making their acquaintance 2 I have not *giv* on my *attention* to this matter 3 At the *return* of daylight it appeared that they had raised the siege 4 The *sheen* of their spears was like stars on the sea 5 After much *hesitation* they chose this course 6 The first frost of September announced the *approach* of winter 7 Confine your *attention* to the work before you 8 They received no further *interruption* 9 Tommy could hardly find words to express his *pleasure* 10 His story gave us great *amusement*

11 *Re write the following sentences, using the adverbial form of the italicised words* —1 On the *strictest* search, nothing could be found upon him 2 It has a direct *tendency* to destroy the promptitude and tenacity of memory 3 Every man takes a *different* view of a question 4 Their motions were very *grave* and *deliberate* 5 He returned with the utmost *expedition* to Ply mouth 6 In *due* time you shall be informed of the matter 7 He has been supported with great *energy* 8 He had a very *narrow* escape from drowning 9 This treatment had a *serious* effect on her health 10 He wrote to inform us of his *safe* arrival

CHAPTER XI

Distinguish between the expressions in the following pairs —(1) ingenious, ingenuous, agree to, agree with, call at, call on, attend to, attend on, other than, otherwise than, (2) go to church, go to the church, eat, eat of, causal, casual, alternate, alternative, bridal, bridle, (3) relic, relict, confidant, confident, corps, corpse, elusion, illusion, eruption, irruption, (4) emigrant, immigrant, council, counsel, conscious, conscientious, ghostly, ghastly, ghostly, ghost like, (5) spiritual, spirituous, gentle, genteel, reverend, reverent, propose, purpose, tasteless, distasteful, (6) woody, wooden, take heart, take to heart, poor as he was, as he was poor, well, well off, loath, loathe, compliment, complement

CHAPTER XII

Distinguish between —between, among, alone, only, with, by, nearly, almost, little, a little, no one, not one, few, a few, eldest, oldest, less, fewer, earnestly, in earnest, late, lately, run at, run against, in an hour, within an hour, in the same time, at the same time, on the top, at the top, at Calcutta, in Calcutta, can but, cannot but

CHAPTER XIII.

1 *Insert appropriate prepositions in the blanks in* —1 The sultry night was followed——a heavy storm of rain 2 The soil is adopted——hemp and tobacco 3 What does happiness consist——? 4 The government is based——republican principles 5 This case has no

resemblance—the other 6 In contradistinction—the other
 7 Religion and membership may differ widely—each other 8 The
 judge is disqualified—deciding in this case 9 He died—thirst
 10 He was very ill—a fever 11 You may rely—what I say,
 and confide—his honesty 12 It is an affair—whichever I am not
 interested

2 *Correct*—What is my grief in comparison of what she bears?
 2 He ended with a panegyric of modern sciences 3 I have an abhor-
 rence to such politicians 4 It was no diminution to his greatness
 5 He swerved out of the true course 6 He does not aspire at political
 distinction 7 I was disappointed in the pleasure of meeting you 8
 There is no need for so much preparation 9 He was eager of making a
 display 10 I find no difficulty of keeping up with my class 11 They
 quarrelled amongst one another 12 He was accused with having acted
 unfairly

3 *Compose short sentences to show what prepositions are appropriate*
 to—(1) abandoned, abide, abominable, abound, abridge, absent, abstain,
 accede, acceptable, access, (2) accommodate, accordance, accountable, ac-
 quaint, acquiesce, acquit, adapted, address, adhere, adjacent, (3) admission,
 advantage, affection, agree, agreeable, allude, analogous, analogy, angry,
 annex, (4) answer, antipathy, anxious, appeal, apply, apprehensive, ap-
 propriate, approve, argue, arrive, (5) ask, aspire, assent, associate, assure,
 atone, attach, attain, attend, reverse, (6) banish, believe, beware, bestow,
 betray, betroth, blame, blush, boast, border, (7) call, capable, careless,
 careful, caution, change, charge, coincide, communicate, compare, (8)
 comply, concede, concur, condemned, conduce, confer, confide, conform,
 conformity, congratulate, (9) consent, consign, consist, contend, contest,
 contrast, contrary, conversant, convince, correspond, (10) deal, decide,
 defend, deficient, defraud, depend, deprive, derived, derogatory, descended,
 (11) desirous, desist, despair, despoil, destined, destitute, detach, detract,
 deviate, devolve, (12) devote, dictate, die, differ, different, difficulty, dimi-
 nution, disagree, disagreeable, disappointed, (13) disapprove, disgusted,
 dispose, disqualify, dispute, distinct, distinguish, dive, divide, doubt, (14)
 eager, embark, embellish, emerge, employ, enamoured, encounter, encroach,
 endowed, engaged, (15) enter, envious, equal, equivalent, estimate, ex-
 ception, exclude, expel, expert, expressive, (16) familiar, feed, fight, filled,
 followed, fond, fondness, foreign, founded, free, friendly, full, (17) glad,
 glance, glow, grateful, grieve, guard, hinder, healed, hold, (18) impatient,
 impose, inaccessible, incentive, incorporate, inconsistent, independent,
 influence, inform, (19) inquire, insensible, inseparable, insist, instruct,
 intent, interfere, introduce, intrude, inured, (20) jealous, join, knock,
 known, laden, lean, level, live, long, look, (21) made, marry, meddle,
 meditate, mingle, minister, mistrustful, mix, (22) obedient, object,
 obtrude, offend, offensive, omit, operate, opposition, overwhelmed, (23)
 part, partake, participate, partial, partiality, patient, pay, peculiar,
 penetrate, persevere, (24) pleasant, pleased, plunge, possessed, prefer,
 preferable, prejudice, prejudicial, preserve, preside, (25) press, presume,
 present, pretend, prevail, prevent, prey, prior, productive, profitable,
 (26) prone, protect, protest, proud, provide, pursuant, pursuance, quarrel,
 questioned, (27) reckon, recline, reconcile, recover, reduce, reflect, refrain,
 regard, rejoice, relation, (28) relish, release, relieve, rely, remark, remit,
 remove, repent, replete, reproach, (29) resemblance, resolve, rest, respect,
 restore, restrain, retire, return, rich, rid, rob, (30) satiate, saturate, save,
 seek, share, send, sick, similar, sink, sit, (31) skilful, smile, sneer, sorry,
 stay, stick, strip, strive, subject, submit, (32) substitute, subtract, subside,
 suitable, surprised, suspect, swerve, sympathise, (33) taste, tax, tend,

thankful, touch, transmit, troublesome, true, trust, (34) unite, useful, void, wait, want, weary, weep, witness, worthy, yearn, yield, zeal

4 Insert appropriate prepositions in the blanks in —1 He helped me —the snake—old times 2 The library was founded—the auspices—the Collector 3 The banks—the river were covered—wood 4 The haze prevented me—seeing the lands 5 He still persisted—his design —leaving the happy valley—the first opportunity 6 Tumultuous horror brooded—her van 7 It is difficult to convince him—his error 8 The hawk hovered—the farm-yard 9 He has been wandering several days—quest—employment 10 —addition—his other troubles, his wife fell ill 11 The conservatives are averse—any reform—the Constitution 12 He rejoiced—his success and exulted—his fallen rival 13 I acquiesce—your proposal as you have assured me safety 14 True politeness consists—considering others' feelings 15 None should exult—a person—his misfortunes 16 I could not dissuade him—his attempt 17 He promised to abide—the contract, and they relied—his honour—its fulfilment 18 A church dedicated—St Peter—which no trace now exists, was built here—Sebert, King of the East Saxons—a small island called Thorney island, formed—a small creek running—the Thames 19 He is animated—a genuine love of art 20 The plot originated—Catesby 21 His orders were carried—effect 22 They were condemned—hard labour—six months 23 Uberto was—a visit—one of the first men—that place—his country house 24 The king is completely—the influence—his minister 25 We sat down—the feast which was provided—us 26 You must never swear—truth, nor be guilty fraud, nor yield—any way—temptations 27 I agree—you—considering him guilty 28 He is moderate—inflicting deserved correction 29 I am anxious to comply—your request 30. I feel much sympathy—him, but I cannot sympathize—him openly—account—my official position

CHAPTER XIV

Correct, where wrong, giving full reasons for the corrections —

1 1 Honour or reputation are dearer than life 2 The protest laid quietly on the table 3 You have chose the worst of the two 4 She doubted if this were not all delusion, and whether she was not still in the palace 5 Where we will find such merry groups now-a days? 6 Sir Walter speaks to every one as if they were his blood relations 7 On rather a narrow strip of land 8 We had fortunately engaged rooms at the only decent inn in Melrose, and after supper went out to see the abbey 9 That fortune, fame, power, life, hath named themselves a star 10 He knew not what it was to die

2 1 None so lovely and so brave as him who withered in the grave 2 Let them the state adorn and he defend 3 My robe, and my integrity to Heaven, is all I now dare call my own 4 A silk dress or flowered bonnet were then great rarities 5, The miller was bound to have returned the flour 6 The true rule was stated to be that the seller was liable to an action of deceit, if you fraudulently misrepresent the thing sold 7 To inquire whether or no the party be an idiot or a lunatic 8 It is a full two hours to dinner 9 The two electric fluids neutralized each others effects 10 Now, then, what should you think water was composed of?

3 I We have other two remarks to offer 2 In England, every one is free as soon as they touch the land 3 Some virtues are only seen in adversity 4 I shall be happy always to see my friends. 5 Each occupied their several premises, and farmed their own land. 6 New York with several posts in the neighbourhood, were in the possession of the enemy. 7. We have much to say on the subject of this life, and will often find ourselves to dissent from the opinions of the biographer 8 A squirrel can climb a tree quicker than a boy 9. The having a grammar of our mother tongue first taught would facilitate our youths learning their Latin and Greek grammars 10 Parents are of all others, the worst judges of their children's merits

4 I Your hairs are soft 2 How much did you pay for these furnitures? 3 Pott's Enchiridion. 4 The gentleman's carriage 5 It is best to read than to sleep 6 He is learning the French. 7 The army were dispersed 8 If I was rich I would buy a carriage 9 Just I am going 10 I shall never eat no more

5 1 This is one of the best books that has been written on the subject 2 The horse and carriage are at the door 3 We almost never meet 4 When I am to return? 5 He soon returned back 6 Dora lived unmarried till her death 7 Please tell me what am I to do? 8 I am too willing to help you 9. I felt this want from a very long time. 10 He robbed my money

6 1 I will not be able to come to school to morrow 2 Boys and girls ought to go to the school 3 He has arrived yesterday 4 The ship was loaded with cotton 5 He said a lie 6 He flew from the place 7 The place was completely overflowed with water 8 She has drunk all the milk 9 Next Christmas I shall be three years in this school 10 This book has and will prove useful

7 1 Being failed in the examination, I left the school 2 Quill pen is useful for writing than a steel one 3 Canvas are cheaper than mangoes 4 Sovereigns are sold here at cheaper price 5 It is worth quarter of a rupee 6 Scott is a better novelist than a poet 7 He took the both pens 8 I bought a quantity of books yesterday 9 What can I do in such circumstance? 10 The scissor does not cut well

8 1 This is a too bad pen to write with 2 What sort of man he is? 3 It is very bad pen 4 Eat such fruits that you can get 5 Each shall be rewarded in their turn 6 They sat one at either end of the bench 7 Who are you speaking to? 8 Whom do you think I am? 9 I want your testimonial about my character 10 Will I do this?

9 1 What for you are going away? 2 The jury was kept without food 3 If I was rich, I would buy a carriage 4 He reads very well his lesson 5 I saw him since four months 6 The petition remains still undisposed 7 They discussed on that subject 8 He replied my letter 9 I am not in the same position as I was before 10 He does not know to write

10 1 While such being the case, we cannot interfere 2 I have known him before a long time 3 I saw him four months before 4 A failed candidate 5 You may take either of the three books 6 This was entered by slip of pen 7 The gold is found near Alps 8 Do not hear his advices 9 He greatly astonished at this 10 He said me that he would not come

11 1 My people doth not consider 2 We choose rather lead than follow 3 Ignorance is the mother of fear, as well as admiration. 4 Life and death is in the power of the tongue 5 It is no more but bare justice 6 Let him be whom he may, I shall not stop 7 I am afraid lest I have laboured in vain 8 This construction sounds rather harshly 9 Let your

promises be such that you can perform 10 I did not use the leaves, but root of the plant

12 1 Every twig and every leaf teem with life 2 A man is the noblest work of God 3 I and my cousin are invited 4 The tribes whom I visited are partially civilized 5 What is latitude and longitude? 6 Who dares apologize for Pizarro—who is but another name for rapacity 7 Tell me whether you will do it or no 8 We have no more but ten shites 9 This rule is the best which can be given 10 He is not so sick but what he can laugh

13 1 He made another joke which she did not hear, and had better be suppressed 2 I can tell you this much 3 He has only done that much of his task 4 Leave Nell and I to toil and work 5 He is stronger than me 6 They were refused admission to, and forcibly driven from the castle 7 Don't blame it on to me 8 Have you change of a sovereign? 9 He parts his hair in the centre 10 Pour the water in the bucket

14 1 He wrote to and warned me 2 "Swim across, John" "O Sir' I durst not" 3 Having laid down his hat, he laid down on the sofa 4 That was the most unkindest cut of all 5 I have heard those sort of arguments fifty times over 6 Sorrow not as them that have no hope 7 The house of Baal was fall from one end to another 8 Neither of the three will do 9 Thou never didst them wrong, nor no man wrong 10 He belonged to a Mutual Admiration Society, the members of which spent their time in flattery each other

15 1 Homer is remarkably concise, which renders him lively and agreeable 2 And they were judged, every man according to their works 3 What went so out for to see? 4 They summoned him for a trespass 5 A man may see a metaphor or an allegory in a picture as well as read them in a description 6 Whether he be the man or no, I cannot tell 7 Who are you speaking of? 8 This road is only to be used by persons having business 9 The cake was soon divided between half a dozen hungry urchins 10 I can hardly tell you how much pains have been spent on this work

CHAPTER XV

Point out the ambiguity in each of the following, and show how it may be removed —1 If the lad leaves his father, he will die 2 He got a prize for geometry, which was of great use to him afterwards 3 I love John as well as James 4 I cannot believe anything he says 5 He went away slowly repeating his former statement 6 I saw him quite well 7 I met him suddenly yesterday, walking along Broadway 8 He has a certain income from property 9 He is above deception 10 I told you before all about it 11 The man is a fool and not a villain as is generally believed 12 Ulysses returned home after an absence of twenty years in the disguise of a beggar 13 He promised more than you did 14 He prevents as much harm as you do 15 John Kents, the second of four children, like Chaucer and Spenser, was a Londoner 16 Children of all ages have been delighted with this tale 17 The wind blew down the wall, it was very high 18 He did not sleep all last night 19 The poor have no clothes to protect themselves owing to their want of money from the severe cold 20 There are a great many rich men in the world who forget they were once poor

CHAPTER XVI.

1 Name and explain the figures of speech used in the following —1 A man and woman 2 The Word was made flesh and dwelt among us and we beheld His glory 3 His bluntness is a sauce to his wit 4 Rings the world with the vain stir 5 Sure some disaster has befallen 6 His eye was morning's brightest ray 7 O that I had wings like a dove 8 Though grave yet trifling, zealous yet untrue 9 The sceptre shall not depart from Judah 10 Trembling Tiber dived beneath his bed 11 This roof shall protect you 12 He that hath formed the eye, shall he not see? 13 Steel clad War his gorgeous standard rears 14 They drank one bottle of wine 15 Brougham is a thunderbolt 16 The stream of literature has swollen into a torrent—augmented into a river—expanded into a sea 17 Where Cæsar's eagles never flew 18 He does not keep very exact accounts 19 Frederick immediately sent relief, and in an instant all Saxony is overflowed with armed men

20 Can stoned urn or animated bust,

Back to its mansion call the fleeting breath?

21 We are reading Milton 22 How sweet the moonlight sleeps upon this bank 23 Grey hairs should be respected 24 She has not the best of tempers 25 O Liberty, thou goddess heavenly bright 26 Brave peers of England, pillars of the state 27 She is the flower of the village 28 We had no small difficulty in finding your house 29 Apt the mind or fancy is to rove unchecked 30 Consider the lilies of the field how they grow 31 The thirsty ground 32 Humbled but not dispirited, disappointed but not despairing 33 I hear he is going to—but what is the use of repeating a mere rumour? 34 The shore was strewn with wrecks 35 Language was given to us to conceal our thoughts 36 The canvas glows beyond even nature warm 37 Cruel kindness 38 The lover can see a Helen in a brow of Egypt 39 Where midnight listens to the lion's roar 40 He sells he buys, he steals, he kills for gold 41 I shall believe it to be so, though I happen to find it in his lordship's history 42 I hope he thought he was speaking the truth but he is rather a dull man and liable to make blunders 43 They recovered hope when they saw the blue bonnets approaching 44 From the gloom of the tunnel we emerged to the glad sun 45 Gratiano speaks an infinite deal of nothing 46 He did his party all the harm in his power he spoke for it 47 A stupid moment motionless she stood 48 He stood upon the dizzy cliff 49 Your fathers, where are they? 50 Even while they read, the sand-glass wastes away 51 The power of the purse 52 Slow rises worth by poverty depressed 53 He saved others, himself he cannot save 54 Kalidas is the Shakespeare of India 55 He can bribe, but he cannot seduce, he can lie, but he cannot deceive 56 Deep sunk in sleep and silks and heaps of down 57 She is a maiden of sixteen summers 58 In peace, children bury their parents, in war, parents bury their children 59 All flesh is grass 60 Job said bitterly "No doubt, ye are the wise men, and wisdom will die with you"

2 What cautions have to be observed in the use of figures of speech? Point out the errors in the following —1 No human happiness is so serene as to be without alloy 2 These are the first fruits of my unfledged eloquence 3 Her cheeks were blooming with roses and health 4 There is not single view of human nature that is not sufficient to extinguish the seeds of pride 5 One of his hands (=men) was shot through the nose 6 Take up arms against a sea of troubles

3. Express the meaning of each of the following metaphorical phrases

in unfigurative language —1 The milk of human kindness 2 A ray of hope 3 The afternoon of life 4 The gloom of despair 5 The whirligig of time 6 The eye of heaven 7 The storms of life 8 The morning of life 9 A golden sunset 10 A story heart 11 A rosy complexion 12 A fiery temper 13 A stormy meeting 14 A crystal stream 15 A transparent falsehood

CHAPTER XVII.

Change the following metaphors into similes —1 This place is paradise to me 2 There is an alloy in all success 3 The leaves fall in showers 4 The deck was their field of fame 5 Procrastination is the thief of time 6 He was an angler in the tides of fame 7 Wild fancies, in his moody brain, gambolled, unbridled and unbound 8 They who have light in themselves will not revolve round others as satellites 9 All the world's a stage 10 The storms of life 11 Man, thou pendulum betwixt a smile and tear 12 Life is an isthmus between two eternities 13 Her disdain stung him to the heart 14 The morning of life 15 Coming events cast their shadows before 16 Idleness is the rust of the soul 17 The wind was moaning through the trees 18 A wise man curbs his tongue 19 Language should be the mirror of the mind 20 He was always fettered by poverty 21 Hope is the poor man's bread 22 Industry is the foundation of success 23 The tree of liberty only grows when watered by the blood of tyrants 24 He that hath wife and children hath given hostages to fortune 25 Friendship is a sheltering tree

CHAPTER XVIII

Distinguish clearly between essential and ornamental epithets Point out to which class each epithet in the following belongs —1 With frequent intercourse we were wont to cheat a tedious hour 2 I hate long arguments verbosely spun 3 The well-known duties of a friend 4 Now onward and in open view, the countless ranks of England drew 5 By thousands slain, they cumber Bannock's bloody plain 6 The cheerful haunts of man 7 A solitary blessing few can find.

CHAPTER XIX

1 Give the meanings of the following phrases, and illustrate their use by sentences of your own construction —1 abide by, after all, on the alert, all over with, into the bargain, bear in mind, beat about the bush, bent upon, bid fair, in one's bad books, 2 blow hot and cold, break down, break loose, break off, break the ice, break with, bring about, bring to light, bring up, call for, call on, call to mind, 3 catch at, change colour, in cold blood, come about, come by, come of, come off, come short of, come up with, come to oneself, 4 give one credit for, cut off, a dead letter, dead to, draw upon, show the white feather, feather one's nest, make (cut) a figure, 5 carry fire and sword into, under fire, through fire and water, a day after the fair, be at fault, fly in the face of, gain ground upon, 6 got at, get off, get over, get rid of, give ear to, give over, give up, give

vent to, go off, for good, hold good, make good, go over, on one's guard, wash one's hands of, from hand to mouth, off hand, come to hand, have on hand, on all hands, get the upper hand, 7 hand and glove, over head and ears, heart and soul, at home, hold out, impose upon, at issue, keep back, keep down, keep from, keep on, keep to, keep up, 8 at large, lay bare, lay by, lay in, lay out, lay to heart, lay up, lay in wait for, lay waste, 9 leave in the lurch, leave no stone unturned, let alone, let loose, let off, give the lie to, the long and short, 10 look after, look blue, look for, look into, look out, look to, lord it over, lose one's head, lose heart, be at a loss, 11 make as if, make bold, make fast, make for, make head against, make it up, make light of, make nothing of, make of, make out, make over, make sure of, make up, make up for, make up to, make up with, make way, 12 under the mark, neck and crop, neck and heels, well (ill) off, part and parcel in good (ill) part, be a party to, pass for, pass over, 13 pick a quarrel, pitch upon, give play to, hold in play, play into the hands of, play on, play one false, play the fool, play the truant, 14 prevail upon, pull down, put down, put by, put off, put on, put out, put to the sword, put up with, 15 at random, rank and file, reckon upon, root and branch, the common run in the long run, run down run out, run short of, run through, run up, 16 set about set aside set at ease set at naught, set in, set off, set on, set one's heart on, set out, set by the ears, set up, 17 stand by, stand over, stand to reason, take air, take the air, take after, take heart, take in, take off, take to, take to task, 18 tell against, tell upon, through thick and thin, to and fro, turn out, turn the scale, turn to account, turn the tables, turn the head, use up, wait on

2 Explain the following so as to bring out the meaning of the idiomatic expressions they contain —1 It was throwing words away 2 He ran down the man's character 3 The lease of the house has run out 4 I can put up with his impertinence no longer 5 He was very much put out at the boy's conduct 6 This bill has thirty days to run 7 I found him in the wood, running down a stag 8 The ship's crew ran short of provisions on their voyage home 9 The play had a great run last season 10 There was a great run on the local bank lately 11 What do you take me for? 12 He took my advice in good part 13 You may take my word for that 14 Cats do not take to water 15 I have washed my hands of his affairs 16 It is agreed on all hands that he was to blame 17 The thought that he had deserted his friends weighed heavy on his mind 18 An Englishman rarely shows the white feather 19 Tale bearers but too frequently set their neighbours by the ears 20 I suppose you hope to cut me out of the scholarship

CHAPTER XX.

1 Give examples of the different ways in which derivatives are formed

2 Give the meanings of the following prefixes and suffixes, with examples, mentioning the language from which each comes —*Prefixes* a, ab, amphi, ante, anti, bis, con, contra, dis, ex, in, inter, intro, hetero, vice, hemi, poly, hydro, pro, fore, syn, per, gain, be, un, mono, with, epi, retro. *Suffixes* ery, able, ous, ize, dom, ling, ster, ment, ity, ledge, tive, esque, ock, el, ette, icle, aceous, y, ferous, red, hood, ee, ary, ive, ship, art, cule

3 Give the Greek and Latin prefixes corresponding to each of the following Saxon ones —a for, mis, un, with, in.

CHAPTER XXI

1 Name the elements of the English language in historical order, with examples of words from each

2 At what periods was the classical element introduced? Give examples of words introduced at each period

3 Give two English words derived or taken from each of the following languages — Hebrew, Arabic, Persian, Malay, Chinese, Turkish, American, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, French, Dutch, German

4 Give six words derived from names of persons, and six derived from names of places

CHAPTER XXII

1 Give Saxon equivalents for — exclude, postpone, accede, expunge, insert, decide, dismiss, aver, reject, discover, destroy, compensate, salutation, progenitor, progeny, instructor, communion, insurrection, frontier, pollution, infidel, vigilant, perdition, supplication, increased, epistle, celestial, terrestrial, potentate, eternal, branch, gentle, terrible, pursue, power, asylum, concede, obscure, ostentatious, advocate, development, torpor, apprehension, multitude

2 Substitute words of Saxon for those of classical origin wherever possible in — For, whilst some, with a foolish affectation of plebeian sympathies, overwhelm us with the insipid common places about birth and ancient descent, as honours containing nothing meritorious, and rush eagerly into an ostentatious exhibition of all the circumstances which favour the notion of a humble station and humble connections, others, with equal forgetfulness of true dignity, plead with the intemperance and partiality of a legal advocate for the pretensions of Shakespeare to the hereditary rank of gentleman

CHAPTER XXIII

1 Define poem, rhyme, blank verse, distich, triplet, quatrain, rhythm, foot

2 Name the different kinds of feet, with examples

3 Define sonnet, epitaph, elegy, epigram, satire, ode

4 Describe and give examples, with author's names, of pastoral, lyric, descriptive, elegiac, didactic, dramatic, and epic poetry

5 Mention, with examples, the chief kinds of poetical license

6 What is meant by scansion? Scan the following —

(a) "The Turkman lay beside the river,
The wind played loose through bow and quiver,
The charger on the bank fed free,
The shield hung glittering from the tree
Wild burst the burning element
O'er man and coursor, flood and tent!
And through the blaze the Greeks outsprang,
Like tigers,—bloody, foot and fang!
With dagger stab and falchion sweep,
Delving the stunned and staggering heap,
Till lay the slave by chief and Khan
And all was gone that once was man!"

- (b) " See the ruddy morning smiling,
Here the grove to bliss beguiling,
Zephyrs through the woodland playing,
Streams along the valleys straying "
- (c) " Freeze, freeze, thou bitter sky,
Thou dost not bite so nigh
As benefits forgot,
Though thou the waters warp,
Thy sting is not so sharp
As friends rememb'ring not "
- (d) " When the flowers of friendship or love have decayed
In the heart that has trusted and once been betrayed,
No sunshine of kindness their bloom can restore,
For the verdure of feeling will quicken no more "—
- (e) " If solid happiness we prize,
Within our breast the jewel lies,
And they are fools who roam
The world has nothing to bestow,
From our own selves our joys must flow,
And that dear hut—our home "
- (f) " The breezy call of incense breathing morn,
The swallow twittering from the straw-built shed,
The cock's shrill claxon, or the echoing horn,
No more shall rouse them from their lowly bed "
- (g) " Mountain-winds! Oh! whither do ye call me,
Vainly, vainly, would my steps pursue
Chains of care to lower earth enthrall me,—
Wherefore thus my weary spirit woo "
- (h) " By torch and trumpet fast arrayed,
Each horseman drew his battle blade,
And furious every charger neighed
To join the dreadful revelry "
- (i) " Those evening bells! those evening bells!
How many a tale their music tells
Of youth and home, and that sweet time
When last I heard their soothing chime "
- (j) " I am monarch of all I survey,
My right there is none to dispute,
From the centre all round to the sea
I am lord of the fowl and the brute "

CHAPTER XXIV

1 Substitute single words for the periphrases in the following —1 He was deprived at an early age of his natural protectors 2 From the very dawn of life he showed remarkable intelligence 3 He was noted for his inordinate love of power 4 Yonder comes the powerful king of day 5 The letter betrays utter want of feeling for the miseries of others 6 The ships of the desert stood ready laden 7 He was cut off in the flower of his days 8 He was noted for his gallantry to the fair sex 9 He has to earn his bread by the sweat of his brow 10 He lost his better half during the plague

2 Re write the following, using periphrases for the italicised words, and making such other changes as may be necessary—1 Permit me, Sir, to

ask you one question 2 It is difficult to *distinguish* between things apparently similar 3 The police officers *were informed* of the robbery within half an hour after it had *happened* 4 Human cares are not *alleviated* by wealth 5 My brother requested me to *accompany* him as far as the next village 6 The bishop was *venerated* by all classes 7 He stood for a long time with his eyes *fixed* on the ground, then slowly raising his head, he thus *addressed* the multitude 8 Having thus *removed* this obstacle, he soon *attained* the summit of his ambition 9 The anniversary of the institution *was celebrated* with great rejoicings 10 Nothing could *affect* his opinion

CHAPTER XXV.

Paraphrase the following passages carefully —

- (1) In full blown dignity, see Wolsey stand,
Law in his voice, and fortune in his hand,
To him the church, the realm, their powers consign,
Through him the rays of regal bounty shine,
Turned by his nod the stream of honour flows,
His smile alone security bestows
Still to new heights his restless wishes tower,
Claim leads to claim, and power advances power,
Till conquest unresisted ceased to please,
And rights submitted left him none to seize
At length his sovereign frowns—the train of state
Mark the keen glance, and watch the sign to hate
Where'er he turns he meets a stranger's eye,
His supplicants scorn him, and his followers fly,
Now drops at once the pride of awful state,
The golden canopy, the glittering plate,
The regal palace, the luxurious board,
The liveried armv, and the menial lord
With age, with cares, with maladies oppressed,
He seeks the refuge of monastic rest
Grief aids disease, remembered folly stings,
And his last sighs reproach the faith of kings
- (2) New sorrow rises as the day returns,
A sister sickens or a daughter mourns
Now kindred merit fills the sable bier,
Now lacerated friendship claims a tear,
Year chases year, decay pursues decay,
Still drops some joy from withering life away,
New forms arise, and different views engage
Superfluous lags the veteran on the stage
Till pitying Nature signs the last release,
And bids afflicted worth retire to peace
- (3) Blest he, though undistinguished from the crowd
By wealth or dignity, who dwells secure
Where man, by nature fierce, has laid aside
His fierceness, having learnt, though slow to learn,
The manners and the arts of civil life
- (4) Forth goes the woodman, leaving unconcerned
The cheerful haunts of man, to wield the axe

- Whether thy steps ' what think for thee most fitted,
 What is aptly done ' and what good deed omitted '
- And when thou'rt summoned the tide, wipe out the bad
 With gracious grief, and in the good be glad '
- (14) Lowliness is young ambition's ladder,
 Where to the climber-upward turns his face
 But when he once attains the utmost round
 He then unto the ladder turns his back
 Looks in the clouds, scorning the base degrees
 By which he did ascend
- (15) Man is his own stru, and the soul that can
 Render an honest and a perfect man
 Commands all light, all influence, all fate
 Nothing to him falls early, or too late
 Our acts our angels are, or good or ill
 Our fatal shadows that walk by us still
- (16) Oh when a mother meets on high
 The babe she lost in infancy,
 Hath she not then, for pruns and fears
 The day of woe, the watchful night,
 For all her sorrow, all her tears
 An over payment of delight ?
- (17) Sweet are the uses of adversity,
 Which, like the toad, ugly and venomous
 Wears yet a precious jewel in his head,
 And thus our life, exempt from public haunt,
 Finds tongues in trees, books in the running brooks,
 Sermons in stones, and good in everything
- (18) To gild refined gold, to paint the lily,
 To throw a perfume on the violet,
 To smooth the ice, or add another hue
 Unto the rainbow, or with taper light
 To seek the beauteous eye of heaven to garnish,
 Is wasteful and ridiculous excess
- (19) To every man upon this earth
 Death cometh soon or late
 And how can man die better
 Than facing fearful odds,
 For the ashes of his fathers
 And the temples of his gods ?
- (20) We, ignorant of ourselves,
 Beg often our own harms, which the wise God
 Denies us for our good, so find we profit
 By losing of our prayers
 There's a divinity that shapes our ends,
 Rough hew them how we will
- (21) Great actions are not always true sons
 Of great and mighty resolutions,
 Nor do th' boldest attempts bring forth
 Events still equal to their worth,
 But sometimes fail, and, in their stead,
 Fortune and cowardice succeed
- (22) Refrain to-night,
 And that shall lend a hand of easiness
 To the next abstinence, the next more easy,
 For use almost can change the stamp of nature,

CHAPTER XXVI.

SUBJECT FOR LETTERS.

- 1 Requesting the loan of a book
- 2 Returning a book
- 3 Apologising for delay in returning a book
- 4 Requesting return of book lent
- 5 Requesting a loan of money
- 6 Requesting payment of a loan
- 7 Reminding of letter requesting repayment
- 8 Reminding of a promise of a payment
- 9 Demanding repayment
- 10 Congratulation on passing an examination
- 11 Congratulation on obtaining appointment
- 12 Congratulation on a Birthday
- 13 Congratulation on New Year's Day
- 14 Congratulation on Marriage
- 15 To a friend, enquiring about his illness
- 16 To a friend, enquiring about another friend's illness
- 17 Announcing a friend's illness
- 18 Announcing death of writer's relative
- 19 Announcing death of a mutual friend
- 20 Announcing death of addressee's relative
- 21 Condoling on father's death
- 22 Condoling on relative's death
- 23 Invitation to dinner
- 24 Invitation to a picnic
- 25 Invitation to spend holidays
- 26 Invitation to join in a holiday trip
- 27 Invitation to join in a walk
- 28 Recalling acceptance of invitation
- 29 Invitation to Anniversary celebration of Society
- 30 Sending present of mangoes
- 31 Application for an Assistant-Mastership
- 32 Application for a private tutorship
- 33 Application for a clerk in merchant's office, in answer to an advertisement
- 34 Application to be taken on as an apprentice in a Printing Office
- 35 Asking for extension of leave
- 36 From a parent asking for leave for son
- 37 Asking price of books (or goods)
- 38 Ordering books for Cash
- 39 Ordering books by V P Post
- 40 Ordering articles on account
- 41 To a landlord—inquiring about house to let
- 42 To a landlord—requesting repairs to house
- 43 To a landlord—giving notice of leaving house
- 44 To tenant—calling for rent
- 45 Forwarding money to a tradesman
- 46 To a tradesman—complaining of error in account
- 47 To tradesman—complaining of delay in executing order.
- 48 From a tradesman—forwarding bill, and requesting payment
- 49 To a teacher for a certificate
- 50 To father—asking permission to spend holidays with a friend

CHAPTER XXVII.

SUBJECT FOR ESSAYS.

The good and evil results which have attended the invention of
gunpowder
Good and bad effects of reading novels
Comparison of the pleasures of a walking tour and a tour under
taking driving
Chief features of a railway journey as compared with a coach
ride between the same two places
A journey by boat on an Indian river
The Postal System
The Durga Puja festival
Obedience to parents
"Where there is a will, there is a way"
The influence of good example
The games of Indian school boys
Kindness to animals
Rice its planting, growth, and preparation as a food
Travelling its effect in enlarging the mind
Holidays and how to spend them
The choice of a profession
Procrastination
Obedience to parents
Prejudice
Self denial
"A stitch in time saves nine"
'Strike the iron while it is hot'
Cleanliness
'Slow and steady wins the race'
'Knowledge is power'



ADDENDA.

PUNCTUATION

1. Punctuation is the art of dividing written language, by points or stops, and other marks for the purpose of showing more clearly the sense and the relation of the words, and noting the different pauses to be made in reading

2. The Stops used in punctuation are —

- | | | | |
|-----|-------------------------|-------|-------|
| (1) | The Comma | . . . | [,] |
| (2) | The Semicolon | . : | [;] |
| (3) | The Colon | . . . | [:] |
| (4) | The Period or Full Stop | . | [.] |

The above are all the stops, properly so called. But besides the stops, there are other signs employed in writing. The chief of these are —

- | | | | |
|-----|------------------------------------|-----------|---------|
| (1) | The Dash | | [—] |
| (2) | The Note of Interrogation | . : | [?] |
| (3) | The Note of Exclamation | . . . | [!] |
| (4) | Parenthesis | . . . | [()] |
| (5) | Inverted Commas or Quotation Marks | | [" "] |

3 The Comma represents the shortest pause made in reading. Its uses are —

(1) *To separate short independent co-ordinate clauses*

Every one desires to live long, but no one wishes to be old
I came, I saw, I conquered

When the co-ordinate clauses are contracted, and have the same subject or predicate, the comma is omitted, if the clauses are short, and closely connected

Religion purifies and ennobles the soul
Neither you nor I have seen it

(2) *To separate a subordinate clause from the rest of the sentence, or from another subordinate clause co-ordinate with it*

That he should have accomplished so remarkable a feat in so short a time, is simply incredible

A diffident man likes the idea of doing something remarkable, which will create belief in him without any immediate display of brilliancy.

While he is writing his book, he rose every morning before six

If he had refused, or if he had even hesitated, he would have been shot,

But if the clause is *very short*, no comma is used

I tell you that it is useless to ask me
The boy who stole the book has been caught
He was not at home when I called

A *restrictive* adjective clause coming immediately after the word to which it is attached is never separated from it, but takes a comma after it if it is long, or has another clause attached to it

Happy is the man *that findeth wisdom*, and the man *that getteth understanding*
He *that does not speak truth to me*, does not believe me when I speak truth.
The man *who told me that you wanted to see me*, was your own brother

(3) *To separate a parenthetical connective from the rest of the sentence*

His master, *however*, has dismissed him

(4) *To separate an appositional phrase from the word to which it is attached*

Paul, *the Apostle of the Gentiles*, was eminent for his zeal and knowledge

But when the two together form a phrase equivalent to a compound name, no comma separates them

Paul the Apostle was born at Tarsus
The Emperor Napoleon was born in Corsica.

(5) *To separate a phrase at the beginning or middle of a sentence, from the rest of the sentence*

His talents, *formed for great enterprises*, could not fail to render him conspicuous

Beaten at one point, they made for another
I remember, *with gratitude*, his goodness to me
With gratitude, I remember his goodness to me

But when a prepositional or participial phrase immediately follows the word to which it is attached it is not separated from it by a comma, though a *participial* phrase, takes a comma after it, if it does not come last in the sentence.

A man *of prudence* would have acted differently,
A man *renowned for repartee*, will rarely spare his friend

So also, a prepositional phrase which immediately follows the word it modifies, or has only a simple adverb between it and the verb, is not separated from it

He came running *at full speed*
He went home *with a hundred pounds*

(6) *To separate co-ordinate words and phrases, only the last of which are connected by a conjunction*

Honour, affluence and pleasure seduce the heart
Women are soft, mild, pitiful and flexible
He wields accurately, forcibly, and readily

But when the co-ordinate words or phrases are *in pairs*, only the pairs are separated

He was terrified and proud, haughty and ambitious

When there are a number of co-ordinate subjects without a connective, a comma follows the last as well

Honour, ambition, interest, all concurred.

(7) *To separate a vocative, or a phrase containing a nominative absolute, from the rest of the sentence*

My dear friends, make yourselves at home
What can I do for you, my dear boy -
'This my dear friends is our only chance of escape
The wind being favourable, we set sail

(8) *To separate a phrase containing a gerundial infinitive or a participle, used absolutely, from the rest of the sentence*

To speak the truth I know little about it
Considering the circumstances he is not to blame
Thus is, strictly speaking, a violation of the rule

(9) *To separate connective and affirmative adverbs from the rest of the sentence*

Again, it can be shown that the rents have steadily risen
Finally, let me sum up the arguments
He is indeed, a great help to us
You think, then, that you will be successful

(10) *To indicate the omission of a verb*

Stending makes a full man, concretion, a ready man, and writing, an exact man

To err is human, to forgive, divine.

(11) *To separate repeated expressions*

Home, home, sweet home.

(12) *After each of two prepositions at the end of two phrases, and governing the same noun or pronoun*

He was much attached to, and concerned for, his brother

(13) *After each of two adjectives qualifying the same noun*

I shall make some more observations, first, on the external, and next, on the internal, condition of man

(11) *To separate quoted words from the words which introduce them, when quotation marks are not used*

Revenge, says Bacon, is a kind of wild justice
The fool hath said in his heart, there is no God.

Also when quotation marks are used, if the introducing words do not come first, or if the quotation is a very short one

"This," said our guide, "is the tomb of Adam"
He said, "go at once"

(15) *To separate a parenthetical clause from the rest of the sentence,*

He is, *I think*, unaware of this fact
You are not going to desert me, *I hope*
The alternative, *I remember*, is to resign your appointment

4 The Semicolon indicates a longer pause than the comma, and is used —

(1) *To separate independent co-ordinate clauses which are not closely connected with each other in meaning*

The heavens declare the glory of God, and the firmament sheweth his handiwork

Stones grow, vegetables grow and live, animals grow, live, and feel

They bow the knee, and spit upon her, they cry 'Hail,' and smite her on the cheek, they put a sceptre in her hand, but it is a fragile reed, they crown her, but it is with thorns, they cover with purple the wounds which their own hands have inflicted on her, and inscribe magnificent titles over the cross on which they have fixed her to perish in ignominy and pain.

(2) *To separate independent co ordinate clauses, connected by "otherwise," "else," "or else," "for," "therefore"*

I came walking, otherwise I should have been here much earlier

He resigned his appointment, or else he would have been dismissed

Fear God and obey his commandments, for this is the whole duty of man

The two sides of the triangle are equal, therefore the angles at the base are equal

But if the second clause is a long one, a period may be used.

He who lifts himself up to the observation and notice of the world is of all men, the least likely to avoid censure For, he draws upon himself thousand eyes that will narrowly inspect him in every part

(3) *To separate a series of subordinate clauses bearing the same relation to another clause (the last being separated from the rest of the sentence by a colon)*

If he violates the most solemn engagements, if he oppresses, extorts,

jobs, if he imprisons, confiscates, banishes at his sole will and pleasure : his defence is that the laws of the country must answer for it

(4) *Before "as" introducing examples*

A noun is the name of anything, as, John, London, city, lion

(5) The Colon is used when a longer pause than that indicated by a semicolon is necessary, but not so long a pause as would amount to a complete break between the parts to be separated

Nothing else could have united her people nothing else could have endangered or interrupted her commerce

Whether the duration of a pause is such as to require a colon or only a semicolon is a point which the writer must decide for himself, but a colon is generally used —

(1) *Between two independent clauses connected in meaning, but not joined by a conjunction*

To reason with him was vain he was infatuated
He is dead we shall never see him more.

(2) *After the last of a series of subordinate clauses bearing the same relation to another clause, as in the example given for the third use of the semicolon*

(3) *Before a direct quotation which is not very short, when quotation marks are used, and the introducing words come first*

John said to James "I am daily expecting a letter from home"

It is usual to put a dash between the comma between the colon and the quotation

The judge addressing the jury said — "While it is my duty to instruct you in the law of the case, it is yours, and yours only, to find the prisoner guilty or not guilty upon the facts"

Very often, however, the comma is used in such cases instead of the colon, or the colon and the dash :

(4) *To introduce examples of a rule, when "as" is not used*

A verb agrees with its nominative in number and person "I am only a boy, but you are a man"

(5) *Before an enumeration of several particulars. (usually with a dash after it)*

The following are the uses of the cocoanut tree — The leaves are used for thatching houses; &c

The following boys are absent — John, Robert, William, and James.

5 The Period or Full Stop is used at the end of a complete sentence

It is also used (as a sign, not as a stop), after abbreviations, as, A D. (Anno Domini), M A. (Master of Arts), Bart.

(Baronet), *Hon.* (Honourable) *e.g.*, (*exempli gratia*, "for example")

6 The Dash is used

(1) *To mark a sudden break in a sentence*

Only in a custom of such long standing, methinks, if their Holiness the Bishops had, in decency, been first sounded—but I am treading o it of my depths

(2) *After an enumeration of several particulars to show that what follows is common to them all*

The cotton mills of Lancashire, the wool manufactories of Leeds, the foundries of Sheffield—all these contribute to the wealth of England

(3) *Often with a colon, to introduce a quotation, as in the second example given for the use of the colon*

(4) *Often with a colon before an enumeration of several particulars, as in the examples given for the fifth use of the colon*

(5) *Sometimes, to separate a parenthetical clause from the rest of the sentence*

He will not—of this I am assured—give us the least assistance.

(6) *To introduce nouns, pronouns, noun phrases, noun clauses, or complete sentences in apposition any of which may have clauses attached to them*

He has dismissed all his servants—butler, cook, gardener, house keeper and every one else.

You have forgotten the most important thing of all—money

Let me ask you one thing—have you ever tried it, yourself?

This fact—that he was absent from home when you sent for him—has been fully proved

The body of the people—the masses as we call them—are still very superstitious.

7 The Note of Interrogation is used after direct questions.

He asked me, "Have you been long at College?"

Indirect questions do not take a note of interrogation after them

He asked me when I intended to return, not

He asked me when I intended to return?

When a series of questions are joined together in a compound sentence, they are separated by commas or semicolons, and the note of Interrogation is put after the last only

What shall I do, and where shall I go?

8. The Note of Exclamation is used after *interjections* and *invocations*, after phrases or sentences *uttered with emotion*, and after *rhetorical questions* that do not require an answer, and hence is oftener employed in poetry than in prose

Har! 'tis the twanging horn o'er yonder bridge
Italia! oh *Italia!* thou who hast
 The fat ill gift of beauty
 Oh, how shall I appear before my Maker!

When the notes of interrogation and exclamation stand at the end of a complete sentence, which is most frequently the case with the note of interrogation, they are equal to the period, when they terminate a clause of a sentence only, their value is that of the point which would otherwise have been placed there

9. Parentheses are used to enclose a clause inserted in the body of a sentence, which contains some necessary information or useful remark, but which may be omitted without injuring the grammatical construction of the sentence, as,

"Know then this truth (*enough for man to know*),
 Virtue alone is happiness below"

10 Inverted Commas or Quotation marks are used to mark a direct quotation

Solomon said in accents wild
 "Spare the rod, and spoil the child"

When the introducing words divide a quotation into two or more parts, and inverted commas are used, they must be used with each part as if it formed a complete quotation

"Our army swore terribly in Flanders," cried my uncle Toby,
 "but nothing to this"

11 Other Signs The following signs are also used

- | | | |
|--------------------|---|---------|
| (1) Brackets | . | ([]) |
| (2) The Apostrophe | . | (') |
| (3) The Hyphen | . | (-) |
| (4) The Diæresis | . | (¨) |
| (5) The Cæter | . | (^) |

12 Brackets are used to separate interpolated words from the passage or sentence in which they occur

John is taller than James [is tall]

13 The Apostrophe is used to mark the omission of a letter or letters from a word, as, *een*, (*even*), *o'er* (*over*) *tho'* (*though*), *Hon.'ble* (*Honourable*),

14. The Hyphen is used between the members of compound words, which have not completely coalesced, as, *head porter, sea-serpent, steam engine, high church, good-for-nothing*

But when the parts have become completely welded into one no hyphen is used, as, *headman, seashore, steamboat, highfrown, goodlooking*

The hyphen is also used when for any reason it is necessary to divide a word, as, *dis armed, un natural*

Between the *in-crescent* and *de crescent* moon (Tennyson).

15 The Diæresis is placed over the second of two vowels, to show that they are to be sounded separately, as, *cooperation, aereal, aerated*

16 The Caret is used to indicate that a word which had been omitted, is inserted above it, as

John surnamed Sans-Terre Lackland

^

^^{or}

INDEX.

	Sec		Sec
<i>A</i> and <i>An</i> . . .	94	factive, retained	
Alphabet, defined	7	and cognate object	551
„ imperfections of	11	Analysis Direct object	552
„ conditions of perfect	13	„ Indirect object	553
— <i>ant</i> &— <i>ent</i>	33	„ Complement	554
Abstract nouns . . .	51	„ Adverbial adjunct,	
„ nouns, Uses of and re-		extension of the	
marks on	57 61	predicate	555
<i>A</i> used with plurals	97	„ Classification of sen-	
Adjective, Position of, —	368, 373	tences	556
Auxiliary Verbs . . .	101	„ A simple sentence	557
Adverb defined	120	„ A complex sentence	558
„ classified . . .	121	„ Phrases, clauses, and	
„ co-ordinating	122	sentences	559
„ Possessive forms used as	123	„ Kinds of phrases and	
„ How formed . . .	126	clauses	560
„ Substitutes for	127	„ the noun phrase	561
„ Position of . . .	376, 381	„ the adjectival phrase	562
Accent . . .	142	„ the adverbial phrase	563
„ Effect of	143	„ A noun clause	564
Augmentatives defined	153	„ Connectives of noun	
Appropriate collective nouns	158	clauses	565
Auxiliaries . . .	237	„ An adjectival clause	566
„ Uses of <i>Be</i>	237	„ Connectives of adjecti-	
„ „ <i>Do</i> . . .	238	val clauses	567
„ „ <i>Have</i> . . .	239	„ An adverbial clause	568
„ „ <i>May</i> . . .	240	„ Adverbial clauses	
„ „ <i>Might</i>	241	classified	569
„ „ <i>Must</i>	242	„ Connectives of adverb-	
„ „ <i>Ought</i> . . .	243	bial clauses	570
„ „ <i>Should</i>	244	„ Co ordinate clauses	571
„ „ <i>Would</i>	245	„ Compound Senten-	
Adverbial subject or <i>Nomina-</i>		ces	572
<i>tive Absolute</i> , defined	291	„ Contracted sentences	573
„ the participle omitted	292	„ Elliptical sentences	574
Apposition explained	293	„ Collateral sentences	575
„ with an implied noun	294	„ Forms of analysis	576
„ with an <i>indirect object</i>	295	„ The first step in	
Appositional verbs or verbs		analysis	577
of identity defined	296	„ How to analyse a	
„ Supplements of the		simple sentence	578
verb	297	„ How to analyse a	
Analysis defined	546	complex sentence	579
„ sentence, predicate,		„ of a compound sen-	
object	547	tence	580
„ subject	548	„ object and compli-	
„ attributive adjuncts		ment	581
enlargement of		„ parenthetical clauses	582
subject, object or		„ direct quotations	583
complement	549	„ noun clause standing	
„ predicate	550	as subject	584
„ direct and indirect		„ clauses with co-ordi-	
object, dative,		nating relatives	585

	Sec		Sec
Analysis of relative adverbs	586	Active miscellaneous examples	
„ interrogative, imperative, optative and exclamatory sentences	587	of	649
„ adjunct to noun or pronoun	588	Appropriate prepositions following words	852
„ adverbs and adverbial phrases	589	Ambiguity and how to avoid it	933
„ absolute phrase	590	„ of personal and demonstrative pronouns	933
„ auxiliary verbs	591	„ of relative pronouns	934
„ complex verbs	592	„ caused by the use of “not”	935
„ two subordinate conjunctions or a relative adverb and a subordinate conjunction	593	„ caused by the use of “any”	936
„ a relative pronoun and its antecedent	594	„ caused by the words “but, that,” “only”	937
„ a verb or phrase in one clause	595	„ caused by the use of “as well as”	938
„ the object or complement of a verb	597	„ arising from the placing of adverbs or advl phrase	939
„ conjunctions, interjections, vocatives, and expletive “why” and well	598	„ arising from the Participles with nothing to show what nouns they qualify	940
„ Rules for	599	„ arising from the use of the infinitive with “to”	941
„ Examples of detailed	600	„ arising from the restrictive and coordinating uses of the relatives	942
„ Tabular analysis of the same sentences	601	„ examples of	943
„ Specimens of 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607		“But” misused for <i>and</i>	188
Active and passive forms defined	634	<i>Be</i> in the passive voice	237
„ Rules for changing	635	<i>Be</i> as prefix	1042
„ verb in the imperative mood	636	Consonants, classification of	10
„ an infinitive gerund, etc	637	Capital letters	15
„ when a verb consists of an auxiliary	638	<i>Cede</i> and <i>Ceed</i>	30
„ and passive forms	634, 647	Compound and single words	39
„ “shall” Rules and “will”	639	Collective nouns	49
„ complex verbs	640	Common nouns	48
„ transitive verbs with factitive complements	642	Common nouns used like proper nouns	53
„ to change the passive into the active	644	Collective nouns may also be common nouns	54
„ the present indefinite	6452	Cautions to be observed in the use of relative pronouns	77
„ where the passive or the active forms is preferable	646	Co-ordinating adjectives	98
		Copula or apposition verbs	103
		Complete and incomplete verbs	109

	Sec		Sec
Construtive verbs	115	Comparison of adjectives with	
Conjunction defined	134	two superlative	
" classified	135	forms	208
" where required	137	" adjectives with	
Compound words, three classes	145	two comparative	
" nouns	146	and superlative	
" adjectives	147	forms	209
" verbs	148	" adjectives with-	
" adverbs	149	out a positive	
" order of the ele-		form	210
ments in	150	" adjectives with-	
Case defined	157	out a compara-	
" declension	166	tive form	211
" in oldest English	167	Conjugation defined	219
" the preposition of as the		" old and new con-	
possessive case ending	188	jugation	220
" use of the possessive		" forms	221
case inflection	189	" past tense and	
" possessive of plural		perfect partici-	
nouns in s, how form-		ples	222
ed	190	Complimentary object-infini-	
" singular nouns ending		tive and subject-	
in es	191	infinitive	286
" the possessive of com-		Corresponding or correlative	
pound nouns and phra-		connectives	313
ses equivalent to		" conjunctions	
compound nouns	192	and adverbs	314
" the noun which the pos-		" as—as, so—as	316
sessive qualifies when		Concord of collective nouns	
omitted	193	and verbs	330
" of of, when used	194	" of noun and pronoun	340
" vocative	195	" when qualified by a	
" objective, genitive	196	distributive adje-	
" dative	197	tive	341
Comparison degrees of	199	" of nouns of different	
three degrees of	200	genders	342
" adjectives that		" of pronouns standing	
cannot be com-		for collective nouns	343
pared	201	" of pronouns in an-	
" comparatives and		swers	344
superlatives how		" of antecedent and	
formed	202	relative	345
" of adverbs	203	" of numeral and de-	
" superlative of		monstrative adjectives	346
omnience	204	" of the distributive	
" Latin compar-		" each," " either,"	
atives	205	" neither "	347
" double compara-		" of " few," " many,"	
tives and super-		" several "	348
latives	206	" of adjectives of quality	349
" adjectives and ad-		" of article and noun	350
verbs irregularly		" distributive and predi-	
compared	207	cate qualification	351

	Sec.		Sec
Concord non attributive adjectives	352	Doubling letters	26
„ of nouns or pronouns in apposition	353	Derivative and primitive words	98
„ participle and substantive	354	Difference between primitive and simple words	40
Conversion of sentences	648	Difference between derivative and compound words	41
„ of words, phrases and clauses	685	Distinguishing adjectives	88
„ of phrases into clauses	686	Distributive and multiplicatives	93
„ of simple sentences complex	687	Do in 'How do you do?'	118
„ of complex sentences into simple	688	Diminutives	151
„ of simple sentence into compound	689	Direct and indirect speech	610
„ of compound sentences into simple	690	„ three ways of reporting	611
„ of complex sentences into compound	691	„ general duties	612, 617
„ of compound sentence into complex	692	„ special rules	618, 631
„ of words into phrases and clauses	693	„ changing the indirect into the direct	632
„ of phrases into clauses	694	„ unnecessary change	633
„ of principal and subordinate clauses	695	Degrees of comparison	648
„ of affirmative into negative	696	„ examples and facts	649
„ of negative into affirmative	697	„ three parts in a comparison	650
„ of exclamatory into assertive	698	„ examples	651, 654
„ of assertive into exclamatory	699	„ change of comparative into positive and superlative	655
„ of interrogative into assertive	700	„ examples	656, 663
„ of assertive into interrogative	701	„ when the positive can be changed into superlative	664
„ of exclamatory into interrogative	702	„ examples	665, 670
„ of imperative into assertive	703	„ remarks on the examples	671
„ of optative into assertive	704	„ of comparison, Groups of	671
„ of interrogative into imperative	705	„ examples	672, 682
Diphthongs defined	8	„ additional examples	683
Digraphs defined	8	Derivation defined	1034
		„ primitive, derivative or compound	1035
		„ words how formed	1036
		„ prefixes and suffixes	1037
		„ modification of nouns	1038
		English prefixes	1039
		„ Latin prefixes	1040
		„ Greek	1041
		„ notes on some prefixes	1042
		„ English suffixes	1043
		„ Latin and Greek suffixes	1044
		„ notes on some suffixes	1045
		„ hybrids	1046
		„ roots and stems	1047

	Sec	Expressions liable to be con-	Sec.
English Grammar defined	1	founded, born, borne	735
Etymology defined	3	bridal, bridle	736
Etre,—ere	29	by and by, by the	
—er,—re	32	by	737
Er or in	35	canvas, canvass	738
Etymology	38	casual, causal	739
Except and unless	140	cattle, chattel	740
Emphasis	144	cheque, check	741
Expletive "et" and "et al"	300	choir, quire	742
Ellipsis	353	chord, cord	743
" of the subject	353	collar, cholera	744
" of the relative pronoun	354	collision, collusion	745
" of the antecedent	355	compare with, com-	
" antecedent not express-		pare to	746
ed out implied	356	complement com-	
" of the verb to be	357	pliment	747
" of the verb said or		condemn, condemn.	748
spo'te	358	confident, confidant	749
" in exclamatory sen-		conscious, conscien-	
tences	359	tious	750
" of the infinitive	360	contemptuous, con-	
" of the auxiliary verb	391	temptiole	751
" when a noun takes two		corpse, corps	752
or more verbs	392	council, counsel	753
" in marking compar-		dearth, dearthness	754
isons	393	deference, differ-	
" of its preposition	394	ence	755
" a preposition omitted	395	depository, deposi-	
" certain adjectives	396	tary	756
" of the conjunction	397	deprecate depreci-	
" when attached to two		ate	757
or more clauses	398	desert, dessert	758
" if frequently omitted	399	destiny, destination.	759
" that often omitted	400	disappointed of, dis-	
" yet omitted after a con-		appointed in	760
cessional clause	401	disease, decease	761
" "either" and "neither"		divers, diverse	762
omitted in poetry	402	draft draught	763
Expressions liable to be con-		dram, drachm	764
founded, adapt, adopt	724	earnestly, in ear-	
effect, affect	725	nest	765
" agree to agree with	726	efface, deface	766
" alternate, alterna-		eligible, legible	767
tive	727	emerge, immerge	768
" antique, antic	729	emigrant, immi-	
" apposite, opposite	729	grant	769
" attend to, attend on		eminent, imminent	770
(upon)	730	eruption, irruption	771
" augur, auger	731	fatal, fateful	772
" barbarism, barbarity	732	flour, flower	773
" beneficial, bene-		funeral, funereal	774
ficient	733	gentle, genteel	775
birth berth	734	ghostly, ghastly	776

Expressions liable to be con	Sec	Expressions liable to be con-	Sec
founded, glaire, glau	777	founded well, well off	820
„ goal, gaol	778	„ poor as he was, as	
„ gracious, graceful	779	„ he was poor	821
„ hard, hardly	780	„ take heart, take to	
„ hoarde, horde	781	„ heart	822
„ human, humane	782	„ eat a fruit, eat of a	
„ imperious, imperial	783	„ fruit	823
„ indict, indite	784	„ go to school, go to	
„ ingenious, ingenuous	785	„ the school	824
„ key, quay	786	„ I dare say, I dare	
„ late, lately	787	„ to say	825
„ loath, loathe	788	„ on purpose, for the	
„ look over, overlook	789	„ purpose	826
„ luxuriant, luxuri-		Errors corrected with reasons—	
„ ous	790	„ Natives generally have	
„ metal, mettle	791	„ black hairs	854
„ minor, minei	792	„ the famine does not	
„ naughty, knotty	793	„ effect whole Bengal	855
„ notable, notorious	794	„ all males are of the	
„ observation, ob-		„ masculine gender	856
„ seivance	795	„ not only I was sick, but	
„ official, officious	796	„ also I was very much	
„ other than, other-		„ fatigued	857
„ wise than	797	„ Charles had established	
„ popular, populous	798	„ himself so firmly in	
„ practice, practise	799	„ the confidence of his	
„ president, prece-		„ people as encouraged	
„ dent	800	„ him to make bold en-	
„ principal, princi-		„ croachments on the	
„ ple	801	„ ancient constitution	858
„ propose, purpose	802	„ he supported the one	
„ relic, relict	803	„ with the same zeal that	
„ remind, remember	804	„ he attacked the other	859
„ reverend, reve-		„ he would not be per-	
„ rent	805	„ suaded but what I	
„ run at, run		„ was greatly at fault	860
„ against	806	„ I have no doubt but that	
„ sailor, sailer	807	„ he will pass	861
„ sow, saw	808	„ he was grieved at me re-	
„ spirituous, spiritu-		„ signing my appoint-	
„ al	809	„ ment	862
„ stationery, sta-		„ owing to losses, mis-	
„ tionary	810	„ fortunes, and others	863
„ symbol, cymbal	811	„ the army were defeated	
„ tasteless, distasteful	812	„ and fled	864
„ tenor, tenure	813	„ art thou the boy that	
„ think little, little		„ hast committed this	
„ think	814	„ offence	865
„ ton, tun	815	„ the mathematics are ac-	
„ union, unison	816	„ quired with difficulty	866
„ variance, variation	817	„ physics are one of the	
„ verbal, verbose	818	„ subjects for the	
„ woody wooden	819	„ examination	867

	Sec		Sec
Errors corrected with reasons—		Errors corrected with reasons—	
it is a best book	868	he has not had the report	
John is as tall or taller	869	before him when he	
the diamond is more		wrote this article	892
valuable than any		when we entered we had	
other metal	870	found that the judges	
no man was as wise as		and all taken their	
Solomon	871	seats, each in their	
no other metal is heavier		usual place	893
than platinum	872	he had told that I am	
next New Year's day		going home	894
I shall be at school		the expression sounds	
three years	873	harshly	895
Hindus use to burn		since two months I went	
them dead	874	to school daily	896
when will we have the		it is a long time since I	
pleasure of seeing you		have been studying	
again	875	English	897
except you get permis-		it is often a long time	
sion, you cannot pass	876	that you have come to	
I will not go until a year		see us	898
in the least	877	I am sick from yesterday	899
I informed this to him	878	he has been either edu-	
entering the sudden		cated at home or at a	
blaze dazzled me half-		private school	900
blind	879	after he had visited Cal-	
you must give up your		cutta he has returned	
papers within one		to Benares	901
o'clock	880	he is the boy whom I	
I knew this long before	881	told you failed in the	
I will write you to-		examination	902
morrow	882	who do you think me to	
by the exercising our		be	903
faculties they are im-		let you and I the battle	
proved	883	try	904
they live at Madras	884	he is not the person	
it is two days that I went		whom I thought he was	905
away	885	you are a much greater	
you are very kind, and		loser than me	906
for which I thank you.	886	she is as tall or taller	
scarcely had the rain		than her brother	907
ceased, than the sun shone	887	everywhere nothing but	
Gray is a superior poet		want and misery are	
than Parnell	888	to be seen	908
the pleasures of the		the rapidity of his	
understanding are		movements were be-	
more preferable than		yond example	909
those of the senses	889	the committee who was	
no sooner the rain ceased		appointed last session,	
than the sun shone	890	report in favour of	
I have lent him a book		the bill	910
last week, which he		twice three are six, two	
did not return as yet	891	and three are five	911

	Sec		Sec
Errors corrected with reasons—		Essay writing narrative	1117
„ his statements were as follows	912	„ descriptive	1118
„ how to do this	913	„ expository or reflective	1119
„ A failed candidate	914	„ subjects for—Chapter XXVII	
„ I do not know to read	915	Exercises—Chapter, I to XXV	
„ she is such a great talker that few like her company	916	Forms of letters	15
„ they returned back to the same city from whence they came forth	917	Final y	20
Epithets defined	1029	Final e	21
„ ornamental	1030	Final t, s, and f	22
„ essential	1031	Finite verbs	102
„ omission of	1032	Frequentatives defined	155
Errors arising from the omission or misuse of the articles	918	Figures of speech defined and classified	944
„ „ from the wrong position of words	919	„ rules for the use of metaphors and of figures generally	915
„ „ from wrong modes of asking questions	920	„ allegory	946
„ „ from the violation of grammatical rules	921	„ alliteration	947
„ „ from the misuse of possessive case	922	„ allusion	948
„ „ from the misuse of adjectives and adverbs of comparison—much—very, too, &c	923	„ anacoluthan	949
„ „ from the use of wrong terms of verbs	924	„ anaphora	950
„ „ from disregard of the sequence of tenses	925	„ anastrophe	951
„ „ from 1 the omission, or 2 unnecessary insertion, or 3 misuse of prepositions	926	„ antanaclosis	952
„ „ from the use of passive or the active voice	927	„ anticlimax or Bathos	953
„ „ from the use of wrong expressions of time—since, ago, before, &c	928	„ antistrophe	954
„ „ the use of other, others, another not any no	929	„ anthithesis	955
„ „ from the wrong use of say, tell, speak, see find &c	930	„ antonomasia	956
Miscellaneous errors	931	„ aphoresis	957
Essay writing The essay	1113	„ apocope	958
„ outline	1114	„ apostrophe	959
„ the structure of	1115	„ asyndeton	960
„ three kinds of	1116	„ catachresis	961
		„ chiasmus	962
		„ climax	963
		„ diacope	964
		„ elision	965
		„ ellipsis	966
		„ enallage	967
		„ epianalepsis	968
		„ epianaphora	969
		„ epianorthosis	970
		„ epenthesis	971
		„ epigram	972
		„ euphemism	973
		„ exclamation or ecphe-nesis	974
		„ fable	975
		„ hendiadys	976
		„ hypallage	977
		„ hyperbaton	978
		„ hyperbole	979

See	See
Figures of speech interrogation or erotesis 981	Gender and sex, nouns forming the masculine from the feminine 163
" inversion 982	" nouns of common gender having separate forms for the masculine and feminine 164
" irony 983	" peculiar gender forms of personified nouns 165
" litotes 984	Government 355
" meiosis .. 985	" by verbs 356
" metaphor 986	" transitive verb may govern 357
" metathesis 987	" intransitive verb may govern 358
" metonymy 988	" by prepositions 359
" onomatopœia 989	" preposition used as part of a verb . 360
" oxymoron 990	Grammatical distinctions—
" parable 991	" above, over, upon, beyond .. 827
" paradox 992	" ago, before 828
" paragoge 993	" all every, each 829
" paralipsis or omission 994	" alone, only 830
" paronomasia (pun, play upon words) 995	" amid (amidst) among (amongst) 831
" pathetic fallacy .. 996	" at the top, on the top 832
" periphrasis 997	" beside, besides 833
" personification 998	" besides, except 834
" pleonasm 999	" between, among . 835
" polysyndeton 1000	" by before ... 836
" prolepsis 1001	" can, may 837
" prosopopœia (personification) 1002	" can but, cannot but 838
" prothesis (prosthesis) 1003	" older, oldest, older, oldest . 839
" pun-See paronomasia 1004	" few, a few 840
" sarcasm ... 1005	" fewer, less 841
" simile 1006	" in, into 842
" syllepsis 1007	" in an hour within an hour 843
" synaeresis 1008	" in the same time, at the same time 844
" syncope . 1009	" lie, lay 845
" synecdoche 1010	" little, a little 846
" tautology 1011	" nearly, almost 847
" tautophony 1012	" no one, not one . 848
" tmesis 1013	" scarcely, hardly . 849
" transferred epithet 1014	" under, below, beneath 850
" vision 1015	" with by 851
" zeugma 1016	" a picture of the Queen, a picture of the Queen's 852
Grammar defined 1	
Gender and sex ... 159	
" three ways of distinguishing 160	
" where the masculine may be used for the feminine 160	
" nouns used as masculine without a corresponding feminine ... 161	
" nouns used as feminine without a corresponding masculine . 162	

	Sec		Sec
Hints on answering examination papers	1020	Number, different ways of forming the plural	168
Is or ize	31	„ special rules for forming the plural by s	169
Impersonal verbs	105	„ nouns which have the same form for both singular and plural	170
Irregular verbs	106	„ nouns which have no plural forms	171
Intransitive verbs may become transitive	116	„ nouns which have no singular forms	172
Interjection defined	111	„ nouns with two plural forms—one a collective and the other an ordinary plural	173
Interrogative form	246	„ nouns with two plural forms with different meanings	174
Imperative mood	254	„ nouns with two meanings in the singular and only one in the plural	175
„ defined	254	„ nouns with only one necessary in the singular and two in the plural	176
„ nominative of a verb	255	„ nouns whose plurals differ in meaning from thus singulars	177
Intransitive verbs followed by objects not cognate	283	„ nouns plural in form, but singular in origin and meaning	178
Tmesis explained	1013	„ nouns singular in form, not plural in meaning	179
Letters defined	6	„ the plural sometimes implies an adjective	180
„ classification of	7	„ plurals of compound nouns	181
Letter-writing	1098	„ foreign plurals	182
„ the form of letters	1099	„ plurals of letters, symbols, etc	183
„ the place and date	1100	„ plural with numerals	184
„ the form of address	1101	„ negative form	247
„ the narrative	1102	Nominatives connected by conjunctions	328
„ forms of subscription	1103	„ as well as	329
„ the name of the recipient	1104	„ each, every or no joined to two nouns	330
„ official letters	1105	„ when connected with two or more adjectives	331
„ business letters	1106		
„ applications for appointments	1107		
„ 'and oblige'	1108		
„ un-English forms	1109		
„ yours and your	1111		
„ and hope to hear the same from you	1112		
„ subjects for—Chapter XXVI			
Monosyllables ending in ll	24		
Material nouns	50		
Material nouns have, as a rule, no plural	56		
Mood defined	213		
'Much' and 'very'	301		
„ faulty expressions	302		
„ in the comparative degree	303		
„ used as an adjective	304		
Definition and nouns, classification of	45, 54		
Nouns of multitude	55		
Negatives two	124		
Names denoting the young of animals	152		
Number defined	167		

	Sec		Sec
Nominatives connected by ellipsis of a noun .	332	Notes of special construction—	
„ one affirmative, the other negative	333	„ “I beg to state”	545
„ when the noun follows the verb	334	„ Orthography defined .	2
„ singular nouns, connected by <i>or</i> or <i>nor</i>	335	„ orthoepy	2
„ plural connected by <i>or</i> or <i>nor</i>	336	„ <i>or</i> or <i>our</i>	36
„ when of different numbers	337	„ one (indefinite)	70
„ pronouns of different persons	338	„ old definition of pronoun	86
Notes of special construction—		„ <i>or</i> , uses of	139
„ ‘a friend of mine’	517	„ onomatopoeic words	157
„ ‘many a man’	518	„ order of words	362, 382
„ ‘a great many’	519	Prosody defined	5
„ ‘he walked a mile’	520	Primitive and derivative words	38
„ ‘the day that thou eatest thereof, thou shalt die’	521	Primary and secondary derivatives	42
„ ‘he is come’	522	Permanent compounds	43
„ ‘he was banished the kingdom’	523	Proper nouns	47
„ with him saving was doing	524	Proper nouns become common nouns	52
„ ‘he loves to read, and reads to know’	525	Possessive pronouns and possessive cases of pronouns	74
„ ‘to confess the truth, I am in fault’	526	Preposition defined	128
„ ‘I had rather’	527	„ classification of	129
„ ‘it is you that say so’	528	„ verbal	130
„ ‘the house is building’	529	„ double	131
„ ‘it came to pass’	530	„ two governing the same noun or pronoun	132
„ ‘if you please’	531	„ one governing several words	133
„ ‘he is to blame’	532	Person defined	198
„ ‘passing rich’	533	Preparatory ‘it’ and ‘there’	298
„ ‘notwithstanding, during pending’	534	„ examples	299
„ ‘than whom’	535	Parsing defined	403
„ ‘three yards long’	536	„ three steps in	404
„ never so just, ever so just	537	„ scheme of	405
„ ‘it three years old’	538	„ the noun	406
„ ‘one by one,’ ‘little by little’	539	„ the pronoun	407
„ ‘fare the well’	540	„ the adjective	408
„ ‘it is me whom he fears’	541	„ the verb	409
„ ‘I am the man who commands you’	542	„ the adverb	410
„ like, near	543	„ the preposition	411
„ I was mistaken	544	„ the conjunction	412
		„ the interjection	413
		„ combination of words	414
		„ words that may be pressed together	415
		„ interrogative pronouns	416
		„ relative pronouns	417
		„ emphatic pronouns	418
		„ adjective used absolutely	419

	Sec		Sec.
Paising, active and neuter		Paising, full	463
verbs	420	half	464
adverb	421	hard	465
preposition governing		how	466
phrases	422	however	467
conjunctions connect		if	468
clauses and words	423	least	469
adverbial accusative	424	like	470
infinitives	425	little	471
participles	429	many	472
participle used also		methinks	473
lutely	427	more	474
"participial nouns"	428	much (more, most)	475
gerundial infinitive	429	near	476
participle used for		need, needs	477
infinitive	430	next	478
complex subjects	431	no, none	479
"expressed," "under		now	480
stood," etc	432	on	481
"coming after"	433	one	482
"depending on"	434	only (See sec 378)	483
"referring to"	435	other	484
"object after,"		otherwise	485
"object on"	436	past	486
words and things	437	prove	487
examples of	438	rather	488
constructions of		right	489
familiar words ex		round	490
plained, about	439	save, except	491
after	440	since	492
ago	441	so	493
all	442	some	494
any	443	still	495
as	444	such	496
before	445	than	497
behind	446	that	498
beside, besides	447	the	499
both	448	then	500
but	449	there	501
by	450	therefore	502
close	451	through	503
down	452	till	504
each other, one		unaware, unawares	505
another	453	up	506
either, neither	454	usual, usually	507
else	455	well	508
enough	456	what	509
even	457	whatever, whoever,	
every	458	whichever, whatso-	
fell	459	over	510
far	460	whether	511
fast	461	which	512
for	462	while	513

	Sec.		Sec.
Paising, why	514	Pronouns, position of the re-	
" worth	515	lative	366, 367
" yet	516	" questions of appeal	249
Piosody—		Roman or italic letters	15
Poetry classified	1057	Rules for syllabification	19
" pastoral	1058	Restrictive and co ordinating	
" lyric	1059	uses of the relatives	75
" descriptive	1060	Reflexive pronouns	83
" elegiac	1061	Reciprocal pronouns	85
" didactic	1062	Redundant verbs	107
" dramatic	1063	Reflexive verbs	110
" epic or heroic	1064	Reduplicated words defined	156
" minor varieties of	1065	Relations	136
Poetical license	1066	Syntax defined	4
" metre, rhythm	1067	Silent letters	14
" verse	1068	Small letters	15
" a foot	1069	Syllables	17
" rhyme, blank verse	1070	Syllabification	18
" couplets, triplets, qua-		—se,—sy,—ce,—cy	34
trains	1071	Simple and compound words	39
" essentials of a per-		Substitutes for the noun	61
fect rhyme	1072	" for the adjective	99
" monometer, diameter	1073	" for the verbs	117
" scansion	1074	Shall uses of	229, 230
Paraphrasing, its nature,		Should and would	236
objects and uses	1086	Special verbs	250
" essentials of a good		Subjunctive mood	251
paraphrase	1087	" uses of—and indic-	
" the first step in		ative	252
paraphrasing	1088	" distinction bet-	
" reduction to syn-		ween	253
tactical order	1089	Syntax concord	316
" removal of poeti-		" concord of noun and	
cal or uncom-		verb	317
mon construc-		" noun with the definite	
tions	1090	article prefixed	318
" removal of poetical		" when the verb has	
or archaic		several forms	319
words and phra-		" <i>Mathematics, ethics,</i>	
ses	1091	<i>optics, conics, physics,</i>	
" change of struc-		<i>pneumatics, politics, etc</i>	320
ture	1092	" clause as subject of a	
" removal or change		verb	321
of figures	1903	" a plural noun denoting	
" change of form	1094	an object thought of	
change of phraseol-		as a whole	322
ogy	1095	" nouns used in the plural	323
" abridgment of the		" "alms," "riches,"	
above processes	1096	" "eaves" as singular	324
" illustrations	1097	" many used with a	
Pronouns, position of	364	singular noun	325
" order of different per-		" the form of a verb is not	
sons	365	effected by adjuncts	326

	Sec		Sec
Syntax when the noun is omitted	327	Tense, the perfect form	226
Synthesis of sentences	706	„ the progressive form	227
„ of simple sentences	707	„ the perfect progressive form	228
„ of complex sentences	708	„ 'To,' the sign of the infinitive	265
„ of compound sentences	709	„ the present	276
Simile, metaphor, and personification	1017	„ the past	277
Simile defined	1018	„ the present perfect	278
„ compression of simile into metaphor	1019	„ the past perfect	279
Sources of the English language	1048	„ the future perfect	280
Sources of the classical element	1049	„ sequences of tenses	608 609
„ the Keltic element	1050	'Too' and 'very' defined	305
„ the Scandinavian element	1051	„ degree of quality	306
„ other sources	1052	„ followed by an infinitive	3 7
„ words derived from nouns of persons	1053	„ examples	308
„ words derived from names of places	1054	„ uses of	309
Saxon and classical words	1055	„ uses of	310
„ some classical words with Saxon equivalents	1056	„ very misused for too	311
Spelling practical rules for	20, 36	„ used as an adverb of comparison	312
„ additional remarks on	37	Uses of 'we'	65
Triphthongs defined	9	„ of 'thou'	66
Trigraphs defined	9	„ of 'its'	68
This, that, these, those	69	Unemphatic your	72
They, one	70	Uses of the adjective	90
The other, another	92	„ other auxiliaries	234
Transitive verbs used intransitively	111	Voice defined	212
Transitive verbs are sometimes used reflexively	112	„ the two voices	217
Transitive verbs have sometimes a passive meaning with an active form	113	„ the pseudo passive form	218
Tense defined	214	Verbal distinctions defined	710
„ the participle is a form of the verb	215	„ converted words	711
„ the gerund	216	„ synonyms	712
„ formation of the past tense	223	„ example of synonyms	713
„ formation of the perfect participle	224	„ antonyms	714
„ formation of the compound tenses	225	„ homonyms	715
„ the emphatic form	225	„ paronyms	716
		„ conjugate forms	717
		„ „ nouns and adjectives	718
		„ „ adjectives and nouns	719
		„ „ verbs and nouns	720
		„ „ nouns and verbs	721
		„ „ verbs and adjectives	722
		„ „ adjectives and verbs	723
		Variety of expression	1075
		„ circumlocution	1076
		„ condensation	1077
		„ transposition	1078

	Sec		Sec
Variety of substitution of		We, you	71
synonyms	1079	'Who,' 'which' and 'that'	
" the interchange of		is relatives	76
saxon and classi-		'Who,' 'which' and 'what'	
cal words	1080	as interrogatives	82
" the expansion of		Worth (to become)	119
metaphors into		'Will' uses of—	
similes	1082	" exceptional uses	232
" the use of euphe-		" in person	233
misms	1083	" in indirect speech	234
" figurative and unfigu-		" in interrogative sen-	
rative language	1084	tences	235
" other modes of vary-		Ye	67
ing expression	1085	You for we	73
Words in c and c'	25	"Yes" and "No" in answers	125